PROJECT MANUAL

GRIER MIDDLE SCHOOL
GASTON COUNTY SCHOOLS

1622 GARRISON BLVD
GASTONIA, NORTH CAROLINA 28054

BID SET
12 JANUARY 2023

ARCHITECT

LS3P ARCHITECTURE ▪ INTERIORS ▪ PLANNING

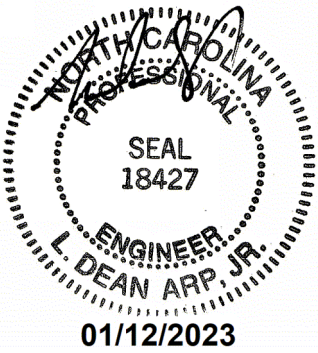
227 W. TRADE STREET
SUITE 700
CHARLOTTE, NC 28202
PHONE: 704.333.6686

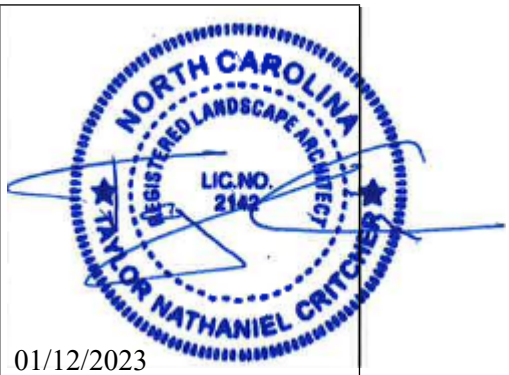
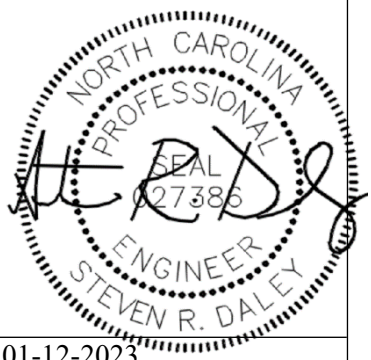
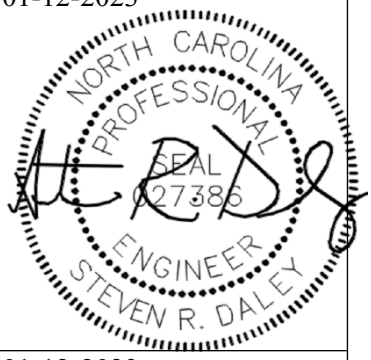
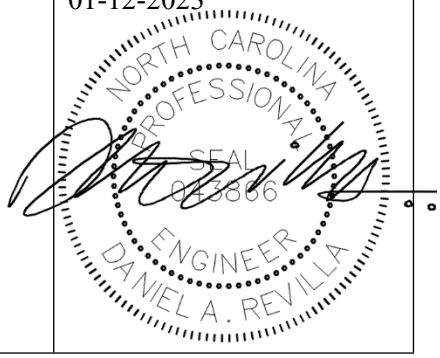
LS3P COMMISSION NUMBER: 9201-218240

VOLUME 2 OF 2
DIVISIONS 21-33

This page intentionally left blank.

DOCUMENT 000002 – PROJECT DIRECTORY AND SEALS PAGES

ARCHITECT	LS3P Corporate License #50417	
ARCHITECT LS3P 227 W. Trade Street Suite 700 Charlotte, NC 28202	David A. Bellamy License #9732	
STRUCTURAL ENGINEER Arp Engineering 202 E. Franklin St# A Monroe, NC 28112 Phone: 704.225.0079	L. Dean Arp, Jr. License #18427	
CIVIL ENGINEER Seamon Whiteside 1111 Metropolitan Ave, Suite 1050 Charlotte, NC 28204 Phone: 843.884.1667	Francis T. Yarbrough License # 048304	 01/12/2023

LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT Seamon Whiteside 1111 Metropolitan Ave, Suite 1050 Charlotte, NC 28204 Phone: 843.884.1667	Taylor N. Critcher License # 2142	 01/12/2023
MECHANICAL ENGINEER Optima Engineering, P.A. 1927 S. Tryon Street Suite 300 Charlotte, NC 28203 Phone: 704.338.1292	Steve R. Daley License # 027386	01-12-2023 
ELECTRICAL ENGINEER / FIRE ALARM ENGINEER Optima Engineering, P.A. 1927 S. Tryon Street Suite 300 Charlotte, NC 28203 Phone: 704.338.1292	Brian E. Thompson License # 23494	01-12-2023 
PLUMBING ENGINEER/ SPRINKLER-STANDPIPE ENGINEER Optima Engineering, P.A. 1927 S. Tryon Street Suite 300 Charlotte, NC 28203 Phone: 704.338.1292	Daniel A. Revilla License # 043866	01-12-2023 

END OF PROJECT DIRECTORY AND SEALS PAGES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME ONE

VOLUME TWO

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 210500 – FIRE PROTECTION GENERAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

A. Design, fabricate, install, and secure required approvals for a complete fire protection automatic sprinkler and standpipe system where shown on the Drawings, as specified herein, and as needed for a complete and proper installation in accordance with pertinent requirements of NFPA 13, NFPA 24 and local governmental agencies having jurisdiction.

B. Work includes providing design services; furnishing all labor, material, equipment and installation as necessary and reasonably incidental to the proper completion and proper operation of the fire protection systems. The work shall consist of but shall not necessarily be limited to the following:

1. Underground fire mains as indicated.
2. Automatic wet-pipe sprinkler system as specified in Section 211313.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 (General Requirements) sections of the Project Manual apply to this Section.

B. The General Conditions shall be carefully examined before proposals for any work are submitted. Division 21 shall not be interpreted as waiving or overruling any requirements expressed in the General Conditions unless Division 21 specifications contain statements more definitive or more restrictive.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Words and phrases used throughout the Contract Documents shall be interpreted as indicated below:

1. Construction Documents – the basis for the work. It includes both the Drawings (plans) and Project Manual (specifications).

2. Contractor – The person or organization awarded the contract for fire protection design and construction services.

   In the case of a construction project administered as a multiple-prime contract, the term shall be further defined as the Contractor holding a prime contract for fire protection design and construction work.

The terms “Fire Protection Contractor” and “Sprinkler Contractor” may be used interchangeably with the term Contractor.

3. Provide – To furnish and install materials, equipment or systems.

4. Submittals – Submittals shall include Manufacturer’s Catalog Data, Shop Drawings, Calculations, Certificates of Compliance, Testing Reports, Samples, and Operation and Maintenance Manuals.

5. Professional – The Architect and/or Engineer of record.

6. Work By Others – Work provided by a person or organization other than the Contractor.

1.4 CODES, REFERENCES, AND STANDARDS

A. The Contractor shall comply with all laws, ordinances, and regulations of all Authorities Having Jurisdiction, including those of all applicable City, County, State, Federal and Public Utility entities. All licenses, permits, fees, connection fees, tapping fees, inspection fees, etc., shall be obtained by the Contractor and the cost shall be included in the Contract price.

B. The minimum standard of work under this contract shall be in accordance with the following model building codes and standards:

1. North Carolina State Building Codes, 2018 Edition:

   a. North Carolina State Building Code.

   b. North Carolina State Fire Prevention Code.

2. National Fire Protection Association

   a. NFPA 13 – Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems
   b. NFPA 24 – Standard for the Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances
   c. NFPA 70 – National Electric Code

C. Other publications listed throughout Division 22 form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. All publications shall be the latest edition as adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE, WORKMANSHIP AND COORDINATION

A. The Contractor must coordinate his work with that of the other trades so that all work will be performed in an orderly manner and with the least possible interference. Where coordination with other trades is required, the Professional shall make the final decision regarding changes to be made in the work.

B. The Contractor must thoroughly familiarize himself with all specifications and drawings for the project so that he clearly understands his responsibility in relationship to the work to be

performed. The Contractor must plan and perform his work so as to permit the use of the building at the earliest possible date.

1. Sprinklers shall be referred to on drawings, submittals, and other documentation, by the sprinkler identification or model number as specifically published in the appropriate agency listing or approval. Trade names or other abbreviated designations shall not be allowed.

C. The Contractor shall guarantee the workmanship, materials and equipment, furnished against defects, leaks, performance and non-operation for a period of one (1) year after the date of final acceptance. Defective workmanship shall be construed as meaning defective materials and unsatisfactory installation and not intended to apply to ordinary wear and tear. The Contractor shall pay for any repairs or replacements caused by defective workmanship as construed herein within the period covered by the Guarantee, including all incidental work required to correct the deficiency.

D. The Contractor shall expressly and completely follow all manufacturers' instructions required for validation of the manufacturer's warranty agreement including but not limited to service, maintenance and adjustments of the equipment.

E. The Contractor will be held responsible for the proper installation of all materials and equipment required for a complete installation within the intent and meaning of the Contract Documents.

1. All grooved joint couplings, fittings, valves, and specialties shall be the products of a single manufacturer. Grooving tools shall be of the same manufacturer as the grooved components.

2. All castings used for coupling housings, fittings, valve bodies, etc., shall be date stamped for quality assurance and traceability.

F. The grooved coupling manufacturer's factory trained representative shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the use of grooving tools and installation of grooved joint products. The representative shall periodically visit the jobsite and review contractor is following best recommended practices in grooved product installation. (A distributor's representative is not considered qualified to conduct the training or jobsite visit(s).)

1.6 PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS

A. Deviations from the Contractor's approved Design and Fabrication Drawings necessary to coordinate the work with other trades, to conform to the building conditions or to conform to the rules and regulations of Authorities Having Jurisdiction shall be made only after obtaining written permission from the Professional.

B. The Contractor shall keep a record of construction changes and deviations from the original Design and Fabrication Drawings. All changes shall be recorded on a separate set of prints which shall be kept at the job site specifically for that purpose. The record shall be made immediately after the work is completed. Documentation shall include:

1. changes in pipe routing location

2. valve locations
3. Equipment locations, etc.
4. actual capacities and values of equipment provided as indicated in equipment schedules

C. The marked-up record set of drawings shall be submitted to the Professional for review and approval before final acceptance of the Fire Protection Contract work.

1.7 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

A. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to verify the location of any and all existing underground utilities in the vicinity of his work. When it has been indicated that these utilities are to remain in place, the Contractor shall provide adequate means of support and protection during excavation operations.

B. Before ordering any equipment and material, or performing any work, the Contractor shall verify all measurements and dimensions at the job site and shall be held responsible for the correctness of same.

C. No extra compensation will be allowed on account of differences between actual dimensions and measurements and those indicated on the Contractor's drawings.

1.8 PROTECTION OF SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

A. The Contractor, at his own expense, shall repair, replace and maintain in service any utilities, facilities or services (underground, aboveground, interior or exterior) damaged, broken, or otherwise rendered inoperative during the course of construction due to activities on the part of the Contractor. The method used by the Contractor in repairing, replacing or maintaining the services shall be approved by the Professional.

B. The Contractor shall protect, at his own expense, such of his work, materials or equipment that is subject to damage during the project duration. All openings into any piping, ducts or equipment must be securely covered, or otherwise protected, to prevent injury due to carelessly or maliciously dropped tools or materials, grit, dirt, or any foreign material. The Contractor shall be held responsible for all damage so done until his work is fully and finally accepted.

C. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to protect motors, pumps, electrical equipment, and all similar items of equipment from dirt, grime, plaster, water, etc. during all phases of construction. This protection shall be provided by covering equipment with transparent plastic sheeting and/or locating the materials and equipment in an area free from the elements.

1.9 INTERRUPTION OF SERVICES

A. The Contractor shall schedule his work to avoid any major interruption of any utility services.

B. Existing utilities serving facilities occupied and used by the Owner or others shall not be interrupted except when such interruptions have been authorized in writing by the Owner or the Professional. Interruptions shall occur only after acceptable temporary utility services have

been provided. The Contractor shall provide a minimum of ten (10) working days notice to the Professional and receive written notice to proceed before interrupting any utility.

1.10 CLEANUP

A. The Contractor shall maintain buildings, grounds, and public properties free from accumulations of waste materials, debris and rubbish. At reasonable intervals during the progress of work, and when directed by the Owner's Authorized Representative, the site and public properties shall be cleaned and waste materials, debris and rubbish shall be disposed of in appropriate manner. The Contractor shall provide containers for collection of waste materials, debris and rubbish. Waste materials, debris and rubbish shall be removed from the job site and legally disposed of at a landfill area in accordance with all applicable regulations. Burning or burying waste materials, debris or rubbish on project site shall not be permitted.

B. At the completion of the Project, remove waste materials, rubbish, tools, equipment, machinery, surplus materials, etc., and clean all sight-exposed fire protection fixtures and equipment. Remove grease, dust, dirt, stains, labels, fingerprints and other foreign materials from sight-exposed fire protection fixtures and equipment. Broom clean paved and concrete surfaces; rake clean other ground surfaces. Repair, patch and touch up marred surfaces to specified finish or to match adjacent surfaces.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall be in accordance with Division o1 of the Project Manual.

B. General

1. The Contractor shall provide to the Professional for review six (6) copies of required submittals, unless noted otherwise. All Catalog Data, Shop Drawings, Design (hydraulic) Calculations, and Certificates of Compliance shall be submitted as a single package. All delays to the job resulting from the Contractor's failure to provide submittals at one time will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Four (4) copies will be returned to the Contractor.
2. Submittals provided for review shall clearly and completely describe the specific product(s) they represent. Where differences exist between the item specified and that submitted for review, the submittal shall be highlighted.
3. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by a Certified NICET Level III technician. The plans should bear the signature, stamp and certificate number of the technician.
4. Submittals shall bear the review stamp of the Contractor. The review stamp of the Contractor shall be affixed to shop drawings to indicate:

    a. The Contractor has coordinated the electrical characteristics of the equipment.
    b. The Contractor has verified that the equipment submitted will physically fit into the space allocated with adequate clearances for maintenance, access, and egress requirements.
    c. The Contractor shall bear all associated costs that may accrue due to failure to completely represent a given product.

5. Material and equipment shown on the drawings or specified herein shall not be incorporated in the work of this Contract until shop drawings, hydraulic calculations, engineering data and catalog information have been reviewed and accepted by the Professional.

6. Grooved joint couplings and fittings shall be shown on drawings and product submittals, and shall be specifically identified with the applicable style or series designation.

C. Operation and Maintenance Manuals

1. Submit two (2) sets of 8-1/2" x 11" text sixty (60) days prior to operator training/pre-final inspection bound in three D side ring capacity expansion binders with durable plastic covers for review by the Professional.
2. Prepare binder covers with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS – FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS", title of project, and subject matter of binder when multiple binders are required.
3. Internally subdivide the binder contents with permanent page dividers, logically organized as described below; with tab titling clearly printed under reinforced laminated plastic tabs.
4. Contents: Prepare a Table of Contents for each volume, with each Product or system description identified type on thirty (30) pound white paper.

    a. Part 1: Directory, listing names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Contractor, Subcontractors, and equipment suppliers.
    b. Part 2: Operation and maintenance instructions arranged by system or process flow and subdivided by specification section. For each category, identify names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Subcontractors and suppliers. Identify the following:

        1) Significant design criteria.
        2) List of equipment.
        3) Parts list for each component.
        4) Maintenance instructions for equipment and systems.
        5) Maintenance instructions for finishes, including recommended cleaning methods and materials and operating instructions.
        6) Special precautions identifying detrimental agents.
        7) Special Requirements of other sections of this specification noted to be included in the operating and maintenance manual.
        8) Original copy (reproductions will not be accepted) of NFPA 25 – Standard for the Inspection, Testing and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems.

    c. Part 3: Project documents and certificates, including the following:

        1) All approved Submittals
        2) Shop Drawings
        3) Hydraulic Calculations
        4) Certificates of Compliance
        5) Photocopies of warranties and bonds

6) Material safety data sheets

5. Submit two (2) copies of completed volumes in final form fifteen (15) days prior to owner training. These copies will include Professional's previous review comments.

1.12 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish all motors, combination starters/disconnects, overload protection and controls for equipment required to provide complete and workable systems, unless noted otherwise.

B. All motors, motor control equipment and wiring shall meet the requirements of the National Electric Code, and shall comply with the requirements of the Public Utility Company furnishing service and with the rules and regulations of all Authorities Having Jurisdiction.

C. The Contractor shall verify electrical characteristics at the site before ordering electrical equipment.

D. Motors under ½ (one-half) horsepower shall be 120 volts. Motors ½ (one-half) horsepower and over shall be 3 (three) phase. All motors to be 1750 revolutions per minute (rpm) unless noted otherwise. Combination motor starters shall be of the fused switch type complete with magnetic motor starter. Units shall be of the NEMA size and type applicable to motor size, with 3-pole overload. Overload elements and fuses shall be of the proper size to protect the motor. Unless noted otherwise, units shall be equipped with indicating lights, HAND-OFF-AUTOMATIC (HOA) selector switch, four (4) auxiliary contacts two (2) normally open (N.O.) and two (2) normally closed (N.C.) and fused control transformer to provide 120 volt control voltage. Fusible disconnect switch operating handles shall be interlocked with the door so that the door cannot be opened with the switch in the "ON" position, except through a hidden release mechanism. The operating handle shall be arranged for padlocking in the "OFF" position with up to three padlocks. Fuses shall be furnished by the Contractor as required to comply with NEC requirements. Where R type fuses are indicated, fuse holders shall be provided with rejection clips. Equipment shall be Square D, Allen-Bradley, or General Electric or accepted substitute, and shall be provided with a NEMA Type 1 enclosure, unless noted otherwise.

1.13 CONTROL WIRING

A. The Contractor shall provide all necessary control wiring and related conduit required for complete and workable systems.

B. All conduit and wiring shall be in accordance with the latest edition of the National Electrical Code. Installation of control wiring shall be performed in a neat and workmanlike manner by competent workmen. Workmanship shall be as specified in Division 16.

C. Control circuits shall be wired for 110 volt control, using fused individual control transformers. Circuits shall be fused and shall be interrupted when the disconnect device is opened.

1.14 EXCAVATION, BACKFILLING, AND COMPACTION

A. Excavation, Backfilling and Compaction shall comply with Division 2 of the Project Manual.

B. General

1. The Contractor shall notify one call prior to any work.
2. The Contractor shall perform all excavation, backfilling, compaction and necessary finishing for all piping, equipment, and accessories. Piping installation shall be in accordance with local water, sewer and gas utility regulations and applicable State and Local codes.
3. The Contractor shall do all bracing, sheathing and shoring necessary to perform and protect his excavations. The Contractor shall provide safety rails, lights, signs, etc. as necessary or required for safety, as directed by the Professional, or as required to conform to governing laws.
4. The Contractor shall provide, maintain, and operate pumping equipment of sufficient capacity to insure that all his excavations and trenches are kept free of water at all times.
5. All surfaces of streets, walkways, seeded areas, or finished grade areas disturbed by the excavation shall be restored to their original condition and/or as indicated on the Project Documents.
6. Protect existing structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements and other facilities not indicated for removal, from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout and other hazards resulting from excavation operations.
7. Existing utility lines shown on the Project Documents do not indicate the exact in-place location of the lines. They do not show every pipe, fitting or appurtenance that may exist at the project site. The location and depth of all utilities shall be marked and recorded prior to any excavation. Should uncharted or incorrectly charted, existing piping or other utilities be uncovered during excavation, contact the Professional immediately for directions before proceeding further with work in this area. The Contractor shall cooperate with Owner and utility companies in keeping respective services and facilities in operation. Repair damaged utilities to the satisfaction of the utility owner.
8. If it becomes necessary to install any lines or equipment in locations other than those shown, the Professional’s acceptance shall be obtained before starting the excavation.
9. The presence of explosives on the project site or the use of explosives in the execution of the work under this contract is not permitted.

C. Excavation

1. All fire protection excavation is unclassified.
2. Trenches shall be dug to uniform width not less than 12-inches nor more than 16-inches wider than the bell diameter of the piping. Trench sides shall be vertical. Excavate trenches to depth indicated or required. Carry depth of trenches for piping as required to establish required slopes and invert elevations. Beyond building perimeter, keep bottom of trenches sufficiently below finished grade to protect against frost. The bottom of trenches shall be accurately graded to provide uniform and smooth flow throughout. Any over-excavation shall be backfilled with modified aggregate and thoroughly tamped.
3. If trench excavation operations are performed when the atmospheric temperature is less than thirty-five (35) degrees Fahrenheit, the Contractor shall provide at his own expense cold weather protection as required to protect excavated trench bottoms from freezing.

Under no circumstances will any pipe be permitted to be laid in a trench containing water or on a subgrade containing frost.

4. Take up and re-lay pipe that is not laid true to required alignment or grade. Pipe that has had its joints disturbed after laying shall be taken up and relaid. Deviation from the required lines and grades will not be permitted unless approved by the Professional.
5. Pipe Embedment – All pipe shall be laid on a First Class granular bedding. The bedding shall be a minimum depth of 6-inches (six) or ¼ (one-fourth) the pipe diameter, whichever is greater. The bedding shall provide uniform longitudinal support to the pipe and shall be laid to provide the grade and line as shown on the drawings or as directed by the Professional. Compaction of embedment materials under the haunches and around the pipe to the spring line of the pipe to a depth of 6-inches (minimum) above the top of the pipe.

D. Backfilling

1. Backfilling shall not be undertaken until all tests and inspections have been made. Use care to avoid damaging or displacing piping systems. All backfill material shall be free from cinders, ashes, refuse, organic material, boulders, rocks or stones, frozen soil, or other material that is unsuitable. When the type of backfill material is not indicated on the plans or is not specified, the excavated material may be used, provided that such material consists of loam, clay, sand, gravel, or other material that is suitable for backfilling. From 1-foot above the top of the pipe to the subgrade of the pavement, material containing stones greater than 6-inches in their greatest dimension may not be used.
2. Backfilling shall be carefully performed and the original surface restored.
3. All trench backfill shall be brought to subgrade ready for base material or topsoil. After the initial aggregate backfill layer has been placed, refill remainder of the trench using backfill materials as follows:

    a. Lawns – Successive 6-inch layers of clean earth backfill material shall be deposited after initial aggregate backfill. This backfill shall consist of excavated material free from large clods of earth and stone. If large stones (greater than 6-inches) are encountered, remove stones from site and haul in clean earth backfill. The entire trench shall be uniformly tamped after each successive layer is deposited. Replace topsoil to approximate depth of existing as final refill operation and crown to such height as required by the Professional. Maintain crowned surface to the satisfaction of the Professional.
    b. Walks and Parking Areas – Clean earth backfill compacted in 6-inch layers to point 8-inches below the adjacent existing surfaces. Refill the remaining 8-inches with compacted stone and replace walk or paving as required.
    c. Paved Areas – When working within the right-of-way limits of all North Carolina State highways, backfilling must be in conformance with the requirements of the North Carolina Department of Transportation, which is made a part of these specifications by this reference thereto. Trenches located within the areas described above shall be backfilled with aggregate material from the top of the “pipe bedding” to the bottom elevation of the pavement structure and must be spread and compacted in layers not to exceed 4 inches when using a mechanical damper. The Contractor is to understand that payment for special backfilling material shall not be made unless specifically provided in the form of Proposal.

E. Compaction

1. Thoroughly compact subgrade prior to the installation of 6-inches of First Class pipe bedding. Following satisfactory pipe laying and in-line structure installation, backfill trenches to a height of at least 12-inches above the top of the outside barrel of the pipe.
2. All fill shall be compacted to ninety-five (95) percent. Each layer shall be compacted to the specified percent of maximum density obtained at optimum moisture content, in accordance with ASTM D1557, method D and ATM D1556 sand cone method.
3. Compaction shall be accomplished by approved equipment suited to the soil being compacted. Material shall be moistened or aerated as necessary to provide the moisture content that will readily facilitate obtaining the specified compaction with the equipment used.
4. Thoroughly compact successive layers of backfill material with a vibrating compactor of a type and size satisfactory to the Professional. Compacting of this backfill by puddling or jetting will not be permitted. Use mechanical tampers to compact backfill materials in trench refill operations to produce a density of backfill at the bottom of each layer of not less than 95-percent of the maximum density obtained at optimum moisture content.
5. The use of special equipment such as the “HYDRA-HAMMER” for compaction of backfill is prohibited.

1.15 INSPECTION AND TESTING

A. General

1. New fire protection systems and parts of existing systems which have been altered, extended or repaired shall be tested to disclose leaks and defects.
2. The Contractor shall notify the Professional a minimum of 5 (five) working days prior to testing to coordinate the testing and inspection procedures.
3. If the Professional determines that the fire protection systems do not pass the prescribed tests, then the Contractor shall be required to make the necessary repairs, at his own expense, and the Contractor shall re-inspect and re-test the systems. Repairing, inspection and testing shall be continued until all systems pass as determined by the Professional.
4. All new, altered, extended or replaced fire protection shall be left uncovered and unconcealed until it has been inspected, tested and accepted by the Professional. Where such work has been covered or concealed before it has been inspected, tested and accepted, it shall be uncovered by the Contractor, at his own expense as directed by the Professional.
5. All equipment, material, labor, etc., required for testing the fire protection systems shall be furnished by the Contractor.

1.16 INSTRUCTION OF THE OWNER

A. After acceptance of the Project, the Contractor shall furnish the services of personnel thoroughly familiar with the completed installation to instruct the Owner in the proper operation and maintenance of all equipment and appurtenances provided.

B. The Contractor shall provide the Owner with two weeks advance notice before the instruction session.

1.17 CHASES AND OPENINGS

A. All chases and openings required for the installation of the work shall be coordinated with the other trades. The Contractor shall provide the other trades with sufficient time (1 (one) week minimum) for coordination of all chases and openings. The contractor shall be responsible for all work required to cut and patch the required openings. The work shall be performed to the satisfaction of the Professional.

B. Penetrations made in fire rated chases, partitions, floors, etc., shall be sealed with an approved material and method as required to maintain the integrity of the fire separation.

C. The Contractor shall provide all sleeves, hangers, and anchors required for installation of work in chases and openings.

1.18 WATER SERVICE

A. The Contractor shall coordinate water service requirements in accordance with the local water utility regulations, including required permits, backflow preventers, meters, piping, valves, bypasses, supports and other accessories.

1.19 PAINTING

A. Painting shall be in accordance with Division 09.

1.20 RELATED WORK

A. All work related to providing complete fire protection systems and equipment shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. The following related work shall be provided as indicated in other specification Divisions, unless noted otherwise, but shall remain the responsibility of the Contractor for workmanship and completeness:

1. General Contractor

a. Installation of access panels.
b. Final painting of existing walls, floors and ceilings where the surfaces are being refinished and remodeled under the General Contract. Refer to General Construction Drawings.
c. Concrete housekeeping pads for fire protection equipment.
d. Removal of existing concrete housekeeping pads.

2. Food Service Equipment Contractor

a. Kitchen hood fire extinguishing systems.

3. Electrical Contractor

   a. Verification of the proper rotation of three phase equipment, and making modifications as required to correct improper rotation.
   b. Installation of all combination starters/disconnects and overload protectors.

1.21 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL AND ACCESSORIES

A. The contractor shall provide all necessary steel angles, channels, pipe, rods, nuts, bolts, etc., as shown on plans, as specified, or as may be required for complete and proper installation of sprinkler piping, systems and equipment. All material and workmanship shall be of the best quality and shall be installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade.

1.22 ACCESS PANELS

A. The Contractor shall furnish access doors to the General Contractor for installation in ceilings, walls, partitions and floors for access to valve and other appurtenances.

B. Access panels shall be of sufficient size to permit removal or access to equipment, except that the minimum size shall be 12-inches by 16-inches.

C. Access door locations shall be as determined by field conditions for optimum access to equipment, and shall be reviewed by the Professional before final installation

D. Access doors shall be suitable for installation in the finish material of the ceilings, walls, partitions and floors.

E. Frame and panel access doors in restrooms, kitchens and as indicated shall be stainless steel.

F. Access doors with UL Listing shall be provided in rated construction assemblies. Access doors shall be “B-Label” and shall have a UL one and one-half (1-1/2) hour rating at 250 degrees F rating for both door and frame. Maximum size shall be 20” x 20” or 400 square inches in area. Frame shall be sixteen (16) gauge minimum steel, panel shall be twenty (20) gauge minimum steel. Access doors shall be provided with a baked-on enamel finish (prime coat), continuous type hinge on one side, flush-face type lock with key operation and self-latching cylinder locks.

G. Access doors without UL label shall be provided in all non-rated construction assemblies: Frame shall be sixteen (16) gauge minimum steel, panel shall be fourteen (14) gauge minimum steel. Access doors shall be provided with a baked-on enamel finish (prime coat), concealed spring type hinges and flush-face type lock with key operation and self-latching cylinder locks. Door shall open 175 degrees (minimum).

H. All access doors shall be keyed alike.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. All materials used on fire protection systems shall meet the requirements of applicable codes, standards, and requirements of Local Authorities Having Jurisdiction and the Owner's Insurance Carrier.

2.2 SPRINKLER AND STANDPIPE PIPING, BURIED

A. Piping: Ductile iron, thickness class 50 meeting AWWA C151, cement-lined per AWWA C104, bituminous coated with slip-on joints meeting AWWA C111. Tie rods and thrust blocks shall meet NFPA 24.

B. Fittings: Ductile iron meeting AWWA C153, cement-lined per AWWA C104, bituminous coated with slip-on joints meeting AWWA C111. Working pressure shall be 350 psig.

1. Grooved end fittings shall comply with AWWA C110 for center-to-end and AWWA C110 or C153 for wall thickness. Pipe shall be Class 53 (min) with factory grooved ends, with AWWA sized grooved joint coupling with FlushSeal gasket. Basis of Design: Victaulic Series 31.

2. For direct connection to IPS steel pipe sizes, couplings shall include FlushSeal gasket and offsetting-angle pattern bolt pads to provide joint rigidity. Basis of Design: Victaulic Series 307.

2.3 SPRINKLER AND STANDPIPE PIPING, ABOVE GROUND

A. Piping: black steel meeting ASTM A53, ASTM A135, or ASTM A795.

1. Piping 2-½" and larger shall be Schedule 10 or the approximately equal "flow" products with roll-grooved, flanged or welded connections.

2. Piping 2" and smaller shall be Schedule 40 with threaded or welded connections or Schedule 5 with Pressfit® connections.

3. Piping shall be hot-dipped galvanized where specified herein or noted on the drawings.

B. Fittings: UL-listed, standard weight suitable for pressures up to 250 psig, cast iron meeting ASTM A126 or malleable iron meeting ASTM A197. Threaded cast iron fittings shall meet ANSI B16.4; flanged cast iron fittings shall meet ANSI B16.1. Threaded malleable iron fittings shall meet ANSI B16.3. Grooved fittings and couplings shall be UL-listed and shall be of ductile iron meeting ASTM A536, utilizing an EDPM gasket. Fittings shall be short pattern, with flow equal to standard pattern fittings. Plain-end fittings and couplings, or welded-segmented fittings shall not be used. Changes in pipe diameter shall be made using tapered reducing fittings. Bushings or grooved-end reducing couplings shall not be used unless standard reducing fittings are not regularly available.

1. Grooved joint couplings shall be:

a. Rigid Type: Housings shall be cast with offsetting angle-pattern bolt pads to provide rigidity and system support and hanging in accordance with NFPA-13. Couplings shall be fully installed at visual pad-to-pad offset contact. (Tongue and recess type couplings, or any coupling that requires exact gapping of bolt pads on each side of the coupling at specified torque ratings, are not allowed.)
   1) 1-½" through 4": Installation-Ready, for direct stab installation without field disassembly. Victaulic Style 009-EZ.
   2) Victaulic FireLock™ Style 005 or Zero-Flex Style 07.
b. Flexible Type: For use in locations where vibration attenuation and stress relief are required, and for seismic applications. Victaulic Style 75 or 77.

2. Gaskets:

Fire Protection Service	Temp. Range	Gasket Recommendation
Dry Systems	Ambient	FlushSeal®, Grade EPDM, Type A
Freezer Applications	-40°F to 0°F	FlushSeal®, Grade L, Silicone
Water/Wet Systems	Ambient	Grade EPDM, Type A

2.4 VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS

A. Gates Valves: Class 125, comply with MSS SP-80, bronze body, screwed bonnet, rising stem, solid wedge. 3" and larger; comply with MSS SP-70, iron body, bronze trim, rising stem, hand wheel, OS&Y, flanged or grooved ends. Basis of Design: Victaulic Series 771.

B. Butterfly Valves:

1. Comply with MSS SP-67, lug type, cast or ductile iron body, chrome plated ductile iron disk, EPDM seat, extended neck, handwheel and gear drive and integral indicating device, built-in tamper proof switch, 200 PSI rating.
2. Grooved end type with ductile iron body, EPDM coated ductile iron disk with integrally cast stem, handwheel and gear drive and integral indicating devices, with weatherproof actuator and supervisory switches, 300 PSI rating. Victaulic Series 705W.

C. Spring-Actuated Check Valves: 250 PSI rating, grooved end ductile iron one-piece body, stainless steel spring and shaft, suitable for vertical or horizontal installations. Victaulic Series 717.

D. Check Valves: Class 125, comply with MSS SP-80 bronze body, screwed cap. "Y" pattern swing, bronze disc. 3" and larger, comply with MSS SP-71, class 125, iron body, bronze mounted, horizontal swing, cast iron disc.

2.5 DRAIN VALVES

A. Provide bronze compression stop with hose thread nipple and cap.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A. All materials and equipment used shall be installed in strict accordance with the Standards under which the materials are accepted and approved, and in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

B. The Contractor's Drawings shall indicate every bend, offset, change in direction and appurtenance required to provide a complete and workable system.

C. Grooved joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's latest published installation instructions. Grooved ends shall be clean and free from indentations, projections, and roll marks in the area from pipe end to groove. Gaskets shall be of an elastomer grade suitable for the intended service, and shall be molded and produced by the coupling manufacturer. The grooved coupling manufacturer's factory trained representative shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the use of grooving tools and installation of grooved joint products. The representative shall periodically visit the jobsite and review contractor is following best recommended practices in grooved product installation. (A distributor's representative is not considered qualified to conduct the training or jobsite visit(s).)

3.2 SEISMIC RESTRAINTS

A. The Sprinkler Contractor shall coordinate with the General Contractor to determine site classification and seismic requirements for this project. Where required, the Sprinkler Contractor shall be responsible for providing restraints to resist the earthquake effects on the Sprinkler system(s). The requirements for these restraints are found in the 2009 North Carolina Building Code.

B. The Sprinkler Contractor shall refer to the latest edition of the "Seismic Restraint Manual Guidelines for Mechanical Systems" published by SMACNA for guidelines to determine the correct restraints for piping.

C. The Sprinkler Contractor shall include shop drawings of the specific methods of seismic restraint to be used for this project before installation of piping, ductwork, and equipment.

D. Any required anchorage of the equipment and materials for this project shall be an integral part of the design and specification of such equipment and materials. Manufacturers of all equipment shall provide anchorage details, isolators, seismic mounts and restraints, etc. necessary to comply with Code requirements.

E. The Sprinkler Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Structural Engineer licensed in the State of North Carolina to design seismic restraint elements required for this project. The engineer's computations, bearing his professional seal, shall accompany shop drawings which show Code compliance. Computations and shop drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the purchasing of materials, equipment, systems and assemblies.

F. Internal seismic restraint elements of manufactured equipment shall be certified by a Professional Engineer retained by the manufacturer. Such certificate applies only to

internal elements of the equipment. All equipment anchorage requirements shall be coordinated with the building structure and shall be compatible thereto. All such anchorage shall be reviewed by the project's structural engineer.

G. The professional engineer retained by the Sprinkler Contractor for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation. This Engineer shall provide in writing verification of compliance with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspection by other than this Engineer is not acceptable. This engineer shall also be responsible for any required special inspections and associated documentation.

H. Review of the seismic design and shop drawings by the Engineer/Architect or his agent shall not relieve the Sprinkler Contractor of his responsibility to comply with the seismic or any other requirements of the International Building Code.

END OF SECTION 210500

SECTION 211313 – WET PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes wet-pipe sprinkler system guidelines for system design, installation, and certification.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. National Fire Protection Association:
   1. NFPA 13 - Installation of Sprinkler Systems.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. System to provide coverage for entire building.

B. Provide a hydraulically designed system to NFPA 13 occupancy requirements.

C. Obtain up-to-date flow test data. Determine volume and pressure of incoming water supply from water flow test data. Provide flow test data on the Shop Drawings.

D. Interface sprinkler system with building fire and smoke alarm system.

E. For new systems, provide fire department connections as indicated on Drawings.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum working pressure.

B. Delegated Design: Design sprinkler system(s), including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated

   1. Provide fire-hydrant flow test records to indicate the following conditions:
      a. Time of test
      b. Name and Company of person performing the test
      c. Location of Residual Fire Hydrant
      d. Location of Flow Fire Hydrant
      e. Static Pressure at Residual Fire Hydrant
      f. Measured Flow at Flow Fire Hydrant
      g. Residual Pressure at Residual Fire Hydrant

C. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

   1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.

2. Recommended Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
    a. Automobile Parking Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    b. Building Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    c. Churches: Light Hazard
    d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    e. General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    f. Laundries: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    g. Libraries except Stack Areas: Light Hazard
    h. Library Stack Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2
    i. Machine Shops: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
    j. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    k. Office and Public Areas: Light Hazard
    l. Plastics Processing Areas: Extra Hazard, Group 2.
    m. Printing Plants: Extra Hazard, Group 1
    n. Repair Garages: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2
    o. Residential Living Areas: Light Hazard
    p. Restaurant Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    q. Solvent Cleaning Areas: Extra Hazard, Group 2

3. Recommended Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
    a. Residential (Dwelling) Occupancy: 0.05 gpm over 400-sq. ft. area.
    b. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
    c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
    d. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
    e. Extra-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.30 gpm over 2500-sq. ft. area.
    f. Extra-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.40 gpm over 2500-sq. ft. area.
    g. Special Occupancy Hazard: As determined by authorities having jurisdiction.

4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: Per UL listing.

5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
    a. Residential Areas: 400 sq. ft.
    b. Office Spaces: 225 sq. ft.
    c. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft.
    d. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
    e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.

6. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: According to NFPA 13 unless otherwise indicated:
    a. Light-Hazard Occupancies: 100 gpm for 30 minutes.
    b. Ordinary-Hazard Occupancies: 250 gpm for 60 to 90 minutes.

c. Extra-Hazard Occupancies: 500 gpm for 90 to 120 minutes

7. Seismic Performance: Refer to section 21 05 00

1.13 SUBMITTALS

A. Division 01 - Submittal Procedures: Submittal procedures.

B. Shop Drawings: Provide layout of finished ceiling areas indicating sprinkler locations coordinated with ceiling installation and the work of other trades (ductwork, lights and any other ceiling mounted devices). Show detailed pipe layout, hangers and supports, sprinklers, components and accessories. Indicate system controls.

C. Product Data: Submit data on sprinklers, valves, and specialties, including manufacturers catalog information. Submit performance ratings, rough-in details, weights, support requirements, and piping connections.

D. Design Data: Submit design calculations signed and sealed by a professional engineer.

E. Sprinklers shall be referred to on drawings, submittals, and other documentation, by the sprinkler identification or model number as specifically published in the appropriate agency listing or approval. Trade names or other abbreviated designations shall not be allowed.

1.14 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Division 01 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Closeout procedures.

B. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of sprinklers and deviations of piping from drawings. Indicate drain and inspector’s test locations.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit components of system, servicing requirements, record drawings, inspection data, replacement part numbers and availability, and location and numbers of service depot.

1.15 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform Work in accordance with NFPA 13.

1.16 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

B. Installer: Company specializing in performing Work of this section with minimum three years documented experience.

C. Design system under direct supervision of Professional Engineer experienced in design of this Work and licensed at Project location (state).

1.17 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Division 01 - Product Requirements: Product storage and handling requirements.

B. Store products in shipping containers until installation.

C. Furnish piping with temporary inlet and outlet caps until installation.

1.18 WARRANTY

A. Division 01 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Product warranties and product bonds.

B. Furnish five (5) year manufacturer warranty for system components.

1.19 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Division 01 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Spare parts and maintenance products.

B. Furnish extra sprinklers under provisions of NFPA 13.

C. Furnish suitable wrenches for each sprinkler type.

D. Furnish metal storage cabinet in location designated by Architect, adjacent to system riser.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SPRINKLERS

A. Suspended and Sheetrock Ceiling Type:
1. Type: Concealed pendant type with matching escutcheon plate.
2. Finish: Chrome plated.
3. Escutcheon Plate Finish: White.
4. Fusible Link: temperature rated for specific area hazard.
5. Basis of Design: Victaulic Model V27 or V38.

B. Exposed Area Type:
1. Type: Standard upright type.
2. Finish: Brass.
3. Fusible Link: temperature rated for specific area hazard.
4. Basis of Design: Victaulic Model V27.

C. Side wall Type:
1. Type: Recessed horizontal side wall type with matching escutcheon plate
2. Finish: Chrome plated.
3. Escutcheon Plate Finish: White.
4. Fusible Link: temperature rated for specific area hazard.
5. Basis of Design: Victaulic Model V27.

D. Guards: Finish to match sprinkler finish.

2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Wet Pipe Sprinkler Riser Check Valve: Ductile iron body, swing check type valve with brass seat and rubber-faced or aluminum-bronze clapper with elastomer seal. Provide complete with main drain valve and pressure gauges. Rated for 250 psi working pressure. Valve internal components shall be replaceable without removing from the installed position. Basis of Design: Victaulic Series 751.

B. Electric Alarm: Electrically operated gong with pressure alarm switch. Basis of Design: System Sensor.

C. Water Flow Switch: Vane type switch for mounting horizontal or vertical, with two contacts; rated 10 amp at 125 volt AC and 2.0 amp at 24 volt DC. Basis of Design: System Sensor.

D. Fire Department Connections:
1. Type: Free standing type with ductile iron pedestal chrome plated finish.
2. Outlets: Two-way with fire department thread size. Threaded dust-cap and chain of matching material and finish.
3. Drain: 3/4 inch automatic drip, outside or connected to drain.
4. Label: "Sprinkler - Fire Department Connection"
5. At the low-point near each fire department connection, install a 90-degree elbow with drain connection to allow for system drainage to prevent freezing. Elbow shall be Victaulic #10-DR.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with NFPA 13.

B. Install approved back-flow preventer assembly at sprinkler system water source connection.

C. Locate fire department connection with sufficient clearance from walls, obstructions, or adjacent fire department connectors to allow full swing of fire department wrench handle.

D. Locate outside alarm-gong on building wall as indicated on Drawings.

E. Place pipe runs to minimize obstruction to other work.

F. Install piping in concealed spaces above finished ceilings.

G. Center sprinklers in two directions in ceiling tile and install piping offsets.

1. The Victaulic Aqua-Flex stainless steel flexible drop system may be used to properly locate sprinkler heads. The drop system shall be supplied with required supporting members and bracing.

H. Do not install sprinklers that have been dropped, damaged, or show a visible loss of fluid. Never install sprinklers with cracked bulbs.

I. Sprinkler bulb protector shall be removed by hand after installation. Do not use tools or any other device(s) to remove the protector that could damage the bulb in any way.

J. Connect to fire pump system in accordance with Section 21 30 00 and NFPA 13.

K. Install guards on sprinklers where required to protect sprinklers from physical damage.

L. Hydrostatically test entire system.

M. Require test be witnessed by authority having jurisdiction.

3.2 INTERFACE WITH OTHER PRODUCTS

A. Verify signal devices are installed and connected to fire alarm system.

3.3 CLEANING

A. Section 01 73 00 - Execution and Section 01 77 00 Closeout Procedures: Final cleaning.

B. Flush entire piping system of foreign matter.

3.4 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

A. Section 01 73 00 - Execution and Section 01 77 00 Closeout Procedures: Protecting installed construction.

B. Apply masking tape or paper cover to protect concealed sprinklers, cover plates, and sprinkler escutcheons not receiving field paint finish. Remove after painting. Replace painted sprinklers with new.

END OF SECTION 211313

SECTION 213000 - FIRE PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes electric-drive, in-line centrifugal fire pumps and the following:

1. Full-service fire-pump controllers.
2. Fire-pump accessories and specialties.
3. Pressure-maintenance pumps, controllers, accessories, and specialties.
4. Alarm panels.
5. Flowmeter systems.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Pump, Equipment, Accessory, Specialty, and Piping Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum working-pressure rating, unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, certified pump performance curves with each selection point indicated, operating characteristics, and furnished accessories and specialties for each fire pump and pressure-maintenance pump.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire pumps and drivers, fire-pump controllers, fire-pump accessories and specialties, pressure-maintenance pumps, pressure-maintenance-pump controllers, and pressure-maintenance-pump accessories and specialties. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that fire pumps and drivers and fire-pump controllers, pressure-maintenance pumps, accessories, and specialties will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 21 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment." Include the following:

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

    a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
    b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of fire pump and fire-pump controller, signed by product manufacturer.

E. Source quality-control test reports.

F. Field quality-control test reports.

G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire pumps and drivers, pressure-maintenance pumps, controllers, accessories and specialties, alarm panels, and flowmeter systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire pumps, pressure-maintenance pumps, and controllers through one source from a single manufacturer for each type of equipment.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of fire pumps, pressure-maintenance pumps, and controllers and are based on specific systems indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction pertaining to materials, hose threads, and installation.

E. Comply with NFPA 20, "Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection," for fire pumps, drivers, controllers, accessories, and their installation.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 CENTRIFUGAL FIRE PUMPS

A. Description, General: UL 448, factory-assembled and -tested, electric-drive, centrifugal fire pumps capable of furnishing not less than 150 percent of rated capacity at not less than 65 percent of total rated head and with shutoff head limited to 140 percent of total rated head.

   1. Finish: Manufacturer's standard red paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested unit before shipping.
   2. Nameplate: Complete with capacities, characteristics, and other pertinent data.

B. Fabricate base and attachment to fire pumps, pressure-maintenance pumps, and controllers with reinforcement to resist movement of pumps and controllers during a seismic event when their bases are anchored to building structure.

C. In-Line Fire Pumps: Vertically mounted type with electric-motor driver directly mounted to pump casing.

   1. Manufacturers:

      a. A-C Pump; ITT Industries.
      b. Armstrong Darling, Inc.
      c. Aurora Pump; Pentair Pump Group.
      d. Fairbanks Morse; Pentair Pump Group.
      e. Patterson Pump Company.

   2. Pump: Radially split cast-iron casing with suction and discharge flanges machined to ASME B16.1, Class 125 dimensions, unless otherwise indicated.

      a. Impeller: Cast bronze of construction to match fire pump, statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft.
      b. Wear Rings: Replaceable, bronze.
      c. Shaft and Sleeve: Steel shaft with bronze sleeve.

         1) Shaft Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings in cast-iron housing.
         2) Seals: Stuffing box with minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn and bronze packing gland.

   3. Driver: UL-listed, NEMA MG 1, open-dripproof, squirrel-cage, induction motor complying with NFPA 20 and NFPA 70. Include wiring compatible with controller used.

a. Manufacturers:

1) Emerson; U.S. Electrical Motors.
2) Lincoln Electric Company (The).
3) Marathon Electric, Inc.

D. Fire-Pump Characteristics and Specialty Data: As indicated on Fire Protection Drawings.

2.3 FIRE-PUMP CONTROLLERS

A. Fire-Pump Controllers, General: UL 218 and NFPA 20; listed for electric-drive, fire-pump service and service entrance; combined automatic and manual operation; factory assembled and wired; and factory tested for capacities and electrical characteristics.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Cutler-Hammer.
b. Firetrol, Inc.
c. Hubbell Industrial Controls, Inc.
d. Joslyn Clark.
e. Master Control Systems, Inc.
f. Metron, Inc.

2. Rate controllers for scheduled fire-pump horsepower and short-circuit withstand rating at least equal to short-circuit current available at controller location. Take into account cable size and distance from substation or supply transformers.
3. Enclosure: UL 50, Type 2, dripproof, indoor, unless special-purpose enclosure is indicated. Include manufacturer's standard red paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested unit before shipping.
4. Controls, devices, alarms, functions, and operations listed in NFPA 20 as required for drivers and controller types used, and specific items listed.

a. Isolating means and circuit breaker.
b. "Power on" pilot lamp.
c. Fire-alarm system connections for indicating motor running condition, loss-of-line power, and line-power phase reversal.
d. Automatic and manual operation, and minimum run-time relay to prevent short cycling.
e. Water-pressure-actuated switch with independent high and low calibrated adjustments responsive to water pressure in fire-suppression piping.
f. Automatic and manual shutdown.
g. System pressure recorder, electric ac driven with spring backup.

5. Nameplate: Complete with capacity, characteristics, approvals and listings, and other pertinent data.
6. Controller Sensing Pipes: Fabricate pipe and fittings according to NFPA 20 with nonferrous-metal sensing piping, NPS 1/2, with globe valves for testing controller mechanism from system to pump controller as indicated. Include bronze check valve with 3/32-inch orifice in clapper or ground-face union with noncorrosive diaphragm having 3/32-inch orifice.

B. Full-Service Fire-Pump Controllers:

1. Type Starting: Wye delta, closed transition.
2. Mounting: Wall type for field electrical connections.

2.4 FIRE-PUMP ACCESSORIES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Match fire-pump suction and discharge ratings as required for fire-pump capacity rating. Include the following:

1. Automatic air-release valve.
2. Circulation relief valve.
3. Suction and discharge pressure gages.
4. Eccentric-tapered reducer at suction inlet.
5. Concentric-tapered reducer at discharge outlet.
6. Test-Header Manifold: Ductile-iron or brass body for hose valves. Include nozzle outlets arranged in single line; horizontal, flush-wall mounting attachment; and rectangular, polished chrome-plated brass finish escutcheon plate with lettering equivalent to "PUMP TEST CONNECTION."
7. Hose Valves: UL 668, straightway pattern, and bronze with cap and chain. Include NFPA 1963 hose thread that complies with local fire department standards and finish same as for test-header-manifold escutcheon plate.
8. Ball Drip Valve: UL 1726.
9. Main Relief Valve: UL 1478.
10. Finish: Manufacturer's standard factory-applied red paint unless brass or other finish is specified.

2.5 PRESSURE-MAINTENANCE PUMPS

A. Pressure-Maintenance Pumps, General: Factory-assembled and -tested pumps with electric-motor driver, controller, and accessories and specialties. Include cast-iron or stainless-steel casing and bronze or stainless-steel impellers, mechanical seals, and suction and discharge flanges machined to ASME B16.1, Class 125 dimensions unless Class 250 flanges are indicated and except that connections may be threaded in sizes where flanges are not available.

1. Finish: Manufacturer's standard color paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested unit before shipping.
2. Nameplate: Complete with capacity, characteristics, and other pertinent data.

B. Multistage, Pressure-Maintenance Pumps: Multiple-impeller type complying with HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 requirements for multistage centrifugal pumps. Include base.

1. Manufacturers:

a. A-C Pump; ITT Industries.
b. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
c. Paco Pumps, Inc.
d. Taco, Inc.

2. Driver: NEMA MG 1, open-dripproof, squirrel-cage, induction motor complying with NFPA 20 and NFPA 70. Include wiring compatible with controller used.

C. Controllers: UL 508; factory-assembled, -wired, and -tested, across-the-line type for combined automatic and manual operation.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Cutler-Hammer.
b. Firetrol, Inc.
c. Hubbell Industrial Controls, Inc.
d. Joslyn Clark.
e. Master Control Systems, Inc.
f. Metron, Inc.

2. Enclosure: UL 508 and NEMA 250, Type 2, wall-mounting type for field electrical wiring.

a. Finish: Manufacturer's standard color paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested unit before shipping.

3. Rate controller for scheduled horsepower and include the following:

a. Fusible disconnect switch.
b. Pressure switch.
c. Hand-off-auto selector switch.
d. Pilot light.
e. Running period timer.

D. Accessories and Specialties: Match pressure-maintenance-pump suction and discharge ratings as required for pump capacity rating. Include the following:

1. Circulation relief valve.
2. Suction and discharge pressure gages.

E. Pressure-Maintenance-Pump Characteristics and Specialty Data: As indicated on Fire Protection Drawings

2.6 FLOWMETER SYSTEMS

A. Description: Fire-pump flowmeter system that indicates flow to not less than 175 percent of fire-pump rated capacity. Include sensor of size to match pipe, tubing, flowmeter, and fittings.

1. FMG-Approved Manufacturers:

a. Dieterich Standard Inc.
b. Gerand Engineering Co.
c. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
d. Meriam Instruments Div.; Scott Fetzer Co.
e. Preso Meters Corporation.

2. UL-Listed Manufacturers:

   a. Fire Research Corp.
   b. Reddy-Buffaloes Pump Co.

3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Sensor: Venturi, annubar probe, or orifice plate, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Flowmeter: Compatible with flow sensor with dial not less than 4-1/2 inches in diameter or manufacturer's equivalent size.
6. Permanently Mounted Flowmeter: Suitable for wall mounting with copper tubing to connect to flow sensor.
7. Portable Flowmeter: With two 12-foot hoses, in carrying case.

2.7 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Description: UL 393, 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch- diameter dial with range of 0- to 250-psig minimum. Include caption "WATER" on dial face.

1. Manufacturers:

   a. AGF Manufacturing Co.
   b. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
   c. Brecco Corporation.
   d. Dresser Equipment Group; Instruments Div.
   e. Marsh Bellofram.
   f. WIKA Instrument Corporation.

2.8 GROUT

A. Description: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test and inspect fire pumps with their controllers according to NFPA 20 for certified shop tests.

B. Verification of Performance: Rate fire pumps according to requirements indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, concrete bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of fire pumps.

B. Examine roughing-in for fire-suppression piping to verify actual locations of piping connections before fire-pump installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CONCRETE BASES

A. Install concrete bases of dimensions indicated for fire pumps, pressure-maintenance pumps, and controllers. Refer to Division 21 Section "Common Work Results for Fire Suppression."

1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around full perimeter of base.
2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

B. Cast-in-place concrete materials and placement requirements are specified in Division 03.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install and align fire pump, pressure-maintenance pump, and controller according to NFPA 20.

B. Install pumps and controllers to provide access for periodic maintenance including removal of motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.

C. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than diameter of fire-pump nozzles.

D. Install valves that are same size as piping connecting fire pumps, bypasses, test headers, and other piping systems.

E. Install pressure gages on fire-pump suction and discharge at pressure-gage tappings.

F. Support pumps and piping separately so weight of piping does not rest on pumps.

G. Install piping accessories, hangers and supports, anchors, valves, meters and gages, and equipment supports.

H. Install flowmeters and sensors where indicated. Install flowmeter-system components and make connections according to manufacturer's written instructions.

I. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted. Furnish copies of manufacturers' wiring diagram submittals to electrical Installer.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Division 21 Section "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to pumps and equipment to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect water supply and discharge piping to fire pumps. Connect water supply and discharge piping to pressure-maintenance pumps.

D. Connect relief-valve discharge to point of disposal.

E. Connect flowmeter-system sensors and meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Connect controllers to pumps.

G. Connect fire-pump controllers to building fire-alarm system.

H. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

I. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.

B. Perform field tests for each fire pump when installation is complete. Comply with operating instructions and procedures in NFPA 20 to demonstrate compliance with requirements. Where possible, field correct malfunctioning equipment, then retest to demonstrate compliance. Replace equipment that cannot be satisfactorily corrected or that does not perform as indicated, then retest to demonstrate compliance. Verify that each fire pump performs as indicated.

C. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Final Checks before Startup: Perform the following preventive-maintenance operations and checks:

    a. Lubricate oil-lubrication-type bearings.

b. Remove grease-lubrication-type bearing covers, flush bearings with kerosene, and clean thoroughly. Fill with new lubricant according to manufacturer's written instructions.
c. Disconnect coupling and check electric motor for proper rotation. Rotation shall match direction of rotation marked on pump casing.
d. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand. If pump is bound or if it drags even slightly, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.

3. Starting procedure for pumps is as follows:

a. Prime pump by opening suction valve and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
b. Open sealing-liquid supply valves if pump is so fitted.
c. Start motor.
d. Open discharge valve slowly.
e. Observe leakage from stuffing boxes and adjust sealing-liquid valve for proper flow to ensure lubrication of packing. Do not tighten gland immediately, but let packing run in before reducing leakage through stuffing boxes.
f. Check general mechanical operation of pump and motor.

4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
5. Furnish fire hoses in number, size, and length required to reach storm drain or other acceptable location to dispose of fire-pump test water. Fire hoses are for field-acceptance tests only and are not property of Owner.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire pumps, drivers, controllers, and pressure-maintenance pumps. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 213113

SECTION 220500 – PLUMBING GENERAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 (General Requirements) sections of the Project Manual apply to this Section.

B. The General Conditions shall be carefully examined before proposals for any work are submitted. Division 22 shall not be interpreted as waiving or overruling any requirements expressed in the General Conditions unless Division 22 sections contain statements more definitive or more restrictive.

1.2 SCOPE

A. Provide all labor, material, equipment and services necessary and reasonably incidental to the proper completion and proper operation of the building plumbing systems. The work shall consist of but shall not necessarily limited to the following:

1. Domestic water system including extension of piping and connections to all fixtures and/or equipment. The domestic water system shall be extended from a point 5 (five) feet beyond the exterior face of the building.

2. Sanitary drain, waste and vent system including extension of piping and connection to all fixtures and/or equipment. The sanitary system shall be extended to a point 5 (five) feet beyond the exterior face of the building.

3. Rainwater collection system including extension of piping to roof drains. The rainwater collection system shall be extended to a point 5 (five) feet beyond the exterior face of the building.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Words and phrases used throughout the Contract Documents shall be interpreted as indicated below:

1. Construction Documents – the basis for the work. It includes both the Drawings (plans) and Project Manual (specifications).

2. Contractor – The person or organization awarded the contract for construction services.

In the case of a construction project administered as a multiple-prime contract, the term shall be further defined as the Contractor holding a prime contract for plumbing construction work.

The term “Plumbing Contractor” is used interchangeably with the term “Contractor”.

3. Provide – To furnish and install materials, equipment or systems.

4. Submittals – Submittals shall include Manufacturer's Catalog Data, Shop Drawings, Calculations, Certificates of Compliance, Testing Reports, Samples, and Operation and Maintenance Manuals.

5. Professional – The Architect and/or Engineer of record.

6. Work By Others – Work provided by a person or organization other than the Contractor.

1.4 CODES, REFERENCES AND STANDARDS

A. The Contractor shall comply with all laws, ordinances, and regulations of all Authorities Having Jurisdiction, including those of all applicable City, County, State, Federal and Public Utility entities. All licenses, permits, fees, connection fees, tapping fees, inspection fees, etc., shall be obtained by the Contractor and the cost shall be included in the Contract price.

B. The minimum standard of work under this contract shall be in accordance with the following model building codes:

1. North Carolina State Building Codes 2018 Edition:

a. North Carolina State Building Code.

b. North Carolina State Plumbing Code.

c. North Carolina State Mechanical Code.

d. North Carolina State Fire Prevention Code.

e. North Carolina State Fuel Gas Code.

f. North Carolina State Energy Code.

C. Other publications listed throughout Division 22 form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. All publications shall be the latest edition as adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE, WORKMANSHIP AND COORDINATION

A. The Contractor must coordinate his work with that of the other trades so that all work will be performed in an orderly manner and with the least possible interference. Where coordination with other trades is required, the Professional shall make the final decision regarding changes to be made in the work.

B. The Contractor must thoroughly familiarize himself with all the Construction Documents for the project so that he clearly understands his responsibility in relationship to the work to be performed. The Contractor must plan and perform his work so as to permit the use of the building at the earliest possible date.

C. The Contractor shall guarantee the workmanship, materials, and equipment, furnished against defects, leaks, performance and non-operation for a period of one (1) year after the date of final acceptance. Defective workmanship shall be construed as meaning defective materials and unsatisfactory installation and not intended to apply to ordinary wear and tear. The Contractor shall pay for any repairs or replacements caused by defective workmanship as construed herein within the period covered by the Guarantee, including all incidental work required to correct the deficiency.

D. The Contractor shall expressly and completely follow all manufacturers' instructions required for validation of the manufacturer's warranty agreement including but not limited to service, maintenance and adjustments of the equipment.

E. The Contractor shall be held responsible for the proper installation of all materials and equipment required for a complete installation within the intent and meaning of the Contract Documents.

1.6 PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS

A. Changes from the Contract Drawings necessary to coordinate the work with other trades, to conform to the building conditions or to conform to the rules and regulations of Authorities Having Jurisdiction shall be made only after obtaining written permission from the Professional.

B. The Contractor shall keep a record of construction changes and deviations from the original Contract Drawings. All changes shall be recorded on a separate set of prints which shall be kept at the job site specifically for that purpose. The record shall be made immediately after the work is completed. Documentation shall include:

1. location and elevation of new utility lines

2. points of connection to existing utility lines

3. changes in pipe routing location

4. valve locations

5. equipment locations, etc.

6. actual capacities and values of equipment provided as indicated in equipment schedules

C. The marked-up record set of drawings shall be delivered to the Professional before final acceptance of the Plumbing Contract work.

1.7 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

A. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to verify the location of any and all existing underground utilities in the vicinity of his work. When it has been indicated that these utilities are to remain in place, the Contractor shall provide adequate means of support and protection during excavation operations.

B. Before ordering any equipment and material, or performing any work, the Contractor shall verify all measurements and dimensions at the job site and shall be held responsible for the correctness of same.

C. No extra compensation will be allowed on account of differences between actual dimensions and measurements and those indicated on the drawings.

D. Any difference which may be found shall be submitted to the Professional for consideration before proceeding with the work.

1.8 PROTECTION OF SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

A. The Contractor, at his own expense, shall repair, replace and maintain in service any utilities, facilities or services (underground, aboveground, interior or exterior) damaged, broken, or otherwise rendered inoperative during the course of construction due to activities on the part of the Contractor. The method used by the Contractor in repairing, replacing or maintaining the services shall be approved by the Professional.

B. The Contractor shall protect, at his own expense, such of his work, materials or equipment that is subject to damage during the project duration. All openings into any piping, ducts or equipment must be securely covered, or otherwise protected, to prevent injury due to carelessly or maliciously dropped tools or materials, grit, dirt, or any foreign material. The Contractor shall be held responsible for all damage so done until his work is fully and finally accepted.

C. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to protect motors, pumps, electrical equipment, and all similar items of equipment from dirt, grime, plaster, water, etc. during all phases of construction. This protection shall be provided by covering equipment with transparent plastic sheeting and/or locating the materials and equipment in an area free from the elements.

1.9 INTERRUPTION OF SERVICES

A. The Contractor shall schedule his work to avoid any major interruption of any utility services.

B. Existing utilities serving facilities occupied and used by the Owner or others shall not be interrupted except when such interruptions have been authorized in writing by the Owner or the Professional. Interruptions shall occur only after acceptable temporary utility services have been provided. The Contractor shall provide a minimum of ten (10) working days notice to the Professional and receive written notice to proceed before interrupting any utility.

1.10 CLEANUP

A. The Contractor shall maintain buildings, grounds and public properties free from accumulations of waste materials, debris and rubbish. At reasonable intervals during the progress of work, and when directed by the Owner’s Authorized Representative, the site and public properties shall be cleaned and waste materials, debris and rubbish shall be disposed of in appropriate manner. The Contractor shall provide containers for collection of waste materials, debris and rubbish. Waste materials, debris and rubbish shall be

removed from the job site and legally disposed of at a landfill area in accordance with all applicable regulations. Burning or burying waste materials, debris or rubbish on project site shall not be permitted.

B. At the completion of the Project, remove waste materials, rubbish, tools, equipment, machinery, surplus materials, etc., and clean all sight-exposed plumbing fixtures and equipment. Remove grease, dust, dirt, stains, labels, fingerprints and other foreign materials from sight-exposed plumbing fixtures and equipment. Broom clean paved and concrete surfaces; rake clean other ground surfaces. Repair, patch and touch up marred surfaces to specified finish or to match adjacent surfaces.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall be in accordance with Division 01 of the Project Manual.

B. General

1. The Contractor shall provide to the Professional for review 6 (six) copies of required submittals, unless noted otherwise. All Catalog Data, Shop Drawings, Calculations, and Certificates of Compliance shall be submitted as a single package. Failure of the contractor to provide a complete submittal package may result in delay in processing time. All such delays to the job resulting from the contractor's failure to provide submittals at one time will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Three (3) copies will be returned to the Contractor. Submittals shall clearly identify the contract documents specification section or drawing referenced, identifying and highlighting each item to be reviewed.

2. Submittals provided for review shall clearly and completely describe the specific product(s) they represent. Where differences exist between the item specified and that submitted for review, the submittal shall be highlighted.

3. Submittals shall bear the review stamp of the Contractor. The review stamp of the Contractor shall be affixed to shop drawings to indicate:

   a. The Contractor has coordinated the electrical characteristics of the equipment.

   b. The Contractor has verified that the equipment submitted will physically fit into the space allocated with adequate clearances for maintenance, access, and egress requirements.

   c. The Contractor shall bear all associated costs that may accrue due to failure to completely represent a given product.

4. Material and equipment shown on the drawings or specified herein shall not be incorporated in the work of this Contract until shop drawings, engineering data and catalog information have been reviewed and accepted by the Professional.

C. Trade Name References

1. Material and equipment are described and listed in the Project Documents by trade name, by manufacturer's name and model number, or by performance attributes. It

is intended that trade names or manufacturer's names shall establish standards of quality, performance, capacity, materials, and design for the item specified.

2. Where more than one manufacturer is listed for an item, those mentioned are considered equivalent provided that the quality, style, capacities, materials and performance of the specified item are equivalent. All materials and equipment shall be subject to the acceptance by the Professional.

D. Substitutions

1. No substitution shall be made without the review and acceptance by the Professional.

2. Where the phrase "or accepted substitute" or "or equal" appears in the Contract Documents, it shall refer to the requirement of acceptance by the Professional of the material or equipment involved.

3. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to insure that each manufacturer can furnish a substitute in complete conformity with the requirements of this Project. The Contractor shall assume all costs or extra charges associated with the substitution, including: any architectural, structural, mechanical, or electrical changes required, costs in connection with work of the other trades necessitated substitutes, and any additional engineering costs required.

4. The Contractor shall indicate the specified equivalent on shop drawings or catalog data which are submitted as substitutions.

5. At the request of the Professional samples of items that are to be used in substitution of specified items shall be submitted. If such a request is made, a sample of both the specified item and the proposed substitute item shall be submitted simultaneously. The scheduling of the submission of such samples shall be as directed and shall in no way delay the progress of the project. The Professional will assume no liability whatsoever for any samples submitted.

E. Operation and Maintenance Manuals

1. Submit two (2) sets of 8-1/2" x 11" text sixty (60) days prior to operator training/pre-final inspection bound in three D side ring capacity expansion binders with durable plastic covers for review by the Professional.

2. Prepare binder covers with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS", title of project, and subject matter of binder when multiple binders are required.

3. Internally subdivide the binder contents with permanent page dividers, logically organized as described below; with tab titling clearly printed under reinforced laminated plastic tabs.

4. Contents: Prepare a Table of Contents for each volume, with each Product or system description identified type on thirty (30) pound white paper.

   a. Part 1: Directory, listing names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Professional, Contractor, Subcontractors, and equipment suppliers.

b. Part 2: Operation and maintenance instructions arranged by system or process floor and subdivided by specification section. For each category, identify names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Subcontractors and suppliers. Identify the following:

1) Significant design criteria.

2) List of equipment.

3) Parts list for each component.

4) Maintenance instructions for equipment and systems.

5) Maintenance instructions for finishes, including recommended cleaning methods and materials and Operating instructions.

6) Special precautions identifying detrimental agents.

7) Special Requirements of other sections of this specification noted to be included in the operating and maintenance manual.

c. Part 3: Project documents and certificates, including the following:

1) All approved Submittals

2) Certificates of Compliance

3) Photocopies of warranties and bonds

4) Material safety data sheets

5. Submit five (5) copies of completed volumes in final form fifteen (15) days prior to owner training. These copies will include Professional's previous review comments.

6. Submit eight final volumes revised, within ten (10) days after pre-final observation.

1.12 EXCAVATION, BACKFILLING AND COMPACTION

A. Excavation, Backfilling and Compaction shall comply with Division 31 of the Project Manual

B. General

1. The Contractor shall notify one call prior to any work.

2. The Contractor shall perform all excavation, backfilling, compaction and necessary finishing for all piping, equipment, and accessories. Piping installation shall be in accordance with local water, sewer and gas utility regulations and applicable State and Local codes.

3. The Contractor shall do all bracing, sheathing and shoring necessary to perform and protect his excavations. The contractor shall provide safety rails, lights, signs, etc. as

necessary or required for safety, as directed by the Professional, or as required to conform to governing laws.

4. The Contractor shall provide, maintain, and operate pumping equipment of sufficient capacity to insure that all his excavations and trenches are kept free of water at all times.

5. All surfaces of streets, walkways, seeded areas, or finished grade areas disturbed by the excavation shall be restored to their original condition and/or as indicated on the Project Documents.

6. Protect existing structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements and other facilities not indicated for removal, from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout and other hazards resulting from excavation operations.

7. Existing utility lines shown on the Project Documents do not indicate the exact in-place location of the lines. They do not show every pipe, fitting or appurtenance that may exist at the project site. The location and depth of all utilities shall be marked and recorded prior to any excavation. Should uncharted or incorrectly charted, existing piping or other utilities be uncovered during excavation, contact the Professional immediately for directions before proceeding further with work in this area. Cooperate with owner and utility companies in keeping respective services and facilities in operation. Repair damaged utilities to the satisfaction of the utility owner.

8. If it becomes necessary to install any lines or equipment in locations other than those shown, the Professional's acceptance shall be obtained before starting the excavation.

9. The presence of explosives on the project site or the use of explosives in the execution of the work under this contract is not permitted.

C. Excavation

1. All plumbing excavation is unclassified.

2. Trenches shall be dug to uniform width not less than 12-inches or more than 16-inches wider than the bell diameter of the piping. Trench sides shall be vertical. Excavate trenches to depth indicated or required. Carry depth of trenches for piping as required to establish required slopes and invert elevations. Beyond building perimeter, keep bottom of trenches sufficiently below finished grade to protect against frost. The bottom of trenches shall be accurately graded to provide uniform and smooth flow throughout. Any over-excavation shall be backfilled with modified aggregate and thoroughly tamped.

3. If trench excavation operations are performed when the atmospheric temperature is less than thirty-five (35) degrees Fahrenheit, the Contractor shall provide at his own expense cold weather protection as required to protect excavated trench bottoms from freezing. Under no circumstances will any pipe be permitted to be laid in a trench containing water or on a sub-grade containing frost.

4. Take up and re-lay pipe that is not laid true to required alignment or grade. Pipe that has had its joints disturbed after laying shall be taken up and relayed. Deviation from

the required lines and grades will not be permitted unless approved by the Professional.

5. Catch Basins, Pits, Manholes, Tanks, etc., - Excavation for the various catch basins, pits, manholes, etc., shall follow the general procedures as outlines hereinbefore. The excavation shall extend as required for proper installation or construction. Backfill shall be carefully placed in layers and tamped.

    a. The base for all tanks, pits, manholes, etc., shall be a minimum of 12-inches compacted fill in 4-inch layers to ninety-five (95) percent compaction or as detailed and noted on the Project Documents.

6. Pipe Embedment – All pipe shall be laid on a First Class granular bedding. The bedding shall be a minimum depth of 6-inches (six) or ¼ (one-fourth) the pipe diameter, whichever is greater. The bedding shall provide uniform longitudinal support to the pipe and shall be laid to provide the grade and line as shown on the drawings or as directed by the Professional. Compaction of embedment materials under the haunches and around the pipe to the springline of the pipe shall be by hand tamping. Final embedment for ferrous pipe materials shall extend from the springline of the pipe to a depth of 6-inches (minimum) above the top of the pipe.

D. Backfilling

1. Backfilling shall not be undertaken until all tests and inspections have been made. Use care to avoid damaging or displacing piping systems. All backfill material shall be free from cinders, ashes, refuse, organic material, boulders, rocks or stones, frozen soil, or other material that is unsuitable. When the type of backfill material is not indicated on the plans or is not specified, the excavated material may be used, provided that such material consists of loam, clay, sand, gravel, or other material that is suitable for backfilling. From 1-foot above the top of the pipe to the subgrade of the pavement, material containing stones greater than 6-inches in their greatest dimension may not be used.

2. Backfilling shall be carefully performed and the original surface restored.

3. All trench backfill shall be brought to sub-grade ready for base material or topsoil. After the initial aggregate backfill layer has been paced, refill remainder of the trench using backfill materials as follows:

    a. Lawns – Successive 6-inch layers of clean earth backfill material shall be deposited after initial aggregate backfill. This backfill shall consist of excavated material free from large clods of earth and stone. If large stones (greater than 6-inches) are encountered, remove stones from site and haul in clean earth backfill. The entire trench shall be uniformly tamped after each successive layer is deposited. Replace topsoil to approximate depth of existing as final refill operation and crown to such height as required by the Professional. Maintain crowned surface to the satisfaction of the Professional.

b. Walks and Parking Areas – Clean earth backfill compacted in 6-inch layers to a point 8-inches below the adjacent existing surfaces. Refill the remaining 8-inches with compacted stone and replace walk or paving as required.

c. Paved Areas – When working within the right-of-way limits of all North Carolina State highways, backfilling must be in conformance with the requirements of the North Carolina Department of Transportation, which is made a part of these specifications by this reference thereto. Trenches located within the areas described above shall be backfilled with aggregate material from the top of the "pipe bedding" to the bottom elevation of the pavement structure and must be spread and compacted in layers not to exceed 4 inches when using a mechanical damper. The Contractor is to understand that payment for special backfilling material shall not be made unless specifically provided in the form of Proposal.

E. Compaction

1. Thoroughly compact sub-grade prior to the installation of 6-inches of First Class pipe bedding. Following satisfactory pipe laying and in-line structure installation, backfill trenches to a height of at least 12-inches above the top of the outside barrel of the pipe.

2. All fill shall be compacted to ninety-five (95) percent. Each layer shall be compacted to the specified percent of maximum density obtained at optimum moisture content, in accordance with ASTM D1557, method D and ASTM D1556 sand cone method.

3. Compactions shall be accomplished by approved equipment suited to the soil being compacted. Material shall be moistened or aerated as necessary to provide the moisture content that will readily facilitate obtaining the specified compaction with the equipment used.

4. Thoroughly compact successive layers of backfill material with a vibrating compactor of a type and size satisfactory to the Professional. Compacting of this backfill by puddling or jetting will not be permitted. Use mechanical tampers to compact backfill materials in trench refill operations to produce a density of backfill at the bottom of each layer of not less than 95-percent of the maximum density obtained at optimum moisture content.

5. The use of special equipment such as the "HYDRA-HAMMER" for compaction of backfill is prohibited.

1.13 INSPECTION AND TESTING

A. General

1. New plumbing systems and parts of existing systems which have been altered, extended or repaired shall be tested to disclose leaks and defects.

2. The Contractor shall notify the Professional a minimum of 5 (five) working days prior to testing to coordinate the testing and inspection procedures.

3. If the Professional determines that the plumbing systems do not pass the prescribed tests, then the Contractor shall be required to make the necessary repairs, at his own expense, and the Contractor shall re-inspect and re-test the systems. Repairing, inspection and testing shall be continued until all systems pass as determined by the Professional.

4. All new, altered, extended or replaced plumbing shall be left uncovered and unconcealed until it has been inspected, tested and accepted by the Professional. Where such work has been covered or concealed before it has been inspected, tested and accepted, it shall be uncovered by the contractor, at his own expense as directed by the Professional.

5. All equipment, material, labor, etc., required for testing the plumbing systems shall be furnished by the Contractor.

B. Sanitary, Vent, and Rainwater Collection Systems

1. The system shall be tested in accordance with the North Carolina State Plumbing Code.

2. Rough Plumbing – Systems shall be tested upon completion of the rough piping installation and proved watertight. The water test shall be applied to the system either in its entirety or in sections after rough piping has been installed.

    a. Where applied to the entire system, all openings in the piping shall be closed, except the highest opening, and the system filled with water to point of overflow.

    b. Where the system is tested in sections, each opening shall be plugged, except the highest opening of the section under test, and each section shall be filled with water. A section shall not be tested with less than a 10-foot head of water.

    c. In testing successive sections, at least the upper 10-feet of the next preceding section shall be tested, such that a joint or pipe in the building, except the uppermost 10 feet of the system, shall not have been subjected to a test of less than a 10-foot head of water.

    d. The water shall be kept in the system or in the portion under test for a minimum of 2 (two) hours before inspection starts. The system shall then be inspected to ensure that it is tight at all points.

    e. The Contractor shall provide a written Test and Inspection Report that the above prescribed test(s) have been performed in accordance with these Specifications. The report is subject to approval by the Professional.

3. Finished Plumbing – <u>After the plumbing fixtures have been set and their traps filled with water, the plumbing fixture connections shall be tested and proved gas and water tight.</u>

a. A smoke test shall be made by filling all traps with water and then introducing into the system smoke produced by one or more smoke machines. When the smoke appears at stack openings on the roof, the stack openings shall be closed and a pressure equivalent to a 1-inch water column shall be introduced and maintained for the period of the inspection.

b. Where the local Authority Have Jurisdiction finds that a smoke test need not be performed, a peppermint test shall be performed. Two (2) ounces of oil of peppermint shall be poured into the roof terminal of every line or stack to be tested. The oil of peppermint shall be followed at once by 10 quarts of hot (140-degrees Fahrenheit) water. All roof vent terminals shall then be sealed. The system shall then be inspected for the detection of odor of peppermint. If odor of peppermint is detected, repairs shall be made and the system shall be retested.

c. The above tests shall be witnessed by the Authority Having Jurisdiction or by Professional or his representative.

d. The Contractor shall provide a written Test and Inspection Report that the above prescribed test(s) have been performed in accordance with these Specifications. The report is subject to approval by the Professional.

C. Building Sewer

1. The building sewer shall be tested by insertion of a test plug at the point of connection with the public sewer. The building sewer shall then be filled with water under a head of not less than 10-feet. The water level at the top of the test head of water shall not drop for at least 15 (fifteen) minutes.

D. Domestic Water Systems

1. The system shall be tested either in its entirety or in sections.

2. The system shall be tested and proved tight under a water pressure of 125 pounds per square inch for a period of 2 hours.

3. Potable water shall be used for testing.

E. Liquefied Petroleum Gas Systems

1. The systems shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 58.

2. All gas piping shall be pneumatically tested for tightness prior to commencement of gas service. Air or nitrogen shall be used as the test medium. The piping system shall be pressurized to 100 psig for a period of 2 hours. All joints shall be leak tested with detection solution while the system is pressurized. The Contractor shall provide a valved ¼ inch FPT connection in the system to which shall be attached a 24-hour pressure recording gauge. The Contractor shall arrange for a gas company representative to witness the test. Leaks shall be repaired by tightening or replacing joints. Caulking of joints is not permitted.

1.14 STERILIZATION OF THE DOMESTIC WATER SYSTEM

A. After the system has been tested and approved, the entire new system, including valves and accessories, shall be chlorinated. Disinfecting shall be in accordance with AWWA C651.

B. Chlorine may be applied in any of the following forms:

1. Liquid chlorine gas-water mixture

a. Chlorine gas-water mixture shall be applied by a solution feed chlorinating device.

2. Direct chlorine gas feed

a. Chlorine gas shall b fed directly from a chlorine cylinder with a suitable device for regulating the rate of flow and the effective diffusion of gas within the line.

3. Calcium hypochlorite and water mixture.

a. Calcium hypochlorite shall be HTH, Perchlorene and Maxochlor, or accepted substitute. A solution consisting of five (5%) percent powder to ninety-five (95%) percent water by weight shall be prepared. The calcium hypochlorite and water mixture, first made into a paste and then thinned to a slurry, shall be injected or pumped into the system.

C. The system or part thereof shall be filled with a water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 parts per million of chlorine, and the system or part thereof shall be valved off and allowed to stand for 24 hours; or the system or part thereof shall be filled with a water/chlorine solution containing at least 200 parts per million of chlorine and allowed to stand for 3 hours. During the chlorination process all valves and accessories shall be operated.

D. After the chlorination process, the chlorine shall be flushed from the system until the system water is equal in chemical and bacteriological composition to those of the permanent source of water supply.

E. Laboratory tests of the water shall be paid for by the Contractor.

1.15 INSTRUCTION OF THE OWNER

A. After acceptance of the Project, the Contractor shall furnish the services of personnel thoroughly familiar with the completed installation to instruct the Owner in the proper operation and maintenance of all equipment and appurtenances provided.

B. The Contractor shall provide the Owner with two weeks advance notice before the instruction session.

1.16 CHASES AND OPENINGS

A. All chases and openings required for the installation of the work shall be coordinated with the other trades. The Contractor shall provide the other trades with sufficient time (1 (one) week minimum) for coordination of all chases and openings. The contractor shall

be responsible for all work required to cut and patch the required openings. The work shall be performed to the satisfaction of the Professional.

B. Penetrations made in fire rated chases, partitions, floors, etc. shall be sealed with an approved material and method as required to maintain the integrity of the fire separation.

C. The Contractor shall provide all sleeves, hangers, and anchors required for installation of the work in chases and openings.

1.17 PAINTING

A. Painting shall be in accordance with Division 09.

1.18 RELATED WORK

A. All work related to providing complete plumbing systems and equipment shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. The following related work shall be provided as indicated in other specification Divisions, unless noted otherwise, but shall remain the responsibility of the Contractor for workmanship and completeness:

1. General Contractor

a. Installation of access panels.

b. Leaders and gutters.

c. New catch basins and foundation drains. Final connections shall be by the Contractor, as indicated on the drawings and as herein specified.

d. Final painting of existing walls, floors and ceilings where the surfaces are being refinished and remodeled under the General Contract. Refer to General Construction Drawings.

e. Equipment and furnishings including shop equipment and laboratory equipment. Final connections to all equipment and furnishings shall be provided by the Contractor. The Contractor shall be responsible for coordination of plumbing services with the equipment and furnishings.

f. Installation of Roof drains. Final connections shall be provided by the Contractor.

g. Casework mounted sinks and lavatories, including faucets, bubblers, strainers, tailpieces, traps, gas cocks, and inter-connecting piping. The Contractor shall install the sinks, equipment and appurtenances and shall make final plumbing connections. Rough-in plumbing work shall be in accordance with rough-in drawings as furnished by the General Contractor Final connections to all fixtures shall be provided by the Contractor. The Contractor shall be responsible for coordination of plumbing services with the fixtures and equipment.

h. Concrete housekeeping pads for plumbing equipment.

i. Removal of existing concrete housekeeping pads.

2. Food Service Equipment Contractor

a. Food service equipment including food preparation equipment, dishwashing equipment, dishwasher booster heaters, wash-down kitchen hoods, refrigeration equipment, and sink traps and faucets. Final connections to all fixtures and equipment and all associated work including inter-connecting piping, fittings, valves, gauges, gas lines, flexible quick disconnects, and hose assemblies shall be provided by the Contractor. The Contractor shall provide individual supply piping stops at each piece of equipment. All work shall be installed in accordance with the standards and requirements of the National Sanitation Foundation (NSF), the Department of Health and applicable plumbing codes. Rough-in plumbing work shall be in accordance with rough-in drawings as furnished by the Food Service Equipment Contractor. Final connections to all fixtures shall be provided by the Contractor. The contractor shall be responsible for coordination of the plumbing services with the food preparation equipment.

3. Mechanical Contractor

a. Steam supply and return piping.

b. Condensate drain piping.

4. Electrical Contractor

a. Installation of all combination starters/disconnects and overload protectors.

1.19 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL AND ACCESSORIES

A. The contractor shall provide all necessary steel angles, channels, pipe, rods, nuts, bolts, etc., as shown on plans, as specified, or as may be required for complete and proper installation of plumbing fixtures, systems and equipment. All material and workmanship shall be of the best quality and shall be installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade.

1.20 ACCESS PANELS

A. The Contractor shall furnish access doors to the General Contractor for installation in ceilings, walls, partitions and floors for access to valves, traps, fittings, and all appurtenances.

B. Access panels shall be of sufficient size to permit removal or access to equipment, except that the minimum size shall be 12-inches by 16-inches.

C. Access door locations shall be as determined by field conditions for optimum access to equipment, and shall be reviewed by the Professional before final installation, and shall be subject to the following.

1. Bottom of access doors shall not be lower than the top of the partition base, or a minimum of 6 inches above floor.

2. Tops and/or sides of access panels shall be a minimum of 6-inches from the ceiling or opening or from the edge of a wall return.

D. Access doors shall be suitable for installation in the finish material of the ceilings, walls, partitions and floors.

E. Frame and panel access doors in restrooms, kitchens and as indicated shall be stainless steel.

F. Access doors with UL Listing shall be provided in rated construction assemblies. Access doors shall be "B-Label" and shall have a UL one and one-half (1-1/2) hour rating at 250 degrees F rating for both door and frame. Maximum size shall be 20" x 20" or 400 square inches in area. Frame shall be sixteen (16) gauge minimum steel, panel shall be twenty (20) gauge minimum steel. Access doors shall be provided with a baked-on enamel finish (prime coat), continuous type hinge on one side, flush-face type lock with key operation and self-latching cylinder locks.

G. Access doors without UL label shall be provided in all non-rated construction assemblies: Frame shall be sixteen (16) gauge minimum steel, panel shall be fourteen (14) gauge minimum steel. Access doors shall be provided with a baked-on enamel finish (prime coat), concealed spring type hinges and flush-face type lock with key operation and self-latching cylinder locks. Door shall open 175 degrees (minimum).

H. All access doors shall be keyed alike.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. All materials used on plumbing systems shall comply with the following lead ban requirements:

1. Solders with lead content exceeding 0.2% (two-tenths of a percent) are prohibited. Brass and bronze materials containing 8.0% (eight percent) or greater lead are prohibited.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A. All materials and equipment used shall be installed in strict accordance with the Standards under which the materials are accepted and approved, and in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

B. The Contract Documents are not intended to indicate every bend, offset, change in direction and appurtenance required to provide a complete and workable system.

C. The contract drawings are diagrammatic and are indicative of the work to be performed. It is not intended that they show every pipe, fitting or apparatus required for a complete installation.

D. Except where otherwise indicated, minimum cover shall not be less than the following:

1. sanitary sewer piping: 3’-0”
2. storm sewers: 1’-0”
3. water piping: 3’-0”
4. gas piping: 2’-0”

3.2 SEISMIC RESTRAINTS

A. The Plumbing Contractor shall coordinate with the General Contractor to determine site classification and seismic requirements for this project. Where required, the Plumbing Contractor shall be responsible for providing restraints to resist the earthquake effects on the plumbing system(s). The requirements for these restraints are found in the 2009 North Carolina Building Code.

B. The Contractor shall refer to the latest edition of the “Seismic Restraint Manual Guidelines for Mechanical Systems” published by SMACNA for guidelines to determine the correct restraints for piping.

C. The Plumbing Contractor shall include shop drawings of the specific methods of seismic restraint to be used for this project before installation of piping, ductwork, and equipment.

D. Any required anchorage of the equipment and materials for this project shall be an integral part of the design and specification of such equipment and materials. Manufacturers of all equipment shall provide anchorage details, isolators, seismic mounts and restraints, etc. necessary to comply with Code requirements.

E. The Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Structural Engineer licensed in the State of North Carolina to design seismic restraint elements required for this project. The engineer’s computations, bearing his professional seal, shall accompany shop drawings which show Code compliance. Computations and shop drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the purchasing of materials, equipment, systems and assemblies.

F. Internal seismic restraint elements of manufactured equipment shall be certified by a Professional Engineer retained by the manufacturer. Such certificate applies only to internal elements of the equipment. All equipment anchorage requirements shall be coordinated with the building structure and shall be compatible thereto. All such anchorage shall be reviewed by the project’s structural engineer.

G. The professional engineer retained by the Plumbing Contractor for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation. This Engineer shall provide in writing verification of compliance with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspection by other than this Engineer is not acceptable. This engineer shall also be responsible for any required special inspections and associated documentation.

H. Review of the seismic design and shop drawings by the Engineer/Architect or his agent shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to comply with the seismic or any other requirements of the International Building Code.

END OF SECTION 220500

SECTION 220503 – PLUMBING PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Pipe and pipe fittings for the following systems:

1. Domestic water piping.
2. Sanitary waste and vent piping.
3. Chemical resistant waste and vent piping, within 5 feet of building.
4. Equipment drains and over flows.
5. Natural Gas piping.
6. Unions and flanges.
7. Underground pipe markers.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 08 - Access Doors and Frames
2. Division 09 - Painting
3. Section 22 05 23 - General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping.
4. Section 22 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.
5. Section 22 07 00 - Plumbing Insulation.
6. Division 31 - Excavation ,Trenching and Backfill

1.2 REFERENCES

A. American Society of Mechanical Engineers:

1. ASME Section IX - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code - Welding and Brazing Qualifications.

B. ASTM International:

1. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless.
2. ASTM A74 - Standard Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings.
3. ASTM B42 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes.

4. ASTM B75 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube.

5. ASTM B88 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube.

6. ASTM B306 - Standard Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV).

C. American Welding Society:

1. AWS A5.8 - Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding.

2. AWS D1.1 - Structural Welding Code - Steel.

D. American Water Works Association:

1. AWWA C104 - American National Standard for Cement-Mortar Lining for Ductile-Iron Pipe and Fittings for Water.

2. AWWA C151 - American National Standard for Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast, for Water.

E. Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute:

1. CISPI 301 - Standard Specification for Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications.

2. CISPI 310 - Specification for Coupling for Use in Connection with Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications.

3. All cast iron soil pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast iron Soil Pipe institute (CISPI) and be listed by NSF International.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Division 01 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Shop Drawings: Indicate layout of piping systems, including equipment, critical dimensions, and sizes.

C. Product Data: Submit data on pipe materials and fittings. Submit manufacturers catalog information.

D. Welders' Certificate: Include welders' certification of compliance with ASME Section IX.

E. Grooved joint couplings and fittings shall be shown on drawings and product submittals, and shall be specifically identified with the applicable Victaulic style or series number.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Perform Work in accordance with ASME B31.9 code for installation of piping systems and ASME Section IX for welding materials and procedures.

B. All grooved joint couplings, fittings, valves, and specialties shall be the products of a single manufacturer. Grooving tools shall be supplied by the same manufacturer as the grooved components.

C. All castings used for coupling housings, fittings, valve bodies, etc., shall be date stamped for quality assurance and traceability.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing Products specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience.

B. Installer: Company specializing in performing work of this section with minimum 10 years documented experience.

C. Design pipe hangers and supports under direct supervision of Professional Engineer experienced in design of this Work and licensed at Project location

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Division 01 - Requirements for transporting, handling, storing, and protecting products.

B. Furnish temporary end caps and closures on piping and fittings. Maintain in place until installation.

C. Protect piping from entry of foreign materials by temporary covers, completing sections of the Work, and isolating parts of completed system.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Division 01 - Environmental conditions affecting products on site.

B. Do not install underground piping when bedding is wet or frozen.

1.8 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

A. Verify field measurements prior to fabrication.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Division 01 - Requirements for coordination.

B. Coordinate installation of buried piping with trenching.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

Pipe 3 inch and larger:

A. Ductile Iron Pipe: AWWA C151.

1. Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, standard thickness.

2. Joints: AWWA C111, rubber gasket with rods.

Pipe 2½ inch and smaller:

B. Copper Tubing: ASTM B88, Type K hard drawn or annealed.

1. Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast copper, or ASME B16.22, wrought copper.

2. Joints:

a. 2” and smaller: Solder, lead free, ASTM B32, 95-5 tin-antimony, or tin and silver, with melting range 430 to 535 degrees F.

b. 2-1/2” and larger: Braze, AWS A5.8 BCuP silver/phosphorus/copper alloy with melting range 1190 to 1480 degrees F.

2.2 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

A. Copper Tubing: ASTM B88, Type L hard drawn.

1. Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast copper alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought copper and bronze.

2. Joints:

a. 2” and smaller: Solder, lead free, ASTM B32, 95-5 tin-antimony, or tin and silver, with melting range 430 to 535 degrees F.

b. 2-1/2” and larger: Braze, AWS A5.8 BCuP silver/phosphorus/copper alloy with melting range 1190 to 1480 degrees F.

c. 1-1/2” and smaller: Copper, Push-To-Connect Fittings: ASME B16.18 cast copper alloy or ASME B16.22 wrought copper with stainless steel teeth and EPDM synthetic rubber o-ring seal in each end (UL classified in accordance with NSF-61 for hot (+180°F) and cold (+86°F) potable water service) with push-to-connect ends instead of solder-joint ends.

B. Copper Tubing: ASTM B88, Type L hard drawn, rolled grooved ends.

1. Fittings: ASME B16.18 cast copper alloy, or ASME B16.22 wrought copper and bronze, or ASTM B584 bronze sand castings,] grooved ends.

2. Joints: Grooved mechanical couplings meeting ASTM F1476.

a. Housing Clamps: ASTM A395/A395M and ASTM A536 ductile iron, cast with offsetting, angle-pattern bolt pads to provide rigidity, copper-colored enamel coated, compatible with copper tubing sizes, to engage and lock designed to permit some angular deflection, contraction, and expansion. “Installation-Ready” design for direct stab installation onto roll grooved copper tube without field disassembly. Victaulic Style 607 QuickVic™.

b. Gasket: Elastomer composition, Grade “EHP” EPDM synthetic rubber gasket (UL/ULC classified in accordance with ANSI/NSF-61 for domestic water service) for operating temperature range from -30 degrees F to ~~230~~ 250 degrees F.

c. Accessories: Stainless steel bolts, nuts, and washers.

C. Stainless Steel Pipe: ASTM A312, type 304/304L, Schedule 5S, full finish annealed pipe certified for use with Vic Press 304™ couplings and fittings.

1. Fittings: Precision cold drawn austenitic stainless steel housing, with synthetic rubber O-ring seals, Grade “E” EPDM (UL/ULC classified in accordance with ANSI/NSF-61 for domestic water service), pipe stops and Pressure-Sealed end connections.

2. Joints: Vic-Press 304™ with ‘PFT’ series tool.

2.3 SANITARY WASTE PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

A. Cast Iron Soil Pipe: ASTM A74, service weight, bell and spigot ends.

1. Fittings: Cast iron, ASTM A74.

2. Joints: Hub-and-spigot, CISPI HSN compression type with ASTM C564 neoprene gaskets.

2.4 SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

A. Cast Iron Pipe: CISPI 301, hub-less, service weight.

1. Fittings: Cast iron, CISPI 301.

2. Joints: CISPI 310, neoprene gaskets and stainless steel clamp-and-shield assemblies.

B. Copper Tube: ASTM B306, DWV.

1. Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast bronze, or ASME B16.29, wrought copper.

2. Joints: Solder, lead free, ASTM B32, 95-5 tin-antimony, or tin and silver, with melting range 430 to 535 degrees F.

2.1 CHEMICAL RESISTANT WASTE PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

A. Polypropylene Pipe, Non-Fire Retardant: ASTM D4101, ASTM F1412, Schedule 40 polypropylene material, NSF listed, CSA certified.

1. Fittings: ASTM D4101, ASTM F1412, polypropylene, NSF listed.

2. Joints: Electrofusion joints conforming to ASTM F1290.

2.2 CHEMICAL RESISTANT WASTE AND VENT PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

A. Polypropylene Pipe, Fire Retardant: ASTM D4101, ASTM F1412, Schedule 40 polypropylene material, NSF listed, CSA certified.

1. Fittings: ASTM D4101, ASTM F1412, polypropylene, NSF listed.

2. Joints:

a. Electrofusion joints conforming to ASTM F1290.

b. Mechanical Joints: NSF listed, all fittings shall have integrally molded union connections designed to lock onto a machined groove on the mating piping.

c. Mechanical Joints: NSF listed, no-hub style, stainless steel outer coupling, designed to lock onto a machined groove on the mating piping.

2.3 CHEMICAL RESISTANT WASTE AND VENT PIPING, ABOVE CEILING, PLEANUM RATED

A. Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVDF) Pipe, Fire Retardant: ASTM D3222, ASTM F1673, Schedule 40 polyvinylidene fluoride material (PVDF). Pipe and fittings shall be third party certified to ASTM E84. PVDF material shall meet UL-723 requirements for flame spread rating less than 25 and smoke developed less than 50.

1. Fittings: ASTM D3222, ASTM F1673, polyvinylidene fluoride.

2. Joints:

a. Electrofusion joints conforming to ASTM F1290.

b. Mechanical Joints: NSF listed, all fittings shall have integrally molded union connections designed to lock onto a machined groove on the mating piping.

c. Mechanical Joints: NSF listed, no-hub style, stainless steel outer coupling, designed to lock onto a machined groove on the mating piping.

2.4 EQUIPMENT DRAINS AND OVERFLOWS

A. Copper Tubing: ASTM B88, Type DWV.

1. Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast brass, or ASME B16.22 solder wrought copper.

2. Joints: Solder, lead free, ASTM B32, 95-5 tin-antimony, or tin and silver, with melting range 430 to 535 degrees F.

3. Fittings: ASME B16.18 cast copper alloy, or ASME B16.22 wrought copper and bronze, or ASTM B584 bronze sand castings with copper tube dimensioned grooved ends (flaring of tube and fitting ends to IPS dimensions is not permitted).

4. Joints: Grooved mechanical couplings meeting ASTM F1476.

   a. Housing Clamps: ASTM ASTM A536 ductile iron, cast with offsetting, angle-pattern bolt pads to provide rigidity, copper-colored enamel coated, compatible with copper tubing sizes, to engage and lock designed to permit some angular deflection, contraction, and expansion. “Installation-Ready” design for direct stab installation without field disassembly. Victaulic Style 607 QuickVic™.

   b. Gasket: Grade “EHP” EPDM gasket for water service with operating temperature range from -30 degrees F to 250 degrees F or Grade ”T” Nitrile gasket for oil service with operating temperature range from -20 degrees F to 180 degrees F.

   c. Accessories: Stainless steel bolts, nuts, and washers.

2.5 NATURAL GAS PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M Schedule 40 black.

1. Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M, forged steel welding type.

2. Joints: ASME B31.9, welded.

3. Jacket: AWWA C105 polyethylene jacket or double layer, half-lapped 10 mil polyethylene tape.

2.6 NATURAL GAS PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M Schedule 40 black.

1. Fittings: ASME B16.3, malleable iron, or ASTM A234/A234M forged steel welding type.

2. Joints: Threaded for pipe 2 inch and smaller; welded for pipe 2-1/2 inches and larger.

2.7 UNIONS AND FLANGES

A. Unions for Pipe 2 inches and Smaller:

1. Ferrous Piping: Class 150, malleable iron, threaded.

2. Copper Piping: Class 150, bronze unions with soldered joints.

3. Dielectric Connections: Union with galvanized or plated steel threaded end, copper solder end, water impervious isolation barrier.

B. Flanges for Pipe 2-1/2 inches and Larger:

1. Ferrous Piping: Class 150, forged steel, slip-on flanges.

2. Copper Piping: Class 150, slip-on bronze flanges.

3. Gaskets: 1/16 inch thick preformed neoprene gaskets.

C. Flange Adapter for Pipe 2 inches and Larger:

1. Ferrous Piping: Class 125, 150 & 300, ductile iron, flat faced. Victaulic Style 741, 743 & W741.

2. Copper Piping: 300 psi, ductile iron coated with copper-colored enamel, flat faced. Victaulic Style 641.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Division 01 - Verification of existing conditions before starting work.

B. Verify excavations are to required grade, dry, and not over-excavated.

C. Verify trenches are ready to receive piping.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Ream pipe and tube ends. Remove burrs. Bevel plain end ferrous pipe.

B. Remove scale and dirt on inside and outside before assembly.

C. Prepare piping connections to equipment with flanges or unions.

D. Keep open ends of pipe free from scale and dirt. Protect open ends with temporary plugs or caps.

3.3 INSTALLATION - BURIED PIPING SYSTEMS

A. Verify connection to site piping system size, location, and invert are as indicated on Drawings.

B. Establish elevations of buried piping with not less than 2 ft of cover.

C. Establish minimum separation from other services in accordance with applicable codes.

D. Install pipe to elevation as indicated on Drawings.

E. Install pipe on prepared bedding.

F. Route pipe in straight line.

G. Install pipe to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe or joints.

H. Install plastic ribbon tape continuous, buried 12 inches below finish grade and above pipe line; coordinate with Division 31. Refer to Section 22 05 00.

I. Pipe Cover and Backfilling: Backfill trench in accordance with Section 22 05 00.

3.4 INSTALLATION - ABOVE GROUND PIPING

A. Route piping in orderly manner and maintain gradient. Route parallel and perpendicular to walls.

B. Install piping to maintain headroom without interfering with use of space or taking more space than necessary.

C. Group piping whenever practical at common elevations.

D. Sleeve pipe passing through partitions, walls and floors. Refer to Section 22 05 29.

E. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or connected equipment.

F. Provide clearance in hangers and from structure and other equipment for installation of insulation and access to valves and fittings. Refer to Section 22 07 00.

G. Provide access where valves and fittings are not accessible. Coordinate size and location of access doors with Division 08.

H. Install non-conducting dielectric connections wherever jointing dissimilar metals.

I. Establish invert elevations, slopes for drainage to 1/8 inch per foot minimum (1/4 inch per foot for 2” pipes). Maintain gradients.

J. Slope piping and arrange systems to drain at low points.

K. Protect piping systems from entry of foreign materials by temporary covers, completing sections of the Work, and isolating parts of completed system.

L. Install piping penetrating roofed areas to maintain integrity of roof assembly.

M. Install valves in accordance with Section 22 05 23.

N. Insulate piping. Refer to Section 22 07 00.

O. Install pipe identification in accordance with Section 22 05 53.

P. Grooved joint piping systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's (Victaulic) guidelines and recommendations. The gasket style and elastomeric material (grade) shall be verified as suitable for the intended service as specified. Gaskets shall be molded and produced by Victaulic. Grooved end shall be clean and free from indentations, projections, and roll marks in the area from pipe end to groove for proper gasket sealing. A Victaulic factory-trained field representative shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the proper use of grooving tools and installation of grooved piping products. Factory-trained representative shall periodically review the product installation. Contractor shall remove and replace any improperly installed products.

Q. Vic Press 304™ Pressure-Sealed Joints: Pipe shall be certified for use with the Vic Press 304™ system. Pipe shall be square cut, +/- 0.030", properly deburred and cleaned. Pipe ends shall be marked at the required location, using a manufacturer-

supplied gauge, to ensure full insertion into the coupling or fitting during assembly. Use a Victaulic "PFT" Series tool with the proper sized jaw for pressing.

R. PermaLynx Push-To-Connect Joints: Install in accordance with manufacturer's latest recommendations. Follow the latest published literature as provided by Victaulic. Pipe ends shall be cleaned, free from indentations, projections, burrs, and foreign matter. Use a tube preparation tool as supplied by Victaulic to clean. Apply installation mark in accordance with Victaulic instructions. Push copper tube into fittings to installation depth mark, per Victaulic installation instructions. Keep fittings free of dirt and oil; use only on potable water or oil-free compressed air systems.

3.5 INSTALLATION - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SYSTEMS

A. Install domestic water piping system in accordance with ASME B31.9.

3.6 INSTALLATION - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING SYSTEMS

A. Install sanitary waste and vent piping systems in accordance with ASME B31.9.

B. Install sanitary waste and vent piping systems in accordance with local plumbing code.

C. Install bell and spigot pipe with bell end upstream.

D. Support cast iron drainage piping at every joint.

3.7 INSTALLATION - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SYSTEMS

A. Install storm drainage piping systems piping in accordance with ASME B31.9.

B. Install storm drainage piping systems in accordance with local plumbing code.

C. Install bell and spigot pipe with bell end upstream.

D. Support cast iron drainage piping at every joint.

3.8 INSTALLATION - GAS PIPING SYSTEMS

A. Install LPG piping in accordance with NFPA 54.

B. Provide support for utility meters in accordance with requirements of utility company.

C. Install vent piping from gas pressure reducing valves to outdoors and terminate in weatherproof hood.

D. Install gas pressure regulator vent full size opening on regulator and terminate outdoors or as indicated on Drawings.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Refer to Division 01 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Field inspecting, testing and adjusting.

B. Test domestic water piping system in accordance with applicable code. Refer to Section 22 05 00.

C. Test sanitary waste and vent piping system in accordance with applicable code. Refer to Section 22 05 00.

D. Test storm drainage piping system in accordance with applicable code. Refer to Section 22 05 00.

E. Pressure test LPG piping in accordance with NFPA 58.

3.10 CLEANING

A. Division 01 – Execution and Closeout Requirements: Field inspecting, testing and adjusting.

B. Clean and disinfect the domestic water distribution system in accordance with Section 22 05 00.

END OF SECTION 220503

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 220523 – GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Gate valves.
2. Ball valves.
3. Plug valves.
4. Butterfly valves.
5. Check valves.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 22 05 03 – Plumbing Pipe, Tube and Fittings
2. Section 22 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.
3. Section 22 07 00 - Plumbing Insulation

1.2 REFERENCES

A. Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry:

1. MSS SP 67 - Butterfly Valves.
2. MSS SP 70 - Cast Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends.
3. MSS SP 71 - Cast Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends.
4. MSS SP 78 - Cast Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends.
5. MSS SP 80 - Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves.
6. MSS SP 110 - Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Division 01 - Submittal Procedures: Requirements for submittals.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturers catalog information with valve data and ratings for each service.

C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Submit hanging and support methods, joining procedures.

D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.

E. Grooved joint couplings and fittings shall be shown on drawings and product submittals, and shall be specifically identified with the applicable Victaulic style or series number.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Division 01 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for submittals.

B. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of valves.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit installation instructions, spare parts lists, exploded assembly views.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

B. Installer: Company specializing in performing work of this section with minimum years documented experience.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Division 01 - Product Requirements: Requirements for transporting, handling, storing, and protecting products.

B. Accept valves on site in shipping containers with labeling in place. Inspect for damage.

C. Provide temporary protective coating on cast iron and steel valves.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Division 01 - Product Requirements: Environmental conditions affecting products on site.

B. Do not install valves underground when bedding is wet or frozen.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Division 01 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for warranties.

B. Furnish five year manufacturer warranty for valves excluding packing.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Division 01 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for extra materials.

B. Furnish two packing kits for each size valve.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GATE VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Crane Valve, North America.
2. Hammond Valve.
3. Milwaukee Valve Company.
4. NIBCO, Inc.
5. Stockham Valves & Fittings.

B. 2 inches and Smaller: MSS SP 80, Class 125, bronze body, bronze trim, threaded bonnet, rising stem, hand-wheel, inside screw with back-seating stem, solid wedge disc, alloy seat rings, solder or threaded ends.

C. 2-1/2 inches and Larger: MSS SP 70, Class 125, cast iron body, bronze trim, bolted bonnet, non-rising stem, hand-wheel, outside screw and yoke, solid wedge disc with bronze seat rings, flanged ends. Furnish chain-wheel operators for valves 6 inches and larger mounted over 8 feet above floor.

2.2 BALL VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Crane Valve, North America.
2. Hammond Valve Model.
3. Milwaukee Valve Company.
4. NIBCO, Inc. Model.
5. Stockham Valves & Fittings Model.
6. Victaulic Series 722, 589 & 300.

B. 4 inch and Smaller: MSS SP 110, 600 psi WOG, two piece brass or bronze body, chrome plated brass ball and stem, full port, PTFE seats, blow-out proof stem, solder or threaded ends, lever handle.

C. 2 inches and Smaller: MSS SP 110, Class 150, bronze, two piece body, type 316 stainless steel ball, full port, teflon seats, blow-out proof stem, solder or threaded ends, lever handle.

D. Drain valves at bottom of domestic water risers: ¾” in size, MSS SP 110, 600 psi WOG, two piece bronze body, full port, blowout-proof stem, stainless steel ball and stem, solder end x ¾” hose connection with cap and chain, lever handle. NIBCO S-585-70-66-HC.

E. 2 inches and smaller: MSS SP 110, 300 psi CWP, forged brass two piece body, chrome-plated brass ball and stem, TFE seats, Fluoroelastomer seals, blow-out proof stem, pressure-sealed ends, lever handle. Victaulic Series 589.

F. 1-1/2" and smaller: MSS SP 110, 200 psi CWP, forged brass two piece body, chrome-plated copper alloy ball and copper alloy stem, PTFE seats, Fluorocarbon or ring stem seal, push-to-connect ends, lever handle. Victaulic 300 Series.

2.3 PLUG VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. DeZURIK, Unit of SPX Corp.

2. Flow Control Equipment, Inc.

3. Homestead Valve.

B. 2 inches and Smaller: MSS SP 78, Class 150, semi-steel construction, round port, full pipe area, pressure lubricated, teflon packing, threaded ends. Furnish one plug valve wrench for every ten plug-valves with minimum of one wrench.

C. 2-1/2 inches and Larger: MSS SP 78, Class 150,[semi-steel construction, round port, full pipe area, pressure lubricated, teflon packing, flanged ends. Furnish wrench-operated.

2.4 BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Crane Valve, North America.

2. Hammond Valve.

3. Milwaukee Valve Company.

4. NIBCO, Inc.

5. Stockham Valves & Fittings.

6. Victaulic Series Vic®-300 MasterSeal™ and Vic®-300 AGS.

B. 2-1/2 inches and Larger: MSS SP 67, Class 200.

1. Body: Cast or ductile iron, lug or grooved ends, stainless steel stem, extended neck.

2. Disc: Chrome plated, electroless nickel coated or PPS coated ductile iron or stainless steel, offset disc to provide continuous 360 degree seating.

3. Seat: Resilient replaceable EPDM.

4. Handle and Operator: Infinite position lever handle with memory stop, gear operator with handwheel or power actuator.

2.5 CHECK VALVES

A. Horizontal Swing Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers:

a. Crane Valve, North America

b. Hammond Valve.

c. Milwaukee Valve Company.

d. NIBCO, Inc.

e. Stockham Valves & Fittings.

f. Victaulic Company.

2. 2 inches and Smaller: MSS SP 80, Class 150, bronze body and cap, bronze seat, Buna-N disc, solder or threaded ends.

3. 2-1/2 inches and Larger: MSS SP 71, Class 125, cast iron body, bolted cap, bronze or cast iron disc, renewable disc seal and seat, flanged ends.

4. 2 inches through 4 inches: 300 psi, cast ductile iron body, bonnet cap drilled and tapped with 1/2" NPT, stainless steel Type 316 clapper and clapper pin, grooved ends, Teflon, EPDM or fluoroelastomer seat and EPDM, fluoroelastomer bonnet gasket.

B. Spring Loaded Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers:

a. Crane Valve, North America.

b. Hammond Valve.

c. Milwaukee Valve Company.

d. NIBCO, Inc.

e. Stockham Valves & Fittings.

f. Victaulic Company.

2. 2 inches and Smaller: MSS SP 80, Class 250 bronze body, in-line spring lift check, silent closing, Buna-N disc, integral seat, solder or threaded ends.

3. 2-1/2 inches and Larger: MSS SP 71, Class 125, wafer or globe style, cast iron body, bronze seat, center guided bronze disc, stainless steel spring and screws, flanged ends.

4. 2 inches through 3 inches: 365 psi CWP rating, non-slam, silent type with ductile iron body, stainless steel spring, brass shaft and stainless steel disc seats

against the o-ring seal which is mounted on the electroless nickel plated end face. Victaulic Series 716H.

5. 4 inches through 12 inches: 300 psi CWP rating, non-slam, silent type with ductile iron body and stainless steel spring and shaft. Victaulic Series 716 and Series 779 with venturi-taps.

6. 14 inches through 24 inches: 230 psi CWP rating, ductile iron body, spring actuated stainless steel disc and shaft, EPDM seat bonded to the valve body. Victaulic Series W715.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Division 01 - Administrative Requirements:Verification of existing conditions before starting work.

B. Verify piping system is ready for valve installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with stems upright or horizontal, not inverted.

B. Install brass male adapters each side of valves in copper piped system. Solder adapters to pipe.

C. Install 3/4 inch ball valves with cap for drains at main shut-off valves, low points of piping, bases of vertical risers, and at equipment.

D. Install valves with clearance for installation of insulation and allowing access.

E. Provide access where valves and fittings are not accessible. Coordinate size and location of access doors with Division 08.

F. Refer to Section 22 05 29 for pipe hangers.

G. Refer to Section 22 07 00 for insulation requirements for valves.

H. Refer to Section 22 05 03 for piping materials applying to various system types.

I. Grooved end valves shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's (Victaulic) guidelines and recommendations. Grooved end shall be clean and free from indentations and projections. A Victaulic factory-trained field representative shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the proper use of grooving tools and installation of grooved piping products. Factory-trained representative shall periodically review the product installation. Contractor shall remove and replace any improperly installed products.

3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Valves installed in the domestic water piping system shall be Lead-Free per NSF 61, Annex G requirements.

B. Install shutoff and drain valves at locations indicated on Drawings in accordance with this Section.

C. Install ball or butterfly valves for shut-off and to isolate equipment, part of systems, or vertical risers.

D. Install globe valves for throttling, bypass, or manual flow control services.

E. Install spring loaded check valves on discharge of water pumps.

F. Install lever and weight, lever and spring check valves on discharge of pumps in pumped sanitary pumped storm water piping.

G. Install lug end butterfly valves adjacent to equipment when functioning to isolate equipment.

H. Install ball valves in domestic water systems for shut-off service.

I. Install globe valves in domestic water systems for throttling service.

J. Install gate valves in sanitary systems for shut-off service.

K. Install gate valves in storm water systems for shut-off service.

END OF SECTION 220523

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 220529 – HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe hangers and supports.
2. Hanger rods.
3. Inserts.
4. Flashing.
5. Sleeves.
6. Mechanical sleeve seals.
7. Formed steel channel.
8. Firestopping relating to plumbing work.
9. Firestopping accessories.
10. Equipment bases and supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 22 05 03 – Plumbing Pipe, Tube and Fittings.
2. Division 03 - Concrete Forming and Accessories.
3. Division 03 - Cast-In-Place Concrete.
4. Division 07 - Joint Protection.
5. Division 09 - Painting and Coating.
6. Division 07 - Requirements for roof flashing installation.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. American Society of Mechanical Engineers:

1. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping.

B. ASTM International:

1. ASTM E84 - Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

2. ASTM E119 - Method for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.

3. ASTM E814 - Test Method of Fire Tests of Through Penetration Firestops.

4. ASTM F708 - Standard Practice for Design and Installation of Rigid Pipe Hangers.

5. ASTM E1966 - Standard Test Method for Fire-Resistive Joint Systems.

C. American Welding Society:

1. AWS D1.1 - Structural Welding Code - Steel.

D. FM Global:

1. FM - Approval Guide, A Guide to Equipment, Materials & Services Approved By Factory Mutual Research For Property Conservation.

E. Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry:

1. MSS SP 58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacturer.

2. MSS SP 69 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Selection and Application.

3. MSS SP 89 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Fabrication and Installation Practices.

F. Underwriters Laboratories Inc.:

1. UL 263 - Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.

2. UL 723 - Tests for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

3. UL 1479 - Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Firestops.

4. UL 2079 - Tests for Fire Resistance of Building Joint Systems.

5. UL - Fire Resistance Directory.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Firestopping (Through-Penetration Protection System): Sealing or stuffing material or assembly placed in spaces between and penetrations through building materials to arrest movement of fire, smoke, heat, and hot gases through fire rated construction.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Firestopping Materials: shall comply with ASTM E119, ASTM E814, and/or UL 263, UL 1479 to achieve fire ratings as noted on Drawings for adjacent construction, but not less than 1 hour fire rating.

1. Ratings may be 3-hours for firestopping in through-penetrations of 4-hour fire rated assemblies unless otherwise required by applicable codes.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Firestopping: Conform to UL for fire resistance ratings and surface burning characteristics.

B. Firestopping: Provide certificate of compliance from authority having jurisdiction indicating approval of materials used.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Division 01 - Submittal Procedures.

B. Product Data:

1. Hangers and Supports: Submit manufacturers catalog data including load capacity.

2. Firestopping: Submit data on product characteristics, performance and limitation criteria.

C. Firestopping Schedule: Submit schedule of opening locations and sizes, penetrating items, and required listed design numbers to seal openings to maintain fire resistance rating of adjacent assembly.

D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions:

1. Hangers and Supports: Submit special procedures and assembly of components.

2. Firestopping: Submit preparation and installation instructions.

E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Through Penetration Firestopping of Fire Rated Assemblies: UL 1479 or ASTM E814 with 0.10 inch water gage minimum positive pressure differential to achieve fire F-Ratings and temperature T-Ratings as indicated on Drawings, but not less than 1-hour.

1. Wall Penetrations: Fire F-Ratings as indicated on Drawings, but not less than 1-hour.

2. Floor and Roof Penetrations: Fire F-Ratings and temperature T-Ratings as indicated on Drawings, but not less than 1-hour.

a. Floor Penetrations within Wall Cavities: T-Rating is not required.

B. Through Penetration Firestopping of Non-Fire Rated Floor and Roof Assemblies: Materials to resist free passage of flame and products of combustion.

1. Noncombustible Penetrating Items: Noncombustible materials for penetrating items connecting maximum of three stories.

2. Penetrating Items: Materials approved by authorities having jurisdiction for penetrating items connecting maximum of two stories.

C. Fire Resistant Joints in Fire Rated Floor, Roof, and Wall Assemblies: ASTM E1966 or UL 2079 to achieve fire resistant rating as indicated on Drawings for assembly in which joint is installed.

D. Fire Resistant Joints Between Floor Slabs and Exterior Walls: ASTM E119 with 0.10 inch water gage minimum positive pressure differential to achieve fire resistant rating as indicated on Drawings for floor assembly.

E. Surface Burning Characteristics: 25/450 flame spread/smoke developed index when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

F. Perform Work in accordance AWS D1.1 for welding hanger and support attachments to building structure.

1.8 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing Products specified in this section with 5 years documented experience.

B. Installer: Company specializing in performing Work of this section with minimum 5 years documented experience.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Division 01 - Product Requirements: Requirements for transporting, handling, storing, and protecting products.

B. Accept materials on site in original factory packaging, labeled with manufacturer's identification.

C. Protect from weather and construction traffic, dirt, water, chemical, and damage, by storing in original packaging.

1.10 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Division 01 - Product Requirements: Environmental conditions affecting products on site.

B. Do not apply firestopping materials when temperature of substrate material and ambient air is below 60 degrees F.

C. Maintain this minimum temperature before, during, and for minimum 3 days after installation of firestopping materials.

D. Provide ventilation in areas to receive solvent cured materials.

1.11 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

A. Verify field measurements prior to fabrication.

1.12 WARRANTY

A. Division 01 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Product warranties and product bonds.

B. Furnish five year manufacturer warranty for pipe hangers and supports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Carpenter & Paterson Inc.
2. Creative Systems Inc.
3. Flex-Weld, Inc.
4. Glope Pipe Hanger Products Inc.
5. Michigan Hanger Co.
6. Superior Valve Co.

B. Plumbing Piping - DWV:

1. Conform to ASME B31.9, ASTM F708, MSS SP58, MSS SP69 and MSS SP89.
2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1-1/2 inches and Larger: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
3. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods.
4. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
5. Floor Support: Cast iron adjustable pipe saddle, lock nut, nipple, floor flange, and concrete pier or steel support.
6. Copper Pipe Support: Copper-plated, carbon-steel adjustable, ring.

C. Plumbing Piping - Water:

1. Conform to ASME B31.9, ASTM F708, MSS SP58, MSS SP69 and MSS SP89.
2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1/2 to 1-1/2 inch: Carbon steel, adjustable swivel, split ring.
3. Hangers for Cold Pipe Sizes 2 inches and Larger: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
4. Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 2 to 4 inches: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
5. Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 inches and Larger: Adjustable steel yoke, cast iron roll, double hanger.
6. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods.
7. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 inches and Larger: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods, cast iron roll.

8. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.

9. Floor Support for Cold Pipe: Cast iron adjustable pipe saddle, lock nut, nipple, floor flange, and concrete pier or steel support.

10. Floor Support for Hot Pipe Sizes 4 inches and Smaller: Cast iron adjustable pipe saddle, lock nut, nipple, floor flange, and concrete pier or steel support.

11. Floor Support for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 inches and Larger: Adjustable cast iron roll and stand, steel screws, and concrete pier or steel support.

12. Copper Pipe Support: Copper-plated, Carbon-steel ring.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Hanger Rods: Mild steel threaded both ends, threaded on one end, or continuous threaded.

2.3 INSERTS

A. Inserts: Malleable iron case of galvanized steel shell and expander plug for threaded connection with lateral adjustment, top slot for reinforcing rods, lugs for attaching to forms; size inserts to suit threaded hanger rods.

2.4 FLASHING

A. Metal Flashing: 26 gage thick galvanized steel.

B. Metal Counterflashing: 22 gage thick galvanized steel.

C. Lead Flashing:

1. Waterproofing: 5 lb./sq. ft sheet lead.

2. Soundproofing: 1 lb./sq. ft sheet lead.

D. Flexible Flashing: 47 mil thick sheet butyl; compatible with roofing.

E. Caps: Steel, 22 gage minimum; 16 gage at fire resistant elements.

2.5 SLEEVES

A. Sleeves for Pipes Through Non-fire Rated Floors: 18 gage thick galvanized steel.

B. Sleeves for Pipes Through Non-fire Rated Beams, Walls, Footings, and Potentially Wet Floors: Steel pipe or 18 gage thick galvanized steel.

C. Sealant: Acrylic; refer to Section 07 90 00.

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Thunderline Link-Seal, Inc.

2. NMP Corporation.

B. Product Description: Modular mechanical type, consisting of interlocking synthetic rubber links shaped to continuously fill annular space between object and sleeve, connected with bolts and pressure plates causing rubber sealing elements to expand when tightened, providing watertight seal and electrical insulation.

2.7 FORMED STEEL CHANNEL

A. Manufacturers:

1. B-Line Systems.

2. Unistrut Corp.

B. Product Description: Galvanized 12 gage thick steel. With holes 1-1/2 inches on center.

2.8 FIRESTOPPING

A. Manufacturers:

1. Dow Corning Corp.

2. Fire Trak Corp.

3. Hilti Corp.

4. International Protective Coating Corp.

5. 3M fire Protection Products.

6. Specified Technology, Inc.

B. Product Description: Different types of products by multiple manufacturers are acceptable as required to meet specified system description and performance requirements; provide only one type for each similar application.

1. Silicone Firestopping Elastomeric Firestopping: [Single] [Multiple] component silicone elastomeric compound and compatible silicone sealant.

2. Foam Firestopping Compounds: [Single] [Multiple] component foam compound.

3. Formulated Firestopping Compound of Incombustible Fibers: Formulated compound mixed with incombustible non-asbestos fibers.

4. Fiber Stuffing and Sealant Firestopping: Composite of [mineral] [ceramic] fiber stuffing insulation with silicone elastomer for smoke stopping.

5. Mechanical Firestopping Device with Fillers: Mechanical device with incombustible fillers and silicone elastomer, covered with sheet stainless steel jacket, joined with collars, penetration sealed with flanged stops.

6. Intumescent Firestopping: Intumescent putty compound which expands on exposure to surface heat gain.

7. Firestop Pillows: Formed mineral fiber pillows.

C. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range of colors.

2.9 FIRESTOPPING ACCESSORIES

A. Primer: Type recommended by firestopping manufacturer for specific substrate surfaces and suitable for required fire ratings.

B. Installation Accessories: Provide clips, collars, fasteners, temporary stops or dams, and other devices required to position and retain materials in place.

C. General:

1. Furnish UL listed products or products tested by other approved independent testing laboratory.

2. Select products with rating not less than rating of wall or floor being penetrated.

D. Non-Rated Surfaces:

1. Stamped steel, chrome plated, hinged, split ring escutcheons or floor plates or ceiling plates for covering openings in occupied areas where piping is exposed.

2. For exterior wall openings below grade, furnish mechanical sealing device to continuously fill annular space between piping and cored opening or water-stop type wall sleeve.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Division 01 - Administrative Requirements: Verification of existing conditions before starting work.

B. Verify openings are ready to receive sleeves.

C. Verify openings are ready to receive firestopping.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrate surfaces of dirt, dust, grease, oil, loose material, or other matter affecting bond of firestopping material.

B. Remove incompatible materials affecting bond.

C. Install backing or damming materials to arrest liquid material leakage.

D. Obtain permission from Architect/Engineer before using powder-actuated anchors.

E. Obtain permission from Architect/Engineer before drilling or cutting structural members.

3.3 INSTALLATION - INSERTS

A. Install inserts for placement in concrete forms.

B. Install inserts for suspending hangers from reinforced concrete slabs and sides of reinforced concrete beams.

C. Provide hooked rod to concrete reinforcement section for inserts carrying pipe 4 inches and larger.

D. Where concrete slabs form finished ceiling, locate inserts flush with slab surface.

3.4 INSTALLATION - PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Install in accordance with ASME B31.1, ASME B31.5, ASME 31.9, ASTM F708, MSS SP 58, MSS SP 69, MSS SP 89.

B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

C. Support horizontal piping as scheduled.

D. Install hangers with minimum 1/2 inch space between finished covering and adjacent work.

E. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.

F. Maximum spans below were taken from MSS SP-69 for water service and from model plumbing codes. Most restrictive piping and spacing dimensions are shown.

G. Install hangers for CAST-IRON SOIL piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

PIPE SIZE (IN.)	HORIZONTAL HANGER SPACING (FT)	ROD DIAMETER (IN.)
1½ , 2	5	3/8
3	5	1/2
4, 5	5	5/8
6	5	3/4
8 - 12	5	7/8

1. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

H. Install hangers for STEEL piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

PIPE SIZE (IN.)	HORIZONTAL HANGER SPACING (FT)	ROD DIAMETER (IN.)

< 1¼	7	3/8
1½	9	3/8
2	10	3/8
3	11	1/2
4	12	5/8
6	12	3/4
8 - 12	12	7/8

1. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.

I. Install hangers for COPPER tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

PIPE SIZE (IN.)	HORIZONTAL HANGER SPACING (FT)	ROD DIAMETER (IN.)
< 1¼	5	3/8
1½ , 2	6	3/8
2½	8	1/2
3, 4, 5	10	1/2
6	10	5/8
8	10	3/4

1. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).

J. Support horizontal CPVC piping as scheduled below:

PIPE SIZE (IN.)	HORIZONTAL HANGER SPACING (FT)	ROD DIAMETER (IN.)
< 1	3	3/8
1¼, 2	4	3/8
2½, 3	4	1/2
4, 5	4	5/8
6	4	3/4

8	4	3/4

1. Install vertical supports for CPVC piping every 5 ft for piping 1” and smaller and every 6 ft for 1¼” and larger

K. Install hangers for DWV PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

PIPE SIZE (IN.)	HORIZONTAL HANGER SPACING (FT)	ROD DIAMETER (IN.)
< 1	3	3/8
1¼, 2	4	3/8
2½, 3	4	1/2
4, 5	4	5/8
6	4	3/4
8	4	3/4

1. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.

L. Place hangers within 12 inches of each horizontal elbow.

M. Use hangers with 1-1/2 inch minimum vertical adjustment.

N. Support horizontal cast iron pipe adjacent to each hub.

O. Support vertical piping at every floor. Support vertical cast iron pipe at each floor at hub.

P. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

Q. Prime coat exposed steel hangers and supports. Refer to Division 09. Hangers and supports located in crawl spaces, pipe shafts, and suspended ceiling spaces are not considered exposed.

R. Provide clearance in hangers and from structure and other equipment for installation of insulation. Refer to Section 22 07 00.

3.5 INSTALLATION - EQUIPMENT BASES AND SUPPORTS

A. Provide housekeeping pads of concrete, minimum 3-1/2 inches thick and extending 6 inches beyond supported equipment. Refer to Section 03 30 00.

B. Using templates furnished with equipment, install anchor bolts, and accessories for mounting and anchoring equipment.

C. Construct supports of steel members. Brace and fasten with flanges bolted to structure.

3.6 INSTALLATION - FLASHING

A. Provide flexible flashing and metal counterflashing where piping penetrates weather or waterproofed walls and floors.

B. Flashing for roof penetrations shall be provided by the roofing contractor.

C. Flash floor drains in floors with topping over finished areas with lead, 10 inches clear on sides with minimum 36 x 36 inch sheet size. Fasten flashing to drain clamp device.

D. Seal floor, shower and/or mop sink drains watertight to adjacent materials.

E. Adjust storm collars tight to pipe with bolts; caulk around top edge. Use storm collars above roof jacks. Screw vertical flange section to face of curb.

3.7 INSTALLATION - SLEEVES

A. Exterior watertight entries: Seal with mechanical sleeve seals.

B. Set sleeves in position in forms. Provide reinforcing around sleeves.

C. Size sleeves large enough to allow for movement due to expansion and contraction. Provide for continuous insulation wrapping.

D. Extend sleeves through floors 1inch above finished floor level. Caulk sleeves.

E. Where piping penetrates floor, ceiling, or wall, close off space between pipe and adjacent work with firestopping insulation and caulk [airtight]. Provide close fitting metal collar or escutcheon covers at both sides of penetration.

F. Install chrome plated steel or stainless steel escutcheons at finished surfaces.

3.8 INSTALLATION - FIRESTOPPING

A. Install material at fire rated construction perimeters and openings containing penetrating sleeves, piping and other items, requiring firestopping.

B. Fire Rated Surface:

1. Seal opening at rated floor, wall, partition, ceiling, and/or roof as follows:

a. Install sleeve through opening and extending beyond minimum of 1 inch on both sides of building element.

b. Size sleeve allowing minimum of 1 inch void between sleeve and building element.

c. Pack void with backing material.

d. Seal ends of sleeve with UL listed fire resistive silicone compound to meet fire rating of structure penetrated.

C. Non-Rated Surfaces:

1. Seal opening through non-fire rated wall, partition, floor, ceiling, and/or roof opening as follows:

    a. Install sleeve through opening and extending beyond minimum of 1 inch on both sides of building element.

    b. Size sleeve allowing minimum of 1 inch void between sleeve and building element.

    c. Install type of firestopping material recommended by manufacturer.

2. Install wall escutcheons, floor plates or ceiling plates where conduit, penetrates non-fire rated surfaces in occupied spaces. Occupied spaces include rooms with finished ceilings and where penetration occurs below finished ceiling.

3. Exterior wall openings below grade: Assemble rubber links of mechanical sealing device to size of piping and tighten in place, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

4. Interior partitions: Seal pipe penetrations at clean rooms, laboratories, hospital spaces, computer rooms, telecommunication rooms, data rooms and. Apply sealant to both sides of penetration to completely fill annular space between sleeve and conduit.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Division 01 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Field inspecting, testing, adjusting, and balancing.

B. Inspect installed firestopping for compliance with specifications and submitted schedule.

3.10 CLEANING

A. Division 01 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for cleaning.

B. Clean adjacent surfaces of firestopping materials.

3.11 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

A. Division 01 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Requirements for protecting finished Work.

B. Protect adjacent surfaces from damage by material installation.

END OF SECTION 220529

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 220553 – IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Nameplates.
2. Tags.
3. Stencils.
4. Pipe markers.
5. Ceiling tacks.
6. Labels.
7. Lockout devices.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 09 - Painting and Coating: Execution requirements for painting specified by this section.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. American Society of Mechanical Engineers:

1. ASME A13.1 - Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems.

B. National Fire Protection Association:

1. NFPA 99 - Standard for Health Care Facilities.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Division 01 - Submittal Procedures: Submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturers catalog literature for each product required.

C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate installation instructions, special procedures, and installation.

D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Division 01 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Closeout procedures.

B. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of tagged valves; include valve tag numbers.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Conform to NFPA 99 requirements for labeling and identification of medical gas piping systems and accessories.

B. Conform to ASME A13.1 for color scheme for identification of piping systems and accessories.

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

B. Installer: Company specializing in performing Work of this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.7 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

A. Verify field measurements prior to fabrication.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Division 01 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Spare parts and maintenance products.

B. Furnish two containers of spray-on adhesive.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 NAMEPLATES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Craftmark Identification Systems.

2. Safety Sign Co.

3. Seton Identification Products.

B. Product Description: Laminated three-layer plastic with engraved black letters on light contrasting background color.

2.2 TAGS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Craftmark Identification Systems.

2. Safety Sign Co.

3. Seton Identification Products.

B. Plastic Tags:

1. Laminated three-layer plastic with engraved letters on light contrasting background color. Tag size minimum 1-1/2 inches diameter.

C. Metal Tags:

1. Aluminum with stamped letters; tag size minimum 1-1/2 inches diameter with finished edge.

D. Information Tags:

1. Clear plastic with printed "Danger," "Caution," or "Warning" and message; size 3-1/4 x 5-5/8 inches with grommet and self-locking nylon ties.

E. Tag Chart: Typewritten letter size list of applied tags and location in anodized aluminum frame.

2.3 STENCILS

A. Stencils: With clean cut symbols and letters of following size:

1. Up to 2 inches Outside Diameter of Insulation or Pipe: 1/2 inch high letters.

2. 2-1/2 to 6 inches Outside Diameter of Insulation or Pipe: 1-inch high letters.

3. Over 6 inches Outside Diameter of Insulation or Pipe: 2 inche high letters.

B. Stencil Paint: As specified in Section 09 90 00, semi-gloss enamel, colors and lettering size conforming to ASME A13.1.

2.4 PIPE MARKERS

A. Color and Lettering: Conform to ASME A13.1; “Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems”

B. Plastic Pipe Markers:

1. Factory fabricated, flexible, semi-rigid plastic, preformed to fit around pipe or pipe covering. Larger sizes may have maximum sheet size with spring fastener.

C. Plastic Tape Pipe Markers:

1. Flexible, vinyl film tape with pressure sensitive adhesive backing and printed markings.

D. Plastic Underground Pipe Markers:

1. Bright colored continuously printed plastic ribbon tape, minimum 6 inches wide by 4 mil thick, manufactured for direct burial service.

2.5 CEILING TACKS

A. Description: Steel with 3/4 inch diameter color-coded head.

B. Color code as follows:

1. Plumbing valves: Green.

2.6 LABELS

A. Description: Aluminum, size 1.9 x 0.75 inches, adhesive backed with printed identification and bar code.

2.7 LOCKOUT DEVICES

A. Lockout Hasps:

1. Anodized aluminum hasp with erasable label surface;size minimum 7-1/4 x 3 inches.

B. Valve Lockout Devices:

1. Steel device preventing access to valve operator, accepting lock shackle.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Degrease and clean surfaces to receive adhesive for identification materials.

B. Prepare surfaces in accordance with Division 09 for stencil painting.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Apply stencil painting in accordance with Division 09.

B. Install identifying devices after completion of coverings and painting.

C. Install plastic nameplates with corrosive-resistant mechanical fasteners, or adhesive.

D. Install labels with sufficient adhesive for permanent adhesion and seal with clear lacquer. For unfinished canvas covering, apply paint primer before applying labels.

E. Install tags using corrosion resistant chain. Number tags consecutively by location.

F. Install underground plastic pipe markers 6 to 8 inches below finished grade, directly above buried pipe.

G. Identify water heaters, pumps, tanks, and water treatment devices with plastic nameplates. Identify in-line pumps and other small devices with tags.

H. Identify control panels and major control components outside panels with plastic nameplates.

I. Identify valves in main and branch piping with tags.

J. Identify piping, concealed or exposed, with plastic pipe markers or plastic tape pipe markers. Identify service, flow direction, and pressure. Install in clear view and align with axis of piping. Locate identification not to exceed 20 feet on straight runs including risers and drops, adjacent to each valve and tee, at each side of penetration of structure or enclosure, and at each obstruction.

K. Provide ceiling tacks to locate valves above T-bar type panel ceilings. Locate in corner of panel closest to equipment.

END OF SECTION 220553

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 220700 – PLUMBING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Plumbing piping insulation, jackets and accessories.

2. Plumbing equipment insulation, jackets and accessories.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 22 05 29 – Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.

2. Division 09 - Painting and Coating: Execution requirements for painting insulation jackets and covering specified by this section.

1.2 REFERENCES

A. ASTM International:

1. ASTM A167 - Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip.

2. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate.

3. ASTM C450 - Standard Practice for Prefabrication and Field Fabrication of Thermal Insulating Fitting Covers for NPS Piping, Vessel Lagging, and Dished Head Segments.

4. ASTM C534 - Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form.

5. ASTM C578 - Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation.

6. ASTM C585 - Standard Practice for Inner and Outer Diameters of Rigid Thermal Insulation for Nominal Sizes of Pipe and Tubing (NPS System).

7. ASTM C921 - Standard Practice for Determining the Properties of Jacketing Materials for Thermal Insulation.

8. ASTM C1136 - Standard Specification for Flexible, Low Permeance Vapor Retarders for Thermal Insulation.

9. ASTM D1784 - Standard Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Compounds and Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Compounds.

10. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

11. ASTM E96 - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials.

B. National Fire Protection Association:

1. NFPA 255 - Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

C. Underwriters Laboratories Inc.:

1. UL 723 - Tests for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Division: Submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Submit product description, thermal characteristics and list of materials and thickness for each service, and location.

C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Submit manufacturers published literature indicating proper installation procedures.

D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Test pipe insulation for maximum flame spread index of 25 and maximum smoke developed index of not exceeding 50 in accordance with ASTM E84, UL 723, and NFPA 255.

B. Pipe insulation manufactured in accordance with ASTM C585 for inner and outer diameters.

C. Factory fabricated fitting covers manufactured in accordance with ASTM C450.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

B. Applicator: Company specializing in performing Work of this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Division 01: Requirements for transporting, handling, storing, and protecting products.

B. Accept materials on site in original factory packaging, labeled with manufacturer's identification, including product density and thickness.

C. Protect insulation from weather and construction traffic, dirt, water, chemical, and damage, by storing in original wrapping.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Division 01 - Product Requirements: Environmental conditions affecting products on site.

B. Install insulation only when ambient temperature and humidity conditions are within range recommended by manufacturer.

C. Maintain temperature before, during, and after installation for minimum period of 24 hours.

1.8 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

A. Verify all field measurements prior to fabrication.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Division 01: Product warranties and product bonds.

B. Furnish one year minimum.

C. Furnish five year manufacturer warranty for man made fiber.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

A. Manufacturers for Glass Fiber and Mineral Fiber Insulation Products:

1. CertainTeed.

2. Knauf.

3. Johns Manville.

4. Owens-Corning.

B. Manufacturers for Closed Cell Elastomeric Insulation Products:

1. Aeroflex. Aerocell.

2. Armacell, LLC. Armaflex.

3. Nomaco. K-flex.

2.2 PIPE INSULATION

A. TYPE P-1: ASTM C547, molded glass fiber pipe insulation.

1. Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 at 75 degrees F.

2. Operating Temperature Range: 0 to 850 degrees F.

3. Vapor Barrier Jacket: ASTM C1136, Type I, factory applied reinforced foil kraft with self-sealing adhesive joints.

4. Jacket Temperature Limit: minus 20 to 150 degrees F.

B. TYPE P-2: ASTM C547, molded glass fiber pipe insulation.

1. Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 at 75 degrees F.

2. Operating Temperature Range: 0 to 850 degrees F.

C. TYPE P-3: ASTM C612, semi-rigid, fibrous glass board noncombustible, end grain adhered to jacket.

1. Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 at 75 degrees F.

2. Operating Temperature Range: 0 to 650 degrees F.

3. Vapor Barrier Jacket: ASTM C1136, Type II, factory applied reinforced foil kraft with self-sealing adhesive joints.

4. Jacket Temperature Limit: minus 20 to 150 degrees F.

D. TYPE P-4: ASTM C612, semi-rigid, fibrous glass board noncombustible.

1. Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 at 75 degrees F.

E. TYPE P-5: ASTM C534, Type I, flexible, closed cell elastomeric insulation, tubular.

1. Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 at 75 degrees F.

2. Operating Temperature Range: Range: Minus 70 to 180 degrees F.

F. TYPE P-6: ASTM C534, Type I, flexible, closed cell elastomeric insulation, tubular.

1. Thermal Conductivity: 0.30 at 75 degrees F.

2. Maximum Service Temperature: 300 degrees F.

3. Operating Temperature Range: Range: Minus 58 to 300 degrees F.

G. TYPE P-7: ASTM C534, Type I, flexible, nonhalogen, closed cell elastomeric insulation, tubular.

1. Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 at 75 degrees F.

2. Maximum Service Temperature: 250 degrees F.

3. Operating Temperature Range: Range: Minus 58 to 250 degrees F.

2.3 PIPE INSULATION JACKETS

A. Vapor Retarder Jacket:

1. ASTM C921, white Kraft paper with glass fiber yarn, bonded to aluminized film.

2. Moisture vapor transmission: ASTM E96; 0.02 perm-inches.

B. PVC Plastic Pipe Jacket:

1. Product Description: ASTM D1784, One piece molded type fitting covers and sheet material, off-white color.

2. Thickness: 15 mil.

3. Connections: Pressure sensitive color matching vinyl tape.

C. Aluminum Pipe Jacket (for exterior applications):

1. ASTM B209.

2. Thickness: 0.016 inch thick sheet.

3. Finish: Embossed.

4. Joining: Longitudinal slip joints and 2 inch laps.

5. Fittings: 0.016 inch thick die shaped fitting covers with factory attached protective liner.

6. Metal Jacket Bands: 3/8 inch wide; 0.015 inch thick aluminum.

2.4 PIPE INSULATION ACCESSORIES

A. Vapor Retarder Lap Adhesive: Compatible with insulation.

B. Covering Adhesive Mastic: Compatible with insulation.

C. Piping 1-1/2 inches diameter and smaller: Galvanized steel insulation protection shield. MSS SP-69, Type 40. Length: Based on pipe size and insulation thickness.

D. Piping 2 inches diameter and larger: Wood insulation saddle, hard maple. Inserts length: not less than 6 inches long, matching thickness and contour of adjoining insulation.

E. Closed Cell Elastomeric Insulation Pipe Hanger: Polyurethane insert with aluminum or stainless steel jacket single piece construction with self adhesive closure. Thickness to match pipe insulation.

F. Insulating Cement: ASTM C195; hydraulic setting on mineral wool.

G. Adhesives: Compatible with insulation.

1. Indoor Vapor Retarder Finish:

a. Cloth: Untreated; 9 oz/sq yd weight.
b. Vinyl emulsion type acrylic, compatible with insulation, white color.

2.5 EQUIPMENT INSULATION

A. TYPE E-1: ASTM C553; glass fiber, flexible or semi-rigid, noncombustible.

1. Thermal Conductivity: 0.24 at 75 degrees F.

2. Operating Temperature Range: 0 to 450 degrees F.

3. Density: 1.65 pound per cubic foot.

B. TYPE E-2: ASTM C612; glass fiber, rigid board, noncombustible with factory applied kraft reinforced aluminum foil jacket.

1. Thermal Conductivity: 0.24 at 75 degrees F.

2. Operating Temperature Range: 0 to 450 degrees F.

3. Density: 3.0 pound per cubic foot.

4. Jacket Temperature Limit: minus 20 to 150 degrees F.

C. EQUIPMENT INSULATION JACKETS

D. PVC Plastic Equipment Jacket:

5. Product Description: ASTM D1785, sheet material, off-white color.

6. Minimum Service Temperature: -40 degrees F.

7. Maximum Service Temperature: 150 degrees F.

8. Water Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96/E96M; 0.02 perms.

9. Thickness: 30 mil.

10. Connections: Brush on welding adhesive with VOC content of 50 g/l according to CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. Aluminum Equipment Jacket:

1. ASTM B209.

2. Thickness: 0.020 inch thick sheet.

3. Finish: Embossed.

4. Joining: Longitudinal slip joints and 2 inch laps.

5. Fittings: 0.02 inch thick die shaped fitting covers with factory attached protective liner.

6. Metal Jacket Bands: 3/8 inch wide; 0.015 inch thick aluminum. 0.020 inch thick stainless steel.

F. Canvas Equipment Jacket: UL listed, 6 oz/sq yd, plain weave cotton fabric with fire retardant lagging adhesive compatible with insulation.

G. Vapor Retarder Jacket:

1. ASTM C921, white Kraft paper with glass fiber yarn, bonded to aluminized film.

2. Water Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96/E96M; 0.02 perms.

H. Field Applied Glass Fiber Fabric Jacket System:

1. Insulating Cement/Mastic: ASTM C195; hydraulic setting on mineral wool.

2. Glass Fiber Fabric:

a. Cloth: Untreated; 9 oz/sq yd weight.
b. Blanket: 1.0 lb/cu ft density.

3. Indoor Vapor Retarder Finish:

a. Cloth: Untreated; 9 oz/sq yd weight.
b. Vinyl emulsion type acrylic, compatible with insulation, black white color.

2.6 EQUIPMENT INSULATION ACCESSORIES

A. Vapor Retarder Lap Adhesive: Compatible with insulation.

B. Covering Adhesive Mastic: Compatible with insulation.

C. Tie Wire: 0.048 inch stainless steel with twisted ends on maximum 12 inch centers.PLUMBING

D. Mineral Fiber Hydraulic-Setting Thermal Insulating and Finishing Cement: ASTM C449/C449M.

E. Adhesives: Compatible with insulation.

2.7 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-97.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-27/81-93.
c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 290.

2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, Polyisocyanurate, and Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-96.
    b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-33.
2. calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Manufacturers:
    a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aeroseal.
    b. Armacell LCC; 520 Adhesive.
    c. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Manufacturers:
    a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
    b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
    c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

F. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Manufacturers:
    a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
    b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
    c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Manufacturers:
    a. Dow Chemical Company (The); 739, Dow Silicone.
    b. Johns-Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
    c. Speedline Corporation; Speedline Vinyl Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.8 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content that meets the requirement of the South Coast Air Quality Management District Rule #1168. VOC limits to be per amendment date 1/7/05.

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-35.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-90.
c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 590.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.

3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.

4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.

5. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-30.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 501.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.

3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.

4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.

5. Color: White.

D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; Encacel.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 570.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.

3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.

4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.

5. Color: White.

6. For outdoor aluminum finish, use 60-39 mastic.

2.9 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:

1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, and Polyisocyanurate Products - Manufacturers:

a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.

2. Joint Sealant for Polystyrene Products - Manufacturers:

a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-70.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45/30-46.
c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.

3. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

4. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.

5. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.

6. Color: White or gray.

7. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers:

a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76-8.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.

4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

5. Color: Aluminum.

6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers:

a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.

4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

5. Color: White.

6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.10 FIELD APPLIED FABRIC – REINFORCING MASH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Pipe Insulation: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch for covering pipe and pipe fittings.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

B. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Equipment Insulation: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. inch for covering equipment.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; Chil-Glas No. 5.

C. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch, in a Leno weave, for equipment and pipe.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

2.11 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

1. Manufacturers:

a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Manufacturers:

a. Childers Products; Bands.
b. PABCO Metals Corporation; Bands.
c. RPR Products, Inc.; Bands.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with closed seal.

3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with closed seal.

4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

5. Copper clad annealed steel wire having a minimum 16 gauge thickness.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

a. Manufacturers:

1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
2) GEMCO; CD.
3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.

2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

a. Manufacturers:

1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.

3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.

3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, stainless-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

a. Manufacturers:

1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
2) GEMCO; R-150.
3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.

b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

4. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

a. Manufacturers:

1) GEMCO.
2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

1. Manufacturers:

a. C & F Wire.
b. Childers Products.
c. PABCO Metals Corporation.

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005; Temper H-14.

C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or 316.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Division 01: Coordination and project conditions.

B. Verify piping and or equipment has been tested before applying insulation materials.

C. Verify surfaces are clean and dry, with foreign material removed.

3.2 INSTALLATION - PIPING SYSTEMS

A. Piping Exposed to View in Finished Spaces: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.

B. Continue insulation through penetrations of building assemblies or portions of assemblies having fire resistance rating of one hour or less. Provide intumescent firestopping when continuing insulation through assembly. Finish at supports, protrusions, and interruptions. Refer to Division 07 for penetrations of assemblies with fire resistance rating greater than one hour.

C. Piping Systems Conveying Fluids Below Ambient Temperature:

1. Insulate entire system including fittings, valves, unions, flanges, strainers, flexible connections, and expansion joints.

2. Furnish factory-applied or field-applied vapor retarder jackets. Secure factory-applied jackets with pressure sensitive adhesive self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips. Secure field-applied jackets with outward clinch expanding staples and seal staple penetrations with vapor retarder mastic.

3. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with molded insulation of like material and thickness as adjacent pipe. Finish with glass cloth and vapor retarder adhesive or PVC fitting covers.

D. Glass Fiber Board Insulation

1. Apply insulation close to equipment by grooving, scoring, and beveling insulation. Fasten insulation to equipment with studs, pins, clips, adhesive, wires, or bands.
2. Fill joints, cracks, seams, and depressions with bedding compound to form smooth surface. On cold equipment, use vapor retarder cement.
3. Cover wire mesh or bands with cement to a thickness to remove surface irregularities.

E. Hot Piping Systems less than 140 degrees F:

1. Furnish factory-applied or field-applied standard jackets. Secure with outward clinch expanding staples or pressure sensitive adhesive system on standard factory-applied jacket and butt strips or both.

2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe. Finish with glass cloth and adhesive or PVC fitting covers.

3. Do not insulate unions and flanges at equipment, but bevel and seal ends of insulation at such locations.

F. Inserts and Shields:

1. Piping 1-1/2 inches Diameter and Smaller: Install galvanized steel shield between pipe hanger and insulation.

2. Piping 2 inches Diameter and Larger: Install insert between support shield and piping and under finish jacket.

   a. Insert Configuration: Minimum 6 inches long, of thickness and contour matching adjoining insulation; may be factory fabricated.
   b. Insert Material: Compression resistant insulating material suitable for planned temperature range and service.

3. Piping Supported by Roller Type Pipe Hangers: Install galvanized steel shield between roller and inserts.

G. Insulation Terminating Points:

1. Branch Piping 1 inch and Smaller: Terminate hot water piping at union upstream of the control valve.
2. Condensate Piping: Insulate entire piping system and components to prevent condensation.

H. Closed Cell Elastomeric Insulation:

1. Push insulation on to piping.
2. Miter joints at elbows.
3. Seal seams and butt joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. When application requires multiple layers, apply with joints staggered.
5. Insulate fittings and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjacent pipe.

I. Pipe Exposed in Mechanical Equipment Rooms or Finished Spaces: Finish with PVC jacket and fitting covers.

J. Piping Exterior to Building: Provide vapor retarder jacket. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe, and finish with glass mesh reinforced vapor retarder cement. Cover with aluminum or stainless steel jacket with seams located at 3 or 9 o'clock position on side of horizontal piping with overlap facing down to shed water or on bottom side of horizontal piping.

K. Buried Piping: Insulate only where insulation manufacturer recommends insulation product may be installed in trench, tunnel or direct buried. Install factory fabricated assembly with inner all-purpose service jacket with self-sealing lap, and asphalt impregnated open mesh glass fabric, with 1 mil thick aluminum foil sandwiched between three layers of bituminous compound; outer surface faced with polyester film.

L. Prepare pipe insulation for finish painting. Refer to Division 09.

3.3 INSTALLATION - EQUIPMENT

A. Factory Insulated Equipment: Do not insulate.

B. Exposed Equipment: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.

C. Fill joints, cracks, seams, and depressions with bedding compound to form smooth surface. On cold equipment, use vapor retarder cement.

D. Equipment Containing Fluids Below Ambient Temperature:

1. Insulate entire equipment surfaces.
2. Apply insulation close to equipment by grooving, scoring, and beveling insulation. Fasten insulation to equipment with studs, pins, clips, adhesive, wires, or bands.
3. Furnish factory-applied or field-applied vapor retarder jackets. Secure factory-applied jackets with pressure sensitive adhesive self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips. Secure field-applied jackets with outward clinch expanding staples and seal staple penetrations with vapor retarder mastic.
4. Finish insulation at supports, protrusions, and interruptions.

E. Equipment Containing Fluids 140 degrees F Or Less:

1. Do not insulate flanges and unions, but bevel and seal ends of insulation.
2. Install insulation with factory-applied or field applied jackets, with or without vapor barrier. Finish with glass cloth and adhesive.
3. Finish insulation at supports, protrusions, and interruptions.

F. Equipment in Mechanical Equipment Rooms or Finished Spaces: Finish with canvas jacket sized for finish painting.

G. Equipment Located Exterior to Building: Install vapor barrier jacket or finish with glass mesh reinforced vapor barrier cement. Cover with aluminum jacket with seams located on bottom side of horizontal equipment.

H. Cover insulation with aluminum jacket.

I. Nameplates and ASME Stamps: Bevel and seal insulation around; do not cover with insulation.

J. Equipment Requiring Access for Maintenance, Repair, or Cleaning: Install insulation for easy removal and replacement without damage.

K. Prepare equipment insulation for finish painting. Refer to Division 09.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.

3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

3.5 SCHEDULES

A. Water Supply Services Piping Insulation Schedule:

PIPING SYSTEM	INSULATION TYPE	PIPE SIZE	INSULATION THICKNESS (inches)
Domestic Hot Water Supply and Recirculation	P-1	1-1/4 inches and smaller 1-1/2 inches and larger	1.0 1.5
Domestic Hot Water Supply and Recirculation systems with domestic water temperature maintenance cable	P-1	1 inch and smaller 1-1/4 inches to 2 inches 2-1/2 inches and larger	1.0 1.5 2.0

Domestic Cold Water	P-1 or P-5	1-1/4 inches and smaller 1-1/2 inches and larger	0.5 1.0
Domestic Hot Water Supply and Recirculation 140-160 deg. F	P-1	1-1/4 inches and smaller 1-1/2 inches and larger	1.0 1.5

B. Drainage Services Piping Insulation Schedule:

PIPING SYSTEM	INSULATION TYPE	PIPE SIZE	INSULATION THICKNESS (inches)
Storm Piping (horizontal above ground within building)	P-1 or P-5	All sizes	1.0
Sanitary Sewer Piping (exposed)	P-1 or P-5	All sizes	1.0

C. Equipment Insulation Schedule:

EQUIPMENT	INSULATION TYPE	INSULATION THICKNESS (inches)
Roof Drain Bodies	E-2	1.0
Domestic Hot Water Storage Tanks	E-1, E-2	2.0
Domestic Cold Water Storage Tanks	E-1, E-2	2.0

END OF SECTION 220700

SECTION 230500 – COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED PROVISIONS

A. The requirements of the general conditions and of Division 01 apply to that portion of the work specified in this section.

B. These specifications and the accompanying drawings shall include the furnishing of all labor, tools, materials, fixtures, transportation, appurtenances and service necessary and incidental to the installation of a complete and operative system as indicated and intended on the Drawings and as herein specified.

C. Contractor shall coordinate the work and equipment of this division with the work and equipment specified elsewhere in order to assure a complete and satisfactory installation. Work such as excavation, backfill, concrete, flashing, etc., which is required by the work of this Division of the Specifications, shall be provided by this Division unless otherwise indicated.

D. Minor details not usually shown or specified, but necessary for the proper installation and operation, shall be included in the work, the same as if herein specified or shown.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF THE WORK:

A. Work included under this Division includes installation of a new cooling and heating system and associated electrical system and controls system. The systems shall be installed complete, with boilers, piping, chiller, pumps and auxiliaries as hereinafter called for. Miscellaneous items including conduits, concrete slab, etc., are to be provided as indicated.

B. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to provide a complete and operating system according to the true intent and meaning of the plans and specifications and all pipe, controls and equipment, etc.

1.3 DEFINITION

A. The word "Contractor" as used in this Section of the Specifications refers to the HVAC Contractor unless specifically noted otherwise. The word "provide" means furnish, fabricate, complete, install, erect, including labor and incidental materials, necessary to complete in place and ready for operation or use the items referred to or described herein, and/or as shown or referred to on the Contract Drawings.

1.4 HVAC CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATIONS

A. It is assumed that the contractor has had sufficient general knowledge and experience to anticipate the needs for a construction of this nature. The contractor shall furnish all items required to complete the construction in accordance with reasonable interpretation of the intent of the Drawings and Specifications. Any minor items required by Code, law or regulations shall be provided whether or not specified or specifically shown.

B. All work must be done by first class and experienced mechanics properly supervised, and it is understood that the Engineer has the right to stop any work that is not being properly done and has the right to demand that any incompetent workman be removed from the job and a competent workman be substituted therefor.

C. All work must be done in strict accordance with standards of AME, ASHRAE and the building laws of all character in force in the locality where the apparatus is being installed. All work must also be in accordance with rules and regulations of the National Board of Fire Underwriters.

1.5 DUTIES OF CONTRACTOR

A. Contractor is responsible for familiarizing himself with the details of the construction of the building. Work under these specifications installed improperly or which requires changing due to improper reading or interpretation of building plans shall be corrected and changed as directed by Engineer without additional cost to the Owner.

B. Contractor shall leave the premises in a clean and orderly manner upon completion of work, and shall remove from premises all debris that has accumulated during the progress of the work. The HVAC Contractor shall have the permanent HVAC systems in sufficient readiness for furnishing temporary climatic control at the time the building is enclosed. The HVAC systems control shall maintain climatic control throughout the enclosed portion of the building sufficient to allow completion of the interior finishers of the building. A building shall be considered enclosed when it has windows installed and when doorways and other openings have protection which will provide reasonable climatic control. The appropriate climatic condition shall be jointly determined by the Contractor and the Architect. Use of the equipment in this manner shall in no way affect the warranty requirements of the Contractor.

1.6 CODES, RULES, PERMITS AND FEES

A. The contractor shall give all necessary notices, obtain all permits and pay all government sales taxes, fees and other costs including utility connections or extension, in connection with his work; file all necessary plans, prepare all documents and obtain all necessary approvals of all governmental departments having jurisdiction; obtain all required certificates for inspection for his work and deliver same to the Architect before request for acceptance and final payment for the work.

B. The contractor shall include in the work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials, services, apparatus, ordinances, rules and regulations as required to complete the project in accordance with the intent of the drawings.

C. All materials furnished and all work installed shall comply with the National Fire Codes of the National Fire Protection Association, with the requirements of all governmental departments having jurisdiction.

1.7 SURVEYS AND MEASUREMENTS

A. The contractor shall base all measurements, both horizontal and vertical, from established bench marks. All work shall agree with these established lines and levels. Verify all measurements at the site and check correctness of same as related to the work.

B. Should the contractor discover any discrepancy between actual measurements and those indicated, which prevents following good practice or the intent of the drawings and Specifications, he shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed with his work until he has received instructions from the Architect.

1.8 PLANS

A. Except where dimensions are shown, mechanical plans are diagrammatic; see Architectural drawings for building dimensions and locations of windows, doors, ceiling diffusers, lights, etc. The plans are not intended to show each and every fitting, valve, pipe or pipe hanger, or a complete detail of all the work to be done, but are for the purpose of illustrating the type of system, pipe and duct sizes, etc. and special conditions considered necessary for the experienced mechanic to take off his material and lay out his work. Contractor shall be responsible for taking such measurements as may be necessary at the job, and adapting his work to the local conditions.

1.9 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

A. Plans are diagrammatic, and it sometimes occurs that conditions exist in buildings which require certain changes in drawings and specifications. In event that such changes are necessary, the same are to be made by Contractor without expense to the Owner, provided however, that such changes, do not require furnishing more material or performing more labor than the true intent of the drawings and specifications demand.

B. It is understood that while the drawings are to be followed as closely as circumstances will permit, the Contractor is held responsible for the installation of the system according to the true intent and meaning of the drawings. Anything not entirely clear on the drawings or in the specifications will be fully explained if application is made to the Engineer. Should however, conditions arise where in the judgment of the Contractor certain changes would be advisable. Contractor will communicate with Engineer and secure approval of the changes before going ahead with the work.

C. The electrical and mechanical systems for this job have been designed on the basis of the mechanical equipment listed or data given herein or on the drawings. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to determine that the electrical service outlets, wiring, conduit and all overcurrent protective and safety devices furnished are adequate to meet Code Requirements for the equipment which he proposes to use. Changes required in the electrical system to accommodate the proposed mechanical equipment shall be worked out and the details submitted for approval. The cost of making the necessary changes to the electrical system shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

1.10 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Refer to Division 01.

B. All items submitted to Architect for review shall bear stamp or notation indicating contractor's prior review and approval.

C. Any Electrical or other changes required by substituted equipment to be made at no change in contract price.

D. Submit manufacturer's certified performance data for all equipment.

E. Coordinate installation drawings with other parts of the work, whether specified in this Division or other Divisions.

F. Approval of shop drawings by the Engineer shall not relieve the Contractor from his obligation to provide equipment, control, and operation to the true intent of plans and specifications.

G. The Contractor shall submit to the Engineer, within ten (10) days after approval of bids by the owner, a list indicating the manufacturer of all equipment and materials which he proposes to use. After that date, no substitution will be approved and all items shall be as specified.

1.11 SCAFFOLDING, RIGGING, HOISTING:

A. This contractor shall furnish all scaffolding rigging, hoisting, and services necessary to erection and delivery into the premises of any equipment and apparatus furnished. Remove same from premises when no longer required.

1.12 FOUNDATIONS, SUPPORTS, PIERS, ATTACHMENTS:

A. Contractor shall furnish and install all necessary foundations, supports, pads, bases and piers required for all air conditioning equipment, piping, pumps, tanks, compressors, and for all other equipment furnished under this contract.

1.13 SLEEVES AND OPENINGS:

A. Contractor must have an experienced mechanic on the job before concrete slab floors or concrete masonry walls are poured or built into place, whose duty it shall be to locate exact positions of any and all holes necessary for future installation of his pipe work, ducts or equipment. Where pipes pass through concrete or masonry walls or floors, steel pipe sleeves shall be furnished. These shall be the same length as wall thickness and shall extend 1/2" above finished floors. Pipe sleeves in equipment room floors shall extend 3" above refinished floor. Pipe sleeves in equipment room floors shall extend 3" above finished floor. Sleeves shall be placed in position by this Contractor.

B. This Contractor shall arrange for proper openings in the building to admit his equipment. If it becomes necessary to cut any portion of building to admit his equipment, portions cut must be restored to their former condition by this Contractor.

C. This Contractor will provide duct openings or chases in masonry or concrete; however, it is this Contractor's responsibility to advise exact dimensions, shape and locations of openings required in sufficient time for the Contractor to make necessary provisions. This Contractor shall be responsible for correct size and location of each opening for his equipment through these openings.

D. Wall openings that require a fire or smoke damper shall be made as nearly possible to the damper or duct size so that an angle frame can close the opening entirely.

E. Where pipes or ducts penetrate floors or partitions which are fire or smoke barriers, the integrity of the barrier shall not be compromised by such penetration.

1.14 CUTTING AND PATCHING:

A. The Contractor shall do all cutting, fitting and patching as required to install piping and equipment except openings through the roof shall be provided by the General Contractor. Patching shall be done by mechanics skilled in the various trades and work shall match the existing work.

B. All exposed openings in walls and floors for piping shall be core drilled. Cutting of holes by hand will not be allowed.

C. Provide all required protection including but not limited to, welding blankets, dust covers, shoring bracing and supports to maintaining structural integrity, safety and cleanliness of the work.

1.15 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILLING:

A. All excavation and backfilling, pudding and tamping required to properly install work under this contract shall be done by this Contractor.

B. Trenches shall be on an even grade and firmly packed to form a solid foundation for laying piping. The Contractor is cautioned to comply with the North Carolina Department of Labor requirements concerning shoring for excavations.

C. Backfill shall be clear of rocks and trash. Backfilling shall be water tamped so as to provide firm footing for finish work, and shall be maintained at proper level for duration of the Contract. No backfilling shall be done until work to be covered has been inspected. Excessive excavation material shall be deposited on site and leveled as directed by the engineer.

1.16 POURED IN PLACE CONCRETE WORK:

A. Furnish and install all concrete work required for the construction of anchors, guide bases and elsewhere as indicated on the Drawings. Refer to appropriate Section in Division 3 for specification requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Provide equipment complete with all components and accessories necessary to its satisfactory operation.

B. Listing of a manufacturer's name in this Division does not infer conformity to all requirements of the Contract Documents, nor waive requirements thereof.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 BELT DRIVES

A. V-belt drives shall be rated at not less than 200% of nominal motor horsepower.

B. Motor sheaves shall be fixed pitch type.

C. Scheduled fan static pressures are estimated. Provide one extra drive per device as required to allow adjustment to deliver scheduled air quantities against actual system resistance.

D. Provide guards for all belt drives not enclosed within equipment housings. Provide openings in guard at driving and driven sheaves for use of revolution counter.

3.2 MAINTENANCE AND OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

A. Upon completion of all work, the Contractor shall furnish a complete set of operating instructions for all equipment. Such instructions shall be diagrammatic in form on heavy white paper, suitably framed, protected with glass and hung where directed by the owner. A preliminary draft of the instruction sheets shall be submitted to the engineer for approval before making same.

B. Manufacturer's instruction books, card, etc., (to each individual piece of equipment furnished under this contract) shall be furnished to the owner. These shall contain instructions for the operation and maintenance of all equipment. Where such is not furnished by the manufacturer, the contractor shall give written instructions to the owner for the maintenance of the equipment involved.

3.3 DUCTS, PLENUM, ETC.

A. As indicated on drawings, provide a system of ducts for supplying returning and exhausting air from various spaces. All details of the ductwork are not indicated and the necessary bends, offsets and transformations must be furnished whether shown or not.

B. All sheet metal ducts, casing, plenums, etc., of sizes indicated, shall be constructed from prime galvanized sheet steel, and shall be in accordance with or equal to standards set forth in latest issue of SMACNA low velocity duct manual for gauges of materials, (2" pressure), workmanship, method of fabrication and erection.

C. All uninsulated panels of ducts over twelve inches (12") wide shall be cross-broken, except on plenums, which shall be braced with angle iron as required to prevent breathing.

D. All ductwork must present a smooth interior and joints must be airtight. Where there is evidence of undue leakage at the joints in low pressure ducts, they shall be sealed with cement similar to Foster 30-02.

E. Depending upon space requirements, round or square elbows may be used as required or at the Contractors option in low velocity ducts. All elbows shall be constructed for minimum pressure drop. All elbows with an inside radius less than 3/4 the width of the duct must be fitted with multiple double thickness turning vanes.

F. No transformations or offsets shall be made with a slope greater than (7 to 1), space conditions permitting.

G. Where indicated on drawings, ductwork is to be lined with flexible fiberglass acoustics material weighing not less than 1 1/2 lb. per cubic foot and having a flame spread classification of not more than twenty-five (25) as listed under Underwriters Laboratories. Liner shall be applied according to SMACNA duct liner standard. Thickness shall be as indicated on the drawings. Duct sizes on plan are sheet metal dimensions where liner is required as an allowance has been made for the liner in sizing the duct.

H. The lining shall be secured to the ductwork with a suitable adhesive and with mechanical fasteners center. Liner shall be cut such that adjacent sections of insulation butt together and are sealed with Foster 30-02 joints.

I. All duct connections to and from all centrifugal fans or cabinets containing fans, shall be made with fabric equal to "Ventfab" as made by Ventfabrics, Inc., not less than four inches (4") long secured by peripheral iron straps holding fabric in galvanized iron, except as otherwise noted.

J. Vertical ducts shall be supported by means of an angle iron frame riveted to the ductwork on at least two (2) sides. Horizontal runs of ductwork shall be supported on not more than 8'-0" centers as required.

K. Manual volume and splitter dampers shall be furnished and installed where shown and where necessary for proper regulation of the air distribution. A quadrant and set screw equal to "Ventlock" #641 shall be installed for all dampers which are concealed above plaster or gypsum board ceilings, or behind the masonry construction, furnish and install concealed regulators ("Ventlock" #666) with chrome cover plate.

L. All ductwork shall operate without chatter and vibration, and shall be free from pulsations.

M. See section 233113 for metal ductwork requirements.

3.4 ACCESS DOORS OR PANELS

A. Provide duct access doors of approved construction at any apparatus requiring service and inspection. Doors shall suit finish in which installed.

B. Access doors in rated walls or assemblies shall be rated as required to maintain rating of assembly. Rated access doors shall bear U.L. Label.

3.5 CLEANING DUCT SYSTEM

A. Upon complete installation of ducts, clean entire system of rubbish, plaster, dirt, etc., before installing any outlets. After installation of outlets and connections to fans are made, blow out entire systems with all control devices wide open.

3.6 ITEMS OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

A. All electrical work shall be done by properly licensed electrical mechanics in accordance with Division 26 of the specifications under supervision of a licensed Electrical Contractor as approved by the Architect.

B. The Electrical Contractor shall provide all power wiring to motor starter and/or disconnect switch and from starter/disconnect switch to motor. The Mechanical Contractor shall provide all control wiring, low voltage or line voltage, as required for the operation of all mechanical equipment. All control devices such as motor starters, thermostats, switches, etc. shall be provided by the Mechanical Contractor.

C. All motor starters shall be provided with a “hand-off-auto” switch on the starter cover.

D. All items of mechanical equipment electrically operated shall be in complete accordance with electrical division of the specifications. Mechanical equipment, other than individually mounted motors, shall be factory prewired so that it will only be necessary to bring connections to a single set of terminals.

E. Mechanical equipment electrical components shall all be bonded together and connected to electrical system ground.

F. All mechanical equipment electrical components shall be U.L. listed and labeled.

3.7 WARRANTY AND SERVICE

A. Upon completion of all work, the contractor shall check the system out so that all motor bearings are greased as required and have all systems balanced. He shall be responsible for original service, of starting the system up, and providing one set of replacement filters after final acceptance.

B. All equipment shall carry a full one - year warranty with a five - year warranty on the cooling cycle on all packaged type equipment in accordance with Division 01 of the specifications.

3.8 INSPECTION AND ACCEPTANCE TEST

A. The project will be checked periodically as construction progresses. The contractor shall be responsible for notifying the Engineer at least 48 hours in advance when any work to be covered up is ready for inspection. No work will be covered up until approved by the Engineer.

B. Upon completion of erection of all equipment and work specified herein and shown approved shop drawings, and at the time designated by the engineer, the contractor shall start all apparatus, making necessary tests as directed and as specified herein, and make adjustments of

all parts of all equipment before acceptance of equipment by the owner. The contractor must demonstrate to the owner, by performance, that all equipment operates as specified and meets the guarantee called for.

C. Tests shall include satisfactory evidence that all systems operate as called for on the drawings, and that all pieces of equipment operate at specified ratings under specified operating conditions.

D. The contractor shall furnish all fuel and power required for these purposes, and provide the proper and necessary help required to operate the system while tests are being made.

E. All drainage piping shall be tested by filling with water to a point 10' above the underground drains or to point of discharge to grade and let stand thus filled for 3 hours.

F. Tests on all pipe work shall be subject to the inspection of the Engineer. He shall be given 24-hours notice when a section pipe is to be tested and the test shall not be removed until permission is given by the Engineer.

3.9 AS BUILT DRAWINGS

A. This contractor shall keep on the job at all times, a clean set of contract drawings in blueprint form. As the job progresses, any and all deviations from the arrangements, piping runs, equipment locations, etc., shown on the bid prints shall be marked on this set with red ink. These prints shall not be used for any other purpose than to be marked up as "As-Built" Drawings.

END OF SECTION 230500

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in HVAC equipment schedules or Sections.

B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

C. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

I. Insulation: Class F.

J. Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.

4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

2.6 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES

A. Scope
   a. This section provides requirements for AC inverter type adjustable frequency, variable speed drives or herein identified as AC drives for use with (NEMA B, NEMA A, NEMA C, NEMA E, synchronous) design AC motors.

B. Manufacturers
   a. The manufacturer of the AC drive shall be a certified ISO 9001 quality facility. ABB, Danfoss (Graham), Eaton, Johnson Controls or prior approved equal meeting the requirements of this section.

   b. All VFD's in project shall be by the same manufacturer. This shall include all pumps and air handler fans, where indicated on the plans.

C. Regulatory Requirements
   a. UL listed.
   b. EN Standard CE marked for the following:
      Low Voltage Directive (73/23/EEC)
      EN50178
      EMC Directive (89/336/EEC)
      EN61800-3 Adjustable Speed electrical power drive systems Part 3

c. Designed, constructed and tested in accordance with NEMA, ICS, NFPA and IEC standards.

D. Environmental Requirements

a. The AC drive construction ½ hp to 5 hp 230V and 1 hp to 7.5 hp 480V shall be IP20/open according to Standard EN50178. 7.5 hp to 10 hp 230V and 10 hp to 20 hp 480V shall be Type 1. Both are designed to operate as Pollution degree 2 conforming to IEC 664-1, EN50718 and NEMA ICS-1. Drives above 20 hp 480V and 15 hp 230V shall meet Type 1 Pollution degree 3 according to IEC 664-1, EN50718 and NEMA ICS-1.
b. The AC drive will be designed to operate in an ambient temperature from 0 to 40 degrees C (32 to 104 degrees F).
c. The storage temperature range shall be -25 to 70 degrees C.
d. The maximum relative humidity shall be 95% at 40 degrees C, non-condensing.
e. The AC drive will be rated to operate at altitudes less than or equal to 1000m (3300 ft).
f. The AC drive will meet the IEC 68-2-6-vibration specification.
g. The AC drive shall be designed and constructed to be of finger safe construction with enclosure open to operator access according to IP20 standards.

E. Related Document

a. Division 26 – Electrical

F. Equipment

a. General Description
i. The AC drive shall utilize soft switching technology and voltage vector control.
ii. The AC drive shall provide a harmonic analysis showing compliance with IEEE-519.
iii. The AC drive shall have the Hand/Off/Auto function.
iv. The AC drive shall have a VFD/bypass system design that is serviceable while operating in bypass mode. This includes a drive disconnect to ensure service personnel safety, a 2-contactor bypass for full speed operation, and an isolation barrier to ensure service personnel safety and repair of the drive while operating in full speed bypass mode. Bypass shall have a separate integral disconnect.
v. Each AC drive shall have voltage/single phase protection of the drive and bypass system to ensure continued operation after utility power failures. Drive protection modules shall be ATC Diversified Electronics SLU-100-ASA 0315PB or equivalent. Protection modules shall monitor incoming 480V 3-phase power and shall interrupt 120V control circuit. Install modules in drive cabinet.
vi. The AC drive shall have common control in both drive and bypass modes.
vii. Each AC drive shall have M.O.V. lightning protection.
viii. The AC drive shall have safety interlocks for all modes of operation.

ix. A manufacturer's warranty shall be provided on all materials and workmanship of no less than 1 year from the date of start-up or 18 months from date of shipment.

b. Ratings

i. The AC drive shall be designed to operate from an input voltage of 208/230 +/-15% VAC or 400/460 +/-15% VAC.

ii. The AC drive shall operate from an input voltage frequency range from 47.5 to 63 Hz.

iii. The displacement power factor shall not be less than 0.95 lagging under any speed or load condition.

iv. The efficiency of the AC drive at 100% speed and load shall not be less than 96%.

v. The constant torque overtorque capacity will be 150% for 1 minute (The variable torque overtorque capacity will be 110% for 1 minute).

vi. The output switching frequency of the drive will be randomly modulated and selectable at 2 kHz, 4 kHz, 12 kHz or 16 kHz depending on drive rating for low noise operation.

vii. The output frequency shall be from 0.1 to 500 Hz (selectable at 50 Hz, 60 Hz, 200 Hz, 500 Hz).

viii. The AC drive will be able to provide rated motor torque at 0.5 Hz in a Sensorless Flux Vector mode using a standard motor and no tachometer feedback.

c. Protection

i. Upon power-up, the AC drive shall automatically test for valid operation of memory, option module, loss of analog reference input, loss of communication, (dynamic brake failure), DC to DC power supply, control power, and the pre-charge circuit.

ii. The AC drive shall be protected against short circuits between output phases; between output phases and ground; on the control terminal outputs; and the internal supplies. The logic and analog outputs shall also be optically isolated.

iii. The AC drive shall have a minimum of power loss ride-through of 200 msec. The AC drive shall have the user-defined option of frequency fold-back to increase the duration of the power loss ride-through.

iv. The AC drive shall have a selectable ride through function which will allow the logic to maintain control for a minimum of one second without faulting.

v. For a fault condition other than ground fault, short circuit or internal fault, an auto restart function will provide restart.

vi. The deceleration mode of the AC drive shall be programmable for normal and fault conditions. The stop modes shall include free-wheel stop, fast stop and DC injection braking.

vii. A synchronized restart shall be provided that will catch a spinning motor by sensing the motor frequency and rotational direction and synchronize the AC drive's output prior to restarting.

viii. Upon loss of the analog process follower reference signal, the AC drive shall fault ad/or operate at a user defined speed set between software programmed low speed and high speed settings.

ix. The AC drive shall have solid state protection that is UL listed and meets UL 508C as a Class 20 overload protection and meets IEC 947. The adjustment shall be from 0.45 to 1.05 percent of the current output of the AC drive.

x. The AC drive shall have a thermal switch with a user selectable pre-alarm that will provide a minimum of 60 seconds delay before over temperature fault.

d. Operator Interface

i. The full English operator interface terminal will offer the modification of AC drive adjustments via a touch keypad. All electrical values, configuration parameters, drive menu parameters, application and activity function access, faults, local control, adjustment storage, self-test and diagnostics will be shown.
ii. The AC drive keyboard will announce horsepower and voltage.
iii. The display shall be capable to be configured to display multiple parameters with numeric data that is selectable and scalable by the operator. A user defined display value proportional to output frequency shall be available. As a minimum the display values shall consist of speed reference, output frequency, output current, motor torque, output voltage, line voltage, DC voltage, motor thermal state, drive thermal state, motor speed and output power.

G. Execution

a. Installation

i. The installation shall be in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions, drawings and recommendations. The AC drive manufacturer shall provide a factory certified technical representative to supervise the contractor's installation, testing and start-up of the AC drive(s).

ii. The contractor shall assume the responsibility for coordinating the purchased equipment with the motor served and with the automatic temperature control system, paying specific attention to the signal sent and received, the ground source and the required speed range.

iii. The manufacturer shall provide start-up of the variable frequency drive and its optional circuits by a factory certified service technician who is experienced in start-up and repair services. The commissioning personnel shall be the same personnel that will provide the factory service and warranty repairs at the customer's

site. Sales personnel and other agents who are not factory certified technicians for VFD field repair are not acceptable as commissioning agents. Start-up services shall include checking for verification of proper operation and installation for the VFD, its options and its interface wiring to the building automation system. Start-up shall include customer operator training at the time of the equipment commissioning.

iv. The VFD shall be mounted with operator interface between 4'-6" and 5'-6" above finished floor for visibility and accessibility.

H. Training

a. An on-site training session of (4) hours duration shall be provided by a representative of the AC drive manufacturer and shall included in the base bid for the project.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

This page intentionally left blank.

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Metal-bellows expansion joints.
2. Expansion compensators.
3. Rubber expansion joints.
4. Flexible-hose expansion joints.
5. Packed slip expansion joints.
6. Flexible ball joints.
7. Pipe bends and loops.
8. Alignment guides and anchors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BR: Butyl rubber.

B. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.

C. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.

D. CSM: Chlorosulfonyl-polyethylene rubber.

E. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

F. NR: Natural rubber.

G. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping system fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.

B. Capability: Products shall absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
   1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and bends.
   2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
   3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
   4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of pipe expansion joint, signed by product manufacturer.

E. Maintenance Data: For pipe expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   1. Steel Shapes and Plates: AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
   2. Welding to Piping: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints: ASTM F 1120, circular-corrugated-bellows type with external tie rods.
   1. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints for Copper Piping: Single-ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe end connections, and brass shrouds.
   2. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints for Stainless-Steel Waterway: Single-ply stainless-steel bellows, stainless-steel-pipe end connections, and steel shroud.
   3. Metal-Bellows Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Single-ply stainless-steel bellows, steel pipe end connections, and carbon-steel shroud.
   4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig, unless otherwise indicated.
   5. Configuration: Single-bellows type, unless otherwise indicated.
   6. End Connections: Flanged.

B. Expansion Compensators: Double-ply corrugated steel, stainless-steel, or copper-alloy bellows in a housing with internal guides, antitorque device, and removable end clip for positioning.
   1. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Configuration for Copper Piping: Two-ply phosphor-bronze or stainless-steel bellows and bronze or stainless-steel shroud.
   3. Configuration for Steel Piping: Two-ply stainless-steel bellows and carbon-steel shroud.
   4. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint or threaded.
   5. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Solder joint or threaded.
   6. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

7. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged or threaded.

C. Rubber Expansion Joints: ASTM F 1123, fabric-reinforced rubber with external control rods and complying with FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
1. Arch Type: Single arches.
2. Spherical Type: Single spheres.
   a. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
   b. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 5 and NPS 6: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
   c. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Ratings for NPS 8 to NPS 12: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
3. Material: BR.
4. End Connections: Full-faced, integral, steel flanges with steel retaining rings.

D. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints: Manufactured assembly with two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose; with inlet and outlet elbow fittings, corrugated-metal inner hoses, and braided outer sheaths.
1. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Copper Piping: Copper-alloy fittings with solder- joint end connections.
   a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
2. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Copper Piping: Copper-alloy fittings with solder- joint end connections.
   a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze hoses and double-braid bronze sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 500 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 420 psig at 70 deg F and 315 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
3. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections for NPS 2 and smaller and flanged end connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
   a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 325 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F and 145 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
   c. NPS 8 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F and 90 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
4. Flexible-Hose Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections for NPS 2 and smaller and flanged end connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
   a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 515 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 275 psig at 70 deg F and 200 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
   c. NPS 8 and Larger: Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

E. Packed Slip Expansion Joints: ASTM F 1007, carbon-steel, packing type designed for repacking under pressure and pressure rated for 250 psig at 400 deg F minimum. Include asbestos-free PTFE packing, compound limit stops, and drip connection if used for steam piping.
1. Configuration: Single-joint class with base, unless otherwise indicated.

2. End Connections: Flanged or weld ends to match piping system.

F. Flexible Ball Joints: Carbon-steel assembly with asbestos-free composition packing, designed for 360-degree rotation and angular deflection, and 250 psig at 400 deg F minimum pressure rating; complying with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section II, "Materials," and with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials and design of pressure-containing parts and bolting.
1. Angular Deflection for NPS 6 and Smaller: 30-degree minimum.
2. Angular Deflection for NPS 8 and Larger: 15-degree minimum.
3. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
4. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

2.2 ALIGNMENT GUIDES

A. Description: Steel, factory fabricated, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for alignment of piping and two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

2.3 MATERIALS FOR ANCHORS

A. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

B. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel, hex head.

C. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.

D. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, and tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
1. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
2. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
3. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

E. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud bonding system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, and tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
1. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881, Type IV, Grade 3, 2-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
2. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

F. Concrete: Portland cement mix, 3000 psi minimum. Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for formwork, reinforcement, and concrete.

G. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink, nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION

A. Install manufactured, nonmetallic expansion joints according to FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."

B. Install expansion joints of sizes matching size of piping in which they are installed.

C. Install alignment guides to allow expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.

3.2 PIPE BEND AND LOOP INSTALLATION

A. Install pipe bends and loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.

B. Attach pipe bends and loops to anchors.
1. Steel Anchors: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
2. Concrete Anchors: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 SWING CONNECTIONS

A. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.

B. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.

C. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

3.4 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE INSTALLATION

A. Install guides on piping adjoining pipe expansion fittings and loops.

B. Attach guides to pipe and secure to building structure.

3.5 ANCHOR INSTALLATION

A. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.

B. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars to piping and to structure. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1.

C. Construct concrete anchors of poured-in-place concrete of dimensions indicated and include embedded fasteners.

D. Install pipe anchors according to expansion-joint manufacturer's written instructions if expansion joints or compensators are indicated.

E. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for expansion fittings, guides, and anchors installed on or in concrete.

END OF SECTION 230516

SECTION 230519 – METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Thermometers.
2. Gages.
3. Test plugs.
4. Flowmeters.

B. Related Sections:
1. Division 23 Section "Facility Natural-Gas Piping" for gas meters.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.

B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated; include performance curves.

B. Shop Drawings: Schedule for thermometers, gages, flowmeters and thermal-energy meters indicating manufacturer's number, scale range, and location for each.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of thermometer, gage, flowmeter and thermal-energy meter, signed by product manufacturer.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flowmeters and thermal-energy meters to include operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL-CASE, LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Case: Die-cast aluminum or brass, 7 inches long.

B. Tube: Red or blue reading, mercury or organic-liquid filled, with magnifying lens.

C. Tube Background: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.

D. Window: Glass or plastic.

E. Connector: Adjustable type, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device.

F. Stem: Copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass for thermowell installation and of length to suit installation.

G. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

2.2 DUCT-TYPE, LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Case: Die-cast aluminum, 7 inches long.

B. Tube: Red or blue reading, mercury or organic filled, with magnifying lens.

C. Tube Background: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.

D. Window: Glass or plastic.

E. Connector: Adjustable type, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device.

F. Stem: Metal, for installation in mounting bracket and of length to suit installation.

G. Mounting Bracket: Flanged fitting for attachment to duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

H. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

2.3 THERMOWELLS

A. Manufacturers: Same as manufacturer of thermometer being used.

B. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type metal fitting made for insertion into piping and of type, diameter, and length required to hold thermometer.

2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounting, Dial-Type Pressure Gages: Indicating-dial type complying with ASME B40.100.

1. Case: Liquid-filled type, drawn steel or cast aluminum, 4-1/2-inch diameter.
2. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Pressure Connection: Brass, NPS 1/4, bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
5. Dial: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
6. Pointer: Red metal.
7. Window: Glass or plastic.
8. Ring: Brass.
9. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half scale.
10. Vacuum-Pressure Range: 30-in. Hg of vacuum to 15 psig of pressure.
11. Range for Fluids under Pressure: Two times operating pressure.

B. Remote-Mounting, Dial-Type Pressure Gages: ASME B40.100, indicating-dial type.

1. Case: Dry type, drawn steel or cast aluminum, 4-1/2-inch diameter for panel mounting.
2. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Pressure Connection: Brass, NPS 1/4, bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
5. Dial: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
6. Pointer: Red metal.
7. Window: Glass or plastic.
8. Ring: Brass.
9. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half scale.
10. Vacuum-Pressure Range: 30-in. Hg of vacuum to 15 psig of pressure.
11. Range for Fluids under Pressure: Two times operating pressure.

C. Pressure-Gage Fittings:

1. Valves: NPS 1/4 brass or stainless-steel needle type.
2. Syphons: NPS 1/4 coil of brass tubing with threaded ends.
3. Snubbers: ASME B40.5, NPS 1/4 brass bushing with corrosion-resistant, porous-metal disc of material suitable for system fluid and working pressure.

2.5 TEST PLUGS

A. Description: Corrosion-resistant brass or stainless-steel body with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap, with extended stem for units to be installed in insulated piping.

B. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 300 psig at 250 deg F.

C. Core Inserts: One or two self-sealing rubber valves.

1. Insert material for air, water, oil, or gas service at 20 to 200 deg F shall be CR.
2. Insert material for air or water service at minus 30 to plus 275 deg F shall be EPDM.

D. Test Kit: Furnish one test kit(s) containing one pressure gage and adaptor, two thermometer(s), and carrying case. Pressure gage, adapter probes, and thermometer sensing elements shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.

1. Pressure Gage: Small bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be 0 to 200 psig.
2. Low-Range Thermometer: Small bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial ranges shall be 25 to 125 deg F.
3. High-Range Thermometer: Small bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial ranges shall be 0 to 220 deg F.
4. Carrying case shall have formed instrument padding.

2.6 WAFER-ORIFICE FLOWMETERS

A. Description: Differential-pressure-design orifice insert for installation between pipe flanges; with calibrated flow-measuring element, separate flowmeter, hoses or tubing, valves, fittings, and conversion chart compatible with flow-measuring element, flowmeter, and system fluid.

B. Construction: Cast-iron body, brass valves with integral check valves and caps, and calibrated nameplate.

C. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.

D. Temperature Rating: 250 deg F.

E. Range: Flow range of flow-measuring element and flowmeter shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.

F. Permanent Indicators: Suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for connected flowmeter element, and having 6-inch- diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings and copper tubing for connecting to flowmeter element.

1. Scale: Gallons per minute.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of range.

G. Portable Indicators: Differential-pressure type calibrated for connected flowmeter element and having two 12-foot hoses in carrying case.

1. Scale: Gallons per minute.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of range.

H. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

2.7 VENTURI FLOWMETERS

A. Description: Differential-pressure design for installation in piping; with calibrated flow-measuring element, separate flowmeter, hoses or tubing, valves, fittings, and conversion chart compatible with flow-measuring element, flowmeter, and system fluid.

B. Construction: Bronze, brass, or factory-primed steel; with brass fittings and attached tag with flow conversion data.

C. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.

D. Temperature Rating: 250 deg F.

E. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

F. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged or welded.

G. Range: Flow range of flow-measuring element and flowmeter shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.

H. Permanent Indicators: Suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for connected flowmeter element, and having 6-inch- diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings and copper tubing for connecting to flowmeter element.

1. Scale: Gallons per minute.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of range.

I. Portable Indicators: Differential-pressure type calibrated for connected flowmeter element and having two 12-foot hoses in carrying case.

1. Scale: Gallons per minute.
2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of range.

J. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

2.8 TURBINE FLOWMETERS

A. Description: Insertion type for inserting turbine into piping and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute.

B. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body; with plastic turbine or impeller and integral direct-reading scale.

C. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.

D. Temperature Rating: 220 deg F. minimum.

E. Display: Visual instantaneous rate of flow.

F. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2-1/2 percent.

2.9 PITOT-TUBE FLOWMETERS

A. Description: Insertion-type, differential-pressure design for inserting probe into piping and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute.

B. Construction: Stainless-steel probe of length to span inside of pipe; with integral transmitter and direct-reading scale.

C. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.

D. Temperature Rating: 220 deg F. minimum.

E. Display: Visual instantaneous rate of flow.

F. Integral Transformer: For low-voltage power connection.

G. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent for liquids and gases.

2.10 FLOW INDICATORS

A. Description: Instrument for installation in piping systems for visual verification of flow.

B. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body; with sight glass and plastic pelton-wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.

C. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.

D. Temperature Rating: 220 deg F.

E. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

F. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 THERMOMETER APPLICATIONS

A. Install liquid-in-glass thermometers as indicated on the drawings and in the following locations:

1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler and chiller.
3. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units and built-up central systems.
4. Inlet and outlet of each thermal storage tank.
5. Outside-air, return-air, and mixed-air ducts.

B. Provide the following temperature ranges for thermometers:

1. Heating Hot Water: 30 to 240 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.

2. Chilled Water: 30 to 120 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.
3. Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 110 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.

3.2 GAGE APPLICATIONS

A. Install dry-case-type pressure gages for discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.

B. Install liquid-filled-case-type pressure gages at chilled-water inlets and outlets of chillers.

C. Install liquid-filled-case-type pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump.

3.3 INSTALLATIONS

A. Install direct-mounting thermometers and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

B. Install remote-mounting dial thermometers on panel, with tubing connecting panel and thermometer bulb supported to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.

C. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of diameter of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees where thermometers are indicated.

D. Duct Thermometer Support Flanges: Install in wall of duct where duct thermometers are indicated. Attach to duct with screws.

E. Install direct-mounting pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at most readable position.

F. Install remote-mounting pressure gages on panel.

G. Install needle-valve and snubber fitting in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).

H. Install test plugs in tees in piping.

I. Install flow indicators, in accessible positions for easy viewing, in piping systems.

J. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters as prescribed by manufacturer's written instructions.

K. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.

L. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe upstream and downstream from element as prescribed by manufacturer's written instructions.

M. Install wafer-orifice flowmeter elements between pipe flanges.

N. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.

O. Install connection fittings for attachment to portable indicators in accessible locations.

P. Install flowmeters at discharge of hydronic system pumps and at inlet of hydronic air coils.

Q. Mount meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance for meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

B. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.

C. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions, after installation.

B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

END OF SECTION 230519

SECTIONS 230523 – GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Iron ball valves.
2. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
3. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
4. High-performance butterfly valves.
5. Bronze swing check valves.
6. Iron swing check valves.
7. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
8. Iron, grooved-end swing-check valves.
9. Iron, center-guided check valves.
10. Iron, plate-type check valves.
11. Bronze gate valves.
12. Iron gate valves.
13. Bronze globe valves.
14. Iron globe valves.
15. Lubricated plug valves.
16. Eccentric plug valves.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 HVAC piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
2. Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.

C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

D. NRS: Nonrising stem.

E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

F. RS: Rising stem.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.5 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. All valves shall be manufactured in the USA.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Valve Co.
2. Cameron
3. Conbraco Industries.
4. Crane Co.
5. Hammond Valve
6. Milwaukee Valve Co.
7. NIBCO Inc.
8. Powell Valves
9. Watts Regulator Co

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.

2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.

B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller.
4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 10 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:

1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 IRON BALL VALVES

A. Class 150, Iron Ball Valves:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Split body.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel.
i. Port: Full.

2.3 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: NBR.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

2.4 IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
f. Seal: EPDM.

2.5 HIGH-PERFORMANCE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Class 150, Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-68.
b. CWP Rating: 285 psig at 100 deg F.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.

d. Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
e. Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
f. Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
g. Disc: Carbon steel.
h. Service: Bidirectional.

2.6 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: Bronze.

2.7 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Bronze.
h. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.8 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Bronze.
h. Gasket: Asbestos free.

i. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.

2.9 IRON, GROOVED-END SWING CHECK VALVES

A. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves:

1. Description:

a. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
b. Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
c. Seal: EPDM.
d. Disc: Spring operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.

2.10 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES

A. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Style: Compact wafer.
f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

2.11 IRON, PLATE-TYPE CHECK VALVES

A. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Description:

a. Standard: API 594.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

2.12 BRONZE GATE VALVES

A. Class 150, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.

c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded.
e. Stem: Bronze.
f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
g. Packing: Asbestos free.

2.13 IRON GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Trim: Bronze.
g. Disc: Solid wedge.
h. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.14 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
d. Ends: Threaded.
e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
f. Packing: Asbestos free.
g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.15 IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
d. Ends: Flanged.
e. Trim: Bronze.
f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.16 LUBRICATED PLUG VALVES

A. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
e. Pattern: Regular or short.
f. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

2.17 ECCENTRIC PLUG VALVES

A. 175 CWP, Eccentric Plug Valves with Resilient Seating.

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-108.
b. CWP Rating: 175 psig minimum.
c. Body and Plug: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray iron; ASTM A 126, gray iron; or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
d. Bearings: Oil-impregnated bronze or stainless steel.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Stem-Seal Packing: Asbestos free.
g. Plug, Resilient-Seating Material: Suitable for potable-water service unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:

1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly valves.
2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
3. Throttling Service except Steam: Globe, ball, or butterfly valves.
4. Throttling Service, Steam: Globe or butterfly valves.
5. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:

    a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
    b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal or resilient-seat check valves.

B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
2. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
4. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.5 CHILLED-WATER, CONDENSER WATER AND HOT WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
   1. Ball Valves: Three piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
   2. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.
   3. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 150, NRS, bronze.
   4. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

   1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
   2. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10: Class 150.
   3. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: 200 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
   4. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: 175 CWP.
   5. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150, single flange.
   6. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
   7. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Class 125, lever and spring.
   8. Iron, Grooved-End Check Valves, NPS 3 to NPS 12: 300 CWP.
   9. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 150, compact-wafer, resilient seat.
   10. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 150; single plate; resilient seat.
   11. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, OS&Y.
   12. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.
   13. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125, flanged.
   14. Eccentric Plug Valves: 175 CWP, resilient seating.

END OF SECTION 230523

SECTION 230529 – HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING & EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following hangers and supports for HVAC system piping and equipment:

1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Pipe stands.
7. Equipment supports.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Division 21 Section "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for pipe hangers for fire-protection piping.
3. Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
4. Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.
5. Division 23 Section(s) "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society for The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

B. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.

B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

C. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
2. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
4. Powder-actuated fastener systems.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers. Include Product Data for components.
2. Metal framing systems. Include Product Data for components.
3. Pipe stands. Include Product Data for components.
4. Equipment supports.

C. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel.", AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel.", AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel." and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
3. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
4. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
5. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 STEEL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to Part 3 "Hanger and Support Applications" Article for where to use specific hanger and support types.

B. Material: Carbon Steel

C. Coating: Galvanized, Hot dipped galvinized

D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

E. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion for support of bearing surface of piping.

2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Description: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels and other components.

B. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish, unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.

C. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

2.5 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Description: 100-psig- minimum, compressive-strength insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with vapor barrier.

C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass.

D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.7 PIPE STAND FABRICATION

A. Pipe Stands, General: Shop or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod-roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

1. Base: Plastic.
2. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
3. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

1. Bases: One or more plastic.
2. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
3. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
4. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe support made from structural-steel shape, continuous-thread rods, and rollers for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.8 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-steel shapes.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are specified in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized, metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 24, if little or no insulation is required.
5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.

7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
10. Split Pipe-Ring with or without Turnbuckle-Adjustment Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
11. Extension Hinged or 2-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
16. Adjustable, Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36, if vertical adjustment is required, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
17. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30, from 2 rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 20, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42, if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 24, if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 30, if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20, if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.

4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
11. Malleable Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.

13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

J. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

K. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.

2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:

    a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.

L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

M. Comply with MFMA-102 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

N. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Steel Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.

B. Trapeze Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.

C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

E. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Pipe Stand Installation:

1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounting Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
2. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.1 (for power piping) and ASME B31.9 (for building services piping) are not exceeded.

N. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.

c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.1 for power piping and ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.

a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.

5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood inserts.
6. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.
7. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.

2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 2".

3.6 PAINTING

A. Touch Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touch Up: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTMA 780.

END OF SECTION 230529

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 230548 – VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING & EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Isolation pads.
2. Isolation mounts.
3. Freestanding and restrained spring isolators.
4. Housed spring mounts.
5. Spring hangers.
6. Spring hangers with vertical-limit stops.
7. Seismic snubbers.
8. Restraining braces and cables.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. IBC: International Building Code.

B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. The Mechanical Contractor shall be responsible for providing restraints to resist the earthquake effects on the mechanical system. The requirements for these restraints are found in the North Carolina State Building Code and ASCE 7.

B. The Mechanical Contractor shall refer to the latest edition of the "Seismic Restraint Manual Guidelines for Mechanical System" published by SMACNA for guidelines to determine the correct restraints for sheet metal ducts, piping, and conduit, etc.

C. The Mechanical Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Structural Engineer registered in the State of North Carolina to design seismic restraint elements required for this project. The engineer's computations, bearing his professional seal, shall accompany shop drawings which show Code compliance. Computations and shop drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the purchasing of materials, equipment systems, and assemblies.

D. For all existing mechanical equipment noted to remain, the Mechanical Contractor shall visit the site to document existing seismic restraints, or lack thereof. The Mechanical Contractor shall provide this information to the Professional Structural Engineer retained to design seismic restraint elements for this project. The Professional Structural Engineer shall review the existing restraints, and indicate any additional requirements. Computations and shop drawings shall include all existing mechanical equipment noted to remain.

E. The professional engineer retained by the Mechanical Contractor for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation. This Engineer shall provide in writing verification of compliance with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspection by other than this Engineer is not acceptable. This engineer shall also be responsible for any required special inspections and associated documentation related to seismic restraints.

F. Seismic-Restraint Loading:

1. Site Class as Defined in the NC State Building Code (Chapter 16) and ASCE 7, as determined by the project Structural Engineer of record.
2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the NC State Building Code (Chapter 16) and ASCE 7.

    a. Component Importance Factor.
    b. Component Response Modification Factor.
    c. Component Amplification Factor.

3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second).
4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1-Second Period.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.

    a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, seismic forces required to select vibration isolators, seismic restraints, and for designing vibration isolation bases.

    a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Division 22 Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.

2. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system has been examined for excessive stress and that none will exist.
3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail overall dimensions, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, base weights, equipment static loads, power transmission, component misalignment, and cantilever loads.
4. Seismic-Restraint Details:

    a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
    b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
    c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Division 22 Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
    d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

C. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.

D. Welding certificates.

E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.

F. Review of the seismic design and shop drawings by the Engineer/Architect or his agent shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to comply with the seismic or any other requirements of the North Carolina State Building Code, Section 1607.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The professional Engineer retained by the Mechanical Contractor for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation. This Engineer shall provide in writing verification of compliance with the approved seismic submittal. This verification

shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspection by other than this Engineer is not acceptable.

B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.

C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Kinetics Noise Control.
2. Mason Industries.
3. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
4. Vibration Isolation.
5. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

B. Pads: Arranged in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.

1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.

C. Mounts: Double-deflection type, with molded, oil-resistant rubber, hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, or neoprene isolator elements with factory-drilled, encapsulated top plate for bolting to equipment and with baseplate for bolting to structure. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.

1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.

D. Restrained Mounts: All-directional mountings with seismic restraint.

1. Materials: Cast-ductile-iron or welded steel housing containing two separate and opposing, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
2. Neoprene: Shock-absorbing materials compounded according to the standard for bridge-bearing neoprene as defined by AASHTO.

E. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.

1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
5. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

F. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.

1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
2. Restraint: Seismic or limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

G. Housed Spring Mounts: Housed spring isolator with integral seismic snubbers.

1. Housing: Ductile-iron or steel housing to provide all-directional seismic restraint.
2. Base: Factory drilled for bolting to structure.
3. Snubbers: Vertically adjustable to allow a maximum of 1/4-inch travel up or down before contacting a resilient collar.

H. Spring Hangers: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.

4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
7. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

I. Spring Hangers with Vertical-Limit Stop: Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression and with a vertical-limit stop.

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

2.2 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Mason Industries.
2. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
3. Vibration Isolation.
4. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Hilti, Inc.
2. Kinetics Noise Control.
3. Mason Industries.

B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.

C. Snubbers: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.

1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
3. Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch- thick resilient cushion.

D. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

E. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized-steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

F. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.

G. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.

H. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.

I. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

J. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.

K. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.4 FACTORY FINISHES

A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.

B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.

1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.

C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 VIBRATION-CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

B. Equipment Restraints:

1. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.

C. Piping Restraints:

1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.

D. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.

E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.

F. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

G. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

H. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

I. Drilled-in Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hydronic Piping" for piping flexible connections.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
7. Measure isolator deflection.
8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
9. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.

B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

C. Adjust active height of spring isolators.

D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 230548

SECTION 230553 – IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Valve tags.

1.2 SUBMITTAL

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment (Note: Plastic Labels utilized in a return air plenum shall be listed and approved for use in a return air plenum):

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White.
3. Background Color: Red.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: Red.

C. Background Color: White.

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction. (Note: Plastic Labels utilized in a return air plenum shall be listed and approved for use in a return air plenum):

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.4 VALVE TAGS

A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09.

B. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Chilled-Water Piping:

   a. Background Color: Green.
   b. Letter Color: White.

2. Heating Water Piping:

   a. Background Color: Yellow.
   b. Letter Color: Black.

3. Refrigerant Piping:

   a. Background Color: Yellow.
   b. Letter Color: Black.

3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; and shutoff valves. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:

1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:

   a. Chilled Water: 2 inches, round.
   b. Refrigerant: 2 inches, round.
   c. Hot Water: 2 inches, round.
   d. Gas: 2 inches, round.

2. Valve-Tag Color:

   a. Chilled Water: Natural.
   b. Refrigerant: Natural.
   c. Hot Water: Natural.
   d. Gas: Natural.

3. Letter Color:

   a. Chilled Water: Black.
   b. Refrigerant: Black.
   c. Hot Water: Black.
   d. Gas: Black.

3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 230553

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 230593 – TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes TAB to produce design objectives for the following:

1. Air Systems:

    a. Constant-volume air systems.
    b. Variable-air-volume systems.

2. Hydronic Piping Systems:

    a. Constant-flow systems.
    b. Variable-flow systems.
    c. Primary-secondary systems.
3. HVAC equipment quantitative-performance settings.
4. Kitchen hood airflow balancing.
5. Existing systems TAB.
6. Verifying that automatic control devices are functioning properly.
7. Reporting results of activities and procedures specified in this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Adjust: To regulate fluid flow rate and air patterns at the terminal equipment, such as to reduce fan speed or adjust a damper.

B. Balance: To proportion flows within the distribution system, including submains, branches, and terminals, according to indicated quantities.

C. Barrier or Boundary: Construction, either vertical or horizontal, such as walls, floors, and ceilings that are designed and constructed to restrict the movement of airflow, smoke, odors, and other pollutants.

D. Draft: A current of air, when referring to localized effect caused by one or more factors of high air velocity, low ambient temperature, or direction of airflow, whereby more heat is withdrawn from a person's skin than is normally dissipated.

E. NC: Noise criteria.

F. Procedure: An approach to and execution of a sequence of work operations to yield repeatable results.

G. RC: Room criteria.

H. Report Forms: Test data sheets for recording test data in logical order.

I. Static Head: The pressure due to the weight of the fluid above the point of measurement. In a closed system, static head is equal on both sides of the pump.

J. Suction Head: The height of fluid surface above the centerline of the pump on the suction side.

K. System Effect: A phenomenon that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.

L. System Effect Factors: Allowances used to calculate a reduction of the performance ratings of a fan when installed under conditions different from those presented when the fan was performance tested.

M. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

N. Terminal: A point where the controlled medium, such as fluid or energy, enters or leaves the distribution system.

O. Test: A procedure to determine quantitative performance of systems or equipment.

P. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Firm: The entity responsible for performing and reporting TAB procedures.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: Within 15 days from Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 4 copies of evidence that TAB firm and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days from Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 4 copies of the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.

C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days from Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 4 copies of TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in Part 3 "Preparation" Article. Include a complete set of report forms intended for use on this Project.

D. Certified TAB Reports: Submit two copies of reports prepared, as specified in this Section, on approved forms certified by TAB firm.

E. Sample Report Forms: Submit two sets of sample TAB report forms.

F. Warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Firm Qualifications: Engage a TAB firm certified by AABC or NEBB.

B. TAB Conference: Meet with Owner's and Architect's representatives on approval of TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Ensure the participation of TAB team members, equipment manufacturers' authorized service representatives, HVAC controls installers, and other support personnel. Provide seven days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.

1. Agenda Items: Include at least the following:

a. Submittal distribution requirements.
b. The Contract Documents examination report.
c. TAB plan.
d. Work schedule and Project-site access requirements.
e. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
f. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.

C. Certification of TAB Reports: Certify TAB field data reports. This certification includes the following:

1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
2. Certify that TAB team complied with approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.

D. TAB Report Forms: Use standard forms from AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems." or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems."

E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, and Accuracy: As described in AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems," Section II, "Required Instrumentation for NEBB Certification."

F. Instrumentation Calibration: Calibrate instruments at least every six months or more frequently if required by instrument manufacturer.

1. Keep an updated record of instrument calibration that indicates date of calibration and the name of party performing instrument calibration.

G. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

H. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate the efforts of factory-authorized service representatives for systems and equipment, HVAC controls installers, and other mechanics to operate HVAC systems and equipment to support and assist TAB activities.

B. Notice: Provide seven days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.

C. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. National Project Performance Guarantee: Provide a guarantee on AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems" forms stating that AABC will assist in completing requirements of the Contract Documents if TAB firm fails to comply with the Contract Documents. Guarantee includes the following provisions:

1. The certified TAB firm has tested and balanced systems according to the Contract Documents.
2. Systems are balanced to optimum performance capabilities within design and installation limits.

B. Special Guarantee: Provide a guarantee on NEBB forms stating that NEBB will assist in completing requirements of the Contract Documents if TAB firm fails to comply with the Contract Documents. Guarantee shall include the following provisions:

1. The certified TAB firm has tested and balanced systems according to the Contract Documents.
2. Systems are balanced to optimum performance capabilities within design and installation limits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

1. Contract Documents are defined in the General and Supplementary Conditions of Contract.
2. Verify that balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are required by the Contract Documents. Verify that quantities and locations of these balancing devices are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.

B. Examine approved submittal data of HVAC systems and equipment.

C. Examine Project Record Documents described in Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents."

D. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

E. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system. Calculate system effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from those presented when the equipment was performance tested at the factory. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," Sections 7 through 10; or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems--Duct Design," Sections 5 and 6. Compare this data with the design data and installed conditions.

F. Examine system and equipment installations to verify that they are complete and that testing, cleaning, adjusting, and commissioning specified in individual Sections have been performed.

G. Examine system and equipment test reports.

H. Examine HVAC system and equipment installations to verify that indicated balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are properly installed, and that their locations are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.

I. Examine systems for functional deficiencies that cannot be corrected by adjusting and balancing.

J. Examine HVAC equipment to ensure that clean filters have been installed, bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

K. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, to verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.

L. Examine plenum ceilings used for supply air to verify that they are airtight. Verify that pipe penetrations and other holes are sealed.

M. Examine strainers for clean screens and proper perforations.

N. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.

O. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.

P. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.

Q. Examine equipment for installation and for properly operating safety interlocks and controls.

R. Examine automatic temperature system components to verify the following:

1. Dampers, valves, and other controlled devices are operated by the intended controller.
2. Dampers and valves are in the position indicated by the controller.
3. Integrity of valves and dampers for free and full operation and for tightness of fully closed and fully open positions. This includes dampers in multizone units, mixing boxes, and variable-air-volume terminals.
4. Automatic modulating and shutoff valves, including two-way valves and three-way mixing and diverting valves, are properly connected.
5. Thermostats and humidistats are located to avoid adverse effects of sunlight, drafts, and cold walls.
6. Sensors are located to sense only the intended conditions.
7. Sequence of operation for control modes is according to the Contract Documents.
8. Controller set points are set at indicated values.
9. Interlocked systems are operating.
10. Changeover from heating to cooling mode occurs according to indicated values.

S. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.

B. Complete system readiness checks and prepare system readiness reports. Verify the following:

1. Permanent electrical power wiring is complete.
2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.

4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems", NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and this Section.

1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary to allow adequate performance of procedures. After testing and balancing, close probe holes and patch insulation with new materials identical to those removed. Restore vapor barrier and finish according to insulation Specifications for this Project.

C. Mark equipment and balancing device settings with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, to show final settings.

D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.

D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct airflow measurements.

E. Check airflow patterns from the outside-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers, through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.

F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

I. Check for airflow blockages.

J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling unit components.

L. Check for proper sealing of air duct system.

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure fan static pressures to determine actual static pressure as follows:

a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practicable and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from flexible connection and downstream from duct restrictions.
d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.

2. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.

a. Simulate dirty filter operation and record the point at which maintenance personnel must change filters.

3. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices such as sound traps, heat recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
4. Compare design data with installed conditions to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Compare actual system effect factors with calculated system effect factors to identify where variations occur. Recommend corrective action to align design and actual conditions.
5. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Make required adjustments to pulley sizes, motor sizes, and electrical connections to accommodate fan-speed changes.
6. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full cooling, full heating, economizer, and any other operating modes to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

1. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.

a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.

2. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

C. Measure terminal outlets and inlets without making adjustments.

1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.

D. Adjust terminal outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.

1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

A. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a maximum set-point airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.

B. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Set outside-air dampers at minimum, and return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.
2. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
3. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
4. Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units as described for constant-volume air systems.
5. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow as described for constant-volume air systems.

a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum airflow.

6. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outside airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets as described for constant-volume air systems.
7. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.
8. Record the final fan performance data.

C. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems without Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Balance systems similar to constant-volume air systems.
2. Set terminal units and supply fan at full-airflow condition.
3. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow and verify operation of the static-pressure controller. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units as described for constant-volume air systems.
4. Readjust fan airflow for final maximum readings.
5. Measure operating static pressure at the sensor that controls the supply fan, if one is installed, and verify operation of the static-pressure controller.
6. Set supply fan at minimum airflow if minimum airflow is indicated. Measure static pressure to verify that it is being maintained by the controller.
7. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow as described for constant-volume air systems.

    a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave the outlets balanced for maximum airflow.

8. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outside airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets as described for constant-volume air systems.

D. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems with Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Set system at maximum indicated airflow by setting the required number of terminal units at minimum airflow. Select the reduced airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
2. Adjust supply fan to maximum indicated airflow with the variable-airflow controller set at maximum airflow.
3. Set terminal units at full-airflow condition.
4. Adjust terminal units starting at the supply-fan end of the system and continuing progressively to the end of the system. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units as described for constant-volume air systems.
5. Adjust terminal units for minimum airflow.
6. Measure static pressure at the sensor.
7. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outside airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets as described for constant-volume air systems.

3.7 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.

C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:

1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
2. Check expansion tank liquid level.
3. Check makeup-water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation and set at indicated flow.
5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.
6. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
7. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
8. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Measure water flow at pumps. Use the following procedures, except for positive-displacement pumps:

1. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Read pressure differential across the pump. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
2. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until indicated water flow is achieved.
3. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.
4. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 5 percent of design.

B. Set calibrated balancing valves, if installed, at calculated presettings.

C. Measure flow at all stations and adjust, where necessary, to obtain first balance.

1. System components that have Cv rating or an accurately cataloged flow-pressure-drop relationship may be used as a flow-indicating device.

D. Measure flow at main balancing station and set main balancing device to achieve flow that is 5 percent greater than indicated flow.

E. Adjust balancing stations to within specified tolerances of indicated flow rate as follows:

1. Determine the balancing station with the highest percentage over indicated flow.
2. Adjust each station in turn, beginning with the station with the highest percentage over indicated flow and proceeding to the station with the lowest percentage over indicated flow.
3. Record settings and mark balancing devices.

F. Measure pump flow rate and make final measurements of pump amperage, voltage, rpm, pump heads, and systems' pressures and temperatures including outdoor-air temperature.

G. Measure the differential-pressure control valve settings existing at the conclusions of balancing.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Balance the primary system crossover flow first, then balance the secondary system.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer, model, and serial numbers.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Efficiency rating.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass for the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations, including controller manufacturer, model and serial numbers, and nameplate data.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

A. Balance water flow through each evaporator and condenser to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:

1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
2. If water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatt.
5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatt.
6. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
7. If air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

A. Verify proper rotation of fans.

B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

C. Record compressor data.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

A. If hydronic, measure entering- and leaving-water temperatures and water flow.

B. If steam, measure entering-water temperature and flow and leaving steam pressure, temperature, and flow.

3.15 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

A. Water Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:

1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
2. Water flow rate.
3. Water pressure drop.
4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
6. Airflow.
7. Air pressure drop.

B. Electric-Heating Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:

1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

C. Refrigerant Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

3.16 PROCEDURES FOR TEMPERATURE MEASUREMENTS

A. During TAB, report the need for adjustment in temperature regulation within the automatic temperature-control system.

B. Measure indoor wet- and dry-bulb temperatures every other hour for a period of two successive eight-hour days, in each separately controlled zone, to prove correctness of final temperature settings. Measure when the building or zone is occupied.

C. Measure outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures.

3.17 PROCEDURES FOR COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOODS

A. Measure, adjust, and record the airflow of each kitchen hood. For kitchen hoods designed with integral makeup air, measure and adjust the exhaust and makeup airflow. Measure airflow by duct Pitot-tube traverse. If a duct Pitot-tube traverse is not possible, provide an explanation in the report of the reason(s) why and also the reason why the method used was chosen.

1. Install welded test ports in the sides of the exhaust duct for the duct Pitot-tube traverse. Install each test port with a threaded cap that is liquid tight.

B. After balancing is complete, do the following:

1. Measure and record the static pressure at the hood exhaust-duct connection.
2. Measure and record the hood face velocity. Make measurements at multiple points across the face of the hood. Perform measurements at a maximum of 12 inches (300 mm) between points and between any point and the perimeter. Calculate the average of the measurements recorded. Verify that the hood average face velocity complies with the Contract Documents and governing codes.
3. Check the hood for capture and containment of smoke using a smoke emitting device. Observe the smoke pattern. Make adjustments to room airflow patterns to achieve optimum results.

C. Visually inspect the hood exhaust duct throughout its entire length in compliance with authorities having jurisdiction. Begin at the hood connection and end at the point it discharges outdoors. Report findings.

1. Check duct slopes as required.
2. Verify that duct access is installed as required.
3. Verify that point of termination is as required.
4. Verify that duct air velocity is within the range required.
5. Verify that duct is within a fire-rated enclosure.

D. Report deficiencies.

3.18 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.

1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
3. Check the refrigerant charge.
4. Check the condition of filters.
5. Check the condition of coils.
6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate drain trap.
7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished.

1. New filters are installed.
2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
3. Drain pans are clean.
4. Fans are clean.
5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.

C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.

1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows and determine the new fan, speed, filter, and coil face velocity.
2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated airflow and water flow rates. If 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
4. Air balance each air outlet.

3.19 TEMPERATURE-CONTROL VERIFICATION

A. Verify that controllers are calibrated and commissioned.

B. Check transmitter and controller locations and note conditions that would adversely affect control functions.

C. Record controller settings and note variances between set points and actual measurements.

D. Check the operation of limiting controllers (i.e., high- and low-temperature controllers).

E. Check free travel and proper operation of control devices such as damper and valve operators.

F. Check the sequence of operation of control devices. Note air pressures and device positions and correlate with airflow and water flow measurements. Note the speed of response to input changes.

G. Check the interaction of electrically operated switch transducers.

H. Check the interaction of interlock and lockout systems.

I. Check main control supply-air pressure and observe compressor and dryer operations.

J. Record voltages of power supply and controller output. Determine whether the system operates on a grounded or nongrounded power supply.

K. Note operation of electric actuators using spring return for proper fail-safe operations.

3.20 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system airflow and water flow rates within the following tolerances (code required minimums must meet or exceed rates indicated on plans):

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Minus 5 to plus 10 percent.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: minus 10 to plus 10 percent.
3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: minus 10 to plus 10 percent.
4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: minus 10 to plus 10 percent.

3.21 REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B. Status Reports: As Work progresses, prepare reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.22 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Typewritten, or computer printout in letter-quality font, on standard bond paper, in three-ring binder, tabulated and divided into sections by tested and balanced systems.

B. Include a certification sheet in front of binder signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.

1. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

C. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field report data, include the following:

1. Pump curves.
2. Fan curves.
3. Manufacturers' test data.
4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
5. Other information relative to equipment performance, but do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

D. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data in the final report, as applicable:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of TAB firm.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB firm who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents including the following:

    a. Indicated versus final performance.
    b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.

12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer, type size, and fittings.
14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports varies from indicated values.
15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:

    a. Settings for outside-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    b. Conditions of filters.
    c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.

f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

E. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outside, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water and steam flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

F. Air-Handling Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data: Include the following:

a. Unit identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and unit size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Unit arrangement and class.
g. Discharge arrangement.
h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
i. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.
j. Number of belts, make, and size.
k. Number of filters, type, and size.

2. Motor Data:

a. Make and frame type and size.
b. Horsepower and rpm.
c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
f. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
c. Fan rpm.
d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
f. Preheat coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
g. Cooling coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
h. Heating coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
i. Outside airflow in cfm.

j. Return airflow in cfm.
k. Outside-air damper position.
l. Return-air damper position.
m. Vortex damper position.

G. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Coil type.
d. Number of rows.
e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
f. Make and model number.
g. Face area in sq. ft..
h. Tube size in NPS.
i. Tube and fin materials.
j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Airflow rate in cfm.
b. Average face velocity in fpm.
c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
d. Outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
h. Water flow rate in gpm.
i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

H. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and unit size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Fuel type in input data.
g. Output capacity in Btuh.
h. Ignition type.

i. Burner-control types.
j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
n. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
h. Low-fire fuel input in Btuh.
i. High-fire fuel input in Btuh.
j. Manifold pressure in psig.
k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
l. Operating set point in Btuh.
m. Motor voltage at each connection.
n. Motor amperage for each phase.
o. Heating value of fuel in Btuh.

I. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Coil identification.
d. Capacity in Btuh.
e. Number of stages.
f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
g. Rated amperage.
h. Airflow rate in cfm.
i. Face area in sq. ft..
j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Heat output in Btuh.
b. Airflow rate in cfm.
c. Air velocity in fpm.
d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
f. Voltage at each connection.
g. Amperage for each phase.

J. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Arrangement and class.
g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
h. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Motor Data:

a. Make and frame type and size.
b. Horsepower and rpm.
c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
f. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.
g. Number of belts, make, and size.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
c. Fan rpm.
d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

K. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:

a. System and air-handling unit number.
b. Location and zone.
c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
e. Duct size in inches.
f. Duct area in sq. ft..
g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
k. Barometric pressure in psig.

L. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:

a. System and air-handling unit identification.
b. Location and zone.
c. Test apparatus used.
d. Area served.
e. Air-terminal-device make.
f. Air-terminal-device number from system diagram.
g. Air-terminal-device type and model number.
h. Air-terminal-device size.
i. Air-terminal-device effective area in sq. ft..

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Airflow rate in cfm.
b. Air velocity in fpm.
c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
f. Final velocity in fpm.
g. Space temperature in deg F.

M. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System and air-handling unit identification.
b. Location and zone.
c. Room or riser served.
d. Coil make and size.
e. Flowmeter type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Airflow rate in cfm.
b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

N. Packaged Chiller Reports:

1. Unit Data:

a. Unit identification.
b. Make and model number.
c. Manufacturer's serial number.
d. Refrigerant type and capacity in gal..
e. Starter type and size.
f. Starter thermal protection size.
g. Compressor make and model number.
h. Compressor manufacturer's serial number.

2. Air-Cooled Condenser Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Refrigerant pressure in psig.
    b. Refrigerant temperature in deg F.
    c. Entering- and leaving-air temperature in deg F.

3. Evaporator Test Reports (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Refrigerant pressure in psig.
    b. Refrigerant temperature in deg F.
    c. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
    d. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
    e. Entering-water pressure in feet of head or psig.
    f. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.

4. Compressor Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Suction pressure in psig.
    b. Suction temperature in deg F.
    c. Discharge pressure in psig.
    d. Discharge temperature in deg F.
    e. Oil pressure in psig.
    f. Oil temperature in deg F.
    g. Voltage at each connection.
    h. Amperage for each phase.
    i. Kilowatt input.
    j. Crankcase heater kilowatt.
    k. Chilled-water control set point in deg F.
    l. Condenser-water control set point in deg F.
    m. Refrigerant low-pressure-cutoff set point in psig.
    n. Refrigerant high-pressure-cutoff set point in psig.

5. Refrigerant Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Oil level.
    b. Refrigerant level.
    c. Relief valve setting in psig.
    d. Unloader set points in psig.
    e. Percentage of cylinders unloaded.
    f. Bearing temperatures in deg F.
    g. Vane position.
    h. Low-temperature-cutoff set point in deg F.

O. Compressor and Condenser Reports: For refrigerant side of unitary systems, stand-alone refrigerant compressors, air-cooled condensing units, or water-cooled condensing units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

    a. Unit identification.
    b. Location.

c. Unit make and model number.
d. Compressor make.
e. Compressor model and serial numbers.
f. Refrigerant weight in lb.
g. Low ambient temperature cutoff in deg F.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Inlet-duct static pressure in inches wg.
b. Outlet-duct static pressure in inches wg.
c. Entering-air, dry-bulb temperature in deg F.
d. Leaving-air, dry-bulb temperature in deg F.
e. Condenser entering-water temperature in deg F.
f. Condenser leaving-water temperature in deg F.
g. Condenser-water temperature differential in deg F.
h. Condenser entering-water pressure in feet of head or psig.
i. Condenser leaving-water pressure in feet of head or psig.
j. Condenser-water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
k. Control settings.
l. Unloader set points.
m. Low-pressure-cutout set point in psig.
n. High-pressure-cutout set point in psig.
o. Suction pressure in psig.
p. Suction temperature in deg F.
q. Condenser refrigerant pressure in psig.
r. Condenser refrigerant temperature in deg F.
s. Oil pressure in psig.
t. Oil temperature in deg F.
u. Voltage at each connection.
v. Amperage for each phase.
w. Kilowatt input.
x. Crankcase heater kilowatt.
y. Number of fans.
z. Condenser fan rpm.
aa. Condenser fan airflow rate in cfm.
bb. Condenser fan motor make, frame size, rpm, and horsepower.
cc. Condenser fan motor voltage at each connection.
dd. Condenser fan motor amperage for each phase.

3. Pump Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Voltage at each connection.
b. Amperage for each phase.
c. Water flow rate in gpm.

4. Water Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
b. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
c. Water temperature differential in deg F.
d. Entering-water pressure in feet of head or psig.

e. Leaving-water pressure in feet of head or psig.
f. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
g. Water flow rate in gpm.
h. Bleed water flow rate in gpm.

5. Air Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Duct airflow rate in cfm.
b. Inlet-duct static pressure in inches wg.
c. Outlet-duct static pressure in inches wg.
d. Average entering-air, wet-bulb temperature in deg F.
e. Average leaving-air, wet-bulb temperature in deg F.
f. Ambient wet-bulb temperature in deg F.

P. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. Unit identification.
b. Location.
c. Service.
d. Make and size.
e. Model and serial numbers.
f. Water flow rate in gpm.
g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
i. Pump rpm.
j. Impeller diameter in inches.
k. Motor make and frame size.
l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
m. Voltage at each connection.
n. Amperage for each phase.
o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
p. Seal type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
c. Actual impeller size in inches.
d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
j. Voltage at each connection.
k. Amperage for each phase.

Q. Boiler Test Reports:

1. Unit Data:

    a. Unit identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Service.
    d. Make and type.
    e. Model and serial numbers.
    f. Fuel type and input in Btuh.
    g. Number of passes.
    h. Ignition type.
    i. Burner-control types.
    j. Voltage at each connection.
    k. Amperage for each phase.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Operating pressure in psig.
    b. Operating temperature in deg F.
    c. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
    d. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
    e. Number of safety valves and sizes in NPS.
    f. Safety valve settings in psig.
    g. High-limit setting in psig.
    h. Operating-control setting.
    i. High-fire set point.
    j. Low-fire set point.
    k. Voltage at each connection.
    l. Amperage for each phase.
    m. Draft fan voltage at each connection.
    n. Draft fan amperage for each phase.
    o. Manifold pressure in psig.

R. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

    a. Instrument type and make.
    b. Serial number.
    c. Application.
    d. Dates of use.
    e. Dates of calibration.

3.23 INSPECTIONS

A. Initial Inspection:

1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the Final Report.
2. Randomly check the following for each system:

a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
b. Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
d. Measure sound levels at two locations.
e. Measure space pressure of at least 10 percent of locations.
f. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
g. Note deviations to the Contract Documents in the Final Report.

B. Final Inspection:

1. After initial inspection is complete and evidence by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Architect.
2. TAB firm test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Architect.
3. Architect shall randomly select measurements documented in the final report to be rechecked. The rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded, or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
4. If the rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
6. TAB firm shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes and resubmit the final report.
7. Request a second final inspection. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner shall contract the services of another TAB firm to complete the testing and balancing in accordance with the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the final payment.

3.24 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional testing and balancing to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional testing, inspecting, and adjusting during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 230700 – HVAC INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Insulation Materials:
   a. Cellular glass.
   b. Flexible elastomeric.
   c. Mineral fiber.
   d. Phenolic.
2. Adhesives.
3. Mastics.
4. Lagging adhesives.
5. Sealants.
6. Factory-applied jackets.
7. Field-applied fabric-reinforcing mesh.
8. Field-applied cloths.
9. Field-applied jackets.
10. Tapes.
11. Securements.
12. Corner angles.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 21 Section "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."
2. Division 22 Section "Plumbing Insulation."
3. Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.3 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Aeroflex
2. Armacell
3. Certain Teed Corp.
4. Johns Manville
5. Knauf Insulation
6. Owens Corning

7. Pittsburg Corning Corp.

B. Listing of manufacturers name does not guarantee approval. All equipment must meet or exceed quality and capacities of specified equipment. Final approval will be based on equipment submittals. Any manufacturer not listed but wishing to bid this project shall submit a written request 14 days prior to bid date, prior approval is required for all manufacturers not listed.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).

B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

C. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Chilled water pump insulation installation instructions.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application, duct Installer for duct insulation application, and equipment Installer for equipment insulation application. Before preparing piping and ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
2. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
3. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
4. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.

5. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ-SSL: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
6. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

G. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.

H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

I. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. For equipment applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

J. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
2. Type II, 1200 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

K. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe Insulation Wicking System: Preformed pipe insulation complying with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with absorbent cloth factory applied to the entire inside surface of preformed pipe insulation and extended through the longitudinal joint to outside surface of insulation under insulation jacket. Factory apply a white, polymer, vapor-retarder jacket with self-sealing adhesive tape seam and evaporation holes running continuously along the longitudinal seam, exposing the absorbent cloth.

L. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

M. Phenolic:

1. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
2. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
3. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
4. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

    a. Preformed Pipe Insulation: ASJ.

b. Board for Duct and Plenum Applications: ASJ.
c. Board for Equipment Applications: ASJ.

2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

A. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F. Comply with ASTM C 656, Type II, Grade 6. tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by a NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.

B. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by a NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. CertainTeed Corp.; FlameChek.
b. Johns Manville; Firetemp Wrap.
c. Nelson Firestop Products; Nelson FSB Flameshield Blanket.
d. Thermal Ceramics; FireMaster Duct Wrap.
e. 3M; Fire Barrier Wrap Products.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

F. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 3 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 200 deg F.
3. Solids Content: 63 percent by volume and 73 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct, equipment, and pipe insulation.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants: Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, Products.

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
4. Color: White or gray.
5. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: Aluminum.
5. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: White.
5. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
5. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96 and

with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

6. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
7. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.
8. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Pipe Insulation: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch for covering pipe and pipe fittings.

B. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Duct and Equipment Insulation: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. inch for covering equipment.

C. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch, in a Leno weave, for duct, equipment, and pipe.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
2. Color: Color-code jackets based on system.
3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.

    a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

4. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.

D. Metal Jacket:

1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005, Temper H-14.

    a. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    b. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    c. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    d. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

        1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
        2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
        3) Tee covers.
        4) Flange and union covers.
        5) End caps.
        6) Beveled collars.
        7) Valve covers.
        8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

F. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

G. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

H. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

2.11 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 2 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive. Suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Width: 2 inches.
2. Thickness: 6 mils.
3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 500 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Width: 2 inches.
2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
4. Elongation: 5 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

E. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Film Thickness: 4 mils.
3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
4. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

F. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Width: 3 inches.
2. Film Thickness: 6 mils.
3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
4. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing or closed seal.

2. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

   a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
   b. Spindle: Aluminum, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
   c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

   a. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
   b. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
   c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, and securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

   a. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
   b. Spindle: Aluminum, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
   c. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.

6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, aluminum sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005; Temper H-14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment, ducts and fittings, and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment, duct system, and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.

2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.

    a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct and pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions. Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.

1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping"irestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations that are not fire rated. For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
2. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
3. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Mineral Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:

    a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
    b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.

c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.

1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

C. Insulation Installation on Pumps:
1. Provide 1” foam-core insulation on all chilled water pumps. Install pump insulation per foam-core insulation manufacturer’s pump insulation installation instructions. Include pump insulation installation instructions with insulation submittals.
2. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

3.6 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.7 CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.9 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.

3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

E. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 75 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

    a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.

c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

   a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
   b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches.

5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

F. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 75 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

   a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
   b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
   c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
   d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.

e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

   a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
   b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches.

5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.10 PHENOLIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. General Installation Requirements:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.11 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof

sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
2. Wrap factory-presized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
3. Continuous jacket can be spiral wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. The 33-1/2-inch- circumference limit allows for 2-inch- overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.12 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.

B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.

C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.13 FINISHES

A. Duct, Equipment, and Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: Coat exposed outdoor flexible elastomeric insulation with two coats of manufacturer’s recommended protective white coating; or cover with aluminum jacketing all exposed outdoor flexible elastomeric insulation, in lieu of paint.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
2. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
3. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.15 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply, return, and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed outdoor air.
3. Indoor, exposed supply air where noted.
4. Indoor, concealed and exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
5. Indoor, concealed and exposed kitchen hood make-up air.
6. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
7. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. Indoor, exposed supply and return air in air conditioned, occupied spaces

4. Exhaust ductwork, including Type I and II Kitchen Exhaust and Dishwasher Exhaust
5. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
6. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
7. Flexible connectors.
8. Vibration-control devices.
9. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.16 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Supply-air Ducts, Concealed (installed above ceilings):

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and installed R-6.0.

B. Return Air Ducts, Concealed (installed above ceilings):

1. 1” thick fiberglass duct liner.

C. Exposed Supply and Return Ductwork in Air Conditioned, Occupied Spaces, and Exhaust Air Ductwork:

1. Where noted on drawings, Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: 2 inches thick and installed R-6.0.

D. Exposed Supply and Return Ductwork exposed in Air Conditioned Utility Spaces (Conditioned Mechanical Rooms or Mechanical Rooms used as Return Air Plenums) and Exposed in Non-Air Conditioned Spaces (Boiler Rooms, et. Al):

1. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: 2 inches thick and installed R-6.0.

E. Outside-Air Ducts:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and installed R-6.0.

F. Type-I Commercial Kitchen Hood Exhaust Ducts:
1. Fire Rated Insulation System as identified in this specification section.

G. Type-II Commercial Kitchen Hood and Dishwasher Exhaust Ducts:
1. None.

H. Kitchen Hood Make-Up Air Ducts:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and installed R-6.0.

3.17 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Supply-air, return-air and outside-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.18 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment in paragraphs below that is not factory insulated.

C. Chilled-water pump insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick

D. Chilled-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

E. Heating-hot-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

F. Chilled-water air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

G. Heating-hot-water air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

H. Thermal storage tank insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.19 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.20 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Condensate, Cold Water Make-up and Equipment Drain Water:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.

B. Chilled Water Supply and Return:

1. Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
b. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inch thick.

C. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return:

1. NPS 1-1/2” and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-1/2 inches thick.
c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inch thick.

2. NPS 2” and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 2 inches thick.
c. Phenolic: 2 inch thick.

D. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

1. Insulation shall be installed per the manufacturer’s recommendations.

3.21 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Chilled Water:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

   a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
   b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
   c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inch thick.

B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be as recommended by the manufacturer.

3.22 OUTDOOR AND INDOOR, UNDERGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Loose-fill insulation, for belowground piping, is specified in Division 33 piping distribution Sections.

B. Chilled Water and Hot Water, All Sizes: Cellular glass, 2 inches thick.

3.23 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Ducts, Plenums, and Piping, Concealed (installed above ceilings) and Exposed in Air Conditioned Occupied Spaces:

1. None.

D. Ducts, Plenums, and Piping, Exposed in Air Conditioned Utility Spaces (Conditioned Mechanical Rooms and Mechanical Rooms used as Return Air Plenums):

1. 8 ounce canvas with lagging adhesive.

E. Ducts, Plenums, and Piping, Exposed in Non-Air Conditioned Spaces (Boiler Rooms, et. al.):

1. PVC: 20 mils thick (N/A if installed in a return air plenum).
2. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

F. Equipment, Concealed (installed above ceilings):

1. None.

G. Equipment, Exposed (all applications):

1. PVC: 20 mils thick (N/A if installed in a return air plenum)
2. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

3.24 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:

1. PVC: 20 mils thick.
2. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:

1. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

E. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:

1. Aluminum, Smooth with: 0.032 inch thick.

F. Equipment, Concealed:

1. None.

G. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:

1. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

H. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:

1. Aluminum, Smooth with: 0.032 inch thick.

I. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.

J. Piping, Exposed:

1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils thick.
2. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

3.25 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 230700

SECTION 230900 - BUILDING AUTOMATION GASTON COUNTY SCHOOLS TRIDIUM N4

PART 1 -GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED:

A. Direct Digital Controls (DDC)
B. Programming and Graphics
C. Controllers (Global, Standalone, Application Specific)
D. Communications
E. Sensors
F. Valves, Dampers and actuators
G. Electrical appurtenances and wiring systems
H. Sequence of Operation

1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 -Mechanical General Requirements
B. Division 16 -Electrical

1.3 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. System Architecture
B. Wiring diagrams
C. Valves and actuators
D. Dampers and actuators
E. System schematics for all mechanical systems
F. Material lists with part numbers and quantities, as appropriate
G. Technical/Product data sheets for each piece of equipment
H. Sequence of Operation for each system
I. As-built drawings of installed system

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit Shop Drawings of the complete Building Automation System (DDC System) for review and approval.
B. Drawings shall be submitted on standard sheet size format (8-1/2” x 11”, 11” x 17”, or 24” x 36”).
C. Drawings shall be bound within a standard 3-ring binder, cover, or other suitable permanent binder. For projects in which the controls submittals will be less than one-half inch thick, the submittal documents may be securely stapled in the upper left-hand corner provided the cover sheet and back sheet are printed on card stock (heavy bond paper).
D. Submit *five* (5) copies of submittal drawings for review by the Owner.
E. At completion, furnish as-built drawings in bound form and on CD.

F. Submit documentation for all DDC programming in graphical form (AutoCAD or Visio format, or equal) as a part of the as-built documentation.
G. Submit manufacturer's operating instruction manual for the DDC control system for use in owner training.
H. Submit Certificate of Training upon completion of all scheduled training of the owner's operating personnel.

1.5 CODES AND REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. The latest edition of the following standards and codes in effect and amended as of the date of the supplier's proposal, and any subsections thereof as applicable, shall govern the design and selection of equipment and material supplied.
B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC)
C. ASHRA-American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers (Handbooks)
D. ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135 (1995) – BACnet: A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Networks
E. UL 916 - Standard for Energy Management Equipment
F. FCC – Part 15, Subpart J
G. City, County, State and Federal regulations and codes in effect as of the date of the Contract

1.06 PERMITS

A. Except as otherwise indicated, the system supplier shall secure and pay for all permits, inspections, and certifications required for his work and arrange for all necessary approvals by the governing authorities.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Responsibility: The supplier of the HVAC digital logic control system shall be responsible for inspection and Quality Assurance (QA) for all materials and workmanship furnished by him.
B. Component Testing: Maximum reliability shall be achieved through extensive use of high quality, pre-tested components. The manufacturer prior to shipment shall individually test each and every controller, sensor, and all other DDC components.
C. Tools, Testing and Calibration Equipment: The control system supplier shall provide all tools, testing, and calibration equipment necessary to ensure reliability and accuracy of the control system.
D. Authorized Representative: The systems control contractor shall have been in business a minimum of three years and be the authorized representative for the manufacturer of the BACnet components.

1.08 WARRANTY

A. The DDC control system installed under this Specification shall be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service for a period of twelve (12) months after final acceptance by the Owner. If within the twelve (12) month warranty period, any equipment, software, or labor is found to be defective in workmanship or materials, it shall be replaced free of charge by the Controls system installer. Warranty service shall be available to the job site during normal working hours.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE CONTROLS MANUFACTURERS

A. The Gaston County Schools DDC system shall be an extension of the existing Schneider Electric system currently in operation. Furnish and install a complete Schneider Electric I/A control system for automatic environmental control and energy management of the new mechanical equipment.
B. The DDC control system shall be Schneider Electric I/A Series control system to match the existing campus system and tie into the campus front end located in the maintenance office. Joe Shelley 704-634-1685
C. Approved equal are Andover Controls, TAC Controls, Alerton, United Automation, and Engineered Control Solutions.

2.2. PRODUCT

A. Scope of Work

B. The building automatic system shall be installed as a turnkey project and shall consist of all sensors, actuators, direct digital controllers, central host computer and electrical control wiring for a complete operating installation as specified herein. All automation and control products provided on this project shall be in accordance with ISO-9001 certification. ISO-9001 provided a third part, internationally recognized standard of quality, which must be met on this project. The system shall be a standard product of the installing organization that will guarantee ongoing parts availability and factory trained support for five years (5) after system acceptance.
C. Gaston County Schools DDC system has an existing “Schneider Electric I/A Series Web based Graphical User Interface” software package as their Central Maintenance system. (See section C. 8. of these specifications for description) The new DDC controls on the project shall integrate to the existing Schneider Electric Web based front end.

2.2. SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

A. Gaston County Schools intends to monitor and control the entire DDC system for this project from the existing Tridium browser-based Facility Management System (FMS).

B. The Facility Management and Control System (FMCS) as provided in this Division shall be the based on the Niagara Framework N4 Supervisor Platform, a Java-based framework developed by Tridium. A New Niagara N4 server shall be provided and located at the operations facility location. It is the intent to integrate the DDC system for this project to the new Niagara N4 server. The installation of additional servers is not permitted. The entire DDC system including the products and labor detailed in the specifications shall be provided by the acceptable control system integrators and shall have FINStack certification, Direct Access to J2 Technologies (FINStack) technical support and ability to obtain licensing from J2 Technologies for FINStack.

C. Provide the appropriate number of Niagara N4 based JACE Network Controllers to integrate the DDC system as necessary. The DDC system for this project shall be the same Niagara N4 software version as the new Niagara N4 server. All field JACE controllers shall be JACE-8000

D. The Facility Management and Control System (FMCS) shall be comprised of Java Application Control Engine or Controllers (JACE) within each facility. The JACE shall connect to the owner's local or wide area network, depending on configuration. Each User shall configure a dashboard view of the pertinent data and this view shall be saved for later use. Access to the system, either locally in each building, or remotely from a central site or sites, shall be accomplished through a standard Web browser, via the Internet and/or local area network. Each JACE shall communicate directly to Lon Mark/BACnet MSTP/IP /Lon Talk (IDC), BACnet MSTP/IP (IBC), MODBUS RTU devices and other open and legacy protocol systems/devices provided under this Division. It is the owner's goal to eliminate any gateway or redundant (redundant to the JACE functionality) device(s).

E. The work provided in this specification shall be performed by multiple entities. The FMCS Contractor shall have overall responsibility for the Division work. The Enterprise Developer shall be appointed by the Owner and shall provide all work at the Enterprise Server level. Owner will oversee and provide procurement for Enterprise Developer services.

F. The entire Facility Management System (FMS) shall be comprised of a network of interoperable, stand-alone digital controllers communicating via an open protocol communication network to the Niagara N4 based server. The communication from a building to the server shall be standardized for maintenance and trouble-shooting considerations and shall be via JACE Network Controllers over the campus IP Network.

G. The Local Area Network (LAN) shall be either a 10 or 100 Mpbs Ethernet network supporting BACnet, Java, XML, HTTP, and CORBA IIOP for maximum flexibility for integration of building data with enterprise information systems and providing support for multiple JACE Network Controllers, user workstations and a local host computer system.

H. The Enterprise Ethernet (IEEE 802.3) LAN shall utilize Carrier Sense Multiple/Access/Collision Detect (CSMA/CD), Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) and User Datagram Protocol (UDP) operating at 10 or 100 Mbps.

I. The system will consist of an open architecture that utilizes EIA standard 709.1, the Lon Talk™ protocol, as the common communication protocol between all controllers and integral ANSI / ASHRAE™ Standard 135-2004, BACnet functionality to assure interoperability between all system components. Both the Lon Talk™ protocol and the ANSI / ASHRAE™ Standard 135-2004, BACnet protocol are required to assure that the project is fully supported by the two leading HVAC open protocols to reduce future building maintenance, upgrade, and expansion costs.

J. The system will consist of an architecture that utilizes a MS/TP selectable 9.6-76.8 KBaud protocol, as the common communication protocol between all controllers and integral ANSI / ASHRAE™ Standard 135-2004, BACnet functionality to assure interoperability between all system components. The AAC shall can communicate as a MS/TP device or as a BACnet IP device communicating at 10/100 Mbps on a TCP/IP trunk. The AAC shall have a MS/TP bus that can support up to 127 UEC's or VAVDDC's without the addition of repeaters. The ANSI / ASHRAE™ Standard 135-2004, BACnet protocol are required to assure that the project is fully supported by the leading HVAC open protocol to reduce future building maintenance, upgrade, and expansion costs.

K. Where necessary or desired, Lon Talk™ packets may be encapsulated into TCP/IP messages to take advantage of existing infrastructure or to increase network bandwidth.

L. Any such encapsulation of the Lon Talk™ protocol into IP datagrams shall conform to existing Lon Mark/BACnet MSTP/IP ™ guide functionality lines for such encapsulation and shall be based on industry standard protocols.

M. The products used in constructing the BMS shall be Lon Mark/BACnet MSTP/IP ™ compliant.

N. In those instances, in which Lon-Mark™ devices are not available, the BMS contractor shall provide Lon Works™ devices with application source code, device resource files, and external interface definitions.

O. The software tools required to network manage both the Lon Talk™ protocol and the ANSI / ASHRAE™ Standard 135-2004, BACnet protocol must be provided with the system. Drawings are diagrammatic only. Equipment and labor not specifically referred to herein or on the plans, that are required to meet the functional intent, shall be provided without additional cost to the Owner. Minimum BACnet compliance is Level 3; with the ability to support data read and write functionality. Physical connection of BACnet devices shall be via Ethernet/Ethernet IP or MS/TP.

2.2. PRE-APPROVED MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-qualified manufacturers:

1. Electric Components-Schneider-Electric Field Devices
2. Electronic Components-Schneider-Electric Field Devices
3. Direct Digital Control Systems Devices: -Schneider-Electric I/A BACnet or LON.

B. System Architecture

C. General

D. The Building Automation System (BAS) shall consist of Network Server/Controllers (NSCs), a family of Standalone Digital Control Units (SDCUs), Administration and Programming Workstations (APWs), and Web-based Operator Workstations (WOWs). The BAS shall provide control, alarm detection, scheduling, reporting and information management for the entire facility, and Wide Area Network (WAN) if applicable.

E. An Enterprise Level BAS shall consist of an Enterprise Server, which enables multiple NSCs (including all graphics, alarms, schedules, trends, programming, and configuration) to be accessible from a single Workstation simultaneously for operations and engineering tasks.

F. The Enterprise Level BAS shall be able to host up to 250 servers, or NSCs, beneath it.

G. For Enterprise reporting capability and robust reporting capability outside of the trend chart and listing ability of the Workstation, a Reports Server shall be installed on a Microsoft Windows based computer. The Reports Server can be installed on the same computer as the Enterprise Server.
H. The system shall be designed with a top-level 10/100bT Ethernet network, using the BACnet/IP, Lon Works IP.
I. BACnet MS/TP, BACnet IP, Lon Talk FTT-10A, shall be native to the NSCs. There shall not be a need to provide multiple NSCs to support all the network protocols, nor should there be a need to supply additional software to allow all three protocols to be natively supported. A sub-network of SDCUs using the BACnet MS/TP, Lon Talk FTT-10A, and/or Modbus RTU protocol shall connect the local, stand-alone controllers with Ethernet-level Network Server Controllers/IP Routers.
J. Standard Network Support
K. All NSCs, Workstation(s) and Servers shall be capable of residing directly on the owner's Ethernet TCP/IP LAN/WAN with no required gateways. Furthermore, the NSC's, Workstation(s), and Server(s) shall be capable of using standard, commercially available, off-the-shelf Ethernet infrastructure components such as routers, switches and hubs. With this design the owner may utilize the investment of an existing or new enterprise network or structured cabling system. This also allows the option of the maintenance of the LAN/WAN to be performed by the owner's Information Systems Department as all devices utilize standard TCP/IP components.
L. System Expansion
M. The BAS system shall be scalable and expandable at all levels of the system using the same software interface, and the same TCP/IP level and fieldbus level controllers. Systems that require replacement of either the workstation software or field controllers in order to expand the system shall not be acceptable.
N. Web-based operation shall be supported directly by the NSCs and require no additional software, other than a Java supported network browser.
O. The system shall be capable of using graphical and/or line application programming language for the Network Server Controllers.

2.3 SENSORS, TRANSMITTERS AND THERMOSTATS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Schneider Electric (MN-S3)
2. Veris Industries (TFCKR00 Series)
3. Kele (Room sensor ST-S24-EW-XA).

B. Temperature Sensors: Thermistor type with an accuracy of plus or minus 0.40-degree F over the entire control range. Sensors for pipe installations shall be immersion type, brass well, and thermistor with integral lead wire. Sensors for duct application shall be insertion probe type, stainless steel probe, integral handibox, and thermistor with integral lead wire. Space temperature sensors shall be compatible with the unit controller and shall be provided in a decorative metal or plastic enclosure. Space temperature sensors shall be provided with setpoint adjustment (lever or

slide type), and override pushbutton, and connection port for field service tool. Outdoor temperature sensors shall be mounted inside a protective weather and sun shield.

C. Space Temperature Sensor: Wall mounted room controller with integral digital display and user function keys to control room temperature setpoints, select fan speeds (where appropriate), view room and outside air temperatures, view room setpoints or discharge temperature, or initiate after-hours operation of the associated terminal unit or system. The controller shall also be capable of functioning as a field service tool to allow maintenance personnel to observe and adjust all control parameters resident in the terminal unit controller. These control parameters shall also be adjustable from the global controller. Sensor shall be standard two-wire connection and have a thermistor, housed in a decorative plastic enclosure.

D. Humidity Sensors: Thin-film capacitive type sensor with on-board nonvolatile memory, accuracy to plus or minus two percent (2%) at 0 to 90% RH, 12 - 30 VDC input voltage, analog output (0 - 10 VDC or 4 - 20mA output). Operating range shall be 0 to 100% RH and 32 to 140-degree F. Duct mounted type sensors shall have a stainless-steel insertion element, sealed to prohibit corrosion. Sensors shall be selected for wall, duct or outdoor type installation as appropriate.

E. Current Switches (Type 1): For proving fan or pump operational status, provide split-core type current status switches with adjustable setpoint and solid state internal circuitry. Current switch shall have induced power, trip point set adjustment to plus or minus 1% over a range of 1 to 135 amps, trip and power LED, and field adjustable to indicate both On-Off conditions and loss of load (broken belt, etc.). Units shall have a five-year manufacturer’s warranty. Current switches shall be Hawkeye Series H-908 by Veris Industries, or approved equal.

F. Low Temperature Sensors: For sensing low temperatures in air handling units, provide SPST type switch, 35 to 45-degree F range, manual reset, vapor charged twenty-foot-long sensing element, and 120-volt electrical power connection.

2.4 HUMIDITY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Schneider Electric (MN-S3HT)
2. Veris (HD Series)
3. MAMAC Systems, Inc
4. Accuracy: 3 percent full range with linear output.
5. Room Sensor Range: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity.
6. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
7. Duct Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with element guard and mounting plate.
8. Outside-Air Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with mounting enclosure, suitable for operation at outdoor temperatures of 0 to 120 degrees.
9. Duct and Sensors: With element guard and mounting plate, range of 0 to 100 percent relative humidity.

2.5 STATUS AND CURRENT SENSORS

A. Manufacturers

1. Veris (Hawkeye Series)
2. MAMAC Systems, Inc
3. Kele

B. Status Inputs for Fans

1. Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable range of 0- to 5-inch wg (0 to 1240 Pa). Or current-sensing fixed- or split-core transformers with self-powered transmitter, adjustable and suitable for 120 percent of rated motor current.

C. Status Inputs for Pumps

1. Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable pressure-differential range of 8 to 60 psig (55 to 414 kPa), piped across pump.

D. Status Inputs for Electric Motors

1. Comply with ISA 50.00.01, current-sensing fixed- or split-core transformers with self-powered transmitter, adjustable and suitable for 120 percent of rated motor current.

E. Status of fans, pumps, or motor using current switches

1. Self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current, selected to match current and system output requirements.

F. Water-Flow Switches

1. Bellows-actuated mercury or snap-acting type with pilot-duty rating, stainless- steel or bronze paddle, with appropriate range and differential adjustment, in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.

2.6 PRESSURE TRANSMITTERS/TRANSDUCER

A. Manufacturers:

1. Schneider Electric
2. Veris
3. Kele

B. Static-Pressure Transmitter:

1. Nondirectional sensor with suitable range for expected input, and temperature compensated.

C. Accuracy

1. 2 percent of full scale with repeatability of 0.5 percent. b.

2. Output: 4 to 20 mA.

D. Building Static-Pressure Range
   1. 0- to 1-inch wg . d.
   2. Duct Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 5-inch

E. Water Pressure Transducers:
   1. Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure; linear output 4 to 20 mA.

F. Water Differential-Pressure Transducers:
   1. Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure and tested to 300-psig; linear output 4 to 20 mA.

G. Differential-Pressure Switch (Air or Water)
   1. Snap acting, with pilot-duty rating and with suitable scale range and differential.

H. Pressure Transmitters
   1. Direct acting for gas, liquid, or steam service; range suitable for system; linear output 4 to 20 mA.

2.7 CONTROLS VALVES AND ACTUATORS

A. Manufacturers:
   1. Schneider Electric
   2. Belimo
   3. Trane

B. Control Valves:
   1. Factory fabricated, of type, body material, and pressure class based on maximum pressure and temperature rating of piping system, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Hydronic system globe valves shall have the following characteristics:

   1. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Class 125 bronze body, bronze trim, rising stem, renewable composition disc, and screwed ends with back seating capacity repackable under pressure.
   2. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Class 125 iron body, bronze trim, rising stem, plug-type disc, flanged ends, and renewable seat and disc.
   3. Internal Construction: Replaceable plugs and stainless-steel or brass seats.
      a. Single-Seated Valves: Cage trim provides seating and guiding surfaces for plug on top and bottom.

D. Sizing
1. 3 to 5 psi maximum pressure drop at design flow rate or the following:
2. 2 position line size.
3. Two-Way Modulating: Either the value specified above or twice the load pressure drop, whichever is more.
4. Three-Way Modulating: Twice the load pressure drops, but not more than value specified above.
5. Flow Characteristics: Two-way valves shall have equal percentage characteristics; three-way valves shall have linear characteristics.
6. Close-Off (Differential) Pressure Rating: Combination of actuator and trim shall provide minimum close-off pressure rating of 150 percent of total system (pump) head for two-way valves and 100 percent of pressure differential across valve or 100 percent of total system (pump) head.

D. Butterfly Valves: 200-psig (1380-kPa), maximum pressure differential, ASTM A 126 cast-iron or ASTM A 536 ductile-iron body and bonnet, extended neck, stainless-steel stem, field-replaceable EPDM or Buna N sleeve and stem seals.

1. Body Style: Wafer.
2. Disc Type: Nickel-plated ductile iron.
3. Sizing: 1-psig (7-kPa) maximum pressure drop at design flow rate.

E. Terminal Unit Control Valves (VAV, FCU, UV): Bronze body, bronze trim, two or three ports as indicated, replaceable plugs and seats, and union and threaded ends. Rating: Class 125 for service at 125 psig (860 kPa) and 250 deg F (121 deg C) operating conditions.
1. Sizing: 3-psig (21-kPa) maximum pressure drop at design flow rate, to close against pump shutoff head.
2. Flow Characteristics: Two-way valves shall have equal percentage characteristics; three-way
valves shall have linear characteristics. Actuator is floating signal fail in place type.

F. Electric Motors: Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.

1. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
2. Schneider electric, Belimo or Trane. Actuator on VAV, FCU, UV, Blower coil terminal unit
valves are failed in place floating signal type.
3. Nonspring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m) and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf (33.9 N x m).
4. Spring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65):Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m).
5. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m) and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf (33.9 N x m).
6. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft. (2.3 sq. m): Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf (16.9 N x m).

2.8 CO2 AND CO:

Manufacturers:

a. Schneider Electric
b. Veris
c. Kele

Carbon Dioxide and Carbon Monoxide Sensor and Transmitter: Single detectors using solid-state infrared sensors; suitable over a temperature range of 23 to 130 deg F (minus 5 to plus 55 deg C) and factory calibrated, with continuous or averaged reading, 4- to 20-mA output; for wall mounting or duct mounting as required by application.

2.9 AIRFLOW MEASURING STATIONS

Manufacturers:

1. Ebtron Gold Series
2. Air Monitor Corporation
3. Tech Air
4. Casing: Galvanized-steel frame.
5. Flow Straightener: Aluminum honeycomb, 3/4-inch (20-mm) parallel cell, 3 inches (75 mm) deep.
6. Sensing Manifold: Copper manifold with bullet-nosed static pressure sensors positioned on equal area basis.
7. Factory mounted Traq damper is acceptable.
8. Ebtron thermal dispersment technology type is acceptable.
7. For water flow Onicon F1210 dual turbine flow meter.

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS:

A. Panels: All enclosures for DDC controllers and devices shall be fabricated in accordance with UL Standards from code gauge steel. Enclosures shall be provided with a continuous hinge on the door and a flush latching mechanism. Enclosures shall be shop painted with standard grade enamel coating. Back panels shall be furnished when required to facilitate installation of boards or accessories. All enclosures installed outdoors shall be constructed to NEMA 3R standards. All controllers shall be installed within an approved enclosure unless the controller will be installed within the control cabinet section of the equipment that it is intended to control. Enclosures shall facilitate the mounting of gauges, switches, pilot lights, and the like, on the face panel when required. Control devices that are mounted on the face of the panel shall be identified with engraved nameplates.

B. Power Transformers: Step-down power transformers shall be provided for all DDC controllers and associated accessory devices as required. Transformers shall be sized and selected to accommodate all connected accessory items. Transformers shall be UL Listed Class 2 type with 120 VAC primary, 24 VAC secondary.

C. Relays: Miscellaneous control relays shall be provided as required to energize or control equipment and devices within the control system. Relays shall be located as close as practical to the controlled device (motor, motor starter, etc.). Where approved by NEC, relays may be installed within starters and equipment control panels where space is available. Relays installed outside of the controlled device shall be provided with a NEMA enclosure suitable for the location where installed.

D. Wiring: All wiring shall be installed in a neat and professional manner. Control wiring shall not be installed in power circuit conduits or raceways unless specifically approved for that purpose. All wiring shall be plenum rated cable where concealed and in EMT conduits when exposed.

1. Provide all interlock and control wiring. Provide wiring as required by functions as specified and as recommended by equipment and device manufacturers to achieve the specified control functions.
2. Low voltage conductors shall be stranded bare or tinned-copper with premium grade polymer alloy insulation. For shielded cable, furnish multi-conductor of overall polyester supported aluminum foil with stranded tinned copper drain wire to facilitate grounding. Coaxial shield shall be copper braided type. Provide shielded cable where recommended by the equipment or device manufacturer, grounded in strict accordance with the manufacture's recommendations.
3. Low voltage wiring shall be UL Listed type for the intended application. Non-plenum type cable shall be UL Type CM and /or CMR. Plenum type cable shall be UL type CMP and /or CL3P for approved plenum installations.

2.11 DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL SYSTEM

A. GENERAL

The Direct Digital Control (DDC) shall be Schneider Electric I/A Series LON or BACnet basis of design. BACnet or LON type global controller(s) and standalone or application specific unitary controller(s) configured as a distributed communications network composed of one or more levels of BACnet or LON compliant local area networks (LAN)

.

No gateways shall be used except when required to interface with specific equipment furnished by another manufacturer (e.g.: chiller controllers, packaged equipment controllers, etc.). The intent of the distributed control strategy is to install the controllers in close proximity to the equipment being controlled, and to distribute the processing to each standalone DDC panel. In the event of a communications failure of the BACnet or LON LAN, the controllers shall be capable of operating in standalone mode. All devices (global controllers, standalone controllers, programmable controllers, etc.) shall be UL Listed, FCC approved, and BACnet or LON compliant.

2.11 WORK INCLUDED:

A. Furnish a totally native BACnet or LON -based system based on distributed logic control in accordance with this specification section. The existing operator's terminal, all global controllers, logic controllers, and all input/output devices shall communicate using the protocols and local area network (LAN) standards as defined by ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135-1995, BACnet or LON. All DDC controllers, including unitary controllers, shall be native BACnet or LON devices. In general, no gateways shall be used except when required to interface with specific equipment furnished by another manufacturer. Scope of work will include, but not be limited to, the following:
   1. Provide all necessary BACnet or LON compliant hardware and software to meet the system's functional specifications. Provide Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) for every controller in the system, including unitary controllers. All direct digital logic hardware is to comply with BACnet or LON.
   2. Prepare individual hardware layouts, interconnection drawings, and software configuration from project design data.
   3. Implement the detailed design for all system-standard analog and binary objects, distributed control and system databases, graphic displays, logs, and management reports based on control descriptions, logic drawings, configuration data, and bid documents.
   4. Design, provide, and install all equipment enclosures, panels, data communication network cables needed, and all associated hardware.
   5. Provide and install all interconnecting cables between supplied enclosures, logic controllers, and input/output devices.
   6. Provide and install all interconnecting cables between all operator's terminals and peripheral devices (such as printers, etc.) supplied under this contract.
   7. Provide complete manufacturer's product data for all items that are supplied. Include vendor name of every item supplied.

A. provide qualified supervisory personnel and technicians at the job site to assist in all phases of system installation, startup, and commissioning.

B. Provide for operator training as described in this Section.

C. Provide "as-built" documentation, operator's terminal software, diagrams, and all other associated project operational documentation (such as technical manuals) on approved media, the sum total of which accurately represents the final system.

D. Provide new dampers, valves, actuators, sensors, controllers, and the like. No used components shall be provided as any part or piece of the installed system.

3.1 TRAINING

A. The Controls Contractor shall provide complete on-site training for the Owner's designated operating personnel. Training shall include all functional aspects of the control system and all modes of system operation. System modes include occupied/unoccupied, heating/cooling,

economizer, startup/shutdown, energy management, and alarm event operations. Training of Owner's operating personnel shall include a minimum of eight (8) hours of system instruction, conducted during one or two site visits for a combined total of eight hours of instruction. Additional instruction time may be requested by the Owner for an additional fee if needed for training additional personnel or if more instruction is requested. Training is not intended to include in-depth instruction in system programming. training shall be conducted during normal working hours, Monday through Friday, at the project site. When applicable, the training may be conducted at the Owner's central energy management office in addition to training on site.contractor shall furnish one (1) copy of the system Operator's Manual to the Owner. This manual should be delivered to the Owner at the time of training. This manual is in addition to the system As-built documents which are intended to show wiring configurations and sensor locations.

SECTION 231123 – FACILITY NATURAL GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
2. Piping specialties.
3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
4. Valves.
5. Pressure regulators.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:

1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Service Regulators: 65 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.

B. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: More than 0.5 psig but not more than 2 psig.

C. Natural-Gas System Pressures within Buildings: Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 0.5 psig but not more than 2 psig , and is reduced to secondary pressure of 0.5 psig or less.

D. Delegated Design: Design restraints and anchors for natural-gas piping and equipment, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.

1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
4. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.

a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.

2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Maximum Length: 72 inches.

B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.

1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
2. Nitrile seals.
3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.

C. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig

D. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.

B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

A. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.

1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.

2.5 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General Requirements:

1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller.

B. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.

1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
5. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
6. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
7. Regulator vent limiting device.
8. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig.

2.6 DIELECTRIC UNIONS

A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.

B. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.

C. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.

D. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

2.7 SLEEVES

A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

2.8 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe and sleeve.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one nut and bolt for each sealing element.

2.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 36 inches below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.

C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.

D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:

1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.

E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

F. Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel or cast-iron pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

G. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.2 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.

D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

G. Locate valves for easy access.

H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.

I. Install piping free of sags and bends.

J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

K. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

L. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

M. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.

N. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.

1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.

O. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

P. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.

Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.

R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.

S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment.

T. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.

3.3 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing or copper connector.

B. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.

C. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.

3.4 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints:

1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Welded Joints:

1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.

F. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.

G. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.

1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches minimum; rod size, 3/8 inch
2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.

B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.

C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.

D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within view of each gas-fired appliance and equipment (72” max). Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.

E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 231123

SECTION 232113 – HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes pipe and fitting materials, joining methods, special-duty valves, and specialties for the following:

1. Hot-water heating piping.
2. Chilled-water piping.
3. Makeup-water piping.
4. Condensate-drain piping.
5. Blowdown-drain piping.
6. Air-vent piping.
7. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps" for pumps, motors, and accessories for hydronic piping.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature:

1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
2. Chilled-Water Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
3. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg F.
4. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
5. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F.
6. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
7. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

1.4 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. All piping shall be manufactured in the USA.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cement.
2. Pressure-seal fittings.
3. Valves. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
4. Air control devices.
5. Chemical treatment.
6. Hydronic specialties.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Qualification Data: For Installer.

D. Field quality-control test reports.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

F. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by the pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.

B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

D. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 01.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Water-Treatment Chemicals: Furnish enough chemicals for initial system startup and for preventive maintenance for one year from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.

B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K.

C. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.

D. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; type, grade, and wall thickness as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.

F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.

G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

1. Material Group: 1.1.
2. End Connections: Butt welding.
3. Facings: Raised face.

H. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.

1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.

a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

G. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

2.4 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Description: Combination fitting of copper-alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.

B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

C. Dielectric Unions:

1. Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.

D. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

E. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

1. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.

2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.

F. Dielectric Couplings:

1. Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

G. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

2.5 VALVES

A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

C. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
    c. Flow Design Inc.
    d. Griswold Controls.
    e. Taco.

4. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
5. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
6. Plug: Resin.
7. Seat: PTFE.
8. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
9. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
10. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
11. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
12. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

D. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
    c. Flow Design Inc.
    d. Griswold Controls.
    e. Taco.

4. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
5. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
6. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
7. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
8. Seat: PTFE.
9. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
10. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
11. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
12. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
13. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

E. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Amtrol, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
    d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
    f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

4. Body: Bronze or brass.
5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
6. Seat: Brass.
7. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
8. Diaphragm: EPT.
9. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
10. Inlet Strainer: stainless steel, removable without system shutdown.

11. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
12. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

F. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Amtrol, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
    d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
    f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
8. Inlet Strainer: stainless steel, removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

G. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Flow Design Inc.
    b. Griswold Controls.
    c. PRO-Hydronics

4. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
5. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, tamper proof, self cleaning, and removable.
6. Combination Assemblies: Include bonze or brass-alloy ball valve.
7. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
8. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
9. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
10. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig.

11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.
12. Extra Materials: Provide additional flow cartridges as required for rebalancing of terminal unit water flows. Provide either:
    a. Provide replacement flow cartridges for one (1) year, free of charge.
    b. Additional flow cartridges equal to three (3) each of the following for each cartridge size installed: 1 GPM, 1.5 GPM, 2 GPM, 2.5 GPM, 3 GPM, 5 GPM.

2.6 AIR CONTROL DEVICES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Amtrol, Inc.
2. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
3. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
4. Taco.

C. Manual Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

D. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

E. Expansion Tanks:

1. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature, with taps in bottom of tank for tank fitting and taps in end of tank for gage glass. Tanks shall be factory tested with taps fabricated and labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
2. Air-Control Tank Fitting: Cast-iron body, copper-plated tube, brass vent tube plug, and stainless-steel ball check, 100-gal. unit only; sized for compression-tank diameter. Provide tank fittings for 125-psig working pressure and 250 deg F maximum operating temperature.

3. Tank Drain Fitting: Brass body, nonferrous internal parts; 125-psig working pressure and 240 deg F maximum operating temperature; constructed to admit air to compression tank, drain water, and close off system.
4. Gage Glass: Full height with dual manual shutoff valves, 3/4-inch- diameter gage glass, and slotted-metal glass guard.

F. Bladder-Type Expansion Tanks:

1. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature. Factory test with taps fabricated and supports installed and labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
2. Bladder: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
3. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

G. Tangential-Type Air Separators:

1. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 125-psig minimum working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature.
2. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.
3. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
5. Size: Match system flow capacity.

H. Air Purgers:

1. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
2. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig.
3. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.7 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

A. Bypass Chemical Feeder: Welded steel construction; 125-psig working pressure; 5-gal. capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.

1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.

2.8 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

C. T-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 750 psig.

D. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

E. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

F. Expansion fittings are specified in Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Hot-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.

B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be the following:

1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.

C. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.

D. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be the following:

1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.

E. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

F. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type DWV, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints or Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints. Do not install PVC piping in return air plenums.

G. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.

H. Air-Vent Piping:

1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.

I. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains, and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.

B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.

C. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.

D. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; and pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

E. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.

L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.

M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.

N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.

O. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.

P. Install valves according to Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

Q. Install unions in piping**,** NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.

S. Install strainers on inlet side of each control valve, pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, in-line pump, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 nipple and ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2.

T. Install expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides as specified in Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

U. Identify piping as specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger, support, and anchor devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.

B. Seismic restraints are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

C. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.

D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 3: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
7. NPS 4: Maximum span, 14 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.

8. NPS 6: Maximum span, 17 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.

E. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

F. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 8-foot intervals between floors.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.

F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.

H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.6 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.

B. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.

C. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 and larger.

D. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.

E. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated, in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches above the floor. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections. Install NPS 3/4 pipe from chemical feeder drain, to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.

F. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.

1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.

G. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

3.7 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.

B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.

C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.

D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections according to Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.8 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

A. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the following water characteristics:

1. pH: 9.0 to 10.5.
2. "P" Alkalinity: 100 to 500 ppm.
3. Boron: 100 to 200 ppm.
4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maximum 100 ppm.

5. Corrosion Inhibitor:

    a. Sodium Nitrate: 1000 to 1500 ppm.
    b. Molybdate: 200 to 300 ppm.
    c. Chromate: 200 to 300 ppm.
    d. Sodium Nitrate Plus Molybdate: 100 to 200 ppm each.
    e. Chromate Plus Molybdate: 50 to 100 ppm each.

6. Soluble Copper: Maximum 0.20 ppm.
7. Tolyiriazole Copper and Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Minimum 10 ppm.
8. Total Suspended Solids: Maximum 10 ppm.
9. Ammonia: Maximum 20 ppm.
10. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maximum 20 ppm.
11. Microbiological Limits:

    a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maximum 1000 organisms/ml.
    b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maximum 100 organisms/ml.
    c. Nitrate Reducers: 100 organisms/ml.
    d. Sulfate Reducers: Maximum 0 organisms/ml.
    e. Iron Bacteria: Maximum 0 organisms/ml

B. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.

C. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.

3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 24 hours, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 232114 – PREINSULATED BELOW GRADE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Specifications throughout all Divisions of the Project Manual are directly applicable to this Section, and this Section is directly applicable to them.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This section provides for furnishing, installing, and testing pre-insulated carbon steel direct buried water piping system including valves, fittings and appurtenances for chilled water service in conformance with ASME B 31.1 – 31.9, latest edition.

B. All preinsulated piping systems shall be completely sealed and waterproof, and they shall be capable of allowing sufficient movement for thermal expansion and contraction. Each assembly shall be factory-designed for the specific service medium, temperature, and pressure. Expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and guides shall be furnished and installed to provide a trouble-free system and avoid stress on any equipment.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. The latest published edition of a reference shall be applicable to this Project unless identified by a specific edition date.

B. All reference amendments adopted prior to the effective date of this Contract shall be applicable to this Project.

C. All materials, installation and workmanship shall comply with the applicable requirements and standards addressed within the following references:

1. ASME B31.9 Building Services Piping.
2. ASTM C518 Insulation thermal conductivity, "k factor".
3. ASTM D 638 Tensile strength and elongation of plastic materials.
4. ASTM D 1621 Compressive strength of insulating foam.
5. ASTM D 1622 Density of insulating foam.
6. ASTM D 2856 Closed cell content of insulating foam.
7. ASTM D 2240 Shore hardness of materials.

8. PPI TR-4 – Recommended Hydrostatic Strengths and Design Stresses for Thermoplastic Pipe and Fittings Compounds.

9. ASTM F 714 – Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) Based on Outside Diameter.

10. ASTM D 3035 - Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Controlled Outside Diameter.

11. ASTM D 3261 – Butt Heat Fusion Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe and Tubing.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The manufacturer is required to provide a field representative (paid for by the Contractor) to be present during the initial installation period to train the contractor on unloading and handling and installation of the insulated piping. Training shall address bedding preparation, insulation of joints and backfilling of piping. The manufacturer's representative shall make a minimum of five observations during the installation and shall submit a written report through the Contractor to the Engineer describing his observations including that he has inspected the piping at the job site for damage to the insulation and jacket, recommendations for correction to any improperly installed piping and the progress of the installation.

B. On completion of the installation, the Contractor shall deliver to the Owner a certificate from the manufacturer that the installation is in compliance with all installation recommendations and warranty requirements of the manufacturer.

C. Welders employed by the Contractor shall have passed a qualification test in accordance with the current edition of ANSI B31.1 Section IX, ASME Boiler and pressure vessel code. Welders shall be certified for the type of pipe material specified and position of welds required during fabrication of the piping. Submit the welding certificates and pictorial identification of each welder to the Engineer for review prior to commencing piping fabrication.

D. All welds shall be identified by the welder's mark and a sequence number. The Contractor shall employ a Certified Welding Inspector (CWI), certified as Level 2 minimum in the NDE methods utilized, independent of the contractor fabricating or installing the piping, to visually examine all welds in accordance with inspection and examination requirements of ANSI B 31.9. Any welds failing the visual inspection shall be ground out, re-welded and radiographed at the expense of the Contractor. The CWI shall submit a written report of his examination of each weld to the Engineer.

E. Additionally, 10% of all fitting, flange and joint welds, shop or field, minimum of 10 welds, randomly selected by the Engineer, shall be radiographed at the expense of the contractor. The certified welding inspector shall examine the films and provide a written report to the Engineer. All welds not meeting the requirements of ANSI B 31.1 latest edition will be ground out, re-welded and re-radiographed at the expense of the Contractor. If any two of the randomly selected radiographed welds fail, all welds in the piping will be radiographed and repaired at the expense of the contractor

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Submit shop drawings, to scale, of the piping layout of the pre-insulated direct buried piping system.

2. Drawings shall indicate all offsets, elevation changes and existing utility crossings.

3. Product data on materials.

4. Welders Certifications and proposed weld procedures shop and field.

5. End seal certification.

B. Record Documents:

1. The data submitted with the shop drawings shall certify that all materials used are meeting the indicated standards and conductivity (k)-factors, and that the proposed sealing method will assure a watertight system

2. Field reports.

3. Record as-built drawings of all buried and concealed piping, indicating exact locations, sizes, pipe materials, and service media. These documents exclude commodities by others except at locations where the specified piping procured and installed under the scope of this specification crosses under or over other pipes or types of utility commodities.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Products shall be delivered in original, unbroken packages, containers, or bundles bearing the name of the manufacture.

B. Products shall be carefully stored in a manner that will prevent damage and in an area that is protected from the elements.

C. End caps weather supplied by the piping manufacturer or fabricated by the contractor are to be placed at the ends of the piping sections to keep debris and reptiles from entering inside the pipe while it is placed in storage.

D. Prefabricated sections of the preinsulated pipe are to be handled per the manufacturer’s recommendations or instructions.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's warranty form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. All materials shall meet or exceed all applicable referenced standards, federal, state and local requirements, and conform to codes and ordinances of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Pre-insulated Piping:

1. All straight sections of steel pipe shall be factory insulated. Field weld joints shall be provided with field insulation kits to be compatible with the pre-insulated pipe.

2. The carrier pipe shall be concentrically located within the jacket.

3. Carrier pipe shall be standard weight, carbon steel, seamless, ASTM A-53, Grade A or B. All joints shall be butt-welded. Pipe fittings shall be standard weight seamless steel welding fittings satisfying ASTM A284, Grade WPA or WPB, ANSI B16.9e, long radius bends, having a wall thickness equal to the pipe. Piping fittings shall be factory welded to sections of straight pipe and factory insulated and jacketed. All piping shall be shipped from the factory to the job with ends capped.

4. Provide polyurethane insulated underground carbon steel core piping system with HDPE outer shell. The pre-insulated pipe shall be in unitized factory prefabricated sections. Pipe shall be listed suitable for use with 38°F chilled water.

5. Sock-o-lets for vents (2”), drains (2”), instrument taps (1”) and thermowells shall be located in each valve pit per plan and shall be welded on in the shop. Insulation shall be held back from such fittings to allow field installation of nipples and instruments.

6. Insulation. The insulation shall be formed-in-place closed-cell polyurethane foam providing intimate contact with both the core pipe and casing pipe. It shall be 90-95 percent closed cell with a 2 lb/cu.ft. density. Provide a thermal conductivity coefficient of 0.16 BTU/hr (sq. ft.) (F/In.) at 73°F.

MINIMUM INSULATION THICKNESS

Pipe Size (in.)	Insulation Thickness (in.)	
	Chilled Water	Hot Water
1 – 8	1.0	1.0
10 – 12	1.0	1.5
14 – 36	1.5	2.0

7. After hydrostatic testing of the carrier pipe, field joints shall be insulated, with kits provided by the pre-insulated pipe manufacturer. Field joint insulation shall be applied in straight sections by pour foaming in-situ, using molds furnished by the system manufacturer. Field joint insulation surface shall be sealed with a heat shrinkable sleeve. Insulation and jacket on all fittings shall be factory applied after pipe spool fabrication, extending continuously onto adjoining straight section(s) of pipe.

C. Casing:

1. The casing shall be seamless high-density polyethylene with a minimum thickness of 120 mils.

2. Joints and Fittings. Field joints shall be made only on straight pipe sections. Fitting insulation and casing shall be factory applied.

3. End Seals. The end of each pipe casing joint shall be sealed to the carrier pipe with a preformed flexible polyethylene end seal or by turning down the jacket to seal against the service pipe. End seals shall be factory applied and bonded to the jacket and carrier pipe. End seals/jacket combinations are to be certified by an independent testing laboratory at 20-foot head pressure for 48-hour test period to maintain a watertight seal. End seal certification shall be submitted for approval. Mastic end seals are not acceptable. O-Ring seals are not acceptable. Provide a preformed heat shrink end seal at all field cuts.

4. Underground piping shall be bedded in compacted granular material ASTM C33 gradation 67, with pea gravel 8" under, around and 6" over laid pipe. Cover with densely compacted backfill. Piping trench for a distance of 8'-0" out from building shall not have pea gravel or sand but shall be select backfill densely compacted as specified for building floor slab backfill.

5. Prepare shop drawings to scale indicating the entire site plan with all underground piping thereon. Elevations of all piping shall be indicated. Details of piping and bedding shall be drawn indicating size materials and arrangement. All shop drawings shall be submitted to the pipe manufacturer for their review and shall bear their stamp of approval prior to A/E review. Excavation for and laying of pipe shall not be started until these shop drawings are approved.

6. Prior to fabrication, the Contractor shall review drawings of all disciplines, visit the site and make on-site measurements to ascertain that no interferences will be encountered upon installation. If there are any significant deviations from the Contract Drawings, produce "Interference Drawings." Before fabricating the piping and installing related equipment, the Contractor shall send a letter to the Owner stating that no interferences exist in the proposed installation. By submitting this letter, the Contractor certifies that he has performed the above requirements and no interferences will result during installation. There will be no additional compensation for minor deviations.

7. Piping has a design pressure of 150 psig and shall be tested at a pressure of 225 psi. Test only one line at a time. Isolate piping from building and existing system during tests. Do not insulate field weld joints until after hydrotest.

8. Factory technical assistance shall be provided by an authorized representative of the manufacturer. The representative shall be thoroughly qualified in knowledge and experience in the proper installation methods of this type of piping system. Refer to paragraphs 1.04 A & B for additional requirements

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Products of the following manufacturers which comply with all requirements are acceptable:

1. Perma Pipe

2. Thermal Pipe Systems, Inc.

3. Thermacor

4. Insul-Tek

2.3 VALVES

A. Butterfly Valves

1. Provide equal to Pratt Model 2FII or Dezurik AWWA butterfly valves in the piping system as shown on the drawings.

2. Provide pressure class 150B per AWWA std. C504 iron or steel body flanged valves with manual operators with handwheels designed in strict compliance with the standard. Provide 304 stainless steel shaft with cast iron disc and meeting ASTM A120 Class B with 316 SS disc edge. Provide molded rubber seat (continuous from flange face to flange face) designed to insure that seat can not be torn from body and that the seat disc-seat indentation can not cause abrasion upon opening or closing.

3. Provide only carbon steel weld neck flanges conforming to ANSI B16.5, slip on flanges are not acceptable. Prior to installation of bolts accurately center and align flanged joints to prevent pre-stressing of flanges and valves. Install proper gaskets suitable for the intended service and factory cut to the proper dimensions. Apply non-stick clean surface lubricant to both sides of gasket. Use ANSI stainless steel nuts and bolts for underground piping flanges. Draw bolts tight to ensure proper seating of gaskets. Use anti-seize compound on bolts. On below grade piping do not backfill flange joints until piping is pressure tested and thermo cycled over night one time and the bolts are re-torqued.

B. Vent and drain valves shall be 2” treaded bronze one piece body ball valves with reinforced TFE seats and seals and bronze trim equal to Nibco T-560-BR-R-20.

C. Instrumentation valves shall be 1/2” treaded bronze one piece body ball valves with reinforced TFE seats and seals and bronze trim equal to Nibco T-560-BR-R-20.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Installation shall meet or exceed all applicable federal, state and local requirements, referenced standards and conform to codes and ordinances of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Install piping in accordance with the specifications, pipe manufacturer's published installation instructions and as shown on the drawings.

C. Field Supervision. Factory trained field supervision shall be provided for all critical periods of pre-insulated pipe installation including but not limited to: unloading, field joint construction, field insulation of joints and fittings, and testing.

D. Field Joints and Valves. All field joints and valves shall be insulated and sealed after successful hydrostatic test. Joint areas shall be backfilled after installation of insulation and jacket in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation.

E. Install pre-formed heat shrink seals on all field cuts of pre-insulated piping shall be in accordance with manufacturer’s published recommendations:

F. Backfill. Refer to typical piping trench detail on design drawings. Evenly fill trench width with 8 inch layers of backfill material compacting each layer to a minimum compaction of 95% of Standard Density as indicated in Division 2.

G. The Contractor shall contact the Owner's water treatment company and purchase and install recommended chemicals for flushing and treatment of the piping system. Initial charges of chemicals for cleaning and treatment of the piping system shall be at the expense of the Contractor.

H. Clean piping prior to filling system by using a pressurized water jet system that is drawn thru the piping system. The Contractor shall provide all temporary connections, piping, valves, air vents, portable pumps, shot feeders, etc. as required for cleaning, filling and draining the piping system. Submit a complete cleaning plan to the Engineer for review, include a drawing showing all temporary connections. Provide a written plan for filling the system, method of adding chemicals, description of chemicals to be used, and method of the disposal of cleaning water. Disposal of chemically treated water is to be in accordance with City of Houston requirements. After cleaning is complete introduce the approved chemicals into the system and provide a chemical analysis report of the treated water in the piping. After the report is approved by the owner, receive approval from the Owner to open the piping system to the buildings.

3.2 TESTING

A. Test each line separately, apply a hydraulic pressure of 225 psig and carefully check for leaks over the 4-hour test period. New distribution system shall be completely isolated from existing distribution system during testing by means of a weld end cap or flat plate. Repair all leaks and retest the system until proved leak tight. Note: Backfill piping as required, leaving joints exposed prior to subjecting piping to pressure test. After test, Contractor shall connect new piping to existing piping.

B. Ten percent (10%) of all welds shall be radiographed; ten welds minimum. If 2 welds fail, all welds will be radiographed and repaired as required at the Contractor's expense. Refer to paragraphs 1.04 C, D & E.

END OF SECTION 232114

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 232123 – HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.
2. Separately coupled, base-mounted, end-suction centrifugal pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.

B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.

B. Shop Drawings: Show pump layout and connections. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
2. Bell & Gossett; Div. of ITT Industries.
3. Peerless Pump; a Member of the Sterling Fluid Systems Group.
4. Taco, Inc.

5. Patterson Pump Company

B. Listing of manufacturers name does not guarantee approval. All equipment must meet or exceed quality and capacities of specified equipment. Final approval will be based on equipment submittals. Any manufacturer not listed but wishing to bid this project shall submit a written request 14 days prior to bid date, prior approval is required for all manufacturers not listed.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain hydronic pumps through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of hydronic pumps and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles with wooden flange covers or with screwed-in plugs.

B. Store pumps in dry location.

C. Retain protective covers for flanges and protective coatings during storage.

D. Protect bearings and couplings against damage from sand, grit, and other foreign matter.

E. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLOSE-COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically. Rate pump for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.

B. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded flanged connections. Casing shall include vent and drain ports.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
4. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
5. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.

C. Premium efficiency motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; and rigidly mounted to pump casing. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

D. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.2 SEPARATELY COUPLED, BASE-MOUNTED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal. Rate pump for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.

B. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and flanged connections.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
4. Mechanical Seal: Internally flushed carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket.
5. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.

6. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings contained in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.

C. Shaft Coupling: Flexible type spacer coupler capable of absorbing torsional vibration. Couplings shall be drop-out type to allow disassembly and removal without removing pump shaft or motor, EPDM coupling sleeve for variable-speed applications. Manufacturer shall align coupler before shipment.

D. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.

E. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor. Bases shall have closed ends and wide open grouting areas.

F. Premium efficiency motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

G. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.3 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

A. Suction Diffuser: Angle pattern, 175-psig pressure rating, cast -iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting; with bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers; bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes; drain plug; and factory-fabricated support.

B. Triple-Duty Valve: Angle or straight pattern, 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body, pump-discharge fitting; with drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features. Brass gage ports with integral check valve, and orifice for flow measurement.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CONCRETE BASES

A. Install concrete bases of dimensions indicated for pumps and controllers. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for HVAC."

1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around full perimeter of base.
2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

B. Cast-in-place concrete materials and placement requirements are specified in Division 03.

3.3 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Comply with HI 1.4.

B. Install pumps with access for periodic maintenance including removal of motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.

C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.

D. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stop of sufficient size to support pump weight. Vibration isolation devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Fabricate brackets or supports as required. Hanger and support materials are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

E. Suspend vertically mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps independent of piping. Install pumps with motor and pump shafts vertical. Use continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stop of sufficient size to support pump weight. Vibration isolation devices are specified in Division 21 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment." Hanger and support materials are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment/Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

F. Set base-mounted pumps on concrete foundation. Disconnect coupling before setting. Do not reconnect couplings until alignment procedure is complete.

1. Support pump baseplate on rectangular metal blocks and shims, or on metal wedges with small taper, at points near foundation bolts to provide a gap of 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches between pump base and foundation for grouting.
2. Adjust metal supports or wedges until pump and driver shafts are level. Check coupling faces and suction and discharge flanges of pump to verify that they are level and plumb.

3.4 ALIGNMENT

A. Align pump and motor shafts and piping connections after setting on foundation, grout has been set and foundation bolts have been tightened, and piping connections have been made.

B. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.

C. Adjust pump and motor shafts for angular and offset alignment by methods specified in HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation, HI 2.1-2.5, " Vertical Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation."

D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.

D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.

E. Install check valve and throttling or triple-duty valve on discharge side of pumps as indicated on the drtawings.

F. Install Y-type strainer or suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps as indicated on the drawings.

G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.

H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge, at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple input selector valve.

I. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.

J. Install electrical connections for power, controls, and devices.

K. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

L. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Check piping connections for tightness.
3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:

    a. Verify bearing lubrication.
    b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
    c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.

5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
6. Start motor.
7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

3.8 INSULATION

A. Following start-up, inspection and approval by the engineer of all pump, pump accessory, installation and operation, provide pump insulation (as dictated by pump service), according to 230700.

END OF SECTION 232123

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 232300 – REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-407C:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 230 psig.
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 380 psig.
3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 380 psig.

B. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."

B. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.4 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L

B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.

F. Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Socket ends.
3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch- long assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.2 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
4. Seat: Nylon.
5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

B. Packed-Angle Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
3. Operator: Rising stem.
4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

C. Check Valves:

1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

D. Service Valves:

1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Copper spring.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with ARI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24 V ac coil.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
8. Manual operator.

F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Seat Disc: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with ARI 750.

1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg .
6. Superheat: Adjustable.
7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 450 psig

H. Straight-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

I. Angle-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

J. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

K. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated charcoal.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Rated Flow: as indicated on the drawings.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

L. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated charcoal.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS ¼ connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Rated Flow: tons as indicated on the drawings
9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

M. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with ARI 495.

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.

3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

B. Suction Lines NPS 4 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.

C. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.

D. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

E. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
3. NPS 2 to NPS 3: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
4. NPS 4: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

F. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

G. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
3. NPS 2 to NPS 3: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed or soldered joints.
4. NPS 4: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.

B. Install service valves for gage taps at strainers if they are not an integral part of strainers.

C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.

D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.

E. Install a full-sized, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.

F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.

G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.

1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.

H. Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.

I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.

J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for device being protected:

1. Solenoid valves.
2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
3. Compressor.

K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.

L. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.

B. Install refrigerant piping in accordance with the equipment manufacturer’s recommendations.

C. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.

D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

G. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.

H. Install piping free of sags and bends.

I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

K. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.

L. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.

M. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.

N. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.

O. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:

1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
4. Liquid lines may be installed level.

P. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.

Q. Install pipe sleeves at penetrations in exterior walls and floor assemblies.

R. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.

S. Install sleeves through floors, walls, or ceilings, sized to permit installation of full-thickness insulation.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

B. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."

1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

B. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches minimum rod size, 1/4 inch
2. NPS 5/8 Maximum span, 60 inches minimum rod size, 1/4 inch
3. NPS 1 Maximum span, 72 inches minimum rod size, 1/4 inch
4. NPS 1-1/4 Maximum span, 96 inches minimum rod size, 3/8 inch
5. NPS 1-1/2 Maximum span, 96 inches minimum rod size, 3/8 inch
6. NPS 2 Maximum span, 96 inches minimum rod size, 3/8 inch
7. NPS 2-1/2 Maximum span, 108 inches minimum rod size, 3/8 inch
8. NPS 3 Maximum span, 10 feet minimum rod size, 3/8 inch
9. NPS 4 Maximum span, 12 feet minimum rod size, 1/2 inch

C. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
2. Test refrigerant piping and specialties. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.

a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.

B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.

C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning controllers to the system design temperature.

D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:

1. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
2. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
3. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
4. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.

E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 232500 – WATER TREATMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following HVAC water-treatment systems:

1. Bypass chemical-feed equipment and controls.
2. Biocide chemical-feed equipment and controls.
3. Chemical treatment test equipment.
4. HVAC water-treatment chemicals.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Water quality for HVAC systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of HVAC equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.

B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, HVAC system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, chilled water, ground loop heat pump piping, dual-temperature water, and glycol cooling, shall have the following water qualities:

1. pH: Maintain a value within 9.0 to 10.5.
2. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
3. Boron: Maintain a value within 100 to 200 ppm.
4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
5. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
6. TDS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
7. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
8. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
9. Microbiological Limits:

a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/ml.
b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.
e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.

D. Open hydronic systems, including condenser water, shall have the following water qualities:

1. pH: Maintain a value within 9.0 to 10.5.
2. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
3. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.

4. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
5. TDS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
6. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
7. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
8. Microbiological Limits:

    a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/ml.
    b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
    c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
    d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.
    e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.

9. Polymer Testable: Maintain a minimum value within 10 to 40.

E. Passivation for Galvanized Steel: For the first 60 days of operation.

1. pH: Maintain a value within 7 to 8.
2. Calcium Carbonate Hardness: Maintain a value within 100 to 300 ppm.
3. Calcium Carbonate Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 300 ppm.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical treatment equipment showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to HVAC systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Wiring Diagrams: Power and control wiring.

C. Field quality-control test reports.

D. Other Informational Submittals:

1. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in the "Performance Requirements" Article above.
2. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.
3. Passivation Confirmation Report: Verify passivation of galvanized-steel surfaces, and confirm this observation in a letter to Architect.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

A. Bypass Feeders: Steel, with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.

1. Capacity: 5 gal..
2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.

2.2 AUTOMATIC CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

A. Water Meter:

1. AWWA C700, oscillating-piston, magnetic-drive, totalization meter.
2. Body: Bronze.
3. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
4. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
5. Controls: Flow-control switch with normally open contacts; rated for maximum 10 A, 250-V ac; and that will close at adjustable increments of total flow.

B. Inhibitor Injection Timers:

1. Microprocessor-based controller with LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
2. Programmable timers with infinite adjustment over full range, and mounted in cabinet with hand-off-auto switches and status lights.
3. Test switch.
4. Hand-off-auto switch for chemical pump.
5. Illuminated legend to indicate feed when pump is activated.
6. Programmable lockout timer with indicator light. Lockout timer to deactivate the pump and activate alarm circuits.
7. LCD makeup totalizer to measure amount of makeup and bleed-off water from two water meter inputs.

C. pH Controller:

1. Microprocessor-based controller, 1 percent accuracy in a range from zero to 14 units. Incorporate solid-state integrated circuits and digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status

indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
2. Digital display and touch pad for input.
3. Sensor probe adaptable to sample stream manifold.
4. High, low, and normal pH indication.
5. High or low pH alarm light, trip points field adjustable; with silence switch.
6. Hand-off-auto switch for acid pump.
7. Internal adjustable hysteresis or deadband.

D. TDS Controller:

1. Microprocessor-based controller, 1 percent accuracy in a range from zero to 5000 micromhos. Incorporate solid-state integrated circuits and digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
2. Digital display and touch pad for input.
3. Sensor probe adaptable to sample stream manifold.
4. High, low, and normal conductance indication.
5. High or low conductance alarm light, trip points field adjustable; with silence switch.
6. Hand-off-auto switch for solenoid bleed-off valve.
7. Bleed-off valve activated indication.
8. Internal adjustable hysteresis or deadband.
9. Bleed Valves:

    a. Cooling Systems: Forged-brass body, globe pattern, general-purpose solenoid with continuous-duty coil, or motorized valve.

E. Biocide Feeder Timer:

1. Microprocessor-based controller with digital LCD display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
2. 24-hour timer with 14-day skip feature to permit activation any hour of day.
3. Precision, solid-state, bleed-off lockout timer and clock-controlled biocide pump timer. Prebleed and bleed lockout timers.
4. Solid-state alternator to enable use of two different formulations.
5. 24-hour display of time of day.
6. 14-day display of day of week.
7. Battery backup so clock is not disturbed by power outages.
8. Hand-off-auto switches for biocide pumps.
9. Biocide A and Biocide B pump running indication.

F. Chemical Solution Tanks:

1. Chemical-resistant reservoirs fabricated from high-density opaque polyethylene with minimum 110 percent containment vessel.
2. Molded cover with recess for mounting pump.
3. Capacity: 30 gal..

G. Chemical Solution Injection Pumps:

1. Self-priming, positive-displacement; rated for intended chemical with minimum 25 percent safety factor for design pressure and temperature.
2. Adjustable flow rate.
3. Metal and thermoplastic construction.
4. Built-in relief valve.
5. Fully enclosed, continuous-duty, single-phase motor. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

H. Chemical Solution Tubing: Polyethylene tubing with compression fittings and joints.

I. Injection Assembly:

1. Quill: Minimum NPS 1/2 with insertion length sufficient to discharge into at least 25 percent of pipe diameter.
2. Ball Valve: Two-piece, stainless steel; selected to fit quill.
3. Packing Gland: Mechanical seal on quill of sufficient length to allow quill removal during system operation.
4. Assembly Pressure/Temperature Rating: Minimum 600 psig at 200 deg F.

2.3 CHEMICAL TREATMENT TEST EQUIPMENT

A. Test Kit: Manufacturer-recommended equipment and chemicals in a wall-mounting cabinet for testing pH, TDS, inhibitor, chloride, alkalinity, and hardness; sulfite and testable polymer tests for high-pressure boilers, and oxidizing biocide test for open cooling systems.

B. Corrosion Test-Coupon Assembly: Constructed of corrosive-resistant material, complete with piping, valves, and mild steel and copper coupons. Locate copper coupon downstream from mild steel coupon in the test-coupon assembly.

1. Two-station rack for closed-loop systems.
2. Four-station rack for open systems.

2.4 CHEMICALS

A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment, and that can attain water quality specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.

B. Water Softener Chemicals:

1. Mineral: High-capacity, sulfonated-polystyrene ion-exchange resin that is stable over entire pH range with good resistance to bead fracture from attrition or shock. Resin exchange capacity minimum 30,000 grains/cu. ft. of calcium carbonate of resin when regenerated with 15 lb of salt.
2. Salt for Brine Tanks: High-purity sodium chloride, free of dirt and foreign material. Rock and granulated forms are not acceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install chemical application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.

B. Install water testing equipment on wall near water chemical application equipment.

C. Install interconnecting control wiring for chemical treatment controls and sensors.

D. Mount sensors and injectors in piping circuits.

E. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, chilled water, dual-temperature water, and glycol cooling, and equipped with the following:

1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
2. Install water meter in makeup water supply.
3. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
4. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below feeder inlet.
5. Install a swing check on inlet after the isolation valve.

F. Install automatic chemical-feed equipment for condenser water and include the following:

1. Install makeup water softener.
2. Install water meter in makeup water supply.
3. Install inhibitor injection pumps and solution tanks with injection timer sensing contacts in water meter.

    a. Pumps shall operate for timed interval on contact closure at water meter in makeup water supply connection. Injection pump shall discharge into boiler feedwater tank or feedwater supply connection at boiler.

4. Install test equipment and provide test-kit to Owner. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
5. Install TDS controller with sensor and bleed valves.

    a. Bleed valves shall cycle to maintain maximum TDS concentration.

6. Install pH sensor and controller with injection pumps and solution tanks.

a. Injector pumps shall operate to maintain required pH.

7. Install biocide feeder alternating timer with two sets of injection pumps and solution tanks.

a. Injection pumps shall operate to feed biocide on an alternating basis.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for HVAC."

D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

E. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup water connections to potable-water systems.

F. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in Division 26 Sections for connecting electrical equipment.

G. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

H. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.

B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.

2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of HVAC systems' startup procedures.
4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. At eight-week intervals following Substantial Completion, perform separate water analyses on hydronic systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.

F. Mechanical Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining water treatment system while the system is under warranty (for a minimum period of one year from substantial completion). Mechanical contractor shall document all water analyses performed.

G. Comply with ASTM D 3370 and with the following standards:

1. Silica: ASTM D 859.
2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067.
3. Iron: ASTM D 1068.
4. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 232500

SECTION 233113 – METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Double-wall round ducts and fittings.
4. Sheet metal materials.
5. Duct liner.
6. Sealants and gaskets.
7. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and seismic restraints shall withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."

1. Seismic Hazard Level A: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.48.
2. Seismic Hazard Level B: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.30.
3. Seismic Hazard Level C: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.15.

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
5. Design Calculations: Calculations, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation for selecting hangers and supports and seismic restraints.

D. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."

D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Lindab Inc.
    b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    c. SEMCO Incorporated.
    d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
    e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    f. Hamlin

B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).

C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.

D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Seams - Round Duct and Fittings," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Lindab Inc.
2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
3. SEMCO Incorporated.
4. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.

B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension) of the inner duct.

C. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.

2. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Seams - Round Duct and Fittings," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

a. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch- diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.

E. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.

F. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.

D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.

E. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.

F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.

G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.5 DUCT LINER

A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
b. Johns Manville.
c. Knauf Insulation.
d. Owens Corning.

3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
4. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.

a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-19, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:

    a. Fan discharges.
    b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
    c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.

9. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:

1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
2. Tape Width: 4 inches.
3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.

6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
10. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.7 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.

F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.

D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.

B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.

D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOOD EXHAUST DUCT

A. Install commercial kitchen hood exhaust ducts without dips and traps that may hold grease, and sloped a minimum of 2 percent to drain grease back to the hood.

B. Install fire-rated access panel assemblies at each change in direction and at maximum intervals of 20 feet in horizontal ducts, and at every floor for vertical ducts, or as indicated on Drawings. Locate access panel on top or sides of duct a minimum of 1-1/2 inches from bottom of duct.

C. Do not penetrate fire-rated assemblies except as allowed by applicable building codes and authorities having jurisdiction.

3.4 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.

1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.

3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.

C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.

D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.

F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.6 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."

1. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
2. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.

B. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads.

C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.

D. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.

E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing and restraints to structure, to flanges of beams, to upper truss chords of bar joists, or to concrete members.

G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify the Architect if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid pre-stressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.

2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.8 PAINTING

A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Leakage Tests:
1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
2. Test the following systems:
   a. All medium pressure supply mains from built-up Air Handling Units to the terminal box connections.
   b. All concealed low pressure supply mains from built up Air Handing Units.
   c. Low pressure supply ducts (single zone units and supply ductwork downstream of terminal boxes): Test representative duct sections**,** totaling no less than 10 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.

2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."

    a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 DUCT CLEANING

A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.

1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.11 START UP

A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.12 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel unless noted otherwise.

B. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Rooftop Units:

   a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 4.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 4.

2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

   a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 4.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 4.

C. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Rooftop Units:

   a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.

c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 4.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 4.

2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 4.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 4.

D. Exhaust Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:

a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 4.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 4.

2. Ducts Connected to Commercial Kitchen Hoods: Comply with NFPA 96.

a. Exposed to View: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 4 finish.
b. Concealed: Carbon-steel sheet.
c. Welded seams and joints.
d. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
e. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
f. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.

3. Ducts Connected to Dishwasher Hoods:

a. Type 304, stainless-steel sheet.
b. Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
c. Concealed: No. 2D finish.
d. Welded seams and flanged joints with watertight EPDM gaskets.
e. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
f. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
g. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.

4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 4
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 4.

E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Indoor Units or Packaged Heat Pumps:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.

c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 4.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 4.

2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 4.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 4.

F. Intermediate Reinforcement:

1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.

2. Stainless-Steel Ducts:

a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.

3. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum.

G. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:

1. Supply Air Ducts: 1 inch thick.
2. Return Air Ducts: 1 inch thick.

H. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:

1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.

b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:

1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:

1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.

3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-3, "Round Duct Elbows."

a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.

1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.

b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.

I. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-6, "Branch Connections."

a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.

2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.

a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113

SECTION 233300 – AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Barometric relief dampers.
3. Manual volume dampers.
4. Control dampers.
5. Fire dampers.
6. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
7. Flange connectors.
8. Turning vanes.
9. Remote damper operators.
10. Duct-mounted access doors.
11. Flexible connectors.
12. Flexible ducts.
13. Duct accessory hardware.
14. Airflow Monitoring Stations

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Gravity Ventilators" for roof-mounted ventilator caps.
2. Division 28 Section "Fire Detection and Alarm" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.

B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:

    a. Special fittings.
    b. Manual volume damper installations.
    c. Control damper installations.
    d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
    e. Duct security bars.
    f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

B. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

C. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304.

D. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

E. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.

F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.2 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
4. Nailor Industries Inc.
5. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
6. Ruskin Company.
7. SEMCO Incorporated.

B. Description: Gravity balanced.

C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1500 fpm.

D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.

E. Maximum Leakage: 40” wide, 1% of max. flow.

F. Frame: 0.09-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners.

G. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, maximum 6-inch width, 0.050-inch- thick aluminum sheet with sealed edges.

H. Blade Action: Parallel.

I. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked.

J. Blade Axles:

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.

K. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

L. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

M. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.

N. Accessories: (as noted on plans or required by installation)

1. Electric actuators.
2. Chain pulls.
3. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
    a. Sleeve Thickness: 20-gage minimum.
    b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.
4. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
5. Screen Material: Aluminum.
6. Screen Type: Bird or Insect (as noted on drawings)
7. 90-degree stops.

2.3 BAROMETRIC RELIEF DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
4. Nailor Industries Inc.
5. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
6. Ruskin Company.
7. SEMCO Incorporated.

B. Suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting.

C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1000 fpm..

D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg.

E. Maximum Leakage: 40” wide, 1% of max. flow.

F. Frame: 0.09-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners.

G. Blades:

1. Multiple, 0.025-inch- thick, roll-formed aluminum.
2. Maximum Width: 2 inches.
3. Action: Parallel.
4. Balance: Gravity.
5. Eccentrically pivoted.

H. Blade Seals: Vinyl.

I. Blade Axles: ½” diameter synthetic

J. Tie Bars and Brackets:

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Rattle free with 90-degree stop.

K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

L. Bearings: Synthetic.

M. Accessories: (as noted on plans or required by installation)

1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
3. Flange on intake.

2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
c. METALAIRE, Inc.
d. Nailor Industries Inc.
e. Ruskin Company.

2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
3. Frames:

a. Hat-shaped, galvanized-steel channels, 16-gauge minimum thickness.
b. Mitered and welded corners.
c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

4. Blades:

a. Multiple or single blade.
b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
d. Galvanized-steel, 16-gauge thick.

5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
6. Bearings:

a. Molded synthetic.
b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. METALAIRE, Inc.
4. Metal Form Manufacturing, Inc.
5. **Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.**
6. Nailor Industries Inc.
7. Ruskin Company.

B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.

C. Frames:

1. Hat shaped.
2. Galvanized-steel channels, 0.064 inch thick.
3. Mitered and welded corners.

D. Blades:

1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 8 inches, airfoil design.
2. Opposed-blade design.
3. Galvanized steel.
4. 14-gauge thickness.
5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene edging.
6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F. Bearings:

1. Stainless-steel sleeve.
2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Nailor Industries Inc.
4. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
5. NCA Manufacturing.
6. Ruskin Company.

B. Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.

C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.

D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.

E. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream except when located behind grille where blades may be inside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 20-gauge galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.

1. Minimum Thickness: 0.052 or 0.138 inch thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.

G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.

J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links (unless noted otherwise).

2.7 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Nailor Industries Inc.
4. NCA Manufacturing.
5. **Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.**
6. Ruskin Company.

B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.

C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.

D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.

E. Frame: Multiple-blade type; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

F. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links (unless noted otherwise).

G. Heat-Responsive Device: Electric resettable link and switch package, factory installed, rated.

H. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

I. Leakage: Class I.

J. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.

K. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 20-gauge thickness, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.

L. Master control panel for use in dynamic smoke-management systems.

M. Damper Motors: Modulating or two-position action.

N. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC." and Division 26 Sections.
3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
7. Electrical Connection: 120V or 24V as noted on the drawings.

O. Accessories: (as indicated on the drawings)

1. Auxiliary switches for position indication.
2. Momentary test switch, damper mounted.

2.8 TURNING VANES

A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

D. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 30 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.9 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
2. Ventfabrics, Inc.
3. Young Regulator Company.
4. Metropolitan.

B. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.

C. Tubing: Brass.

D. Cable: Stainless steel.

E. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed, 3/4 inches deep.

F. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Stainless steel.

2.10 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
4. McGill AirFlow LLC.
5. Nailor Industries Inc.
6. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.

7. Ruskin

B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-10, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 2-11, "Access Panels - Round Duct."

1. Door:

a. Double wall, rectangular.
b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
c. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
d. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.

2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:

a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches.
d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Four hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

C. Pressure Relief Access Door:

1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Door: Single wall, 12-gauge.
3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
4. Factory set at 2” to 10” for positive pressure and -4” to -10” for negative pressure.
5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
7. Latches: Cam.
8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch- thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

2.11 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
4. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.

C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.

1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

G. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch movement at start and stop.

2.12 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.

C. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007.

D. Flexible Duct Connectors:

1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action or nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

2.13 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

2.14 AIRFLOW MONITORING STATIONS

A. Air Measuring Stations to be furnished under this section of specification and installed under Division 23 Section. Provide where indicated and scheduled, an airflow measuring element assembly capable of continuously monitoring the airflow capacity in the duct.

1. The airflow sensing elements shall be constructed of 6000 Series extruded aluminum, forming two (2) integral chambers for Total and Static pressure averaging, without the physical presence of forward projecting sensors. Individual Total and Static pressure sensing elements are not acceptable.

2. The number of sensing ports on each element, and the quantity of elements utilized at each installation, shall comply with the ASHRAE Standard #111 for duct traversing. The airflow traverse elements shall be capable of producing steady, non-pulsating signals of standard total and static pressure, without amplification nor flow correction (K factors), or field calibration, with an accuracy of 2% of actual flow for operating velocities as low as 100 feet per minute.

3. The airflow elements shall not induce a pressure drop greater than .03" Water Column at 2000 FPM, nor shall the sound level within the duct be amplified by its presence in the air stream. Each airflow measuring element shall contain multiple Total and Static pressure sensors.

4. Where primary flow elements are located outside of the manufacturers published installation guidelines the manufacturer shall be consulted, and approve of any special configurations, such as air equalizers and/or additional and strategically placed measuring points as may be required.

5. Where the stations are installed in insulated ducts, the airflow passage of the station shall be the same size as the inside airflow dimension of the duct. Station flanges shall be two inch to three inch to facilitate matching connecting ductwork.

6. The main take-off point from both the total pressure and the static pressure elements MUST be symmetrical. The probes shall be mounted in an eight inch deep, 16 gauge galvanized steel casing with 90 degree undrilled flanges, fabricated to the duct size, and shall contain multiple airflow traverse elements interconnected as herein before described.

7. An identification label shall be placed on each element listing the Model No., System Served, Size and Identifying Tag Number.

8. The airflow measuring element shall be the FE-1500 as manufactured by Paragon Controls Incorporated (or approval equal).

B. Airflow Indicating Transducers to be furnished and installed under this section of the specification.

1. Provide individual airflow transducers, especially selected for the required design operating spans of each of the above primary elements.

2. The electronic flow transducer(s) shall be solid-state analog type, with infinite resolution to facilitate volume tracking control functions. Microprocessor based transducers with time-sharing of multiple square root extractors and/or controllers are not acceptable.

3. The transducer(s) shall be housed in a NEMA 1 enclosure with integral terminal strip for field wiring, and power and output signal conduit connection port.

4. Each transducer=s output shall not be affected by direction of mounting (attitude) or external vibrations, and shall be furnished with a factory calibrated span. The analog output signal shall be linear to air volume, which is factory set for a full scale value equal to 110% of the maximum design capacity of the flow measuring element served for variable air volume applications, or 200% of the design operating value for constant volume applications.

5. Electronic transducers shall operate on 16 to 36 VDC: Transducer(s) shall have outputs of 4 to 20 mA/2-wire or 0-10VDC/3-wire.

6. Each transducer shall be provided with a local indicating meter. The local digital indicating meter shall be one half-inch high, three and one half digit liquid crystal display (LCD) type. The LCD shall indicate the measured air volume in engineering units of cubic feet per minute (CFM). The meter shall be calibrated to an accuracy of + 1 count.

7. Transducer performance shall be equal or better than the following:

Hysteresis: +0.05%

Linearity: +0.4%
Repeatability: +0.1%
Temperature Effects: <+0.03% F.S./□F
Over-pressure: 5 PSIG Proof
Response: <0.25 seconds for full span input
Noise Filtration: Low Pass Filter, factory set @ 3.2Hz
Transducer Span: < 2 times the design velocity pressure @ maximum flow
Accuracy: +0.5% F.S. (Terminal Point) / +0.35% F.S. (BFSL)

8. The airflow indicating transducers shall be the FIT-1001D as manufactured by Paragon Controls Incorporated (or approval equal).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.

B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.

C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.

1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.

E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.

G. Install fire dampers according to UL listing and manufacturer’s instructions.

H. Connect ducts to duct silencers with flexible duct connectors.

I. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:

1. On both sides of duct coils.
2. Upstream from duct filters.
3. At drain pans and seals.

4. Where noted on plans: Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
5. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
6. Control devices requiring inspection.
7. Elsewhere as indicated.

J. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

K. Access Door Sizes:

1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.

L. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

M. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

N. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.

O. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 6-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

P. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum 48-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

Q. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with approved strap and sealant.

R. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

S. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.

3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233423 – HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. See fan schedule on drawings for additional requirements and specific options required for each fan.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Utility set fans.
2. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
3. Axial roof ventilators.
4. Upblast propeller roof exhaust fans.
5. Ceiling-mounting ventilators.
6. In-line centrifugal fans.
7. Propeller fans.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on sea level.

B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

1.4 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Greenheck
2. Loren Cook Company
3. Penn Ventilation
4. Twin City Fans

B. Listing of manufacturers name does not guarantee approval. All equipment must meet or exceed quality and capacities of specified equipment. Final approval will be based on equipment submittals. Any manufacturer not listed but wishing to bid this project shall submit a written request 14 days prior to bid date, prior approval is required for all manufacturers not listed.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated and include the following:

1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
6. Roof curbs.
7. Fan speed controllers.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, wiring diagrams, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. AMCA Compliance: Products shall comply with performance requirements and shall be licensed to use the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

C. NEMA Compliance: Motors and electrical accessories shall comply with NEMA standards.

D. UL Standard: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver fans as factory-assembled unit, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations, with protective crating and covering.

B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.

B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

C. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

A. Description: Direct- or belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, curb base, and accessories.

B. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.

1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains and grease collector for UL 762 kitchen hood exhaust fans.
2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.

C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.

D. Belt-Driven Drive Assembly: Resiliently mounted to housing, with the following features:

1. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
2. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
3. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
4. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.

E. Accessories: (See drawings for required accessories).

1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
5. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops. Backdraft dampers on all roof mounted supply fans shall be motorized.

F. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 8 inches (unless noted otherwise).

3. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
4. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
5. Burglar Bars: 1/2-inch- thick steel bars welded in place to form 6-inch squares (where indicated on the drawings).
6. Vented Curb: Unlined with louvered vents in vertical sides (where indicated on the drawings).

G. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.2 UPBLAST PROPELLER ROOF EXHAUST FANS

A. Description: Direct- or belt-driven propeller fans consisting of housing, wheel, butterfly-type discharge damper, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, curb base, and accessories.

B. Wind Band, Fan Housing, and Base: Reinforced and braced galvanized steel, containing butterfly dampers and rain trough, motor and drive assembly, and fan wheel.

1. Damper Rods: Steel with bronze bearings.
2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.

C. Fan Wheel: Replaceable, extruded-aluminum, airfoil blades fastened to cast-aluminum hub; factory set pitch angle of blades.

D. Belt-Driven Drive Assembly: Resiliently mounted to housing; weatherproof housing of same material as fan housing with the following features:

1. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
2. Shaft Bearings: Prelubricated and sealed, self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings.
3. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
4. Motor Mount: On outside of fan cabinet, adjustable base for belt tensioning.

E. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 8 inches (unless noted otherwise).
3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation matrix.
4. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
5. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
6. Burglar Bars: 1/2-inch- thick steel bars welded in place to form 6-inch squares Where indicated on the plans).

F. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.3 CEILING-MOUNTING VENTILATORS

A. Description: Centrifugal fans designed for installing in ceiling or wall or for concealed in-line applications.

B. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.

C. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.

D. Grille: Plastic, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.

E. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.

F. Accessories: (See drawings for required accessories).

1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Manual Starter Switch: Single-pole rocker switch assembly with cover and pilot light.
3. Time-Delay Switch: Assembly with single-pole rocker switch, timer, and cover plate.
4. Motion Sensor: Motion detector with adjustable shutoff timer.
5. Ceiling Radiation Damper: Fire-rated assembly with ceramic blanket, stainless-steel springs, and fusible link.
6. Filter: Washable aluminum to fit between fan and grille.
7. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.
8. Manufacturer's standard roof jack or wall cap, and transition fittings.

G. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.4 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

A. Description: In-line, direct- or belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, outlet guide vanes, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, mounting brackets, and accessories.

B. Housing: Split, spun aluminum with aluminum straightening vanes, inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.

C. Direct-Driven Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing.

D. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.

E. Fan Wheels: Aluminum, airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.

F. Accessories:

1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Volume-Control Damper: Manually operated with quadrant lock, located in fan outlet.
3. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
4. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
5. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Galvanized steel.

G. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.5 PROPELLER FANS

A. Description: Direct- or belt-driven propeller fans consisting of fan blades, hub, housing, orifice ring, motor, drive assembly, and accessories.

B. Housing: Galvanized-steel sheet with flanged edges and integral orifice ring with baked-enamel finish coat applied after assembly.

C. Steel Fan Wheels: Formed-steel blades riveted to heavy-gage steel spider bolted to cast-iron hub.

D. Fan Wheel: Replaceable, extruded-aluminum, airfoil blades fastened to cast-aluminum hub; factory set pitch angle of blades.

E. Belt-Driven Drive Assembly: Resiliently mounted to housing, statically and dynamically balanced and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.

1. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.4.
2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.

    a. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L_{10} of 100,000 hours.

4. Pulleys: Cast iron with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
5. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 10 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
6. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
7. Belt Guards: Fabricate of steel for motors mounted on outside of fan cabinet.

F. Accessories: (See drawings for required accessories).

1. Gravity Shutters: Aluminum blades in aluminum frame; interlocked blades with nylon bearings.
2. Motor-Side Back Guard: Galvanized steel, complying with OSHA specifications, removable for maintenance.
3. Wall housing: Galvanized steel to match fan and accessory size.
4. Weathershield Hood: Galvanized steel to match fan and accessory size.
5. Weathershield Front Guard: Galvanized steel with expanded metal screen.

6. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
7. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.

G. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on the drawings.

2.6 MOTORS

A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

B. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.

B. Support units using spring isolators having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration- and seismic-control devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

1. Secure vibration and seismic controls to concrete bases using anchor bolts cast in concrete base.

C. Secure roof-mounting fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.

D. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.

E. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration-control devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

F. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

G. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.

C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
5. Adjust belt tension.
6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Adjust belt tension.

C. Refer to Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.

E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 233423

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 233600 – AIR TERMINAL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Shutoff single-duct air terminal units.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include rated capacities, furnished specialties, sound-power ratings, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

   1. Include a schedule showing unique model designation, room location, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
   2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:

   1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
   2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
   3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
   4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

   1. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
   2. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of air terminal units and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

D. NFPA Compliance: Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."

1.5 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Enviromental Technologies
2. Nailor Industries
3. Carrier
4. Price Industries
5. Trane
6. Titus
7. Krueger

B. Listing of manufacturers name does not guarantee approval. All equipment must meet or exceed quality and capacities of specified equipment. Final approval will be based on equipment submittals. Any manufacturer not listed but wishing to bid this project shall submit a written request 14 days prior to bid date, prior approval is required for all manufacturers not listed.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of air terminal units and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHUTOFF SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

A. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components located inside a protective metal shroud.

B. Casing: 22-gauge steel.

1. Casing Lining: 1/2-inch- thick, coated, fibrous-glass duct liner complying with ASTM C 1071; secured with adhesive. Cover liner with nonporous foil.
2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.
4. Access: Removable panels for access to dampers and other parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

C. Regulator Assembly: Extruded-aluminum or galvanized-steel components; key damper blades onto shaft with nylon-fitted pivot points located inside unit casing.

1. Automatic Flow-Control Assembly: Combined spring rates shall be matched for each volume-regulator size with machined dashpot for stable operation.
2. Factory-calibrated and field-adjustable assembly with shaft extension for connection to externally mounted control actuator.

D. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.

1. Maximum Damper Leakage: ARI 880 rated, 3 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.

E. Hot-Water Heating Coil: Copper tube, mechanically expanded into aluminum-plate fins; leak tested underwater to 200 psig; and factory installed.

F. Electric Heating Coil: Slip-in-type, open-coil design with integral control box factory wired and installed. Include the following features:

1. Primary and secondary overtemperature protection.
2. Nickel chrome 80/20 heating elements.
3. Airflow switch.
4. Noninterlocking disconnect switch.
5. Fuses (for coils more than 48 A).
6. Magnetic contactor for each step of control (for three-phase coils).

G. DDC Controls: Bidirectional damper operators and microprocessor-based controller and room sensor shall be compatible with temperature controls specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and shall have the following features:

1. Damper Actuator: 24 V, powered closed, spring return open.
2. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, variable-air-volume controller with electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes, and having the following features:

a. Proportional, plus integral control of room temperature.
b. Time-proportional reheat-coil control.
c. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
d. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
e. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.

f. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

3. Room Sensor: Wall mounting, with temperature set-point adjustment and access for connection of portable operator terminal.

4. DDC controller shall be supplied by the BAS contractor to be factory mounted by the terminal box manufacturer.

H. Control Sequence: See Sequence of Operation.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Identification: Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, coil type, and ARI certification seal.

B. Verification of Performance: Rate air terminal units according to ARI 880.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to air terminal units to allow service and maintenance.

C. Hot-Water Piping: In addition to requirements in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping," connect heating coils to supply with shutoff valve, strainer, control valve, and union or flange; and to return with balancing valve and union or flange.

D. Connect ducts to air terminal units according to Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts."

E. Ground units with electric heating coils according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

F. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

G. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:

a. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
b. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
c. Verify that control connections are complete.
d. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
e. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 233600

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 233713 – DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Round ceiling diffusers.
2. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
3. Perforated diffusers.
4. Louver face diffusers.
5. Linear slot diffusers.
6. Adjustable Bar Register
7. Fixed face registers.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 08 Section "Louvers and Vents" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.3 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carnes
2. METALAIRE, Inc.
3. Nailor industries
4. Price
5. Titus
6. Tuttle & Bailey
7. Krueger

B. Listing of manufacturers name does not guarantee approval. All equipment must meet or exceed quality and capacities of specified equipment. Final approval will be based on equipment submittals. Any manufacturer not listed but wishing to bid this project shall submit a written request 14 days prior to bid date, prior approval is required for all manufacturers not listed.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For diffusers, registers, and grilles with factory-applied color finishes.

C. Samples for Verification: For diffusers, registers, and grilles, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected.

D. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
5. Duct access panels.

E. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS

A. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers:

1. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
2. Material: Steel or Aluminum as indicated on the drawings.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white unless noted otherwise.
4. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches or as indicated on the drawings.
5. Face Style: Four cone.
6. Mounting: As required.
7. Pattern: Fixed.
8. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.

B. Louver Face Diffuser:

1. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
2. Material: Steel or Aluminum as indicated on the drawings.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white unless noted otherwise.
4. Face Size: As indicated on the drawings.
5. Mounting: As required.

6. Pattern: Four-way core style, unless noted otherwise.
7. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.

2.2 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

A. Adjustable Bar Register:

1. Material: Steel or Aluminum as indicated on the drawings.
2. Finish: Baked enamel, white unless noted otherwise.
3. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 3/4 inch apart.
4. Core Construction: Integral.
5. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced 3/4 inch apart.
6. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.
7. Mounting: Concealed.
8. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.
9. Accessories:

    a. Rear-blade gang operator.
    b. Filter.

B. Fixed Face Register:

1. Material: Steel or Aluminum as indicated on the drawings.
2. Finish: Baked enamel, white unless noted otherwise.
3. Face Arrangement: 1/2-by-1/2-by-1/2-inch grid core.
4. Core Construction: Integral.
5. Frame: 1 inch wide.
6. Mounting: Concealed.
7. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.
8. Accessory: Filter.

2.3 CEILING LINEAR SLOT OUTLETS

A. Linear Slot Diffuser:

1. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
2. Material - Shell: Steel or Aluminum as indicated on the drawings.
3. Material - Pattern Controller and Tees: Aluminum.
4. Finish - Face and Shell: Baked enamel, white exterior with black interior, unless noted otherwise.
5. Finish - Pattern Controller: Baked enamel, black.
6. Finish - Tees: Baked enamel, white.
7. Slot Width: As indicated on the drawings.
8. Number of Slots: as indicated on the drawings.
9. Length: as indicated on the drawings.
10. Accessories:
    a. End caps in lay-in ceilings.
    b. End Borders where not installed in lay-in ceilings.
    c. Insulated plenum: By manufacturer black finish unless otherwise noted.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.

B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713

SECTION 233723 – HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following types of roof-mounting intake and relief ventilators:

1. Louver penthouses.
2. Roof hoods.
3. Goosenecks.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 08 Section "Louvers and Vents" for ventilator assemblies provided as part of the general construction.
2. Division 23 Section "HVAC Power Ventilators" for roof-mounting exhaust fans.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Intake and relief ventilators shall be capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads, wind loads, seismic loads (if required), and thermal movements without permanent deformation of components, noise or metal fatigue, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors.

B. Water Entrainment: Limit water penetration through unit to comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

1.4 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Acme Corp.
2. Greenheck
3. Loren Cook Co.
4. Penn Ventilation
5. Ruskin
6. **Twin City**

B. Listing of manufacturers name does not guarantee approval. All equipment must meet or exceed quality and capacities of specified equipment. Final approval will be based on equipment submittals. Any manufacturer not listed but wishing to bid this project shall submit a written request 14 days prior to bid date, prior approval is required for all manufacturers not listed.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.

B. Shop Drawings: For intake and relief ventilators. Include details and ventilator attachments to curbs and curb attachments to roof structure.

C. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain ventilators through one source from a single manufacturer where indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.

B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of intake and relief ventilators and are based on the specific equipment indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of roof curbs and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5 or T-52.

B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.

C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 zinc coating, mill phosphatized.

D. Fasteners: Same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal or 300 Series stainless steel, unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with joined materials.

1. Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
2. Use hex-head or Phillips pan-head screws for exposed fasteners, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Post-Installed Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed, for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed, for masonry, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

F. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187, when noted on the drawings.

2.2 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Factory or shop fabricate intake and relief ventilators to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units to the minimum extent as necessary for shipping and handling. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

B. Fabricate frames, including integral bases, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.

C. Fabricate units with closely fitted joints and exposed connections accurately located and secured.

D. Fabricate supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.

E. Perform shop welding by AWS-certified procedures and personnel.

2.3 LOUVER PENTHOUSES

A. Construction: All-welded assembly with 4-inch-deep louvers, mitered corners, and aluminum sheet roof.

B. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Galvanized-steel sheet, of thickness required to comply with structural performance requirements, but not less than 0.052 inch for frames and 0.052 inch for blades.

1. Blade Spacing: 4”.
2. Blade Angle: 45 degrees.

3. Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg static pressure drop at 750-fpm free-area velocity.
4. AMCA Seal: Mark units with the AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
5. Exterior Corners: Prefabricated corner units with mitered and welded blades and with fully recessed mullions at corners.

C. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 12 inches unless noted otherwise.

D. Insect Screening: Aluminum, 18-by-16 mesh, 0.012-inch wire.

E. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finish:

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, grease, and other contaminants. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780. Apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
2. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply an air-dried primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
3. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil for topcoat and an overall minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 ROOF HOODS

A. Factory or shop fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figures 5-6 and 5-7.

B. Materials: Galvanized-steel sheet, minimum 0.064-inch- thick base and 0.040-inch- thick hood; suitably reinforced.

C. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 12 inches unless noted otherwise.

D. Insect Screening: Aluminum, 18-by-16 mesh, 0.012-inch wire.

E. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finish:

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, grease, and other contaminants. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to

ASTM A 780. Apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.

2. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply an air-dried primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
3. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil for topcoat and an overall minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

    a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.5 GOOSENECKS

A. Factory or shop fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 5-5; with a minimum of 0.052-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet.

B. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 12 inches.

C. Insect Screening: Aluminum, 18-by-16 mesh, 0.012-inch wire.

D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finish:

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, grease, and other contaminants. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780. Apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
2. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply an air-dried primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
3. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil for topcoat and an overall minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

    a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install intake and relief ventilators level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.

B. Secure intake and relief ventilators to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.

C. Install goosenecks on curb base where throat size exceeds 9 by 9 inches.

D. Install intake and relief ventilators with clearances for service and maintenance.

E. Install perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.

F. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as installation progresses. Comply with Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during installation.

G. Label intake and relief ventilators according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

H. Protect galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces from corrosion or galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint on surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals.

I. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

END OF SECTION 233723

SECTION 235100 – BREECHING, CHIMNEY, AND STACKS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 POSITIVE PRESSURE FLUE

A. Provide factory-built modular connector, manifold and stack system that is tested and listed by the Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. for use with building heating equipment and appliances which produce exhausted flue gases at a temperature not exceeding 1000°F (Fahrenheit) under continuous operating conditions, and not exceeding 1400 °F (Fahrenheit) under intermittent operating conditions (see UL103) when burning gaseous, solid or liquid fuels as described in NFPA-211. Additionally, the vent system shall be U.L. 103 positive pressure tested and listed.

B. The U.L. listed air insulated flue gas vent system shall have skin temperatures that have been obtained by Underwriters Laboratories (UL) test procedures. The published surface temperatures shall be the result of the UL-103 1000° Fahrenheit chimney test.

1.2 CONSTRUCTION

A. The double wall flue system shall have a 304 stainless steel inner liner and aluminized steel outer jacket. The materials and construction of the modular sections and accessories shall be as specified by the terms of the product's U.L. listing.

1. Air insulation between the inner liner and outer jacket shall be a nominal one-inch thick.

B. This stack system shall be designed and installed to be gas tight and thus prevent leakage of combustion products into a building.

C. Inner pipe joints shall be securely connected and sealed with factory supplied overlapping V-bands and appropriate sealant as specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions.

D. The vent system shall be designed to compensate for all flue gas induced thermal expansion.

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 INSTALLATION

A. When installed according to the manufacturer's installation instructions, the flue system and its supporting system shall resist side loads at least 1.5 times greater than the weight per foot of the piping for both horizontal and vertical portions of the system.

B. The prefabricated flue system shall be installed according to the manufacturer's installation instructions and shall conform to all applicable state and local codes.

C. Provide all modular straight sections, fittings, supports, guides, expansion joints, guy sections, guy tensioners, roof thimbles, roof flashings, storm collars and stack cap terminations as required to provide a complete system per the manufacturer's installation instructions.

D. The entire flue system from the appliance outlet to the termination point, including all accessories, except as noted, shall be from one manufacturer.

E. The vertical stack termination shall be no less than two feet above any portion of the building within ten feet of the stack penetration (see NFPA-211).

F. Roof penetrations shall be suitable for the specified roof construction and shall comply with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

PART 3 - WARRANTY

3.1 WARRANTY

A. The prefabricated flue system shall be warranted against functional failure due to defects in material and manufacturer's workmanship for a period of 15 years from date of installation.

B. The inner diameter of the flue system shall be verified by the manufacturer's venting computations. The computations used shall be technically sound, follow ASHRAE calculation methods and shall incorporate the specific flow characteristics of the inner pipe. The contractor shall furnish the exact operating characteristics of all equipment to the factory representative.

C. The manufacturer shall provide "to scale" drawings depicting the actual layout. The prefabricated flue system shall be installed as designed by the manufacturer and in accordance with the terms of the manufacturer's warranty and in conjunction with sound engineering practices.

D. The factory built modular flue system shall be furnished by a vendor organization that assures design, installation and services coordination. As well as, providing "in-warranty" and "post-warranty" unified responsibility for owner, architect, consulting engineer and contractor.

PART 4 - PRODUCTS

4.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Product specification requirements shall be met by using Selkirk Commercial/Industrial Model PS exhaust flue or equivalent as approved by the engineer. Equivalent submittals shall specify manufacturer's model number, and other pertinent identification, and attest that the alternate material is in compliance with all specification requirements.

END OF SECTION 235100

SECTION 235223 – CAST IRON BOILERS (WEIL MCLAIN)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 REQUIREMENTS

A. Furnish and install low pressure, wet base, and cast iron sectional boilers with power burners that pressurize the firebox and operate under forced and balanced draft.

B. Assemble and install boiler-burner units in compliance with manufacturer's installation instructions. All work must be done in a neat and workman like manner.

C. Cast Iron Sectional Boilers with burners capable of burning natural gas at 0.5 psi inlet pressure.

1. Boiler-burner unit Field assembled (standard).
2. Natural gas fired.
3. Water.
4. Forced or balanced draft.

D. Boilers shall have I=B=R Hydronics Institute gross outputs at 100% firing rate, see plans for capacities.

E. Boilers shall be manufactured by ISO 9001 registered company to conform to Section IV of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1. Individual sections (and section assembly) to be hydrostatically pressure tested at factory in accordance with ASME requirements.
2. Maximum allowable working pressure 50 PSIG water and 15 PSIG steam cast as part of section with ASME symbol (Water only: optional 80 PSIG stamped in section in place of 50 PSIG).

F. Regulatory Requirements

1. Boilers and controls to comply with applicable regulations.
2. Provide U.L. labeled burners.
3. Provide add option for local codes ie: MASS Code BAR.

G. Submittals

1. Submit shop drawings and product data.
2. Submittal packet to include boiler (and burner) manufacturer descriptive literature, installation instructions, operating instructions, and maintenance instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE BOILER/BURNER

A. Acceptable boiler/burner manufacturer(s) include(s):

1. **Burnham**
2. Weil McLain
3. Peerless
4. H.B. Smith
5. Other manufacturers must comply with specifying engineer's requirements, including:
   a. Full intent of these specifications, and provide complete submittal including literature, wiring diagrams, fuel piping diagrams, and a list of similar installations.
   b. Submittal to be presented to specifying engineer at least seven working days for approval before bid opening. Substitutions are not permitted after contract is awarded.
   c. Burners and Energy Management Control Systems must be tested and approved for installation with specified boiler by boiler manufacturer.

B. Boiler Construction

1. Boiler sections.
2. Assembled with short, individual draw rods.
3. Cast with sealing grooves for high temperature sealing rope to assure permanent gas- tight seal.
4. Sealed water-tight by elastomer sealing rings, not cast iron nipples. Each port opening is machined to completely capture sealing ring between sections.
5. Must be hydro-wall design to provide completely water-cooled combustion chamber. Provided with sufficient tappings to install required controls.
6. Limited 10 year warranty against workmanship and defects to be in writing by manufacturer.

C. Boilers

1. Provided with cast-in air elimination to separate air from circulating water.
2. Provided with expansion tank tapping to divert separated air to expansion tank.
3. Constructed to provide balanced water flow through entire section assembly using single supply and return connections for water. No external headers are necessary for water. Steam requires two supplies to an external header 24" minimum from the waterline to the bottom of the header.
4. Designed with a low silhouette to provide maximum headroom.
5. Furnished with insulated burner mounting plate having necessary holes and tappings to mount burner. High temperature sealing rope is used to provide permanent gas- tight seal between front section and plate.
6. Furnished with two observation ports (one in front and one in back) to allow visual inspection of the flame.
7. Provided with cast iron flue collar with a built-in adjustable damper capable of being locked into place after adjustment.
8. High temperature sealing rope used to provide permanent gas-tight seal between hood and section assembly.

9. Furnished with heavy gauge steel cleanout plates to cover cleanout openings on the side of the boilers.
10. Port openings must be of captured seal design – a machined groove assures uniform compression of the sealing ring and protects the seal from contaminants. Elastomer sealing rings are to be used to provide permanent water-tight seal between sections. Unlike cast iron or steel push nipples, the elasticity of the seals fills any gaps caused by misalignment or expansion or contraction.
11. Provided with flexible refractory blankets attached to back and floor of combustion chamber.
12. Shipped with insulated heavy gauge steel jacket(s) with durable powdered paint enamel finish. Jacket designed to be installed after connecting supply and return piping.

D. Tankless Heater or Indirect Water Heaters

1. Provide internal tankless water heaters inserted into the left hand side of the tankless intermediate (TI) section in the opening provided. Allow 34" minimum clearance on left side of boiler for cleaning and servicing. Tankless openings must be on same side as the flue passage cleanout plates to minimize space requirements.

E. Boiler Foundations:

1. Installer to construct needed support and level concrete foundations where boiler room floor is uneven or will not support the weight of the boilers.

F. Boiler Trim:

1. All electrical components to be of high quality and bear the U.L. label.
   a. Water boilers controls furnished.
      1) Combination low temperature limit (operating) and high temperature limit control.
      2) Low temperature limit set according to system design. High temperature limit set at least 20°F higher than the low limit (240°F is the maximum allowable water temperature).
      3) Combination pressure-temperature gauge with dial clearly marked and easy to read.
      4) ASME certified pressure relief valve, set to relieve at 30 PSIG. Optional relief valves available up to and including maximum allowable pressure. Side outlet discharge type; contractor to pipe outlet to floor drain or near floor, avoiding any area where freezing could occur.
   b. Low water cut-off for water or steam boiler(s):
      1) Boiler(s) to be furnished with U .L. labeled low water cut-off with ASME working pressure rating equal to the ASME rating of the relief valve.
      2) Do not use quick-connect fittings on boiler(s).
      3) Install cut-off according to manufacturer's instructions.
      4) Locate so burner shuts down if boiler water level falls below allowable safe waterline (steam boilers, 1/4” above bottom of gauge glass).
      5) Steam boiler primary low water cut-off shall be a float type – auto reset.
      6) Steam boiler secondary low water cut-off shall be a float type – manual reset.

2.2 BURNER(s) CONSTRUCTION, FEATURES, AND REQUIREMENTS

A. Burner fuel supply system and burner installation to conform to burner manufacturer's installation instructions and applicable codes.

B. Burner motor characteristics: 120/60/1.

C. Control characteristics 120/60/1.

D. Burner fuel - natural gas 4.0" W.C. minimum.

E. Code(s) - standard boiler, CSD-1, FM, IRI.

F. Burners to have U.L. labels supplied by the burner manufacturer.

G. Burners designed to ensure high efficiency and good performance under forced draft conditions with 0.1" W.C. positive pressure at the flue collar.

H. Burner to be adjusted to provide 9.5 to 10.0% CO_2 for gas and/or 11.5 to 12% CO_2 with zero smoke for oil firing.

I. Burner(s) manufactured by: Power-Flame, Gordon-Piatt, Webster

J. Burner operating mode: modulating.

K. Panel options - power on/fuel on light is standard on all burner(s) with panels.

1. Call For Heat.
2. Ignition On.
3. Pilot Failure.
4. Low Water.
5. Flame Failure.
6. Silencing Switch.
7. Control Fuse and Holder.
8. Post Purge Timer.
9. Alarm Bell.

L. Start-up and Service

1. The contractor shall obtain the services of a factory authorized agent to provide burner light-off and adjustment. The start-up agent shall provide a burner light-off report as written proof that the burner was adjusted to optimum performance.
2. The authorized agent shall provide a one year service warranty after start-up.

END OF SECTION 235223

SECTION 236426 – ROTARY SCREW WATER CHILLERS (TRANE RTAC)

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit drawings indicating components, assembly, dimensions, weights and loadings, required clearances, and location and size of field connections. Indicate accessories where required for complete system.

B. Submit product data indicating rated capacities, weights, specialties and accessories, electrical requirements and wiring diagrams.

C. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUMMARY

A. APPROVED MANUFACTURERS

1. Trane Model RTAC
2. Carrier 30XA
3. York YCAV/YCIV
4. Daiken
5. Preapproved equals (requires 2 week advance approval by engineer)

2.2 COMPRESSORS

A. Construct chiller using semi-hermetic helical rotary screw compressors with independent circuits. Scroll compressors shall be unacceptable.

2.3 EVAPORATOR

A. The evaporator shall be designed, tested, and stamped in accordance with ASME code for a refrigerant side working pressure of 200 psig. Waterside working pressure shall be 150 psig.

B. Insulate the evaporator and evaporator heads with a minimum of 3/4 inch (K=0.26) insulation.

C. Evaporator heat tape shall be factory installed and shall protect unit down to -20 F. Contractor shall wire separate power to energize heat tape and protect cooler while chiller is disconnected.

D. Factory mounted and calibrated thermal dispersion flow switch.

2.4 CONDENSER AND FANS

A. Construct condenser coils of aluminum fins mechanically bonded to seamless copper tubing. Provide sub-cooling circuits. Air test under water to 506 psig (3488 kPa).

B. Provide fan motors with permanently lubricated ball bearings and built-in thermal overload protection.

2.5 ENCLOSURES

A. Mount starters and [disconnects] in weatherproof panel provided with full opening access doors. Provide lockable through-the-door disconnect operating handle external to panel and clearly visible from outside of unit indicating if power is on or off.

2.6 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT

A. All units shall have 2 refrigeration circuits to provide redundancy, each with one compressor on each circuit. Single refrigerant circuit chillers are not acceptable.

B. Provide for each refrigerant circuit:

1. Liquid line shutoff valve.

2. Filter dryer (replaceable core type).

3. Liquid line sight glass and moisture indicator.

4. Electronic or thermal expansion valve sized for maximum operating pressure.

5. Charging valve.

6. Discharge and oil line check valves.

7. Compressor suction and discharge service valves.

8. High side pressure relief valve.

9. Full operating charge of R-134a and oil.

C. Capacity Modulation: Provide capacity modulation by either slide valve or unloader valves. Unit shall be capable of operation down to 15%. In the event manufacturer can not provide a unit with modulation down to 15%, Hot Gas Bypass must be provided.

2.7 CONTROLS

A. Chilled water temperature control shall be microprocessor-based, proportional and integral controller to show water and refrigerant temperature, refrigerant pressure, and diagnostics.

This microprocessor-based controller is to be supplied with each chiller by the chiller manufacturer. Controls shall include the following readouts and diagnostics:

1. Phase reversal/unbalance/single phasing and over/under voltage protection.

2. Low chilled water temperature protection.

3. High and low refrigerant pressure protection.

4. Load limit thermostat to limit compressor loading on high return water temperature.

5. Condenser fan sequencing to automatically cycle fans in response to load, expansion valve pressure, and condenser pressure to optimize unit efficiency.

6. Display diagnostics.

7. Oil pressure control.

B. On chiller, mount weatherproof control panel, containing starters, power and control wiring, molded case disconnect switch (UL approved) with external lockable operator handle. Provide single point power connection on units with MCA less than 500 amps. Provide primary and secondary fused control power transformer and a single 115 volt single phase connection for evaporator heat tape.

1. The unit controller shall utilize the following components to automatically take action to prevent unit shutdown due to abnormal operating conditions which will perform as follows:

a. High pressure switch that is set 20 PSIG lower that factory pressure switch that will automatically unload the compressor to help prevent a high pressure condenser control trip. One switch is required for each compressor and indicating light shall also be provided.
b. Motor surge protector that is set at 95% of compressor RLA that will automatically unload the compressor to help prevent an overcurrent trip. One protector is required for each compressor and indicating light shall also be provided.
c. Low pressure switch that is set at 5 PSIG above the factory low pressure switch that will automatically unload the compressor to help prevent a low evaporator temperature trip. One switch is required for each compressor and indicating light shall also be provided.

C. Provide user interface on the front of the panel. If display is on the inside of the panel, then a control display access door shall be provided to allow access to the display without removal of the panels.

D. Digital Communications to BAS shall consist of a LONWORKS or BACNET interface.

2.8 UNIT MOUNTED STARTER

A. Provide unit mounted, reduced inrush, wye delta starter.

2.9 STARTUP & WARRANTY

A. Provide factory startup with logs, performed by factory technician.

B. Provide 5 year parts, labor, and refrigerant warranty.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

PART 4 - SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

See plans for sequence of operation.

END OF SECTION 236426

SECTION 237200 – ENERGY RECOVERY UNIT (GREENHECK ERV)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This section includes Energy Wheel Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Ventilators for rooftop installation.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type or model include the following:
   1. Complete fan performance curves for both Supply Air and Exhaust Air, with system operating conditions indicated, as tested in an AMCA Certified Chamber.
   2. Energy wheel performance data for both summer and winter operation.
   3. Motor ratings, electrical characteristics and motor and fan accessories.
   4. Material types and gauges of all component pieces and assemblies.
   5. Dimensioned drawings for each type of installation, showing isometric and plan views, to include location of attached ductwork and service clearance requirements.
   6. Estimated gross weight of each installed unit.
   7. Installation, Operating and Maintenance manual (IOM) for each model.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain unit with all appurtenant components or accessories from a single manufacturer.
B. For the actual fabrication, installation, and testing of work under this section, use only thoroughly trained and experienced workers completely familiar with the items required and with the manufacturer's current recommended methods of installation.
C. Product Options: Drawings must indicate size, profiles and dimensional requirements of Energy Recovery Units and are to be based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section “Product Requirements”.
D. Certifications:
   1. Entire unit shall be AMCA Certified for air flow. AMCA certification of individual components is not acceptable.
   2. Entire unit shall be ETL Certified per U.L. 1995 and bear an ETL sticker.
   3. Energy Wheel shall be AHRI Certified, per Standard 1060.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of all building penetrations required for installation of each unit and associated plumbing and electrical systems.
B. Coordinate sequencing of construction of associated HVAC, electrical supply, roofing contractor.

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Filters: One sets of MERV 8 disposable filters for each unit.
   2. One set of fan belts.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with specifications contained within this document, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to:
   1. Greenheck Fan Corporation
   2. Reznor
   3. **Ruskin Rooftop Systems**
   4. **Semco**
   5. Engineered Air

2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Unit shall be fully assembled at the factory and consist of an insulated metal cabinet, outdoor air intake weatherhood with metal mesh filters, energy wheel, motorized intake damper, motorized exhaust damper, curb assembly, filter assembly for intake and exhaust air, supply air blower assembly, exhaust air blower assembly and an electrical control center. All specified components and internal accessories factory installed and tested and prepared for single-point high voltage connection.

2.3 CABINET

A. Materials: Formed single wall insulated metal cabinet, fabricated to permit access to internal components for maintenance.
   1. Outside casing: 18 gauge, galvanized (G90) steel meeting ASTM A653 for components that do not receive a painted finish.
   2. Internal assemblies: 18 gauge, galvanized (G90) steel except for motor supports which shall be minimum14 gauge galvanized (G90) steel.
B. Access doors shall be hinged.
C. Shall have factory-installed duct flanges on all duct openings.
D. Cabinet Insulation: Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B and erosion requirements of UL 181.
   1. Materials: Fiberglass insulation. If insulation other than fiberglass is used, it must also meet the Fire Hazard Classification shown below.
      a. Thickness: 1 inch
      b. Fire Hazard Classification: Maximum flame spread of 25 and smoke developed of 50, when tested in accordance with ASTM C 411.
      c. Location and application: Full coverage of entire cabinet exterior to include walls, roof and floor of unit. Insulation shall be of semi-rigid type and installed between inner and outer shells of all cabinet exterior components.
E. Energy wheel: Energy wheel shall be of total enthalpy, rotary air-to-air type and shall be an element of a removable energy wheel cassette. The cassette shall consist of a galvanized steel

framework (designed to produce laminar air flow through the wheel), an energy wheel as specified and a motor and drive assembly. The cassette shall incorporate a pre-tensioned urethane drive belt with a five year warranty. The wheel media shall be a polymer film matrix in a stainless steel framework and be comprised of individual segments that are removable for servicing. Non-segmented energy wheels are not acceptable. Silica gel desiccant shall be permanently bonded to the polymer film and shall be designed and constructed to permit cleaning and servicing. The energy wheel is to have a five year warranty. Performance criteria are to be as specified in AHRI Standard 1060, complying with the Combined Efficiency data in the submittal.

F. Supply Air and Exhaust Air blower assemblies: Blower assemblies consist of an electric motor and a belt driven blower. Assembly shall be mounted on heavy gauge galvanized rails and further mounted on 1.125 inch thick neoprene vibration isolators.
G. Control panel / connections: Energy Recovery Ventilator shall have an electrical control center where all high and low voltage connections are made. Control center shall be constructed to permit single-point high voltage power supply connections
H. Motorized dampers / Exhaust Air, Intake Air: Motorized dampers of low leakage type shall be factory installed.
I. Curb Assembly: A curb assembly made of 14 gauge galvanized steel shall be provided by the factory for assembly and installation as part of this division. The curb assembly shall provide perimeter support of the entire unit. Curb assembly shall enclose the underside of the unit and shall be sized to fit into a recess in the bottom of the unit. Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating with roofing contractor to ensure curb unit is properly flashed to provide protection against weather/moisture penetration. Contractor shall provide and install appropriate insulation for the curb assembly].

2.4 BLOWER

A. Blower section construction, Supply Air and Exhaust Air: Belt drive motor and blower shall be assembled onto a 14 gauge galvanized steel platform and must have neoprene vibration isolation devices.
B. Blower assemblies: Shall be statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and horsepower.
C. Centrifugal blower housing: Formed and reinforced steel panels to make curved scroll housing with shaped cutoff.
D. Forward curved blower (fan) wheels: Galvanized or aluminum construction with inlet flange and shallow blades curved forward in direction of airflow. Mechanically attached to shaft with set screws.
E. Blower performance shall be factory tested for flow rate, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed and efficiency. Ratings are to be established in accordance with AMCA 210, “Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating”.

2.5 MOTORS

A. General: Blower motors greater than ¾ horsepower shall be “NEMA Premium™” unless otherwise indicated. Minimum compliance with EPAct minimum energy-efficiency standards for single speed ODP and TE enclosures is not acceptable. Motors shall be heavy-duty, permanently lubricated type to match the fan load and furnished at the specified voltage, phase and enclosure. Drives shall be sized for a minimum of 150% of driven horsepower and pulleys shall be fully machined cast-type, keyed and fully secured to the fan wheel and motor

shafts. Electric motors of ten horsepower or less shall be supplied with an adjustable drive pulley. Comply with requirements in Division 23 05 13, matched with fan load.

2.6 UNIT CONTROLS

A. The unit shall be constructed so that it can function as a stand-alone heating and cooling system controlled by factory-supplied controllers, thermostats and sensors or it can be operated as a heating and cooling system controlled by a Building Management System (BMS). This unit shall be controlled by a factory-installed microprocessor programmable controller (DDC) that is connected to various optional sensors.

2.7 FILTERS

A. Unit shall have permanent metal filters located in the outdoor air intake and shall be accessible from the exterior of the unit. MERV 8 disposable pleated filters shall be provided in the intake air stream and MERV 8 filters in the exhaust air stream.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Prior to start of installation, examine area and conditions to verify correct location for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting unit performance. See unit IOM.
B. Examine roughing-in of plumbing, electrical and HVAC services to verify actual location and compliance with unit requirements. See unit IOM.
C. Proceed with installation only after all unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Installation shall be accomplished in accordance with these written specifications, project drawings, manufacturer’s installation instructions as documented in manufacturer’s IOM, Best Practices and all applicable building codes.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. In all cases, industry Best Practices shall be incorporated. Connections are to be made subject to the installation requirements shown above.
   1. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in Division 23 of this document.
   2. Electrical installation requirements are specified in Division 26 of this document.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer’s Field Service: Engage a factory authorized service representative to inspect field assembled components and equipment installation, to include electrical and piping connections. Report results to A/E in writing. Inspection must include a complete startup checklist to include (as a minimum) the following: Completed Start-Up Checklists as found in manufacturer’s IOM.

3.5 START-UP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory authorized service representative to perform startup service. Clean entire unit, comb coil fins as necessary, and install clean filters. Measure and record electrical values for voltage and amperage. Refer to Division 23 “Testing, Adjusting and Balancing” and comply with provisions therein.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

A. Engage a factory authorized service representative to train owner’s maintenance personnel to adjust, operate and maintain the entire unit. Refer to Division 01 Section Closeout Procedures and Demonstration and Training.

END OF SECTION 237200

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 237313 – MODULAR INDOOR CENTRAL STATION AHU (TRANE SNES)

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Submit drawings indicating components, assembly, dimensions, weights and loadings, required clearances, and location and size of field connections. Indicate accessories where required for complete system.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 230900 – Direct Digital Control System

1.3 REFERENCES

A. AMCA Publication 99 – Standards Handbook.

B. AMCA Publication 611 – Certified Ratings Program – Airflow Measurement Performance

C. ANSI/ABMA Standard 500-D – Laboratory Methods of Testing Dampers for Rating.

D. ANSI/AMCA Standard 9 – Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings.

E. ANSI/AMCA Standard 204 – Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans.

F. ANSI/AMCA Standard 610 – Laboratory Methods of Testing Airflow Measuring Stations for Rating.

G. ANSI/AHRI Standard 410 – Forced Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils.

H. ANSI/AHRI Standard 430 – Central Station Air Handling Units.

I. ANSI/ASRAE Standard 52.2 – Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size.

J. ANSI/ASHARE Standard 62.1 – Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality.

K. ANSI/ASHARE Standard 90.1 – Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings

L. ANSI/NEMA MG 1 – Motors and Generators.

M. ANSI/UL 900 – Standard for Safety Air Filters Units.

N. AHRI Standard 260 – Sound rating of Ducted Air Moving and Conditioning Equipment.

O. ASHRAE Standard 84 – Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers.

P. ASHRAE Standard 111 – Measurement, Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Building HVAC Systems.

Q. ASTM B117 – Standard Practice for Operation Salt Spray Apparatus.

R. ASTM – C1071 – Thermal and Acoustic Insulation (Mineral Fiber, Duct Lining Material).

S. ASTM – C1338 – Standard Test Method for Determining Fungi Resistance of Insulation Material and Facings.

T. ASTM – E477 – Standard Test Method for Measure Acoustical and Airflow Performance of

Duct Liner Materials and Prefabricated Silencers.

U. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code®.

V. NFP 90A – Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilation Systems.

W. UL 1995 – Standard for Safety Heating and Cooling Equipment.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Air Coils: Certify capacities, pressure drops and selection procedures in accordance with current AHRI Standard 410.

B. Air handling units with fan sections utilizing single fans shall be rated and certified in accordance with AHRI Standard 430.

C. Airflow monitoring station: Certify airflow measurement station performance in accordance with AMCA 611.

D. ISO 9001 Certification.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. No equipment shall be fabricated or delivered until the receipt of approved shop drawings from the Owner or Owner's approved representative.

B. AHA manufacturer shall provide the following information with each shop drawing/product data submission:

1. Dimensioned arrangement drawings for each AHU including a plan and elevation view of the assembled unit with overall dimensions, lift points, unit shipping split locations and dimensions, installation and operating weights, and installation, operation and service clearances.

2. All electrical, piping, and ductwork requirements, including sizes, connection locations, and connections method recommendations.

3. Each component of the unit shall be identified and mechanical specifications shall be provided for unit and accessories describing construction, components, and options.

4. All performance data, including capacities and airside and waterside pressure drops, for components.

5. Fan curves shall be provided for fans with the design operating points indicated. Data shall be corrected to actual operating conditions, temperatures, and altitudes.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Agency Listings/Certificates

1. Unit shall be manufactured to conform to UL 1995 and shall be listed by either UL/CUL or ETL. Units shall be provided with listing agency label affixed to the unit. In the event

the unit is not UL/CUL or ETL approved, the contractor shall, at his/her expense, provide for a field inspection by a UL/CUL or ETL representative to verify conformance. If necessary, contractor shall perform modifications to the unit to comply with UL/CUL or ETL as directed by the representative, at no additional expense to the owner.

2. Certify air handling units in accordance with ARHI Standard 430. Units shall be provided with certification label affixed to the unit. If air handling units are not certified in accordance with AHRI Standard 430, contractor shall be responsible for expenses associated with testing of units after installation to verify performance of fan(s). Any costs incurred to adjust fans to meet scheduled capacities shall be the sole responsibility of the contractor.

3. Certify air handling coils in accordance with AHRI Standard 410. Units shall be provided with certification label affixed to the unit. If air handling coils are not certified in accordance with AHRI Standard 410, contractor shall be responsible for expenses associated with testing of coils after installation to verify performance of coil(s). Any costs incurred to adjust coils to meet scheduled capacities shall be the sole responsibility of the contractor.

4. Certify airflow monitoring stations are tested for differential pressure in accordance with AMCA 611 in an AMCA registered laboratory and comply with the requirements of the AMCA Certified Ratings Program. Airflow monitoring station shall be licensed to bear the AMCA Seal.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with manufacturer's installation instructions for rigging, unloading, and transporting units.

B. Units shall ship fully assembled up to practical shipping and rigging limitations. Units not shipped fully assembled shall have tags and airflow arrows on each section to indicate location and orientation in direction of airflow. Shipping splits shall be clearly defined on submittal drawings. Cost associated with non-conformance to shop drawings shall be the responsibility of the manufacturer. Each section shall have lifting lugs for field rigging and final placement of AHU sections. Indoor AHUs less than 100 inches wide shall allow for forklift transport for maneuverability on jobsite.

C. Deliver units to jobsite with fan motor(s), sheave(s), and belt(s) completely assembled and mounted in units.

D. Installing contractor shall be responsible for storing AHU in a clean, dry place and protect from weather and construction traffic. Handle carefully to avoid damage to components, enclosures, and finish.

1.8 START-UP AND OPERATING REQUIREMENTS

A. Do not operate units for any purpose, temporary or permanent, until ductwork is clean, filters in place, bearings lubricated (if applicable), condensate properly trapped, piping connections verified and leak-tested, belts aligned and tensioned, all shipping braced removed, bearing set screws torque, and fan has been test run under observation.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. AHU manufacturer shall provide, at no additional cost, a standard parts warranty that covers a period of five years from unit start-up or 66 months from shipment, whichever occurs first. This warrants that all products are free from defects in material and workmanship and shall meet the capacities and ratings set forth in the equipment manufacturer's catalog and bulletins.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Approved Manufacturers
   1. Trane: Performance Climate Changer
   2. McQuay Vision
   3. Carrier: 39M
   4. York

2.2 GENERAL

A. Unit layout and configuration shall be as defined in project plans and schedule.

B. Unit manufacturer to provide an integral base frame to support all sections of unit and raise unit for proper trapping. Contractor will be responsible for providing a housekeeping pad when indoor air handling unit base frame is not of sufficient height to properly trap unit. Unit base frames not constructed of galvanized steel shall be chemically cleaned and coated with both a rust-inhibiting primer and finished coat of rust-inhibiting enamel.

C. Entire air handling unit shall have a 6-inch full perimeter base rail for structural rigidity and condensate trapping. See Section 2.26 for outdoor air handling unit requirements.

2.3 UNIT CASING

A. Unit manufacturer shall ship separate segments so unit can be broken down for ease of installation in tight spaces. The entire air handler shall be constructed of galvanized steel. Indoor air handling unit casing finish to meet ASTM B117 250-hour salt-spray test. The removal of access panels or access doors shall not affect the structural integrity of the unit. All removable panels shall be gasketed. All doors shall have gasketing around full perimeter to prevent air leakage. Contractor shall be responsible to provide connection flanges and all other framework that is needed to properly support the unit.

B. Casing performance – Casing air leakage shall not exceed leak class 9 ($C_L = 9$) per ASHRAE 111 at specified casing pressure, where maximum casing leakage (cfm/100 ft^2 of casing surface area) = C_L X Air leakage shall be determined at 1.00 times maximum casing static pressure up to 8 inches w.g. Specified air leakage shall be accomplished without the use of

caulk. Total estimated air leakage shall be reported for each unit in CFM, as a percentage of supply air, and as an ASHRAE 111 Leakage Class.

C. Unit casing (wall/floor/pressure bulkhead roof panels and doors) shall be able to withstand up to 1.5 times design static pressure up to +8" w.g. in all positive pressure sections and -8" w.g. in all negative pressure sections, whichever is less, and shall not exceed 0.0042" per inch of panel span (L/240).

D. Floor panels shall be double-wall construction and designed to support a 300-lb load during maintenance activities and shall deflect no more than 0.0042" per inch of panel span.

E. Unit casing panels (pressure bulkhead roof panels, walls, floor) and doors shall be provided with a minimum thermal resistance (R-value) of 13 $Hr*Ft^2*°F/BTU$.

F. Unit casing panels (pressure bulkhead roof panels, walls, floor) and external structural frame members shall be completely insulated filling the entire panel cavity in all directions so that no voids exist. Panel insulation shall comply with NFPA 90A.

G. Structural frame must not extend from air-handling unit interior to exterior. All component and panel support structure must be internal to AHU. Casing panel inner liners must not extend to the exterior of the unit or contact the exterior frame. A mid-span, no-through-metal, internal thermal break shall be provided for all unit casing panels.

H. Access panels and/or access doors shall be provided in all sections to allow easy access to drain pan, coil(s), motor, drive components and bearings for cleaning, inspection, and maintenance.

I. Access panels and doors shall be fully removable without the use of specialized tools to allow complete access of interior surfaces.

2.4 ACCESS DOORS

A. Access doors shall be 2" double-wall construction. Interior and exterior shall be of the same construction as the interior and exterior wall panels.

B. All doors downstream of cooling coils shall be provided with a thermal break construction of door panel and door frame.

C. Gasketing shall be provided around the full perimeter of the doors to prevent air leakage.

D. Door hardware shall be surface-mounted to prevent through-cabinet penetrations that could likely weaken the casing leakage and thermal performance.

E. Access doors shall be hinged and removable without the use of specialized tools to allow.

F. Hinges shall be interchangeable with the door handle hardware to allow for alternating door swing in the field to minimize access interference due to unforeseen job site obstructions.

G. Multiple door handles for indoor air handling units shall be provided for each latching point of

the door necessary to maintain the specified air leakage integrity of the unit.

2.5 PRIMARY DRAIN PANS

A. All cooling coil sections shall be provided with an insulated, double-wall, stainless steel drain pan.

B. The drain pan shall be designed in accordance with ASHRAE 62.1 being of sufficient size to collect all condensation produced from the coil and sloped in two planes, pitched toward drain connections, promoting positive drainage to eliminate stagnant water conditions when unit is installed level and trapped per manufacturer's requirements. See section 2.07, paragraph F through H for specifications on intermediate drain pans between cooling coils.

C. The outlet shall be located at the lowest point of the pan and shall be sufficient diameter to preclude drain pan overflow under any normally expected operating condition.

D. All drain pan threaded connections shall be visible external to the unit. Threaded connections under the unit floor shall not be accepted.

E. Drain connections shall be of the same material as the primary drain pan and shall extend a minimum 2-1/2” beyond the base to ensure adequate room for field piping of condensate traps.

2.6 FANS

A. Fan sections shall have a minimum of one access door located on the drive side of the unit to allow inspection and maintenance of the fan, motor, and drive components. Construct door(s) per Section 2.04.

B. Provide fans of type and class as specified on the schedule. Fan shafts shall be solid steel, coated with a rust-inhibiting coating, and properly designed so that fan shaft does not pass through first critical speed as unit comes up to rated RPM. All fans shall be statically and dynamically tested by the manufacturer for vibration and alignment as an assembly at the operating RPM to meet design specifications. Fans controlled by variable frequency drives shall be statically and dynamically tested for vibration and alignment at speeds between 25% and 100% of design RPM. If fans are not factory-tested for vibration and alignment, the contractor shall be responsible for cost and labor associated with field balancing and certified vibration performance. Fan wheels shall be keyed to fan shafts to prevent slipping.

C. Belt-driven fans shall be provided with grease lubricated, self-aligning, anti-friction bearings selected for L-50 200,000-hour average life per ANSI/AFBMA Standard 9. Lubrication lines for both bearings shall be extended to the drive side of the AHU and rigidly attached to support bracket with zerk fittings. Lubrication lines shall be a clear, high-pressure, polymer to aid in visual inspection. If extended lubrication lines are not provided, manufacturer shall provide permanently lubricated bearing with engineering calculations for proof of bearing life.

D. All fans, including direct-drive plenum fans, shall be mounted on spring isolation bases. Internally-mounted motor shall be on the same isolation base. Fan and motor shall be internally isolated with spring isolators. Unit sizes up to nominal 4,000 cfm shall have 1-inch

springs. Unit sizes larger than nominal 4,000 cfm shall have 2-inch spring isolators. A flexible connection (e.g. canvas duct) shall be installed between fan and unit casing to ensure complete isolation. Flexible connection shall comply with NFPA 90A and UL 181 requirements. If fans and motors are not internally isolated, then the entire unit shall be externally isolated from the building, including supply and return duct work, piping, and electrical connections. External isolation shall be furnished by the installing contractor in order to avoid transmission of noise and vibration through the ductwork and building structure.

2.7 MOTORS AND DRIVES

A. All motors and drives shall be factory-installed and run tested. All motors shall be installed on a slide base to permit adjustment of belt tension. Slide base shall be designed to accept all motor sizes offered by the air-handler manufacturer for that fan size to allow a motor change in the future, should airflow requirements change. Fan sections without factory-installed motors shall have motors field installed by the contractor. The contractor shall be responsible for all costs associated with installation of motor and drive, alignment of sheaves and belts, run testing of the motor, and balancing of the assembly.

B. Fan Motors shall be heavy duty, NEMA Premium efficient ODP, exceeding the EPAct efficiency requirements.

C. Motors shall have a +/- 10 percent voltage utilization range to protect against voltage variation.

D. V-Belt Drive shall be fixed pitch rated at 1.2 times the motor nameplate. Drives 20 hp and larger or any drives on units equipped with VFDs shall be fixed pitch.

2.8 COILS

A. Coils section side panel shall be removable to allow for removal and replacement of coils without impacting the structural integrity of the unit.

B. Install coils such that headers and return bends are enclosed by unit casing to ensure that if condensate forms on the header or return bends, it is captured by the drain pan under the coil.

C. Coils shall be manufactured with plate fins to minimize water carryover and maximize airside thermal efficiency. Fin tube holes shall have drawn and belled collars to maintain consistent fin spacing to ensure performance and air pressure drop across the coil as scheduled. Tubes shall be mechanically expanded and bonded to fin collars for maximum thermal conductivity. Use of soldering or tinning during the fin-to-tube bonding process is not acceptable due to the inherent thermal stress and possible loss of bonding at that joint.

D. Construct coil casings of galvanized steel. End supports and tube sheets shall have belled tube holes to minimize wear of the tube wall during thermal expansion and contraction of the tube.

E. All coils shall be completely cleaned prior to installation into the air handling unit. Complete fin bundle shall be degreased and cleaned to remove any lubricants used in the manufacturing of the fins, or dirt that may have accumulated, in order to minimize the chance for water

carryover.

F. When two or more cooling coils are stacked in the unit, an intermediate drain pan shall be installed between each coil. The intermediate drain pan shall be designed being of sufficient size to collect all condensation produced from the coil and sloped to promote positive drainage to eliminate stagnant water conditions. The intermediate drain pan shall be constructed of the same material as the primary drain pan.

G. The intermediate drain pan shall begin at the leading face of the water-producing device and be of sufficient length extending downstream to prevent condensate from passing through the air stream of the lower coil.

H. Intermediate drain pan shall include downspouts to direct condensate to the primary drain pan. The intermediate drain pan outlet shall be located at the lowest point of the pan and shall be sufficient diameter to preclude drain pan overflow under any normally expected operating condition.

2.9 FILTERS

A. Filter type, MERV rating, and arrangement shall be provided as defined in project plans and schedule.

B. Manufacturer shall provide one set of startup filters and an additional 1 set of operational filters.

C. Provide filter blockoffs as required to prevent air bypass around filters.

2.10 DAMPERS

A. All dampers, with the exception of external bypass and multizones (if scheduled), shall be internally mounted. Dampers shall be premium ultra low leak and located as indicated on the schedule and plans. Blade arrangement (parallel or opposed) shall be provided as indicated on the schedule and drawings. Dampers shall be Ruskin CD60 double-skin airfoil design or equivalent for minimal air leakage and pressure drop. Leakage rate shall not exceed 3 CFM/square foot at one inch water gauge complying with ASHRAE 90.1 maximum damper leakage and shall be AMCA licensed for Class 1A. All leakage testing and pressure ratings shall be based on AMCA Standard 500-D. Manufacturer shall submit brand and model of damper(s) being furnished, if not Ruskin CD60.

1. Mixing box shall be furnished with OA and RA motorized dampers, with factory installed parallel damper blades. Blades shall be installed in directions to maximize mixing box airstream collision (top OA damper blades facing rear RA opening and rear RA damper blades facing top OA opening).

2.11 AIRFLOW MEASURING STATIONS

A. Airflow measuring stations shall be provided and located in the outside and/or return air paths as indicated on the schedule and plans to measure airflow. Airflow measuring stations shall be tested per AMCA Standard 611 and licensed to bear the AMCA Ratings Seal for airflow

measurement performance. Integral control damper blades shall be provided as galvanized steel and housed in a galvanized steel frame. Leakage rate shall not exceed 4 CFM/square foot at one inch water gauge complying with ASHRAE 90.1 maximum damper leakage.

1. The airflow measurement station shall measure up to 100 percent of the total outside air and/or return air. The airflow measurement station shall be capable of measuring down to 300 fpm. The airflow measuring device shall adjust for temperature variations. Output shall be provided from the station as a 2-10 VDC signal. Signal shall be proportional to air velocity. The accuracy of the measuring station shall be no greater than +/- 5 percent. Airflow measuring stations shall be mounted on the AHU interior.

2. The installing contractor shall provide duct-mounted pleated media MERV 8 filtration upstream of airflow monitoring stations requiring air straightening vanes to prevent blockage of vanes. A filter access door shall be provided for filter replacement that does not degrade the specified duct leakage class. Duct-mounted filtration section with access door for filter removal shall be tested for compliance to specified duct leakage class on the schedule and plans.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 ON-SITE STORAGE

A. If equipment is to be stored for a period of time prior to installation, the Mechanical Contractor shall remove all stretch or shrink wrap from units upon receipt to prevent unit corrosion and shall either place the units in a controlled indoor environment or shall cover the units with canvas tarps and place them in a well-drained area. Covering units with plastic tarps shall not be acceptable.

3.2 FIELD EXAMINATION

A. The Mechanical Contractor shall verify that the mechanical room and/or roof are ready to receive work and the opening dimensions are as indicated on the shop drawings and contract documents.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. The Mechanical Contractor shall be responsible to coordinate ALL installation requirements with the Owner and the Owner’s selected Mechanical Contractor to ensure that a complete installation for each unit is being provided. Coordination efforts shall include such items as unloading and hoisting requirements, field wiring requirements, field piping requirements, field ductwork requirements, requirements for assembly of field-bolted or -welded joints, and all other installation and assembly requirements.

B. The Mechanical Contractor shall verify that the following items have been completed prior to scheduling the AHU manufacturer's final inspection and start up:

1. All spring-isolated components have had their shipping restraints removed and the components have been leveled.

2. On all field-joined units, that all interconnections have been completed, i.e., electrical and control wiring, piping, casing joints, bolting, welding, etc.

3. All water and steam piping connections have been completed and hydrostatically tested and all water flow rates have been set in accordance with the capacities scheduled on the Drawings.

4. All ductwork connections have been completed and all ductwork has been pressure tested for its intended service.

5. All power wiring, including motor starters and disconnects, serving the unit has been completed.

6. All automatic temperature and safety controls have been completed.

7. All dampers are fully operational.

8. All shipping materials have been removed.

9. All (clean) filter media has been installed in the units.

3.4 LEVELING

A. The Mechanical Contractor shall level all unit sections in accordance with the unit manufacturer's instructions. The Mechanical Contractor shall provide and install all necessary permanent shim material to ensure individual sections and entire assembled units are level.

3.5 FINAL INSPECTION AND START UP SERVICE

A. After the Mechanical Contractor has provided all water and steam piping connections, ductwork connections, and field control wiring, and Electrical Contractor has provided all the field power wiring, the Mechanical Contractor shall inspect the installation.

B. Start up shall be by an authorized technician employed by the unit manufacturer.

C. The Automatic Temperature Control (Building Direct Digital Control) Contractor shall be scheduled to be at the job site at the time of the equipment start up.

END OF SECTION 237313

SECTION 237413 – PACKAGED DX, OUTDOOR, CENTRAL STATION AIR HANDLING UNITS (SINGLE ZONE)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units (rooftop units) with the following components and accessories:
   1. Direct-expansion cooling.
   2. Gas furnace.
   3. Economizer outdoor- and return-air damper section.
   4. Integral, space temperature controls.
   5. Roof curbs.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.

B. Supply-Air Fan: The fan providing supply-air to conditioned space. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.

C. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil: Refrigerant coil in the supply-air stream to absorb heat (provide cooling) during cooling operations and to reject heat (provide heating) during heating operations. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical data for each RTU, including rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

   1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Field quality-control test reports.

D. Operation and maintenance data.

E. Warranty.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ARI Compliance:

1. Comply with ARI 210/240 and ARI 340/360 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
2. Comply with ARI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.

B. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Comply with ASHRAE 15 for refrigerant system safety.
2. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.
3. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

D. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace components of RTUs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period for Gas Furnace Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period for Solid-State Ignition Modules: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than 3 years from date of Substantial Completion.
4. Warranty Period for Control Boards: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than 3 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Carrier Corporation.
2. Trane; American Standard Companies, Inc.
3. YORK/JCI

2.2 CASING

1. Unit casing shall be construction of zinc coated, galvanized steel. Exterior surfaces shall be cleaned, phosphatized, and finished with a weather-resistant baked enamel finish. Unit surface shall be tested 672 hours in a salt spray test in compliance with ASTM B117. Cabinet construction shall allow for all maintenance on one side of the unit. Service panels shall have hinged access doors and tool-less entry while providing a water and air tight seal. All exposed vertical panels and top covers in the indoor air section shall be insulated with a cleanable foil-faced, fire retardant permanent, odorless glass fiber material. The base of the unit shall be insulated with 1/8" foil faced closed-cell insulation. All insulation edges shall be either captured or sealed. The unit's base pan shall have no penetrations within the perimeter of the curb other than the raised 1-1/8" high downflow supply/return openings to provide an added water integrity precaution, if the condensate drain backs up. The base of the unit shall have provisions for forklift and crane lifting, with forklift capabilities on three sides of the unit.

B. Condensate Drain Pans: Formed sections of galvanized steel sheet, a minimum of 2 inches deep, and complying with ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

1. Double-Wall Construction: Fill space between walls with foam insulation and seal moisture tight.
2. Drain Connections: Threaded nipple.
3. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Corrosion-resistant compound.

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

2.3 FANS

A. Direct-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated motor resiliently mounted in the fan inlet. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls.

B. Belt-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated, single-speed motor installed on an adjustable fan base resiliently mounted in the casing. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls.

C. Condenser-Coil Fan: Propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated motor.

D. Relief-Air Fan: Forward curved, shaft mounted on permanently lubricated motor.

2.4 COILS

A. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:

1. Copper or aluminum plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
3. Coil Split: Interlaced.
4. Condensate Drain Pan: Galvanized steel with corrosion-resistant formed with pitch and drain connections complying with ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

2.5 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

A. Compressor: Hermetic, reciprocating, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief.

B. Refrigeration Specialties:

1. Refrigerant: R-410a (unless otherwise indicated on plans)
2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
6. Minimum off-time relay.
7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.

2.6 AIR FILTRATION

A. Minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1, and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.

1. Pleated: Minimum 80 percent arrestance, and MERV 7.

2.7 GAS FURNACE

A. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; complying with ANSI Z21.47 and NFPA 54.

1. CSA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of CSA.

B. Burners: Stainless steel.

1. Fuel: Natural gas.
2. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark or hot-surface igniter with flame sensor.

C. Heat-Exchanger and Drain Pan: Stainless steel.

D. Venting: Gravity vented.

E. Power Vent: Integral, motorized centrifugal fan interlocked with gas valve with vertical extension as required for specific job layout.

F. Safety Controls:

1. Gas Control Valve: staged as indicated on drawings.
2. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.

2.8 DAMPERS

A. Outdoor-Air Damper: Linked damper blades, for 0 to 25 percent outdoor air, with manual damper filter.

B. Outdoor- and Return-Air Mixing Dampers: Parallel- or opposed-blade galvanized-steel dampers mechanically fastened to cadmium plated for galvanized-steel operating rod in reinforced cabinet. Connect operating rods with common linkage and interconnect linkages so dampers operate simultaneously.

1. Damper Motor: Modulating with adjustable minimum position.
2. Relief-Air Damper: Gravity actuated or motorized, as required by ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, with bird screen and hood.

2.9 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTION

A. Provide for single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

2.10 CONTROLS

A. Interface Requirements for HVAC Instrumentation and Control System (where DDC controls are utilized):

1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
2. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at the central workstation and diagnostic code storage.
3. Provide compatible interface for central HVAC control workstation for the following:

a. Adjusting set points.
b. Monitoring supply fan start, stop, and operation.

c. Inquiring data to include outdoor-air damper position, supply- and room-air temperature and humidity (where indicated).
d. Monitoring occupied and unoccupied operations.

4. See points list and sequence of operation on plans for requirements.

2.11 ACCESSORIES

A. Duplex, 115-V, ground-fault-interrupter outlet with 15-A overcurrent protection. Include transformer if required. Outlet shall be energized even if the unit main disconnect is open.

B. Filter differential pressure switch with sensor tubing on either side of filter. Set for final filter pressure loss.

C. Coil guards of painted, galvanized-steel wire.

D. Hail guards of galvanized steel, painted to match casing.

2.12 ROOF CURBS

A. Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-protection coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.

1. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

a. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I or II.
b. Thickness: 2 inches.

2. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.

a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have air-stream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.
d. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.

B. Curb Height: 14 inches (unless otherwise indicated on drawings).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting: Install grade-mounted RTUs on concrete base as indicated on drawings.

B. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to ARI Guideline B. Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories." Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts.

C. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural curbs. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure RTUs to structural support with anchor bolts.

D. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap spill on concrete splashblock.

E. Install piping adjacent to RTUs to allow service and maintenance.

1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.

F. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:

1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.
5. Install batt insulation in unused areas of roof curb, completely filling void.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.

B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing. Report results in writing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.3 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to site during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

B. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTU and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.

END OF SECTION 237413

SECTION 260500 – COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
2. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
3. Sleeve seals.
4. Grout.
5. Common electrical installation requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:
1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
4. So connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
   1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
      a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
      b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
      a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
      b. Calpico, Inc.
      c. Metraflex Co.
      d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
   3. Sealing Elements: EPDM NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
   4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
   5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.3 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.

C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.

D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.

E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

F. Cable Tray where provided shall not be used to support conduit, MC cable, etc.from either the tray itself, or tray structural supports such as trapeze or threaded rod assemblies. Cable tray shall only support approved cabling within the tray.

G. Conduit/pathways shall not be routed in a vapor barrier space (on the exterior of CMU between the outer surface). Conduit must be routed within the CMU and penetrate to the device.

H. Mechanical connections shown are diagrammatic. Coordinate with mechanical contractor and submittals for exact connection locations. Typical of air handlers, chillers, ventilation units, pumps, etc. This includes connecting to the disconnect first, then to the equipment.

I. Provide lug reducers and enclosure as required for all over-sized cabling (both for voltage drop or equipment lugs not sized for the conductors shown).

3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.

B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.

C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.

F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.

G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.

H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
   1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.

I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants.".

J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.

B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 260500

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 260519 – LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
3. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cabling used for voice and data circuits.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Alcan Products Corporation; Alcan Cable Division.
2. Senator Wire & Cable Company. (Southwire)
3. Encore Wire Corporation

C. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.

D. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THW THHN-THWN XHHW UF USE and SO.

E. Multiconductor Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for armored cable, Type AC metal-clad cable, Type MC mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM Type SO and Type USE with ground wire.

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
3. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
4. 3M; Electrical Products Division.
5. Tyco Electronics Corp.

C. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

2.3 SLEEVES FOR CABLES

A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.

D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

2.4 SLEEVE SEALS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. Calpico, Inc.
3. Metraflex Co.
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

D. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Feeders: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

A. Service Entrance: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspaces: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

E. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

F. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspaces: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in rigid raceway.

G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway Armored cable. See electrical coversheet for uses of MC cable if any.

H. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.

I. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.

J. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.

K. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway Power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes Power-limited tray cable, in cable tray.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.

D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

E. Support cables according to Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

F. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.

C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.

C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:

1. For sleeve rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side greater than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
2. For sleeve rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both wall surfaces.

G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.

H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.

I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

M. Aboveground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

N. Underground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.6 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

A. Install to seal underground exterior-wall penetrations.

B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for cable material and size. Position cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors, and conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements.

2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in cables and conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner.

    a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
    c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

D. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 260519

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 260523 – CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. UTP cabling.
2. 50/125-micrometer, multimode optical fiber cabling.
3. RS-232 cabling.
4. RS-485 cabling.
5. Low-voltage control cabling.
6. Control-circuit conductors.
7. Identification products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.

C. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.

D. Open Cabling: Passing telecommunications cabling through open space (e.g., between the studs of a wall cavity).

E. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements. Include the following:

1. Vertical and horizontal offsets and transitions.
2. Clearances for access above and to side of cable trays.
3. Vertical elevation of cable trays above the floor or bottom of ceiling structure.
4. Load calculations to show dead and live loads as not exceeding manufacturer's rating for tray and its support elements.

C. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Maintenance Data: For wire and cable to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.

1. Test optical fiber cable to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical fiber flashlight or optical loss test set.
2. Test optical fiber cable on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector; include the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
3. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install UTP and optical fiber cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PATHWAYS

A. Support of Open Cabling: NRTL labeled for support of cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.

1. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
2. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
3. Straps and other devices.

B. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems.

1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.

2.2 BACKBOARDS

A. Description: Plywood, AC Grade, 2 coats fire retardant paint on all sides, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches. Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."

2.3 UTP CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following.

1. Belden CDT Inc.; Electronics Division.
2. Berk-Tek; a Nexans company.
3. CommScope, Inc.
4. Draka USA.
5. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
6. KRONE Incorporated.
7. Mohawk; a division of Belden CDT.
8. Nordex/CDT; a subsidiary of Cable Design Technologies.
9. Superior Essex Inc.
10. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope, Inc. brand.
11. 3M.
12. Tyco Electronics/AMP Netconnect; Tyco International Ltd.

B. Description: 100-ohm, four-pair UTP.

1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 6.
4. Verified by NRTL to TIA/EIA-568-B.2, TIA/EIA 568-B.2-1 Category 6.
5. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:

a. Communications, Limited Purpose: Type CMX complying with UL 1581 VW-1

b. Communications, General Purpose: Type CM complying with UL 1581(Vertical Tray)

c. Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR complying with UL 1666
d. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP complying with NFPA 262.

2.4 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
2. Dynacom Corporation.
3. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
4. KRONE Incorporated.
5. Leviton Voice & Data Division.
6. Molex Premise Networks; a division of Molex, Inc.
7. Nordex/CDT; a subsidiary of Cable Design Technologies.
8. Panduit Corp.
9. Siemon Co. (The).
10. Tyco Electronics/AMP Netconnect; Tyco International Ltd.

B. UTP Cable Connecting Hardware: IDC type, using modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of the same category or higher.

C. Connecting Blocks: 110 style for Category provided. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare; integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

2.5 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Berk-Tek; a Nexans company.
2. CommScope, Inc.
3. Corning Cable Systems.
4. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
5. Mohawk; a division of Belden CDT.
6. Nordex/CDT; a subsidiary of Cable Design Technologies.
7. Optical Connectivity Solutions Division; Emerson Network Power.
8. Superior Essex Inc.
9. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope, Inc. brand.
10. 3M.
11. Tyco Electronics/AMP Netconnect; Tyco International Ltd.

B. Description: Multimode, 50/125-micrometer, 24 fiber, nonconductive, tight buffer, optical fiber cable.

1. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA/EIA-492AAAA-B for detailed specifications.
4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 262 for the following types:
   a. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
   b. Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNR complying with UL 1666.
   c. Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP complying with NFPA 262.
   d. Riser Rated, Conductive: Type OFCR complying with UL 1666.
5. Conductive cable shall be aluminum-armored type.
6. Maximum Attenuation: 3.5 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.
7. Minimum Modal Bandwidth: [62.5] 220 MHz-km at 850 nm; 600 MHz-km at 1300 nm. [50] 700 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm

C. Jacket:

1. Jacket Color: Aqua for 50/125-micrometer cable.
2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA/EIA-598-B.
3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches.

2.6 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ADC.
2. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
3. Berk-Tek; a Nexans company.
4. Corning Cable Systems.
5. Dynacom Corporation.
6. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
7. Molex Premise Networks; a division of Molex, Inc.
8. Nordex/CDT; a subsidiary of Cable Design Technologies.
9. Optical Connectivity Solutions Division; Emerson Network Power.
10. Siemon Co. (The).

B. Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with the Fiber Optic Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA/EIA-604-2, TIA/EIA-604-3-A, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.

1. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type SC connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.
2. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.

2.7 RS-232 CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.

1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Polypropylene insulation.
3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Plastic insulation.
3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. Plastic jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.8 RS-485 CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.

1. Paired, two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

2.9 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

A. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

B. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

C. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

D. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Plastic jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

2.10 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway, complying with UL 83.

B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway, power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes complying with UL 83.

C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or Type TF, complying with UL 83.

2.11 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following:

1. Brady Corporation.
2. HellermannTyton.
3. Kroy LLC.
4. Panduit Corp.

B. Comply with UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test UTP and optical fiber cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

C. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.

D. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.

E. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

A. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.

B. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.

C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.

D. Pathway Installation in Equipment Rooms:

1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed or in the corner of room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
3. Secure conduits to backboard if entering room from overhead.
4. Extend conduits 3 inches above finished floor.
5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

E. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
5. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
6. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
7. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
8. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.

C. UTP Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
2. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
3. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:

1. Install wiring in raceways. Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

E. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
2. Cable shall be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.

F. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

G. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:

1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.

3. Coil cable 72 inches long shall be neatly coiled not less than 12 inches in diameter below each feed point.

H. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:

   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.

3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:

   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.

4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:

   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.

5. Separation between Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.
6. Separation between Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

3.3 REMOVAL OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Remove abandoned conductors and cables.

3.4 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:

1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No 14 AWG.
2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits, No 12 AWG.

3.5 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

3.6 GROUNDING

A. For data communication wiring, comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A and with BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Test UTP cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not after cross connection.

    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

4. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:

a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:

1) Multimode Link Measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in one direction according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
2) Attenuation test results for links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

D. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.

E. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 260523

SECTION 260526 – GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:

1. Underground distribution grounding.
2. Common ground bonding with lightning protection system.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Other Informational Submittals: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in Part 3 "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:

1. Test wells.
2. Ground rods.
3. Ground rings.
4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
5. Grounding for sensitive electronic equipment.

C. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

D. Field quality-control test reports.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include the following in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals:

1. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells ground rings grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NFPA 70B.

a. Tests shall be to determine if ground resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if they do not.
b. Include recommended testing intervals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS

A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

C. Bare Grounding Conductor and Conductor Protector for Wood Poles:

1. No. 4 AWG minimum, soft-drawn copper.
2. Conductor Protector: Half-round PVC or wood molding. If wood, use pressure-treated fir or cypress or cedar.

D. Grounding Bus: Rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 2 inches in cross section, unless otherwise indicated; with insulators.

2.2 CONNECTORS

A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.

1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.

C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

2.3 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by10 feet in diameter.

B. Chemical-Enhanced Grounding Electrodes: Copper tube, straight or L-shaped, charged with nonhazardous electrolytic chemical salts.

1. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least 48 inches long.
2. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturer's recommended material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum, or as indicated on the plans.

1. Bury at least 30 inches below grade.
2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.

C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.

D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical and telecom equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

1. Install bus on insulated spacers 1 inch, minimum, from wall 6 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, down to specified height above floor, and connect to horizontal bus.

E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.

B. Grounding Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches will extend above finished floor.

C. Pad-Mounted Transformers: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches from the foundation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.

B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:

1. Feeders and branch circuits.
2. Lighting circuits.
3. Receptacle circuits.
4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
6. Flexible raceway runs.
7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
9. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.

C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.

E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.

1. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch grounding bus.
2. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.

H. Metal Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

B. Common Ground Bonding with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.

C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.
2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.

D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches deep, with cover.

1. Test Wells: Install at least one test well for each service, unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.

E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.

1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:

1. Metal Water Service Pipe (domestic and fire): Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet apart.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

B. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test

wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.

a. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.

3. Prepare dimensioned drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.

C. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohm(s).
5. Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.

D. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 260529 – HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

C. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design supports for multiple raceways, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.

C. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

D. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Steel slotted support systems.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

1. Trapeze hangers. Include Product Data for components.
2. Steel slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
3. Equipment supports.

C. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
c. ERICO International Corporation.
d. GS Metals Corp.

e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
g. Wesanco, Inc.

3. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
4. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
5. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

B. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.

C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel and malleable-iron hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.

E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1) Hilti Inc.
2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.; Masterset Fastening Systems Unit.

2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.

a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
3) Hilti Inc.
4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
5) MKT Fastening, LLC.

3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.

B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.

C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with single-bolt conduit clamps.

D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.

B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT, IMC, and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69.
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.

E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

F. Decking shall not be used as a support location. All supports must be anchored to structural steel only. In locations where structural steel does not span, provide a unistrut support between structural members.

G. The use of minneralac straps shall not be used 8' below aff. a smooth one-hole strap should be used and appropriate conduit offsets should be used.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.

B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.

B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 03 Section " Cast-in-Place Concrete (Limited Applications)."

C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.

1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529

SECTION 260533 – RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

B. ENT: Electrical nonmetallic tubing.

C. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

D. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.

E. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

F. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.

G. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.

H. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

I. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Shop Drawings: For the following raceway components. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Custom enclosures and cabinets.
2. For handholes and boxes for underground wiring, including the following:

    a. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
    b. Frame and cover design.
    c. Grounding details.
    d. Dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.
    e. Joint details.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosures and cabinets and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

    a. The term "withstand" means "the cabinet or enclosure will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will retain its enclosure characteristics, including its interior accessibility, after the seismic event."

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.

E. Source quality-control test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Alflex Inc.
3. Allied Tube & Conduit; a Tyco International Ltd. Co.
4. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
5. Electri-Flex Co.
6. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
7. Maverick Tube Corporation.
8. O-Z Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
9. Wheatland Tube Company.

C. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.

D. Aluminum Rigid Conduit: ANSI C80.5.

E. IMC: ANSI C80.6.

F. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated IMC.

1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch, minimum.

G. EMT: ANSI C80.3.

H. FMC: Zinc-coated steel.

I. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.

J. Fittings for Conduit (Including all Types and Flexible and Liquidtight), EMT, and Cable: NEMA FB 1; listed for type and size raceway with which used, and for application and environment in which installed.

1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886.
2. Fittings for EMT: Steel plated hexagonal compression type.
3. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness, 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

K. Joint Compound for Rigid Steel Conduit or IMC: Listed for use in cable connector assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded raceway joints from corrosion and enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND TUBING

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.

3. Arnco Corporation.
4. CANTEX Inc.
5. CertainTeed Corp.; Pipe & Plastics Group.
6. Condux International, Inc.
7. ElecSYS, Inc.
8. Electri-Flex Co.
9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
10. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
11. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
12. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

C. ENT: NEMA TC 13.

D. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, unless otherwise indicated.

E. LFNC: UL 1660.

F. Fittings for ENT and RNC: NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

G. Fittings for LFNC: UL 514B.

2.3 OPTICAL FIBER/COMMUNICATIONS CABLE RACEWAY AND FITTINGS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Arnco Corporation.
2. Endot Industries Inc.
3. IPEX Inc.
4. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.

C. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible type, approved for plenum installation.

2.4 METAL WIREWAYS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
2. Hoffman.
3. Square D; Schneider Electric.

C. Description: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated, NEMA 250, Type 12, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

E. Wireway Covers: Hinged type.

F. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.5 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Hoffman.
2. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.

C. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to size and shape indicated, with no holes or knockouts. Cover is gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections are flanged, with stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.

D. Description: PVC plastic, extruded and fabricated to size and shape indicated, with snap-on cover and mechanically coupled connections with plastic fasteners.

E. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

2.6 SURFACE RACEWAYS

A. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
b. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
c. Wiremold Company (The); Electrical Sales Division.
d. Panduit.

B. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two-piece construction, manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Butler Manufacturing Company; Walker Division.
b. Enduro Systems, Inc.; Composite Products Division.
c. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems Division.
d. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
e. Panduit Corp.
f. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
g. Wiremold Company (The); Electrical Sales Division.

2.7 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Crouse-Hinds; Div. of Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
4. Hoffman.
5. Hubbell Incorporated; Killark Electric Manufacturing Co. Division.
6. O-Z/Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
7. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
8. Robroy Industries, Inc.; Enclosure Division.
9. Scott Fetzer Co.; Adalet Division.
10. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
11. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
12. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
13. Woodhead, Daniel Company; Woodhead Industries, Inc. Subsidiary.

C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

E. Metal Floor Boxes: Cast or sheet metal, fully adjustable, rectangular.

F. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

G. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.

H. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.

I. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

2.8 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. Description: Comply with SCTE 77.

1. Color of Frame and Cover: See drawings.
2. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, as indicated for each service.
6. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
7. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Armorcast Products Company.
    b. Carson Industries LLC.
    c. CDR Systems Corporation.
    d. NewBasis.

C. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Frame and Cover: Sheet-molded, fiberglass-reinforced, polyester-resin enclosure joined to polymer-concrete top ring or frame.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Armorcast Products Company.
    b. Carson Industries LLC.
    c. Christy Concrete Products.
    d. Synertech Moulded Products, Inc.; a division of Oldcastle Precast.

D. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with covers of polymer concrete.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Carson Industries LLC.
    b. Christy Concrete Products.
    c. Nordic Fiberglass, Inc.

2.9 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS

A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.

D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

2.10 SLEEVE SEALS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. Calpico, Inc.
3. Metraflex Co.
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

D. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.

1. Tests of materials shall be performed by a independent testing agency.
2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: Rigid steel conduit
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: IMC.
3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC- 80-PVC, direct buried.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 4.
6. Application of Handholes and Boxes for Underground Wiring:

    a. Handholes and Pull Boxes in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 15 structural load rating.

b. Handholes and Pull Boxes in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Polymer-concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8 structural load rating.
c. Handholes and Pull Boxes Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf vertical loading.

B. Comply with the following indoor applications, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: Rigid steel conduit. Includes raceways in the following locations:

   a. Loading dock.
   b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
   c. Mechanical rooms.

4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
6. Damp or Wet Locations: IMC.
7. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: Plenum-type, optical fiber/communications cable raceway.
8. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable Risers in Vertical Shafts: Riser-type, optical fiber/communications cable raceway.
9. Raceways for Concealed General Purpose Distribution of Optical Fiber or Communications Cable: General-use, optical fiber/communications cable raceway.
10. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4, nonmetallic in damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with that material. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer.

E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.

F. Do not install aluminum conduits in contact with concrete.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements applicable to products specified in Part 2 except where requirements on Drawings or in this Article are stricter.

B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

D. Support raceways as specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.

F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for communications conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed.

G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
3. Change from ENT to rigid steel conduit or IMC before rising above the floor. No PVC permitted above slab.

I. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

J. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.

K. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire.

L. Raceways for Optical Fiber and Communications Cable: Install raceways, metallic and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:

1. 3/4-Inch Trade Size and Smaller: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 50 feet.
2. 1-Inch Trade Size and Larger: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 75 feet.
3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of raceway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.

M. Install raceway sealing fittings at suitable, approved, and accessible locations and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

N. Expansion-Joint Fittings for RNC: Install in each run of aboveground conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F, and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet.

1. Install expansion-joint fittings for each of the following locations, and provide type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for location:

   a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
   b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
   c. Indoor Spaces: Connected with the Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
   d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.

2. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change.
3. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at the time of installation.

O. Flexible Conduit Connections: Use maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

P. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall.

Q. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

R. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

S. Slab area work: Conduit shall not be embedded in slabs except for the purpose of transitioning to above slab or serving boxes/equipment at that location. All other conduits shall be installed below slab, located in the stone base with at least 4” of concrete cover.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout the length of the elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.

    a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
    b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

6. Provide a bright colored plastic marker strip reading: "Caution - Electrical Conduits" in each underground conduit trench. Install a maximum of 12" below grade or a minimum of 18" above top of duct bank. All underground markings shall have metallic marking tape.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.

D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below the frost line, below grade.

E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in the enclosure.

F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.

C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:

1. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side greater than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
2. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.

G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.

H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.

I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.

K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials. Comply with Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways with flexible, boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

M. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

N. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.6 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

A. Install to seal underground, exterior wall penetrations.

B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway material and size. Position raceway in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 PROTECTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 260543 – UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Conduit, ducts, and duct accessories for direct-buried and concrete-encased duct banks, and in single duct runs.
2. Handholes and boxes.

1.3 DEFINITION

A. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Duct-bank materials, including separators and miscellaneous components.
2. Ducts and conduits and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
3. Accessories for handholes, boxes, and other utility structures.
4. Warning tape.

B. Shop Drawings for Precast or Factory-Fabricated Underground Utility Structures: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other work, and accessories, including the following:

1. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
2. Reinforcement details.
3. Grounding details.
4. Joint details.

C. Shop Drawings for Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete: Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details, including the following:

1. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.

2. Cover design.
3. Grounding details.

D. Duct-Bank Coordination Drawings: Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.

1. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.
2. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

E. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete handholes, as required by ASTM C 858.

F. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.

G. Source quality-control test reports.

H. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

B. Comply with ANSI C2.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver ducts to Project site with ends capped. Store nonmetallic ducts with supports to prevent bending, warping, and deforming.

B. Store precast concrete and other factory-fabricated underground utility structures at Project site as recommended by manufacturer to prevent physical damage. Arrange so identification markings are visible.

C. Lift and support precast concrete units only at designated lifting or supporting points.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.

2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of ducts, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field.

B. Coordinate elevations of ducts and duct-bank entrances into handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of ducts and duct banks as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations from those indicated as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct runs drain to handholes, and as approved by Architect.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

B. Furnish cable-support stanchions, arms, insulators, and associated fasteners in quantities equal to 5 percent of quantity of each item installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUIT

A. Rigid Steel Conduit: Galvanized. Comply with ANSI C80.1.

B. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, UL 651, with matching fittings by same manufacturer as the conduit, complying with NEMA TC 3 and UL 514B.

2.2 NONMETALLIC DUCTS AND DUCT ACCESSORIES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. ARNCO Corp.
2. Beck Manufacturing.
3. Cantex, Inc.
4. CertainTeed Corp.; Pipe & Plastics Group.

5. Condux International, Inc.
6. ElecSys, Inc.
7. Electri-Flex Company.
8. IPEX Inc.
9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
10. Manhattan/CDT; a division of Cable Design Technologies.
11. Spiraduct/AFC Cable Systems, Inc.

D. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: NEMA TC 6 & 8, Type EB-20-PVC, ASTM F 512, UL 651A, with matching fittings by the same manufacturer as the duct, complying with NEMA TC 9.

E. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: NEMA TC 6 & 8, Type DB-60-PVC and Type DB-80-PVC, ASTM F 512, with matching fittings by the same manufacturer as the duct, complying with NEMA TC 9.

F. Duct Accessories:

1. Duct Separators: Factory-fabricated rigid PVC interlocking spacers, sized for type and sizes of ducts with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacings indicated while supporting ducts during concreting or backfilling.
2. Warning Tape: Underground-line warning tape specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

a. Color: Red dye added to concrete during batching.

2.3 PRECAST CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carder Concrete Products.
2. Christy Concrete Products.
3. Elmhurst-Chicago Stone Co.
4. Oldcastle Precast Group.
5. Riverton Concrete Products; a division of Cretex Companies, Inc.
6. Utility Concrete Products, LLC.
7. Utility Vault Co.
8. Wausau Tile, Inc.

C. Comply with ASTM C 858 for design and manufacturing processes.

D. Description: Factory-fabricated, reinforced-concrete, monolithically poured walls and bottom unless open-bottom enclosures are indicated. Frame and cover shall form top of enclosure and shall have load rating consistent with that of handhole or box.

1. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof cast-iron frame, with cast-iron cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
2. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with steel cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
3. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with hinged steel access door assembly with tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.

    a. Cover Hinges: Concealed, with hold-open ratchet assembly.
    b. Cover Handle: Recessed.

4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC." Or "TELEPHONE." As indicated for each service.
6. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have integral closed bottom, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Extensions and Slabs: Designed to mate with bottom of enclosure. Same material as enclosure.

    a. Extension shall provide increased depth of 12 inches.
    b. Slab: Same dimensions as bottom of enclosure, and arranged to provide closure.

8. Windows: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching ducts and duct banks plus an additional 12 inches vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.

    a. Windows shall be located no less than 6 inches from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or frames and covers of handholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
    b. Window opening shall have cast-in-place, welded wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct banks.
    c. Window openings shall be framed with at least two additional No. 4 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.

9. Duct Entrances in Handhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.

    a. Type and size shall match fittings to duct or conduit to be terminated.
    b. Fittings shall align with elevations of approaching ducts and be located near interior corners of handholes to facilitate racking of cable.

10. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.4 HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

A. Description: Comply with SCTE 77.

1. Color: Gray.
2. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have integral closed bottom, unless otherwise indicated.

3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC." Or "TELEPHONE." As indicated for each service.
6. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
7. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
8. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.

B. Polymer Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Armorcast Products Company.
    b. Carson Industries LLC.
    c. CDR Systems Corporation.
    d. NewBasis.

C. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes with Polymer Concrete Frame and Cover: Sheet-molded, fiberglass-reinforced, polyester resin enclosure joined to polymer concrete top ring or frame.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Armorcast Products Company.
    b. Carson Industries LLC.
    c. Christy Concrete Products.
    d. Synertech Moulded Products, Inc.; a division of Oldcastle Precast.

D. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with covers of polymer concrete.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Carson Industries LLC.
    b. Christy Concrete Products.
    c. Nordic Fiberglass, Inc.

E. High-Density Plastic Boxes: Injection molded of high-density polyethylene or copolymer-polypropylene. Cover shall be polymer concrete.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Carson Industries LLC.
    b. Nordic Fiberglass, Inc.
    c. PenCell Plastics.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.

B. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.

1. Tests of materials shall be performed by a independent testing agency.
2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or the manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

A. Ducts for Electrical Cables Over 600 V: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Ducts for Electrical Branch Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Underground Ducts for Telephone, Communications, or Data Utility Service Cables: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Underground Ducts for Telephone, Communications, or Data Utility Service Cables: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, installed in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Underground Ducts for Telephone, Communications, or Data Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Underground Ducts for Telephone, Communications, or Data Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EB-20-PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

I. Underground Ducts Crossing Paved Paths Walks and Driveways Roadways and Railroads: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, encased in reinforced concrete.

3.2 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

A. Handholes and Boxes for 600 V and Less, Including Telephone, Communications, and Data Wiring:

1. Units in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths: Precast concrete. AASHTO HB 17, H-20 structural load rating.
2. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-20 Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 15 structural load rating.
3. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-10 structural load rating.
4. Units Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf vertical loading.

3.3 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Division 22 Section "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.

B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation and reestablish original grades, unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.

C. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Division 32 Sections "Turfs and Grasses" and "Plants."

D. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground ducts and utility structures according to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching."

3.4 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Slope: Pitch ducts a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward handholes and away from buildings and equipment.

B. Manufactured sweep bends in first paragraph below are available in various radii up to 25 feet (7.5 m) for 4- and 5-inch (100- and 125-mm) ducts, although a 48-inch (1220-mm) radius is the largest regularly stocked. To minimize pulling tensions, specify the largest radius possible, consistent with other Project requirements. See Editing Instruction No. 3 in the Evaluations. Coordinate with Drawings.

C. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 48 inches 12.5 feet 25 feet, both horizontally and vertically, at other locations, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in ducts and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in same plane.

E. Duct Entrances to Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately 10 inches o.c. for 5-inch ducts, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.

1. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet from the end bell without reducing duct line slope and without forming a trap in the line.
2. Direct-Buried Duct Banks: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each conduit in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to handhole.
3. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.

F. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to rigid steel conduit at least 10 feet outside the building wall without reducing duct line slope away from the building, and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for duct-to-conduit transition. Install conduit penetrations of building walls as specified in Division 26 Section "Common Work Results for Electrical/Common Work Results for Communications/Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security."

G. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of ducts that have cables pulled. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig hydrostatic pressure.

H. Pulling Cord: Install 100-lbf- test nylon cord in ducts, including spares.

I. Concrete-Encased Ducts: Support ducts on duct separators.

1. Separator Installation: Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than 4 spacers per 20 feet of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Stagger separators approximately 6 inches between tiers. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.

2. Pouring Concrete: Spade concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between conduits and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto ducts. Allow concrete to flow to center of bank and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-bank application.
3. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct banks where they cross disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
4. Forms: Use walls of trench to form side walls of duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
5. Minimum Space between Ducts: 3 inches between ducts and exterior envelope wall, 2 inches between ducts for like services, and 4 inches between power and signal ducts.
6. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 24 inches below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least 30 inches below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Stub-Ups: Use manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Extend concrete encasement throughout the length of the elbow.
8. Stub-Ups: Use manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.

    a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
    b. Stub-Ups to Equipment: For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

9. Warning Tape: Bury warning tape approximately 12 inches above all concrete-encased ducts and duct banks. Align tape parallel to and within 3 inches of the centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each 12-inch increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches. Space additional tapes 12 inches apart, horizontally.

J. Direct-Buried Duct Banks:

1. Support ducts on duct separators coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
2. Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than 4 spacers per 20 feet of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent displacement during backfill and yet permit linear duct movement due to expansion and contraction as temperature changes. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches between tiers.
3. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct bank. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Division 22 Section "Earth Moving" for pipes less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.

4. Install backfill as specified in Division 22 Section "Earth Moving."
5. After installing first tier of ducts, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand-place backfill to 4 inches over ducts and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 22 Section "Earth Moving."
6. Install ducts with a minimum of 3 inches between ducts for like services and 6 inches between power and signal ducts.
7. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 36 inches below finished grade, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Set elevation of bottom of duct bank below the frost line.
9. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout the length of the elbow.
10. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.

    a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
    b. For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Precast Concrete Handhole Installation:

1. Comply with ASTM C 891, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

B. Elevations:
1. Install handholes with bottom below the frost line, 12” below grade.
2. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.
3. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.

C. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Waterproofing materials and installation are specified in Division 07 Section " Thermoplastic Sheet Waterproofing."After ducts have been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, waterproof joints and connections and touch up abrasions and scars.

D. Dampproofing: Apply dampproofing to exterior surfaces of handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Dampproofing materials and installation are specified in Division 07

Section "Bituminous Dampproofing." After ducts have been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, dampproof joints and connections and touch up abrasions and scars.

E. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, and cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.

F. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than 2 inches for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use a minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of ducts, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by the manufacturer.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.

D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below the frost line, 12” below grade.

E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in the enclosure.

F. Field-cut openings for ducts and conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

G. For enclosures installed in asphalt paving and subject to occasional, nondeliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, form and pour a concrete ring encircling, and in contact with, enclosure and with top surface screeded to top of box cover frame. Bottom of ring shall rest on compacted earth.

1. Concrete: 3000 psi, 28-day strength, complying with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete," with a troweled finish.
2. Dimensions: 10 inches wide by 12 inches deep.

3.7 GROUNDING

A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground ducts and utility structures.
2. Pull aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and test for out-of-round duct. Provide mandrel equal to 80 percent fill of duct. If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
3. Test handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

3.9 CLEANING

A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of ducts. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.

END OF SECTION 260543

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 260548 – VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Isolation pads.
2. Spring isolators.
3. Restrained spring isolators.
4. Channel support systems.
5. Restraint cables.
6. Hanger rod stiffeners.
7. Anchorage bushings and washers.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems" for commonly used electrical supports and installation requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. The IBC: International Building Code.

B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for providing restraints to resist the earthquake effects on the electrical system. The requirements for these restraints are found in the State Building Code and ASCE 7.

B. The Electrical Contractor shall refer to the latest edition of the "Seismic Restraint Manual Guidelines for Mechanical System" published by SMACNA for guidelines to determine the correct restraints for sheet metal ducts, piping, and conduit, etc.

C. The Electrical Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Structural Engineer registered in the State, to design seismic restraint elements required for this project. The engineer's computations, bearing his professional seal, shall accompany shop drawings which show Code compliance. Computations and shop drawings shall be submitted for review prior to the purchasing of materials, equipment systems, and assemblies.

D. The professional engineer retained by the Electrical Contractor for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation. This Engineer shall provide in writing verification of compliance with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspection by other than this Engineer is not acceptable. This engineer shall also be responsible for any required special inspections and associated documentation related to seismic restraints.

E. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
1. Site Class shall be as Defined in the IBC and ASCE 7, as determined by the project Structural Engineer of record.
2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category shall be as Defined in the IBC and ASCE 7 for the following:
   a. Component Importance Factor.
   b. Component Response Modification Factor.
   c. Component Amplification Factor.
3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second).
4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1.0-Second Period.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
   a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
3. Restrained-Isolation Devices: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, seismic forces required to select vibration isolators and seismic restraints.
   a. Coordinate design calculations with wind-load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Division 26 Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
2. Indicate materials and dimensions and identify hardware, including attachment and anchorage devices.
3. Field-fabricated supports.
4. Seismic-Restraint Details:
   a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
   b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and

values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.

c. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

C. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for electrical components with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.

D. Welding certificates.

E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.

C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.

2. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
3. California Dynamics Corporation.
4. Isolation Technology, Inc.
5. Kinetics Noise Control.
6. Mason Industries.
7. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
8. Vibration Isolation.
9. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

D. Pads: Arrange in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene rubber hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass.

E. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.
1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
5. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

F. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.
1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
2. Restraint: Seismic or limit-stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.2 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
2. California Dynamics Corporation.
3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
4. Hilti Inc.

5. Loos & Co.; Seismic Earthquake Division.
6. Mason Industries.
7. TOLCO Incorporated; a brand of NIBCO INC.
8. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.

B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and application requirements shall be as defined in reports by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES OSHPD an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.

C. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

D. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized -steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivels, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

E. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod. Do not weld stiffeners to rods.

F. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchors and studs.

G. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices.

H. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

I. Mechanical Anchor: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchors with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.

J. Adhesive Anchor: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.3 FACTORY FINISHES

A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.

B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
   1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
   2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
   3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
   4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.

C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:
   1. Install restrained isolators on electrical equipment.
   2. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
   3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.

B. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

C. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

D. Drilled-in Anchors:
1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where they terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:
1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless post connection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
7. Measure isolator deflection.
8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
9. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

F. The professional engineer retained by the Electrical Contractor for seismic restraint calculations shall visit the job site upon completion of the seismic restraint installation. This Engineer shall provide in writing verification of compliance with the approved seismic submittal. This verification shall bear the Engineer's professional seal. Job site inspection by other than this Engineer is not acceptable. This engineer shall also be responsible for any required special inspections and associated documentation related to seismic restraints.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust isolators after isolated equipment is at operating weight.

B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

C. Adjust active height of spring isolators.

D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 260548

SECTION 260553 – IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Identification for raceway and metal-clad cable.
2. Identification for conductors and communication and control cable.
3. Underground-line warning tape.
4. Warning labels and signs.
5. Instruction signs.
6. Equipment identification labels.
7. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

B. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.

C. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and ANSI C2.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in the Contract Documents, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation

and Maintenance Manual, and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.

D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RACEWAY AND METAL-CLAD CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.

B. Color for Printed Legend:

1. Power Circuits: Black letters on an orange field.
2. Normal Power = Black; Emergency = Red; UPS = Blue
3. Legend: Indicate system or service and voltage, if applicable.

C. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

D. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

E. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

F. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; 2 inches wide; compounded for outdoor use.

2.2 CONDUCTOR AND COMMUNICATION- AND CONTROL-CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide.

B. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

C. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels: Cut from 0.014-inch- thick aluminum sheet, with stamped, embossed, or scribed legend, and fitted with tabs and matching slots for permanently securing around wire or cable jacket or around groups of conductors.

D. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking nylon tie fastener.

E. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.010 inch thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and polyester or nylon tie for attachment to conductor or cable.

1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

2.3 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

A. Description: Permanent, bright-colored, continuous-printed, polyethylene tape.

1. Not less than 6 inches wide by 4 mils thick.
2. Compounded for permanent direct-burial service.
3. Embedded continuous metallic strip or core.
4. Printed legend shall indicate type of underground line.

2.4 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs: Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches.

D. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs: Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting. Nominal size, 10 by 14 inches.

E. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."

2.5 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch thick for signs up to 20 sq. in. and 1/8 inch thick for larger sizes.

1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.6 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

A. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch. Equipment name, circuit number, and voltage shall be identified.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Cable Ties: Fungus-inert, self-extinguishing, 1-piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon cable ties.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength: 50 lb, minimum.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

B. Paint: Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

1. Exterior Concrete, Stucco, and Masonry (Other Than Concrete Unit Masonry):

a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.

1) Primer: Exterior concrete and masonry primer.
2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss acrylic enamel.

2. Exterior Concrete Unit Masonry:

a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a block filler.

1) Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler.
2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss acrylic enamel.

3. Exterior Ferrous Metal:

a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: Two finish coat(s) over a primer.

1) Primer: Exterior ferrous-metal primer.
2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss alkyd enamel.

4. Exterior Zinc-Coated Metal (except Raceways):

   a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.

      1) Primer: Exterior zinc-coated metal primer.
      2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss alkyd enamel.

5. Interior Concrete and Masonry (Other Than Concrete Unit Masonry):

   a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.

      1) Primer: Interior concrete and masonry primer.
      2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss alkyd enamel.

6. Interior Concrete Unit Masonry:

   a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a block filler.

      1) Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler.
      2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.

7. Interior Gypsum Board:

   a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.

      1) Primer: Interior gypsum board primer.
      2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.

8. Interior Ferrous Metal:

   a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.

      1) Primer: Interior ferrous-metal primer.
      2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.

9. Interior Zinc-Coated Metal (except Raceways):

   a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.

      1) Primer: Interior zinc-coated metal primer.
      2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.

C. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Raceways and Duct Banks More Than 600 V Concealed within Buildings: 4-inch- wide black stripes on 10-inch centers over orange background that extends full length of raceway or duct and is 12 inches wide. Stencil legend "DANGER CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch- high black letters on 20-inch centers. Stop stripes at legends. Apply to the following finished surfaces:

1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.

B. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables More Than 600 V: Identify with "DANGER-HIGH VOLTAGE" in black letters at least 2 inches high, with self-adhesive vinyl labels. Repeat legend at 10-foot maximum intervals.

C. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits More Than 100A: Identify with orange self-adhesive vinyl label.

D. Accessible Raceways and Cables of Auxiliary Systems: Identify the following systems with color-coded, self-adhesive vinyl tape applied in bands:

1. Fire Alarm System: Red.
2. Fire-Suppression Supervisory and Control System: Red and yellow.
3. Combined Fire Alarm and Security System: Red and blue.
4. Security System: Blue and yellow.
5. Mechanical and Electrical Supervisory System: Green and blue.
6. Telecommunication System: Green and yellow.
7. Control Wiring: Green and red.

E. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification: For primary and secondary conductors No. 1/0 AWG and larger in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes use metal tags. Identify source and circuit number of each set of conductors. For single conductor cables, identify phase in addition to the above.

F. Branch-Circuit Conductor Identification: Where there are conductors for more than three branch circuits in same junction or pull box, use color-coding conductor tape. Identify each ungrounded conductor according to source and circuit number.

G. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source and circuit number.

H. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, signal, sound, intercommunications, voice, and data connections.

1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and Operation and Maintenance Manual.

I. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.

J. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145 and apply self-adhesive warning labels. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.

1. Equipment with Multiple Power or Control Sources: Apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:

   a. Power transfer switches.
   b. Controls with external control power connections.

2. Equipment Requiring Workspace Clearance According to NFPA 70: Unless otherwise indicated, apply to door or cover of equipment but not on flush panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.

K. Instruction Signs:

1. Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
2. Emergency Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer or load shedding.

L. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.

1. Labeling Instructions:

   a. Indoor Equipment: Adhesive film label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- high letters on 1-1/2-inch- high label; where 2 lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
   b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic label.
   c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

d. Emergency shutdown equipment and disconnects: large letter 2” on 4” high label. Engraved acrylic label.

2. Equipment to Be Labeled:

a. Panelboards, electrical cabinets, and enclosures.
b. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
c. Electrical switchgear and switchboards.
d. Transformers.
e. Electrical substations.
f. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
g. Motor-control centers.
h. Disconnect switches.
i. Enclosed circuit breakers.
j. Motor starters.
k. Push-button stations.
l. Power transfer equipment.
m. Contactors.
n. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
o. Battery inverter units.
p. Battery racks.
q. Power-generating units.
r. Voice and data cable terminal equipment.
s. Master clock and program equipment.
t. Intercommunication and call system master and staff stations.
u. Television/audio components, racks, and controls.
v. Fire-alarm control panel and annunciators.
w. Security and intrusion-detection control stations, control panels, terminal cabinets, and racks.
x. Monitoring and control equipment.
y. Uninterruptible power supply equipment.
z. Terminals, racks, and patch panels for voice and data communication and for signal and control functions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.

C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.

E. Attach non-adhesive signs and plastic labels with screws and auxiliary hardware appropriate to the location and substrate.

F. System Identification Color Banding for Raceways and Cables: Each color band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.

G. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V and Less: Use the colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.

1. Color shall be factory applied or, for sizes larger than No. 10 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit, field applied.
2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:

   a. Phase A: Black.
   b. Phase B: Red.
   c. Phase C: Blue.

3. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:

   a. Phase A: Brown.
   b. Phase B: Orange.
   c. Phase C: Yellow.

4. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.

H. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels and Metal Tags: Secure tight to surface of conductor or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

I. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.

J. Painted Identification: Prepare surface and apply paint according to Division 09 painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 260553

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 260923 – LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following lighting control devices:

1. Time switches.
2. Indoor occupancy sensors.
3. Lighting contactors.
4. Emergency shunt relays.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 26 Section "Relay Lighting Controls" for low-voltage, manual and programmable lighting control systems.
2. Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.
3. Division 26 Section "Theatrical Lighting" for theatrical lighting controls.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. LED: Light-emitting diode.

B. PIR: Passive infrared.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show installation details for occupancy and light-level sensors.

1. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.

C. Field quality-control test reports.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TIME SWITCHES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Area Lighting Research, Inc.; Tyco Electronics.
2. Grasslin Controls Corporation; a GE Industrial Systems Company.
3. Intermatic, Inc.
4. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
5. Lightolier Controls; a Genlyte Company.
6. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
7. Paragon Electric Co.; Invensys Climate Controls.
8. Square D; Schneider Electric.
9. TORK.
10. Touch-Plate, Inc.

D. Electronic Time Switches: Electronic, solid-state programmable units with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.

1. Contact Configuration: DPST.
2. Contact Rating: 20-A ballast load, 120/240-V ac.
3. Program: 8 on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
4. Program: 2 on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.

5. Programs: 4 channels; each channel shall be individually programmable with 8 on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule.
6. Programs: 2 channels; each channel shall be individually programmable with 2 on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule with skip-a-day weekly schedule.
7. Programs: 2 channels; each channel shall be individually programmable with 2 on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week.
8. Programs: 2 channels; each channel shall be individually programmable with 40 on-off operations per week and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
9. Programs: 2 channels; each channel shall be individually programmable with 40 on-off operations per week, plus 4 seasonal schedules that modify the basic program, and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
10. Program: 2 and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
11. Astronomic Time: All channels.
12. Battery Backup: For schedules and time clock.

2.2 INDOOR OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Hubbell Lighting.
2. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
3. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
4. Sensor Switch, Inc.

D. General Description: Wall- or ceiling-mounting, solid-state units with and without a separate relay unit.

1. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when covered area is occupied and off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 30 minutes.

2. Line voltage sensor with built in 20A rated relay.
3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered from the relay unit.
4. Relay Unit: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Power supply to sensor shall be 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source as defined by NFPA 70.
5. Mounting:

    a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.

b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.

6. Indicator: LED, to show when motion is being detected during testing and normal operation of the sensor.
7. Bypass Switch: Override the on function in case of sensor failure.
8. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc; keep lighting off when selected lighting level is present.

E. PIR Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by sensing a combination of heat and movement in area of coverage.

1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in..
2. Detection Coverage (Room): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
3. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot- high ceiling.

F. Ultrasonic Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by sensing a change in pattern of reflected ultrasonic energy in area of coverage.

1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
2. Detection Coverage (Small Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 600 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
4. Detection Coverage (Large Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 2000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
5. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy anywhere within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot- high ceiling in a corridor not wider than 14 feet.

G. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by using a combination of PIR and ultrasonic detection methods in area of coverage. Particular technology or combination of technologies that controls on-off functions shall be selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in., and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.

2.3 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Allen-Bradley/Rockwell Automation.
2. ASCO Power Technologies, LP; a division of Emerson Electric Co.
3. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Products.
4. GE Industrial Systems; Total Lighting Control.
5. Grasslin Controls Corporation; a GE Industrial Systems Company.
6. Hubbell Lighting.
7. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
8. MicroLite Lighting Control Systems.
9. Square D; Schneider Electric.
10. TORK.
11. Touch-Plate, Inc.

D. Description: Electrically operated and electrically held, combination type with nonfused disconnect, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.

1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less total harmonic distortion of normal load current).
2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
4. Provide with control and pilot devices as indicated on Drawings, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.

2.4 EMERGENCY RELAY

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Bodine

2. Power Sentry

3. Phillips

B. Description: Normally closed, electrically held relay, arranged for wiring in parallel with manual or automatic switching contacts; complying with UL 924.

2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

A. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 CONTACTOR INSTALLATION

A. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads, to eliminate structure-borne vibration, unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

3.3 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Wiring Method: Comply with Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size shall be 1/2 inch.

B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.

B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, adjust and test for compliance with requirements.
2. Operational Test: Verify operation of each lighting control device, and adjust time delays.

B. Lighting control devices that fail tests and inspections are defective work.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sensors to suit occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

B. Timed sensors shall be set to the midpoint of their range of the time limit setting.

C. Daylight sensors be set to 200% of the required lighting level for the room they are in, typical set marks classroom: 100fc, corridors: 60fc, multipurpose rooms: 100fc. Dimmable ballasts shall be set at reductions according to manufacturer or 20% per setting.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Coordinate demonstration of products specified in this Section with demonstration requirements for low-voltage, programmable lighting control system specified in Division 26 Section "Relay Lighting Controls."

B. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 260923

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 262200 - LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following types of dry-type transformers rated 600 V and less, with capacities up to 1000 kVA:
   1. Distribution transformers.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated nameplate data, capacities, weights, dimensions, minimum clearances, installed devices and features, and performance for each type and size of transformer indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transformers, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
   1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
      a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
   2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
   3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

E. Source quality-control test reports.

F. Field quality-control test reports.

G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transformers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain each transformer type through one source from a single manufacturer.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

E. Comply with IEEE C57.12.91, "Test Code for Dry-Type Distribution and Power Transformers."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat according to manufacturer's written instructions within the enclosure of each ventilated-type unit, throughout periods during which equipment is not energized and when transformer is not in a space that is continuously under normal control of temperature and humidity.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with actual transformer provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

B. Coordinate installation of wall-mounting and structure-hanging supports with actual transformer provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Products.
2. General Electric Company.
3. Square D; Schneider Electric.

2.2 GENERAL TRANSFORMER REQUIREMENTS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units for 60-Hz service.

B. Cores: Grain-oriented, non-aging silicon steel.

C. Coils: Continuous windings without splices except for taps.
1. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
2. Coil Material: Aluminum.

2.3 DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

A. Comply with NEMA ST 20, and list and label as complying with UL 1561.

B. Provide transformers that are constructed to withstand seismic forces specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

C. Cores: One leg per phase.

D. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 2.
1. Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound, sealing out moisture and air.

E. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 3R.
1. Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound, sealing out moisture and air.

F. Transformer Enclosure Finish: Comply with NEMA 250.
1. Finish Color: ANSI 49 gray.

G. Taps for Transformers 7.5 to 24 kVA: Manufacturer’s Standard

H. Taps for Transformers 25 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent taps above and two 2.5 percent taps below normal full capacity.

I. Insulation Class: 220 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with a maximum of 150 deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient temperature.

J. Energy Efficiency for Transformers Rated 15 kVA and Larger:
1. Per DOE 10 CFR 431.192 April 2013

Prior to January 1, 2016 Energy Conservation Standards for Low-Voltage Dry-Type Distribution Transformers			
Single phase		Three phase	
kVA	Efficiency (%)	kVA	Efficiency (%)
15	97.7	15	97.0
25	98.0	30	97.5
37.5	98.2	45	97.7
50	98.3	75	98.0
75	98.5	112.5	98.2
100	98.6	150	98.3
167	98.7	225	98.5
250	98.8	300	98.6
333	98.9	500	98.7
		750	98.8
		1000	98.9

After January 1, 2016 Energy Conservation Standards for Low-Voltage Dry-Type Distribution Transformers			
Single phase		Three phase	
kVA	Efficiency (%)[1]	kVA	Efficiency (%)[1]
15	97.70	15	97.89
25	98.00	30	98.23
37.5	98.20	45	98.40
50	98.30	75	98.60
75	98.50	112.5	98.74
100	98.6	150	98.83
167	98.70	225	98.94
250	98.80	300	99.02
333	98.90	500	99.14
		750	99.23
		1000	99.28

Note: All efficiency values are at 35 percent of nameplate-rated load, determined according to the DOE Test Method for Measuring the Energy Consumption of Distribution Transformers under Appendix A to Subpart K of 10 CFR part 431.

K. Electrostatic Shielding: Each winding shall have an independent, single, full-width copper electrostatic shield arranged to minimize interwinding capacitance.
1. Arrange coil leads and terminal strips to minimize capacitive coupling between input and output terminals.
2. Include special terminal for grounding the shield.
3. Shield Effectiveness:
   a. Capacitance between Primary and Secondary Windings: Not to exceed 33 picofarads over a frequency range of 20 Hz to 1 MHz.
   b. Common-Mode Noise Attenuation: Minimum of minus 120 dBA at 0.5 to 1.5 kHz; minimum of minus 65 dBA at 1.5 to 100 kHz.
   c. Normal-Mode Noise Attenuation: Minimum of minus 52 dBA at 1.5 to 10 kHz.

L. Wall Brackets: Manufacturer's standard brackets.

M. Sound-Level Requirements: NEMA ST 20 standard sound levels when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91.

N. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for coil and core.

O. Low-Sound-Level Requirements: Minimum of 3 dBA less than NEMA ST 20 standard sound levels when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91.

P. Low-Sound-Level Requirements: Maximum sound levels, when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91, as follows:
1. 9 kVA and Less: 40db
2. 30 to 50 kVA: 45db
3. 51 to 150 kVA: 50db
4. 151 to 300 kVA: 55db

2.4 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

A. Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-plastic or metal nameplate for each distribution transformer, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test and inspect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.91.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions for compliance with enclosure- and ambient-temperature requirements for each transformer.

B. Verify that field measurements are as needed to maintain working clearances required by NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where transformers will be installed.

D. Verify that ground connections are in place and requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at location of transformer.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install wall-mounting transformers level and plumb with wall brackets fabricated by transformer manufacturer.
   1. Brace wall-mounting transformers as specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems.

B. Construct concrete bases and anchor floor-mounting transformers according to manufacturer's written instructions, seismic codes applicable to Project, and requirements in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
   1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.

B. Remove and replace units that do not pass tests or inspections and retest as specified above.

C. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Record transformer secondary voltage at each unit for at least 48 hours of typical occupancy period. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 10 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.

B. Output Settings Report: Prepare a written report, recording output voltages and tap settings.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

END OF SECTION 262200

SECTION 262413 - SWITCHBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Service and distribution switchboards rated 600 V and less.
2. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
3. Instrumentation.
4. Control power.
5. Accessory components and features.
6. Identification.
7. Mimic bus.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Switchboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of switchboard, overcurrent protective device, ground-fault protector, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each switchboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
2. Detail enclosure types for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
4. Detail short-circuit current rating of switchboards and overcurrent protective devices.

5. Include descriptive documentation of optional barriers specified for electrical insulation and isolation.
6. Detail utility company's metering provisions with indication of approval by utility company.
7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
10. Include diagram and details of proposed mimic bus.
11. Include schematic and wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples: Representative portion of mimic bus with specified material and finish, for color selection.

D. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

E. Seismic Qualification Certificates: Submit certification that switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

F. Field Quality-Control Reports:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Routine maintenance requirements for switchboards and all installed components.
2. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
3. Time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers qualified as defined in NEMA PB 2.1 and trained in electrical safety as required by NFPA 70E.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

D. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchboards including clearances between switchboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Comply with NEMA PB 2.

G. Comply with NFPA 70.

H. Comply with UL 891.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver switchboards in sections or lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.

B. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchboards and install temporary electric heating (250 W per section) to prevent condensation.

C. Handle and prepare switchboards for installation according to NEMA PB 2.1.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace access fencing, doors, lift-out panels, and structures to provide pathway for moving switchboards into place.

B. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install switchboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above switchboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

C. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 2, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

D. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect's written permission.
4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switchboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Potential Transformer Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
2. Control-Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
3. Fuses and Fusible Devices for Fused Circuit Breakers: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
5. Indicating Lights: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than one of each size and type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible Switchboards:

1. Main Devices: Fixed, individually mounted.
2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
3. Sections front and rear aligned.

C. Nominal System Voltage: as indicated on the drawings.

D. Main-Bus Continuous: as indicated on the drawings.

E. Seismic Requirements: Fabricate and test switchboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

F. Indoor Enclosures: Steel, NEMA 250, Type 1.

G. Barriers: Between adjacent switchboard sections.

H. Insulation and isolation for main bus of main section and main and vertical buses of feeder sections.

I. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections: Matched and aligned with basic switchboard.

J. Hinged Front Panels: Allow access to circuit breaker, metering, accessory, and blank compartments.

K. Buses and Connections: Three phase, four wire unless otherwise indicated.

1. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, copper feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
2. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: High-strength, electrical-grade copper circuit-breaker line connections.
3. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity.
4. Load Terminals: Insulated, rigidly braced, runback bus extensions, of same material as through buses, equipped with compression connectors for outgoing circuit conductors. Provide load terminals for future circuit-breaker positions at full-ampere rating of circuit-breaker position.
5. Ground Bus: 1/4-by-2-inch- hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, equipped with compression connectors for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors. For

busway feeders, extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at intervals in vertical run.

6. Main Phase Buses and Equipment Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of switchboard's main and distribution sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends.
7. Neutral Buses: 50 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with compression connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
8. Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with compression connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
9. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.

L. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of circuit-breaker compartment.

M. Bus-Bar Insulation: Factory-applied, flame-retardant, tape wrapping of individual bus bars or flame-retardant, spray-applied insulation. Minimum insulation temperature rating of 105 deg C.

N. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components including instruments and instrument transformers.

2.2 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:

    a. Instantaneous trip.
    b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
    d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.

4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
6. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
7. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
8. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:

a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
b. Lugs: Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
e. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
f. Communication Capability: Din-rail-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
g. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent of rated voltage.
h. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
i. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
j. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.

B. Insulated-Case Circuit Breaker (ICCB): 100 percent rated, sealed, insulated-case power circuit breaker with interrupting capacity rating to meet available fault current.

1. Fixed circuit-breaker mounting.
2. Two-step, stored-energy closing.
3. Standard-function, microprocessor-based trip units with interchangeable rating plug, trip indicators, and the following field-adjustable settings:

a. Instantaneous trip.
b. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
c. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.

4. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
5. Remote trip indication and control.
6. Communication Capability: Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
7. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
8. Control Voltage: 120-V ac.

C. Bolted-Pressure Contact Switch: Operating mechanism uses rotary-mechanical-bolting action to produce and maintain high clamping pressure on the switch blade after it engages the stationary contacts.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Boltswitch, Inc.
b. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
c. Pringle Electrical Manufacturing Company, Inc.
d. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
e. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

2. Main-Contact Interrupting Capability: Minimum of 12 times the switch current rating.
3. Operating Mechanism: Manual handle operation to close switch; stores energy in mechanism for opening and closing.

a. Electrical Trip: Operation of lever or push-button trip switch, or trip signal from ground-fault relay or remote-control device, causes switch to open.
b. Mechanical Trip: Operation of mechanical lever, push button, or other device causes switch to open.

4. Auxiliary Switches: Factory installed, single pole, double throw, with leads connected to terminal block, and including one set more than quantity required for functional performance indicated.
5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
6. Ground-Fault Relay: Comply with UL 1053; self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator, test function, tripping relay with internal memory, and three-phase current transformer/sensor.

a. Configuration: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
b. Internal Memory: Integrates the cumulative value of intermittent arcing ground-fault currents and uses the effect to initiate tripping.
c. No-Trip Relay Test: Permits ground-fault simulation test without tripping switch.
d. Test Control: Simulates ground fault to test relay and switch (or relay only if "no-trip" mode is selected).

7. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Arranged to trip switch open if a phase fuse opens.

2.3 INSTRUMENTATION

A. Instrument Transformers: IEEE C57.13, NEMA EI 21.1, and the following:

1. Potential Transformers: IEEE C57.13; 120 V, 60 Hz, tapped secondary; disconnecting type with integral fuse mountings. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
2. Current Transformers: IEEE C57.13; 5 A, 60 Hz, secondary; wound type; double secondary winding and secondary shorting device. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
3. Control-Power Transformers: Dry type, mounted in separate compartments for units larger than 3 kVA.
4. Current Transformers for Neutral and Ground-Fault Current Sensing: Connect secondary wiring to ground overcurrent relays, via shorting terminals, to provide selective tripping of main and tie circuit breaker. Coordinate with feeder circuit-breaker, ground-fault protection.

B. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:

1. Switch-selectable digital display of the following values with maximum accuracy tolerances as indicated:

a. Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
b. Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
c. Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
d. Megawatts: Plus or minus 2 percent.
e. Megavars: Plus or minus 2 percent.
f. Power Factor: Plus or minus 2 percent.
g. Frequency: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
h. Accumulated Energy, Megawatt Hours: Plus or minus 2 percent; accumulated values unaffected by power outages up to 72 hours.
i. Megawatt Demand: Plus or minus 2 percent; demand interval programmable from five to 60 minutes.
j. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.

2. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.

C. Ammeters, Voltmeters, and Power-Factor Meters: ANSI C39.1.

1. Meters: 4-inch diameter or 6 inches square, flush or semiflush, with antiparallax 250-degree scales and external zero adjustment.
2. Voltmeters: Cover an expanded-scale range of nominal voltage plus 10 percent.

D. Instrument Switches: Rotary type with off position.

1. Voltmeter Switches: Permit reading of all phase-to-phase voltages and, where a neutral is indicated, phase-to-neutral voltages.
2. Ammeter Switches: Permit reading of current in each phase and maintain current-transformer secondaries in a closed-circuit condition at all times.

E. Feeder Ammeters: 2-1/2-inch minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale. Meter and transfer device with off position, located on overcurrent device door for indicated feeder circuits only.

F. Watt-Hour Meters and Wattmeters:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
2. Three-phase induction type with two stators, each with current and potential coil, rated 5 A, 120 V, 60 Hz.
3. Suitable for connection to three- and four-wire circuits.
4. Potential indicating lamps.
5. Adjustments for light and full load, phase balance, and power factor.
6. Four-dial clock register.
7. Integral demand indicator.
8. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.
9. Ratchets to prevent reverse rotation.
10. Removable meter with drawout test plug.

11. Semiflush mounted case with matching cover.
12. Appropriate multiplier tag.

2.4 CONTROL POWER

A. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from control-power transformer.

B. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied from remote branch circuit.

C. Control Circuits: 120-V dc.

D. Electrically Interlocked Main and Tie Circuit Breakers: Two control-power transformers in separate compartments, with interlocking relays, connected to the primary side of each control-power transformer at the line side of the associated main circuit breaker. 120-V secondaries connected through automatic transfer relays to ensure a fail-safe automatic transfer scheme.

E. Control-Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses for current-limiting and overload protection of transformer and fuses for protection of control circuits.

F. Control Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.

2.5 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from switchboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing switchboard meters and switchboard class relays.

C. Overhead Circuit-Breaker Lifting Device: Mounted at top front of switchboard, with hoist and lifting yokes matching each drawout circuit breaker.

D. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Suitably identified, wall-mounted, lockable, compartmented steel box or cabinet. Arrange for wall mounting.

2.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Mimic Bus: Entire single-line switchboard bus work, as depicted on factory record drawing, on a photoengraved nameplate.

1. Nameplate: At least 0.032-inch- thick anodized aluminum, located at eye level on front cover of the switchboard incoming service section.

B. Mimic Bus: Entire single-line switchboard bus work, as depicted on factory record drawing, on an engraved laminated-plastic (Gravoply) nameplate.

1. Nameplate: At least 0.0625-inch- (1.588 mm-) thick laminated plastic (Gravoply), located at eye level on front cover of the switchboard incoming service section.

C. Mimic Bus: Continuously integrated mimic bus factory applied to front of switchboard. Arrange in single-line diagram format, using symbols and letter designations consistent with final mimic-bus diagram.

D. Coordinate mimic-bus segments with devices in switchboard sections to which they are applied. Produce a concise visual presentation of principal switchboard components and connections.

E. Presentation Media: Painted graphics in color contrasting with background color to represent bus and components, complete with lettered designations.

F. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for switchboards with one or more service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store switchboards according to NEMA PB 2.1.

B. Examine switchboards before installation. Reject switchboards that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive switchboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install switchboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 2.1.

B. Equipment Mounting: Install switchboards on concrete base, 4-inch nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section " Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to switchboards.

C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchboard units and components.

D. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

E. Operating Instructions: Frame and mount the printed basic operating instructions for switchboards, including control and key interlocking sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished wood or metal and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of switchboards.

F. Install filler plates in unused spaces of panel-mounted sections.

G. Install overcurrent protective devices and instrumentation.

1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

H. Install spare-fuse cabinet.

I. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for terminating feeder bus specified in Division 26 Section "Enclosed Bus Assemblies." Drawings indicate general arrangement of bus, fittings, and specialties.

B. Comply with requirements for terminating cable trays specified in Division 26 Section "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems." Drawings indicate general arrangement of cable trays, fittings, and specialties.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Switchboard Nameplates: Label each switchboard compartment with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

C. Device Nameplates: Label each disconnecting and overcurrent protective device and each meter and control device mounted in compartment doors with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

D. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each switchboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switchboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switchboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
c. Instruments and Equipment:

1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

4. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

F. Switchboard will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies switchboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

C. All circuit breakers rated 1200A or higher, capable of being rated 1200A or higher (I.e adjustable long-time pickup or replaceable trip/rating plug), shall be provided with an energy-reducing maintenance switch with local status indicator. The electrical contractor shall be responsible for performance testing (primary current injection or other approved method) and documentation required per NEC 240.87(c).

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat, to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions, until switchboard is ready to be energized and placed into service.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, instrumentation, and accessories, and to use and reprogram microprocessor-based trip, monitoring, and communication units.

3.9 SHORT CIRCUIT, PROTECTION COORDINATION AND ARC-FLASH STUDY

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE:

a. The electrical contractor shall be responsible for providing and submitting a complete short circuit, ground fault, protection coordination, and arc-flash study for approval. The study shall include all items indicated on the drawings and as noted below. The study shall be performed by the switchgear manufacturer.

b. This study shall be submitted prior to submission of switchgear and switchboard/panels.

c. Short circuit, protection coordination, and arc-flash study shall be complete from the utility and generator inputs and throughout the entire distribution system, including busways.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.1 SHORT CIRCUIT STUDY:

a. A complete short circuit and protection coordination study with coordination plots for each medium and low voltage distribution system shall be provided. The studies shall include the power company's system and relay characteristics, the base quantities selected,

impedance source data, calculation methods and tabulations, one line diagrams, impedance diagrams, conclusions and recommendations. A ground fault study shall be provided for the low voltage system, which shall include the associated zero sequence impedance diagrams. Short circuit momentary duties, when applicable, and interrupting duties shall be calculated on the basis of an assumed fault at each medium voltage switchgear line-up, low voltage switchgear line-up, switchboard, distribution panelboard, pertinent branch circuit panelboard and other significant locations throughout the systems. The short circuit tabulations shall include the fault impedances, X to R ratios, asymmetry factors, KVA symmetrical and asymmetrical fault currents.

b. The coordination plots required shall graphically indicate the coordination proposed for the several systems centered on full scale log forms. The coordination plots shall include complete titles, representative one line diagrams and legends, associated power company's relay or system characteristics, medium voltage fuses and relays, significant equipment starting characteristics, complete parameters for transformers, complete operating bands for low voltage switchgear or switchboard circuit breaker trip devices, and the associated system load protective devices. The coordination plots shall define the types of protective devices selected, together with the proposed coil taps, time dial settings and pick up settings required. The long time region of the coordination plots shall indicate a complete tap scale for each medium voltage relay, full load current and 150, 400 or 600 percent full load current transformer parameters and designate the pick ups required for the low voltage circuit breakers. The short time region shall indicate the medium voltage relay instantaneous elements, the magnetizing inrush, ANSI withstand thermal and mechanical transformer parameters, fuse manufacturing tolerance bands, and significant symmetrical and asymmetrical fault currents. Each primary protective device required for a delta-grounded wye connected transformer shall be selected so the characteristic or operating band is within the transformer parameters, and shall include a parameter equivalent to 58 percent of the ANSI withstand point to afford protection for secondary line to ground faults. The transformer damage curve shall be included for each transformer. Low voltage power circuit breakers shall provide long time, long time delay, short time, short time delay, ground fault, ground fault delay, and I^2t in/out settings with coordination plots and shall be separated from each other and the associated primary protective device by a 16 percent current margin for coordination and protection in the event of secondary line to line or line to ground fault. Medium voltage relays shall be separated by a 0.4 second time margin when the maximum three phase fault flows, to assure proper selectivity. The protective device characteristics or operating band shall reflect the actual symmetrical and asymmetrical fault currents sensed by the device.

c. The contractor shall note that the drawings and specifications indicate the general requirements for the equipment, the medium voltage and low voltage equipment, but additional specific characteristics of equipment furnished shall be determined in accordance with the results of the short circuit and protection coordination study. The equipment design discrepancies and the proposed corrective modifications, if required, shall be submitted with the short circuit and protection coordination study with any variations clearly noted on the subsequent shop drawings. Necessary field settings, adjustments and minor modifications for conformance with the approved short circuit and protection coordination study shall be accomplished by the particular manufacturer or by the Contractor without additional expense to the Owner. However, should equipment specified be outside the parameters required by this study, a change order to modify the equipment shall be issued if the engineer's review warrants such a change. Equipment shop drawings

shall not be submitted until the short circuit and protection coordination study has been reviewed by the Owner's engineer.

d. The study shall include settings for all protective relay functions associated with the generators and generator paralleling switchgear.

e. Arc-Flash labels shall be printed per OSHA requirements and shall be installed by the contractor.

PART 3: EXECUTION

POINT SETTINGS:

a. The Electrical Contractor shall set and calibrate all target points and settings indicated on the approved coordination study prior to energizing and testing the system.

b. The study shall require the Electrical Contractor to provide the following information:

1. Length, type, resistance, reactance of all cables both medium and low voltages.

2. Fuse curves as required.

3. Utility information.

END OF SECTION 262413

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Distribution panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
3. Transient voltage suppression panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

D. RMS: Root mean square.

E. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

1. Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Include the following:

a. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
b. Bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
c. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
d. UL listing for series rating of installed devices.

e. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.

2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" Include the following:

1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

E. Field quality-control test reports including the following:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

F. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards.

G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories through one source from a single manufacturer.

D. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of panelboards and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

F. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

G. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F.
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, and encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements.

B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Keys: Three spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Panelboards, Overcurrent Protective Devices, Controllers, Contactors, and Accessories:

a. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
b. General Electric Co.; Electrical Distribution & Protection Div.
c. Square D.

2.2 FUSIBLE PANELBOARDS (Selective Coordination Panelboards)

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Bussman; Eaton Corporation.
2. Mersen.
3. Littelfuse

B. PANELBOARD RATINGS

a. Panelboards shall be labeled with a short-circuit current rating equal to or greater than that indicated on the associated schedules or drawings.
b. Non-service entrance rated panelboards shall be UL and cULus Listed. Service entrance rated panelboards shall be UL Listed.
c. Panelboards shall be rated >= system voltages up to 600Vac/125Vdc and have a current rating as indicated on the associated schedules or drawings.
d. Panelboard overcurrent protective device interrupting ratings shall be fully rated for the maximum available fault current and have a UL Listed interrupting rating of 300kA and CSA Certified interrupting rating of 200kA.

e. Current ratings, configuration of poles and number of circuits shall be indicated on associated schedules or drawings.
f. Panelboard circuits 100A and less shall incorporate overcurrent protection and branch-circuit rated disconnecting means into a single integrated component.
g. Interiors shall be factory assembled.
h. Panelboard shall be equipped with a six-space spare fuse compartment for storing replacement branch circuit fuses. Spare fuse compartment shall be located behind locking panel door.
i. Bus bars shall be tin-plated copper with sufficient cross-sectional area to meet UL 67 temperature rise requirements.
j. 200A/400A rated neutrals shall be standard, 400A or 800A rated neutral shall be provided where indicated in the associated schedules or drawings.
k. Main lug conductor terminations:
l. NEMA 1 panelboards shall be field convertible for top or bottom incoming feed. NEMA 3R panelboards are bottom feed only.

2.3 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

B. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets. NEMA PB 1, Type 1.

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

a. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
b. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
d. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7C.

2. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
4. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
5. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
6. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.
7. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish over corrosion-resistant treatment or primer coat.
8. Directory Card: With transparent protective cover, mounted in metal frame, inside panelboard door.

C. Phase and Ground Buses:

1. Material: Copper.
2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; bonded to box.

3. Isolated Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; insulated from box.
4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and UL listed as suitable for nonlinear loads.
5. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.

D. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material.

1. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type.
2. Ground Lugs and Bus Configured Terminators: Compression type.
3. Feed-Through Lugs: Compression Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.

E. Service Equipment Label: UL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards with main service disconnect switches.

F. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

2.4 PANELBOARD SHORT-CIRCUIT RATING

A. UL label indicating series-connected rating with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices. Include size and type of upstream device allowable, branch devices allowable, and UL series-connected short-circuit rating.

B. Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

2.5 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

A. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Omit for fused-switch panelboards.

B. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Circuit breaker or Fused switch, see plans.

C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices:

1. For Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
2. For Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.
3. Fused switches.

2.6 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

B. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.7 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker: UL 489, with series-connected rating to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic trip-unit circuit breakers shall have RMS sensing; field-replaceable rating plug; and with the following field-adjustable settings:

    a. Instantaneous trip.
    b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
    d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.

4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
6. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with 5 [30]-mA trip sensitivity.

B. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker Features and Accessories: Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.

1. Lugs: Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
2. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment.
3. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
4. Communication Capability: Universal-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
5. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent of rated voltage.
6. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay.
7. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
8. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
9. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.

10. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory-assembled to operate as a single unit.

C. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.

D. Fuses are specified in Division 26 Section "Fuses."

2.8 CONTROLLERS

A. Motor Controllers: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, combination controller equipped for panelboard mounting and including the following accessories:

1. Individual control-power transformers.
2. Fuses for control-power transformers.
3. Bimetallic-element overload relay.
4. Indicating lights.
5. Seal-in contact.
6. 2 convertible auxiliary contacts.
7. Push buttons.
8. Selector switches.

B. Contactors: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, combination controller equipped for panelboard mounting and including the following accessories:

1. Individual control-power transformers.
2. Fuses for control-power transformers.
3. Indicating lights.
4. Seal-in contact.
5. 2 convertible auxiliary contacts.
6. Push buttons.
7. Selector switches.

C. Controller Disconnect Switches: Fused switch Adjustable instantaneous-trip circuit breaker integrally mounted mounted adjacent to and interlocked with controller.

1. Auxiliary Contacts: Integral with disconnect switches to de-energize external control-power source.

D. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, mechanically held general-purpose controller.

1. Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
2. Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit.

2.9 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

A. Furnish accessory set including tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

B. Furnish portable test set to test functions of solid-state trip devices without removal from panelboard.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.

B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

C. Mount top of trim 74 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Mount plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish.

E. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers.

1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

F. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

G. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.

H. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.

C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate mounted with corrosion-resistant screws.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

C. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

D. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.5 for switches and Section 7.6 for molded-case circuit breakers. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

E. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.

1. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
2. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
3. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
4. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.

F. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scanning of each panelboard. Remove panel fronts so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies panelboards checked and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 CLEANING

A. On completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of panelboards. Remove paint splatters and other spots. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning. Repair exposed surfaces to match original finish.

END OF SECTION 262416

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 262726 – WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
2. Twist-locking receptacles.
3. Receptacles with integral surge suppression units.
4. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
5. Solid-state fan speed controls.
6. Wall-switch and exterior occupancy sensors.
7. Communications outlets.
8. Pendant cord-connector devices.
9. Cord and plug sets.
10. Floor service outlets, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for workstation outlets.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.

D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

E. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.

C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

D. Field quality-control test reports.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate through one source from a single manufacturer. Insofar as they are available, obtain all wiring devices and associated wall plates from a single manufacturer and one source.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.

1. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:

1. Cooper Wiring Devices; a division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories (Pass & Seymour).

2.2 STRAIGHT BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Cooper
    b. Hubbell
    c. Leviton
    d. Pass & Seymou

3. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

B. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Cooper;
    b. Hubbell;
    c. Leviton
    d. Pass & Seymour

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. General Description: Straight blade, non feed-through type. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped.

B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Cooper
    b. Pass & Seymour
    c. Hubbell
    d. Leviton
3. Self-testing type.

2.4 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

A. Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Cooper
    b. Hubbell
    c. Leviton
    d. Pass & Seymour

2.5 PENDANT CORD-CONNECTOR DEVICES

A. Description: Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector; NEMA WD 6 configurations L5-20P and L5-20R, heavy-duty grade.

1. Body: Nylon with screw-open cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
2. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

2.6 CORD AND PLUG SETS

A. Description: Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.

1. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and equipment-rating ampacity plus a minimum of 30 percent.
2. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.7 SNAP SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Cooper
    b. Hubbell
    c. Leviton
    d. Pass & Seymour

C. Pilot Light Switches, 20 A:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Cooper.
    b. Hubbell.
    c. Leviton
    d. Pass & Seymour.

3. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "ON."

D. Key-Operated Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Cooper.
    b. Hubbell.
    c. Leviton.
    d. Pass & Seymour.

3. Description: Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

E. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Cooper.
    b. Hubbell.
    c. Leviton.
    d. Pass & Seymour.

F. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Cooper.
    b. Hubbell.
    c. Leviton.
    d. Pass & Seymour.

2.8 WALL-BOX DIMMERS

A. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.

B. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching. Comply with UL 1472.

2.9 FAN SPEED CONTROLS

A. Modular, 120-V, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches and audible frequency and EMI/RFI filters. Comply with UL 1917.

1. Continuously adjustable slider,
2. Three-speed adjustable slider, 1.5 A.

2.10 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: See the Plans.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: See the plans.
4. Material for Damp Locations: Thermoplastic with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in "wet locations."

B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant thermoplastic with lockable cover.

2.11 FLOOR BOX FITTINGS

A. Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used.

B. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.

C. Service Plate: See the Plans.

D. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Voice and Data Communication Outlet: See the Plans.

F. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
2. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories.
3. Square D/ Schneider Electric.
4. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

5. Wiremold Company (The).

G. Description: Factory-fabricated and -wired assembly of below-floor junction box with multichanneled, through-floor raceway/firestop unit and detachable matching floor service outlet assembly.

1. Service Outlet Assembly: Flush type with four simplex receptacles and space for four RJ-45 jacks.
2. Size: Selected to fit nominal 4-inch cored holes in floor and matched to floor thickness.
3. Closure Plug: Arranged to close unused 4-inch cored openings and reestablish fire rating of floor.
4. Wiring Raceways and Compartments: For a minimum of four No. 12 AWG conductors and a minimum of four, 4-pair, Category 6A voice and data communication cables.

2.12 POKE-THROUGH ASSEMBLIES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
2. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories.
3. Square D/ Schneider Electric.
4. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
5. Wiremold Company (The).

C. Description: Factory-fabricated and -wired assembly of below-floor junction box with multichanneled, through-floor raceway/firestop unit and detachable matching floor service outlet assembly.

1. Service Outlet Assembly: Flush type with four simplex receptacles and space for four RJ-45 jacks.
2. Size: Selected to fit nominal 4-inch cored holes in floor and matched to floor thickness.
3. Fire Rating: Unit is listed and labeled for fire rating of floor-ceiling assembly.
4. Closure Plug: Arranged to close unused 4-inch cored openings and reestablish fire rating of floor.
5. Wiring Raceways and Compartments: For a minimum of four No. 12 AWG conductors and a minimum of four, 4-pair, Category 6A voice and data communication cables.

2.13 MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLIES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
2. Wiremold Company (The).

C. Components of Assemblies: Products from a single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.

D. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish.

E. Wire: No. 12 AWG.

2.14 FINISHES

A. Color: Wiring device catalog numbers in Section Text do not designate device color.

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: See the Plans., unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
2. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power System: Red.
3. TVSS Devices: Blue.
4. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: As specified above, with orange triangle on face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, including the mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise noted.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Take steps to insure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:

a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Dimmers:

1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
2. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed control are listed for that application.
3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.

H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and permanent marker on inside of junction box.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with recommendations in NFPA 99.
2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
3. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated LED indicators of measurement.

B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:

1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is not acceptable.
3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
6. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 262811 – SAFETY DEVICE SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Current edition of the Facilities Guidelines, Public Schools of North Carolina.

C. Current edition of the Appendix "A" Checklist for science safety requirements, Public Schools of North Carolina.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Safety shutdown equipment assemblies.
2. Safety shutdown devices.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
3. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Installation instructions.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include all instructional information and installation guides.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Kizetrol
2. ISIMET
3. LACS
4. AGS

B. System information below is based on the "ISIMET" system. The above listed manufacturers are acceptable equals to the system descriptions below and shall provide the equivalent devices and equipment to match.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Devices, Components, Assemblies, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70, NFPA 90A.

C. Each utility controller where shown on the drawings shall be independently controlled.

D. The electrical contractor shall be responsible for providing a complete and working system including all components of the controller, solenoids (where applicable), contactors (where applicable), pathways, cabling, etc.

E. Solenoids are provided by the electrical contractor and shall be installed by the plumbing contractor.

2.3 LAB SAFETY DEVICE SYSTEM

A. Devices and Equipment

1. Utility controller.
   a. Water (see plans for required locations) – Indicator and switch
   b. Gas (see plans for required locations) – Indicator and switch
   c. Electric – student (see plans for required locations) – Indicator and switch
   d. Electric – teacher (see plans for required locations) – Indicator and switch
   e. Master key switch – all utilities
   f. E-stop – mushroom style push button – all utilities, exhaust fan activation.
   g. Exhaust fan relay (general and hood).
2. Contactor enclosure – continuous duty. See floor plans for contactor size requirements (voltage and amperage). Standard receptacle circuits shall be 120V, 20A rated. NEMA gray powder coat enclosure with screw cover panel. See floor plans for circuit quantities. Surface mount. Exhaust fan and hood fan interlock. Provide contactor for emergency on operation.
3. Solenoid rack water – type S20X-SS series solenoids. Normally closed, lead free stainless steel general service, with continuous duty coil. Type TU ball valve. Y-strainer 20 mesh. See plumbing floor plans for sizes.
4. Solenoid rack gas – type S30X series solenoids. Normally closed, fuel gas solenoid, Aluminum with continuous duty coil. Type XU ball valve and added union. See plumbing floor plans for sizes.

B. Sequence of Operation
1. Each utility is monitored with current position (on/off) by the indicator light. Switch enables user to turn of the respective utility. Each utility is individually controlled, water, gas, electric student, electric teacher, all.
2. Electric contactors are separated for the teacher stations and the student stations to allow the teacher to turn off the student power during a presentation and operate the teacher station only.

3. Master key switch locks out all utilities or allows all utilities to be turned on by the individual switch position. Key switch will reset the control power to the controller.
4. Electrical contactors fail open (no power).
5. Gas and water solenoids fail closed (no flow of gas or water.)
6. E-stop being depressed opens student and electrical contactors (no power) and closes all solenoids (no water or gas flow). E-stop will also close the contactors on the exhaust fan (hood and general) allowing any fumes to be exhausted out of the classroom.
7. No building automation interface. Controller is independent.
8. E-stop must be reset for utilities to be used.
9. Upon a power loss, utilities must be reset by the master key switch.
10. Normal operation for contactors: contactors are closed and circuits are powered.
11. Normal operation for solenoids: solenoids are open and gas/water flow.

2.4 BOILER MAINTENANCE SWITCH

A. Devices and Equipment
1. Remote Panic Assembly – with clear protective flip cover.
   a. E-Stop - mushroom style push button
   b. Keyed or pushbutton lockout switch
2. Solenoid rack gas – type S308 series solenoids. Normally closed, fuel gas solenoid, with continuous duty coil. Type XU ball valve and added union. See plumbing floor plans for sizes. Must be rated for 5psi or more.

B. Sequence of Operation
1. Depressing the E-stop closes the gas solenoid (no gas flow).
2. E-stop must be pulled out to reset.
3. Gas solenoid fails closed (no gas flow), upon loss of power.
4. No reset is required after a loss of power. Solenoid should reset back to previous open position. Manually reset of the solenoid will not be permitted. After power is returned, unless the keyed lockout switch is used, the solenoid should open and gas flow returns without the requirement of a manual reset.
5. Normal operation for solenoid: solenoid is open and gas flows.
6. Keyed lockout switch stops the E-stop from being opened, gas cannot flow if key is turned to the off position (or depressed).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
2. Keep boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.

3. Install devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
4. Field verify depth of box for flush mount applications with the local installation location prior to rough-in. Coordinate rough-in locations prior to rough-in that does not interfere with other systems such as mechanical devices, lighting switches, communication devices, power devices, marker boards, tack boards, TVs, eyewash stations, etc. Any conflicting locations shall be issued as an RFI prior to rough-in.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. Provide control wiring from controller to each controlled device. Provide minimum 18 AWG plenum rated cable for all control wiring. See manufacturer's suggested sizes.
4. Provide a 120V control circuit for controllers. Control circuit shall be fed from the local panel unless otherwise noted but connected from the room the device serves. Multiple controllers are powered from the same 120V control circuit. If no circuit is indicated, connected to local spare 20A breaker in the local panel.
5. Provide all line voltage wiring as indicated to the respective contactors. See plans for circuit, phase, and voltage information. Minimum 12 AWG wire.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Contactor enclosures shall be surface wall mounted above ceiling, in local room.
5. Utility controller shall be flush mounted in the location shown. Coordinate with other trades prior to rough-in.
6. Remote Panic Assembly surface mounted.
7. Provide all conduit and wiring for the systems provided. All line voltage conductors shall be installed separately from the control voltage conductors in conduit.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Utility Controller labeling
1. Factory printed lettering or phenolic labeling.
2. Water – "WATER"
3. Gas – "GAS"
4. Electric
   a. "STUDENT ELECTRIC"
   b. "TEACHER ELECTRIC"
5. Master key switch – "ALL UTILITIES"
6. E-stop – "EMERGENCY OFF", on position "ON", off position "OFF"

C. Remote Panic Assembly
   1. E-stop – "EMERGENCY OFF"
   2. Keyed lockout switch – "GAS SOLENOID LOCKOUT", on position "ON", off position "OFF"

D. Color
   1. Utility controller and remote panic assembly shall come in either white powder coat or stainless steel. Verify finish with architect during submittal process.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests, start-up and inspections:

   1. Prior to energizing the utility controller, perform all start-up procedures and checklists stating in the manufacturer's operations and maintenance procedure manual.
   2. Verify all controlled devices and respective circuits are energized.
   3. Verify control components are properly connected and working.
   4. Test system based on the above listed sequence of operations.

B. Devices will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Upon completion of the project and delivery to the owner, the system operation shall be demonstrated to members of the owner's staff, including electrical maintenance personnel and teachers. The demonstration shall include complete and comprehensive training regarding system operation. The training shall be no less than (2) separate 2-hour sessions. Sessions may be on separate days.

END OF SECTION 26 28 11

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 262813 - FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V and less for use in switches panelboards switchboards controllers and motor-control centers.
2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include the following for each fuse type indicated:

1. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
2. Let-through current curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
3. Time-current curves, coordination charts and tables, and related data.
4. Fuse size for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

B. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.

1. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
2. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Let-through current curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
b. Time-current curves, coordination charts and tables, and related data.
c. Ambient temperature adjustment information.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses from a single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NEMA FU 1.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F or more than 100 deg F, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: Quantity equal to 5 percent of each fuse type and size, but no fewer than 3 of each type and size.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Bussman, Inc.
2. Eagle Electric Mfg. Co., Inc.; Cooper Industries, Inc.
3. Ferraz Shawmut, Inc.
4. Tracor, Inc.; Littelfuse, Inc. Subsidiary.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuse; class and current rating indicated; voltage rating consistent with circuit voltage.

2.3 SPARE-FUSE CABINET

A. Cabinet: Wall-mounted, 0.05-inch- thick steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.

1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.
2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- high letters on exterior of door.
4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.

B. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

A. Service Entrance: Class L, time delay J, fast acting J, time delay T, fast acting.

B. Feeders: Class L, time delay J, time delay RK5, time delay.

C. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK5, time delay.

D. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

B. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s).

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labels indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch.

END OF SECTION 262813

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 262816 – ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following individually mounted, enclosed switches and circuit breakers:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Bolted-pressure contact switches.
4. High-pressure, butt-type contact switches.
5. Molded-case circuit breakers.
6. Molded-case switches.
7. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. GD: General duty – NOTE: General Duty is NOT ALLOWED

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. HD: Heavy duty.

D. RMS: Root mean square.

E. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Current and voltage ratings.
3. Short-circuit current rating.
4. UL listing for series rating of installed devices.

5. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.

B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" Include the following:

1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

   a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
   b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

E. Field quality-control test reports including the following:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

F. Manufacturer's field service report.

G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of circuit breaker.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

D. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with other construction, including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Spares: For the following:

a. Potential Transformer Fuses: 3
b. Control-Power Fuses: 3
c. Fuses and Fusible Devices for Fused Circuit Breakers: 3
d. Fuses for Fusible Switches: 3
e. Fuses for Fused Power Circuit Devices: 3

2. Spare Indicating Lights: Six of each type installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 FUSIBLE AND NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
2. General Electric Co.; Electrical Distribution & Control Division.
3. Square D/Group Schneider.

B. Fusible Switch, 600 A and Smaller: NEMA KS 1, Type HD, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Nonfusible Switch, 600 A and Smaller: NEMA KS 1, Type HD, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

D. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded, and bonded; and labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Auxiliary set of contacts arranged to open before switch blades open.

2.3 FUSED POWER CIRCUIT DEVICES

A. Bolted-Pressure Contact Switch: UL 977; operating mechanism shall use a rotary-mechanical-bolting action to produce and maintain high-clamping pressure on the switch blade after it engages the stationary contacts.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Boltswitch, Inc.
b. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
c. Pringle Electrical Mfg. Co.

d. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
e. Square D/Group Schneider.

2.4 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS AND SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
2. Moeller Electric Corporation.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D/Group Schneider.

B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker: NEMA AB 1, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic Trip-Unit Circuit Breakers: RMS sensing; field-replaceable rating plug; with the following field-adjustable settings:

    a. Instantaneous trip.
    b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
    d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.

4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
6. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with 30-mA trip sensitivity.

C. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
2. Lugs: Mechanical style with compression lug kits suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
3. Application Listing: Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment.
4. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
5. Communication Capability: Universal-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
6. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent of rated voltage.

7. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay.
8. Auxiliary Switch: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
9. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
10. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.

D. Molded-Case Switches: Molded-case circuit breaker with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.

E. Molded-Case Switch Accessories:

1. Lugs: Mechanical style with compression lug kits suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and material of conductors.
2. Application Listing: Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment.
3. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent of rated voltage. Provide "dummy" trip unit where required for proper operation.
4. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay. Provide "dummy" trip unit where required for proper operation.
5. Auxiliary Switch: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
6. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit operation; key shall be removable only when switch is in off position.

2.5 ENCLOSURES

A. NEMA AB 1 and NEMA KS 1 to meet environmental conditions of installed location.

1. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
2. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
3. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
4. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7C.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CONCRETE BASES

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Verify structural requirements with structural engineer.

B. Concrete base is specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems," and concrete materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 03.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with applicable portions of NECA 1, NEMA PB 1.1, and NEMA PB 2.1 for installation of enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

B. Mount individual wall-mounting switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height, unless otherwise indicated. Anchor floor-mounting switches to concrete base.

C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Enclosure Nameplates: Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate as specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.

B. Prepare for acceptance testing as follows:

1. Inspect mechanical and electrical connections.
2. Verify switch and relay type and labeling verification.
3. Verify rating of installed fuses.
4. Inspect proper installation of type, size, quantity, and arrangement of mounting or anchorage devices complying with manufacturer's certification.

C. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

D. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

E. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Test mounting and anchorage devices according to requirements in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
2. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.5 for switches and Section 7.6 for molded-case circuit breakers. Certify compliance with test parameters.
3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
4. Infrared Scanning:

    a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Open or remove doors or panels so connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    b. Follow-Up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each unit 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    c. Instruments, Equipment and Reports:

        1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
        2) Prepare a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers included and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

3.7 CLEANING

A. On completion of installation, vacuum dirt and debris from interiors; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

B. Inspect exposed surfaces and repair damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION 262816

SECTION 263213 – ENGINE GENERATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes packaged engine-generator sets for emergency power supply with the following features:

1. Gas engine.
2. Unit-mounted cooling system.
3. Unit-mounted control and monitoring.
4. Performance requirements for sensitive loads.
5. Load banks.
6. Outdoor enclosure.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 26 Section "Transfer Switches" for transfer switches including sensors and relays to initiate automatic-starting and -stopping signals for engine-generator sets.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of packaged engine generator indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. In addition, include the following:

1. Thermal damage curve for generator.
2. Time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Dimensioned outline plan and elevation drawings of engine-generator set and other components specified.
2. Design Calculations: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include base weights.
4. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that day tank, engine-generator set, batteries, battery racks, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

    a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
    b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Qualification Data: For installer, manufacturer and testing agency.

E. Source quality-control test reports.

1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report.
2. Certified Test Reports: For components and accessories that are equivalent, but not identical, to those tested on prototype unit.
3. Certified Summary of Performance Tests: Certify compliance with specified requirement to meet performance criteria for sensitive loads.
4. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
5. Report of sound generation.
6. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
7. Certified Torsional Vibration Compatibility: Comply with NFPA 110.

F. Field quality-control test reports.

G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For packaged engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.

H. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than four hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.
2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for vibration isolators and seismic restraints of engine skid mounts, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer. Maintain, within 200 miles of Project site, a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs.

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL), and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged generator sets and auxiliary components through one source from a single manufacturer.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

F. Comply with ASME B15.1.

G. Comply with NFPA 37.

H. Comply with NFPA 70.

I. Comply with NFPA 99.

J. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 emergency power supply system.

K. Comply with UL 2200.

L. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements.

M. Noise Emission: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements for maximum noise level at adjacent property boundaries due to sound emitted by generator set including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Architect's written permission.

B. Environmental Conditions: Engine-generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:

1. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 40 deg C.
2. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent.
3. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for package engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

B. Coordinate size and location of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations for remote radiators. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Flashing, Sheet Metal and Roofing Accessories."

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 1 year from date of Substantial Completion.

1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include quarterly exercising to check for proper starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include

routine preventive maintenance as recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for proper operation. Provide parts and supplies same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: One for every 10 of each type and rating, but no fewer than one of each.
2. Indicator Lamps: Two for every six of each type used, but no fewer than two of each.
3. Filters: One set each of lubricating oil, fuel, and combustion-air filters.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Caterpillar; Engine Div.
2. Generac Power Systems, Inc.
3. Kohler Co.; Generator Division.
4. Cummins Power Generation; Industrial Business Group.

2.2 ENGINE-GENERATOR SET

A. Factory-assembled and -tested, engine-generator set.

B. Mounting Frame: Maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation; and have lifting attachments.

1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and generator-set center of gravity.

C. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated.
2. Output Connections: Three-phase, four wire.
3. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of components.

D. Generator-Set Performance:

1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 3 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
6. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a 3-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
8. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10, system requirements.

2.3 ENGINE

A. Fuel: Natural Gas

B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.

C. Maximum Piston Speed for Four-Cycle Engines: 2250 fpm.

D. Lubrication System: The following items are mounted on engine or skid:

1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.

E. Engine Fuel System:

1. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine. Pump ensures adequate primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.
2. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.

F. Coolant Jacket Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity.

G. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.

H. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine-generator-set mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.

1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
3. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
5. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, ultraviolet-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.

a. Rating: 50-psig maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F, and non-collapsible under vacuum.
b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.

I. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with remote radiator and integral engine-driven coolant pump.

1. Configuration: Horizontal air discharge.
2. Radiator Core Tubes: Aluminum.
3. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
4. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
5. Fan: Driven by totally enclosed electric motor with sealed bearings.
6. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
7. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.

J. Muffler/Silencer: Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.

1. Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
2. Sound level measured at a distance of 10 feet from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 85 dBA or less.

K. Air-Intake Filter: Heavy-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.

L. Starting System: 12-V electric, with negative ground.

1. Components: Sized so they will not be damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in Part 1 "Project Conditions" Article.
2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
4. Battery: Adequate capacity within ambient temperature range specified in Part 1 "Project Conditions" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least three times without recharging.
5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
6. Battery Compartment: Factory fabricated of metal with acid-resistant finish and thermal insulation. Thermostatically controlled heater shall be arranged to maintain battery above 10 deg C regardless of external ambient temperature within range specified in Part 1 "Project Conditions" Article. Include accessories required to support and fasten batteries in place.
7. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
8. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing and float-charging type. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:

    a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
    b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 deg C to plus 60 deg C to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
    c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
    d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
    e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
    f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet.

2.4 CONTROL AND MONITORING

A. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of generator set. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, generator set starts. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms. Operation of a remote emergency-stop switch also shuts down generator set.

B. Manual Starting System Sequence of Operation: Switching on-off switch on the generator control panel to the on position starts generator set. The off position of same switch initiates

generator-set shutdown. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms. Operation of a remote emergency-stop switch also shuts down generator set.

C. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the generator set. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from generator-set vibration.

D. Indicating and Protective Devices and Controls: As required by NFPA 110 for Level 1system, and the following:

1. AC voltmeter.
2. AC ammeter.
3. AC frequency meter.
4. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
5. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
6. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
7. Running-time meter.
8. Ammeter-voltmeter, phase-selector switch(es).
9. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.
10. Fuel tank derangement alarm.
11. Fuel tank high-level shutdown of fuel supply alarm.
12. Generator overload.

E. Indicating and Protective Devices and Controls:

1. AC voltmeter.
2. AC ammeter.
3. AC frequency meter.
4. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
5. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
6. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
7. Running-time meter.
8. Ammeter-voltmeter, phase-selector switch(es).
9. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.
10. Start-stop switch.
11. Overspeed shutdown device.
12. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
13. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
14. Oil low-pressure shutdown device.
15. Fuel tank derangement alarm.
16. Fuel tank high-level shutdown of fuel supply alarm.
17. Generator overload.

F. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Connection to Data Link: A separate terminal block, factory wired to Form C dry contacts, for each alarm and status indication is reserved for connections for data-link transmission of

indications to remote data terminals. Data system connections to terminals are covered in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."

H. Common Remote Audible Alarm: Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 systems. Include necessary contacts and terminals in control and monitoring panel.

1. Overcrank shutdown.
2. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
3. Control switch not in auto position.
4. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
5. Battery low-voltage alarm.

I. Remote Alarm Annunciator: Comply with NFPA 99. An LED labeled with proper alarm conditions shall identify each alarm event and a common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition. Silencing switch in face of panel shall silence signal without altering visual indication. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset. Cabinet and faceplate are surface- or flush-mounting type to suit mounting conditions indicated.

J. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted, unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

2.5 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

A. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, thermal-magnetic type; 100 percent rated; complying with NEMA AB 1 and UL 489.

1. Tripping Characteristic: Designed specifically for generator protection.
2. Trip Rating: Matched to generator rating.
3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when generator set is shut down by other protective devices.
4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.

B. Generator Disconnect Switch: Molded-case type, 100 percent rated.

1. Rating: Matched to generator output rating.
2. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip switch when signaled by generator protector or by other protective devices.

C. Generator Protector: Microprocessor-based unit shall continuously monitor current level in each phase of generator output, integrate generator heating effect over time, and predict when thermal damage of alternator will occur. When signaled by generator protector or other generator-set protective devices, a shunt-trip device in the generator disconnect switch shall open the switch to disconnect the generator from load circuits. Protector shall perform the following functions:

1. Initiates a generator overload alarm when generator has operated at an overload equivalent to 110 percent of full-rated load for 60 seconds. Indication for this alarm is integrated with other generator-set malfunction alarms.

2. Under single or three-phase fault conditions, regulates generator to 300 percent of rated full-load current for up to 10 seconds.
3. As overcurrent heating effect on the generator approaches the thermal damage point of the unit, protector switches the excitation system off, opens the generator disconnect device, and shuts down the generator set.
4. Senses clearing of a fault by other overcurrent devices and controls recovery of rated voltage to avoid overshoot.

D. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground-fault. Integrate ground-fault alarm indication with other generator-set alarm indications.

2.6 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.

B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.

C. Electrical Insulation: Class H or Class F.

D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required.

E. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.

F. Enclosure: Dripproof.

G. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.

H. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified.

1. Adjusting rheostat on control and monitoring panel shall provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.

I. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.

J. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.

K. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

2.7 OUTDOOR GENERATOR-SET ENCLOSURE

A. Description: Vandal-resistant, weatherproof steel housing, wind resistant up to 100 mph. Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.

B. Engine Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for 2 hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.

1. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge. Storm-proof and drainable louvers prevent entry of rain and snow.
2. Automatic Dampers: At engine cooling-air inlet and discharge. Dampers shall be closed to reduce enclosure heat loss in cold weather when unit is not operating.

2.8 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

A. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.

1. Material: Bridge-bearing neoprene, complying with AASHTO M 251.
2. Durometer Rating: 45.
3. Number of Layers: Two.

B. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic restraint.

1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to wind loads or if weight is removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, elastomeric isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.9 FINISHES

A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine-generator set using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.

1. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters and with IEEE 115.

B. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine-generator set and other system components and accessories manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:

1. Test components and accessories furnished with installed unit that are not identical to those on tested prototype to demonstrate compatibility and reliability.
2. Full load run.
3. Maximum power.
4. Voltage regulation.
5. Transient and steady-state governing.
6. Single-step load pickup.
7. Safety shutdown.
8. Provide 14 days' advance notice of tests and opportunity for observation of tests by Owner's representative.
9. Report factory test results within 10 days of completion of test.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine-generator performance.

B. Examine roughing-in of piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine-generator installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with packaged engine-generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.

B. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.

C. Install packaged engine generator with restrained spring isolators having a minimum deflection of 1 inch on 4-inch- high concrete base. Secure sets to anchor bolts installed in concrete bases. Concrete base construction is specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

D. Install Schedule 40, black steel piping with welded joints for cooling water piping between engine-generator set and heat exchanger. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping."

E. Install Schedule 40, black steel piping with welded joints and connect to engine muffler. Install thimble at wall. Piping shall be same diameter as muffler outlet. Flexible connectors and steel piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping."

1. Install condensate drain piping to muffler drain outlet full size of drain connection with a shutoff valve, stainless-steel flexible connector, and Schedule 40, black steel pipe with welded joints. Flexible connectors and piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping."

F. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.

B. Connect fuel, cooling-system, and exhaust-system piping adjacent to packaged engine generator to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect cooling-system water piping to engine-generator set and heat exchanger with flexible connectors.

D. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.

E. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

F. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.

C. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

D. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection for "AC Generators and for Emergency Systems" specified in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.

    a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
    b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
    c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
    d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.

4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine-generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
6. Exhaust-System Back-Pressure Test: Use a manometer with a scale exceeding 40-inch wg. Connect to exhaust line close to engine exhaust manifold. Verify that back pressure at full-rated load is within manufacturer's written allowable limits for the engine.
7. Exhaust Emissions Test: Comply with applicable government test criteria.
8. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
9. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage under 25 percent and at 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.
10. Noise Level Tests: Measure A-weighted level of noise emanating from generator-set installation, including engine exhaust and cooling-air intake and discharge, at four locations on the property line, and compare measured levels with required values.

E. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.

F. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the last 12 months, traceable to standards of NIST, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.

G. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

H. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.

I. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

J. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

K. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations and retest until specified requirements are met.

L. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

M. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each power wiring termination and each bus connection. Remove all access panels so terminations and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies terminations and connections checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators. Refer to Division 01 General Requirements.

END OF SECTION 263213

SECTION 263600 – TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes transfer switches rated 600 V and less, including the following:

1. Automatic transfer switches.
2. Remote annunciation systems.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 21 Section "Electric-Drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps" for automatic transfer switches for fire pumps.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, weights, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, installed features and devices, and material lists for each switch specified.

1. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, bypass/isolation switch, power sources, and load; and show interlocking provisions for each combined transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch.

C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transfer switches accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.

3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and testing agency.

E. Field quality-control test reports.

F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
2. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Maintain a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs within a response period of less than eight hours from time of notification.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain automatic transfer switches through one source from a single manufacturer.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

E. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.

F. Comply with NFPA 70.

G. Comply with NFPA 99.

H. Comply with NFPA 110.

I. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service:

1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Architect's written permission.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Contactor Transfer Switches:
   a. Caterpillar; Engine Div.
   b. Emerson; ASCO Power Technologies, LP.
   c. Generac Power Systems, Inc.
   d. GE Zenith Controls.
   e. Kohler Power Systems; Generator Division.
   f. Cummins Power Generation; Industrial Business Group.
   g. Russelectric, Inc.

2.2 GENERAL TRANSFER-SWITCH PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

A. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Withstand Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.

1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.

C. Solid-State Controls: Repetitive accuracy of all settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.

D. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.41. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.

E. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism, mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions.

F. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.

1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are not acceptable.
2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Conventional automatic transfer-switch units, rated 225 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.

G. Neutral Switching. Where four-pole switches are indicated, provide neutral pole switched simultaneously with phase poles.

H. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated, unless otherwise indicated.

I. Oversize Neutral: Ampacity and switch rating of neutral path through units indicated for oversize neutral shall be double the nominal rating of circuit in which switch is installed.

J. Heater: Equip switches exposed to outdoor temperatures and humidity, and other units indicated, with an internal heater. Provide thermostat within enclosure to control heater.

K. Battery Charger: For generator starting batteries.

1. Float type rated 2 A.
2. Ammeter to display charging current.
3. Fused ac inputs and dc outputs.

L. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels shall have communication capability matched with remote device.

M. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, either by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable tape markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable tape markers are specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.

N. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 3R, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

A. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.

B. Switching Arrangement: Double-throw type, incapable of pauses or intermediate position stops during normal functioning, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

D. Manual Switch Operation: Unloaded. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

E. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval is adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.

F. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.

G. Transfer Switches Based on Molded-Case-Switch Components: Comply with NEMA AB 1, UL 489, and UL 869A.

H. Motor Disconnect and Timing Relay: Controls designate starters so they disconnect motors before transfer and reconnect them selectively at an adjustable time interval after transfer. Control connection to motor starters is through wiring external to automatic transfer switch. Time delay for reconnecting individual motor loads is adjustable between 1 and 60 seconds, and settings are as indicated. Relay contacts handling motor-control circuit inrush and seal currents are rated for actual currents to be encountered.

I. Programmed Neutral Switch Position: Switch operator has a programmed neutral position arranged to provide a midpoint between the two working switch positions, with an intentional, time-controlled pause at midpoint during transfer. Pause is adjustable from 0.5 to 30 seconds minimum and factory set for 0.5 second, unless otherwise indicated. Time delay occurs for both transfer directions. Pause is disabled unless both sources are live.

J. Automatic Transfer-Switch Features:

1. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage is adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
2. Adjustable Time Delay: For override of normal-source voltage sensing to delay transfer and engine start signals. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.

4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from 0 to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes to automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.

    a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
    b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."

8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so automatic transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
12. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
13. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods are adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings are for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:

    a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
    b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
    c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is not available.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and according to seismic-restraint details. See Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

B. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.

1. Concrete Bases: 4 inches high, reinforced, with chamfered edges. Extend base no more than 4 inches in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions of switch, unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic support. Construct concrete bases according to Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

C. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall, unless otherwise indicated. Provide a 1’ conduit from annunciator to generator panel unless otherwise noted on plans.

D. Identify components according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

E. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to control and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.

B. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

D. Provide a 2” conduit from ATS to generator unless otherwise noted on plans.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.

C. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in testing.
2. After installing equipment and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
3. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
4. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.

    a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
    b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
    c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
    d. Perform manual transfer operation.

5. After energizing circuits, demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.

    a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and of emergency source with normal source available.
    b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
    c. Verify time-delay settings.
    d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
    e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
    f. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for 1 pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
    g. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.

6. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.

    a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.

D. Testing Agency's Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing equipment and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
3. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.

a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
d. Perform manual transfer operation.

4. After energizing circuits, demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.

a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and of emergency source with normal source available.
b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
c. Verify time-delay settings.
d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
f. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for 1 pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
g. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.

5. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.

a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.

E. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.

F. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

G. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

H. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment as specified below. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

B. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 263600

SECTION 264313 – SURGE PROTECTION DEVICE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes SPDs for low-voltage power, control, and communication equipment.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices" for devices with integral SPDs.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ATS: Acceptance Testing Specifications.

B. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

C. SPD: Surge Protection Device

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating weights, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Product Certificates: For transient voltage suppression devices, signed by product manufacturer certifying compliance with the following standards:
1. UL 1283.
2. UL 1449 latest edition.

C. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

1 - Provide data confirming that the SPD will survive the published and specified repetitive surge current rating (longevity characteristic).

2 - Per the requirements of NEC Article 285.6, provide test data demonstrating that the SPD is capable of surviving the published and specified short circuit current capability (AIC rating) without the use of external fusing.

3 - Provide a COMPLETE set of test and ratings data per UL 1449 latest Edition.

A. Field quality-control test reports, including the following:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Failed test results and corrective action taken to achieve requirements.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transient voltage suppression devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

C. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain suppression devices and accessories through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, dimensional requirements, and electrical performance of suppressors and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

E. Comply with IEEE C62.41, "IEEE Guide for Surge Voltages in Low Voltage AC Power Circuits," and test devices according to IEEE C62.45, "IEEE Guide on Surge Testing for Equipment Connected to Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits."

F. Comply with UL 1283, "Electromagnetic Interference Filters," and UL 1449, "Transient Voltage Surge Suppressors."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.

B. Service Conditions: Rate surge protection devices for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage: Not less than 115 percent of nominal system operating voltage.

2. Operating Temperature: 30 to 120 deg F.
3. Humidity: 0 to 85 percent, noncondensing.
4. Altitude: Less than 20,000 feet above sea level.

C. Placing into Service: Do not energize or connect service entrance equipment, panelboard, control terminals, data terminals, to their sources until the surge protective devices are installed and connected.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate location of field-mounted surge suppressors to allow adequate clearances for maintenance.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of surge suppressors that fail in materials or workmanship within five years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty for Cord-Connected, Plug-in Surge Suppressors: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electronic equipment connected to circuits protected by surge suppressors.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Replaceable Protection Modules: One of each size and type installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Liebert Corporation; a division of Emerson.
2. Current Technology, Inc.
3. LEA International.
4. Square D; Schneider Electric.

B. Manufacturers of Category A and Telephone/Data Line Suppressors:

1. EDCO
2. NTE Electronics, Inc.

3. Telebyte Technology, Inc.

2.2 SERVICE ENTRANCE SUPPRESSORS

A. Surge Protection Device Description: Non-modular type from the following list of approved manufacturers and products provided the product meets all requirements of these Specifications.

The SPD will be provided with the following features and accessories:

1. Repetitive Rating: SPD shall be capable of surviving at least 10,000 ANSI/IEEE C62.41 Category C3 impulses (10kA) without failure or less than 10% degradation of original performance characteristics.
2. Fusing system to provide 200kAIC short circuit rating.
3. SPD shall be Type 1 with 20kA I-normal.
4. Individually fused MOVs to provide system redundancy
5. Integral disconnect (only when a breaker is NOT provided in distribution equipment)
6. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
7. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
8. One set of dry contacts rated at 5A and 250V ac, for remote monitoring of protection status.
9. NEMA 12 Enclosure.

B. Surge Protection Device Description: Modular type from the following list of approved manufacturers and products provided the product meets all requirements of these Specifications:

1. Liebert Corporation – Interceptor II Series
2. Current Technology, Inc. – SEL Series

The modular SPD will be provided with the following features and accessories:

1. Repetitive Rating: SPD shall be capable of surviving at least 15,000 ANSI/IEEE C62.41 Category C3 impulses (10kA) without failure or less than 10% degradation of original performance characteristics.
2. Fusing system to provide 200kAIC short circuit rating.
3. SPD shall be Type 1 with 20kA I-normal.
4. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
5. Individually fused MOVs to provide system redundancy.
6. Built-in push-to-test feature that tests the integrity of each fuse/MOV pair. Manufacturers who accomplish by use of an external surge generator will provide the device with their quotation.
7. Redundant replaceable modules
8. Arrangement with copper bus bars and for bolted connection to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
9. Arrangement with wire connection to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
10. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
11. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
12. One set of dry contacts rated at 5A and 250V ac, for remote monitoring of protection status.
13. Surge event operations counter.
14. NEMA 4 Enclosure

A. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: See table below. Manufacturer will provide a higher maximum surge current rating if necessary to meet the repetitive requirements listed above.Connection Means:

Electrical System Ampacity @ SPD Install Point	Surge Protection (kA)	
	Per Mode	Per Phase
2500 – 6000A	300	600
1200 – 2000A	250	500
600 – 1000A	200	400
225 – 400A	150	300
125 – 225A	100	200

B. Connection Means: Permanently wired.

Voltage Protection Ratings: The UL 1449 latest Edition Voltage Protection Ratings “VPR” (6kV, 3000 Amps, 8/20µs waveform) shall not exceed the UL assigned values listed below.

Voltage Protection Ratings (VPR) 6kV, 3000A, 8/20µs Waveform	Voltage Rating	
	208/120 V	480/277 V
Line to Neutral	900V	1200V
Line to Ground	800V	1200V
Neutral to Ground	700V	1200V
Line to Line	1200V	2000V

2.3 PANELBOARD SUPPRESSORS

C. Surge Protection Device Description: Non-modular, sine-wave-tracking type with the following features and accessories:
1. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
2. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
3. One set of dry contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, for remote monitoring of protection status.

D. Surge Protection Device Description: Modular design with field-replaceable modules, sign-wave-tracking type with the following features and accessories:
1. Fuses, rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
2. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
3. Integral disconnect switch.
4. Redundant suppression circuits.
5. Redundant replaceable modules.
6. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
7. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
8. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
9. One set of dry contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V, ac, for remote monitoring of protection status. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
10. Surge-event operations counter.

E. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: See table below:

Electrical System Ampacity @ SPD Install Point	Surge Protection (kA)	
	Per Mode	Per Phase
400 – 800A	150	300
125 – 225A	100	200
15-100A	50	100

2.4 SUPPRESSORS FOR BRANCH PANELS

A. Surge Protection Device Description: Sine-wave-tracking type, panel-mounted design with the following features and accessories:
1. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
2. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
3. One set of dry contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, for remote monitoring of protection status.
4. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
5. Fusing system to provide 200kAIC short circuit rating.
6. Repetitive Rating: SPD shall be capable of surviving at least 6,000 ANSI/IEEE C62.41 Category C3 impulses (10kA) without failure or less than 10% degradation of original performance characteristics.
7. NEMA 4X Enclosure

Voltage Protection Ratings: The let-through voltage test results used to obtain the UL 1449 latest Edition Voltage Performance Ratings “VPR” (6kV, 3000 Amps, 8/20µs waveform) shall not exceed the UL assigned values listed below.

Voltage Protection Ratings (VPR) 6kV, 3000A, 8/20µs Waveform	Voltage Rating	
	208/120V	480/277V

Line to Neutral	700V	1200V
Line to Ground	700V	1200V
Neutral to Ground	800V	1200V
Line to Line	1000V	2000V

B. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Ratings; 100kA per mode. Manufacturer will provide a higher maximum surge current rating if necessary to meet the repetitive requirements listed above.

2.5 PLUG-IN SURGE SUPPRESSORS

A. Description: Non-modular, plug-in suppressors with at least four 15-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 15-15R receptacles, suitable to plug into a NEMA WD 6, Configuration 15-15R receptacle; with the following features and accessories:
1. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
2. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.
3. Circuit breaker and thermal fusing. When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.
4. Circuit breaker and thermal fusing. Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
5. Close-coupled direct plug-in.
6. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in the on position.
7. One RJ11/12C telephone line protector, suitable for modem connection. Maximum clamping voltage 220 peak on pins No. 3 and No. 4.

B. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 26 kA per phase.

C. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR shall be as follows:
1. Line to Neutral: 475 V.
2. Line to Ground: 475 V.
3. Neutral to Ground: 475 V.

2.6 ENCLOSURES

A. NEMA 250, with type matching the enclosure of panel or device being protected.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES

A. Install devices at service entrance on load side, with ground lead bonded to service entrance ground.

B. Install devices for panelboard and auxiliary panels with conductors or buses between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible. Locate the externally mounted SPD as close as possible to the panelboard neutral lug. Locate the recommended breaker as close as

possible to the SPD location. The panelboard manufacturer will supply the breaker. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and ground.

C. Provide a 60A, multi-pole circuit breaker in the service entrance equipment and a 30A, multi- pole circuit breaker in branch panel equipment to serve as a dedicated disconnect for suppressor, unless otherwise indicated.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.3 PLACING SYSTEM INTO SERVICE

A. Do not energize or connect panelboards to their sources until surge protection devices are installed and connected.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
   1. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written installation requirements.

B. Testing: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

C. Testing: Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
   1. After installing surge protection devices, but before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
   2. Complete startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS, "Surge Arresters, Low-Voltage Surge Protection Devices" Section. Certify compliance with test parameters.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transient voltage suppression devices. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

B. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for maintaining suppressors.

C. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section “Contract Closeout.”

D. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section “Operation and Maintenance Data.”

E. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days’ advanced notice.

END OF SECTION 264313

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following types of LED luminaires:
   1. See fixture schedule for individual types.

B. Related Requirements:

   1. Section 26 09 23 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.

C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."

D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.

E. LED: Light-emitting diode.

F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

   1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
   2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
   3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
   4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
   5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.

6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests , complying with IES "Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides" for each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.

    a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
    b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples: For each luminaire and for each color and texture with standard factory-applied finish.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of luminaire with custom factory-applied finishes.

1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories involving color and finish selection.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of luminaire.

1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.

F. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Luminaires.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches (300 mm) of the plane of the luminaires.
4. Structural members to which equipment and/or luminaires will be attached.
5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

    a. Other luminaires.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Sprinklers.

e. Access panels.
f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.

7. Moldings.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

E. Product Test Reports: For each type of luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

F. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps: 1% of each type board and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Diffusers and Lenses: 1% of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Globes and Guards: 1% of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as

defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.

C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

E. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.

1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

F. All fixtures must be DLC (Design Lights Consortium) compliant or provide an equal replacement fixture with the DLC compliance. Fixture must be stamped with the DLC approval or informational submittal showing compliance.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7

B. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.

1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event."

C. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 104 deg F (Minus 15 to plus 40 deg C).

1. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:

a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
c. CCT and CRI.

C. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

D. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.

E. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

F. California Title 24 compliant.

2.3 See fixture schedule for fixture types.

A. Nominal Operating Voltage: Universal 120/277.

B. Lamp:
1. CRI of 80
2. CCT of 4000.
3. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
4. Dimmable from 100 percent to 10 percent of maximum light output.
5. Internal driver.
6. User-Replaceable Lamps:

a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.

7. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

D. Diffusers and Globes:

1. See schedule for glass types.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

E. With integral mounting provisions.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
4. DLC(Design Lights Consortium) compliant.

2.4 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Steel:

1. ASTM A 36/A 36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A 568/A 568M for sheet steel.

C. Stainless Steel:

1. 1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
2. 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A 240/240 M.

D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M.

E. Aluminum: ASTM B 209.

2.5 METAL FINISHES

A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.

C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).

D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

D. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

E. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secured to outlet box.
2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.

3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Attached using through bolts and backing plates on either side of wall or structural member.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

G. Suspended Luminaires:

1. Ceiling Mount:

a. Two 5/32-inch- (4-mm-) diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 10 feet (3 m) in length or per plan specifications.
b. Hook mount.

2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
4. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
5. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

H. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

I. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 26 09 43.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls."

B. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 26 09 43.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 26 51 19

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 275123.10 – TWO WAY COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Vandal resistant and ADA-compliant hands-free speakerphone communications system with a unit Master Station.
   2. Outlet boxes, conduit, wiring, and all other equipment necessary to provide a complete and operating two-way communication system.
   3. Equipment furnished under the terms of this specification shall be the standard product of a single manufacturer.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

   1. Arrangements of components.
   2. Single line drawing of the system.

C. Wiring diagrams detailing wiring for power, signal and control differentiating clearly between manufacturer installed wiring and field installed wiring. Identify terminal numbers and wiring color codes to facilitate installation, operation and maintenance.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For two-way communication systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

   1. In addition to items specified in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" and Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

      a. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
      b. Operating instructions laminated and mounted adjacent to operating console location.
      c. Training plan.
      d. Provide owner's manuals complete with operating instructions, wiring diagrams, and as built installation drawings.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
   1. The Contractor shall be from an established business which has been operating in the area for a minimum of five years.
   2. Installer shall maintain a fully staffed and equipped service office within 50 miles of the project that regularly offers maintenance and service for systems this design and size.
   3. The Contractor shall provide a one-year guarantee of the installed system against defects in material and workmanship. All contractor labor and materials shall be provided at no expense to the Owner. Guarantee period shall begin on the date of acceptance by the Owner or Site Representative.
   4. The System Manufacturer shall warrantee the installed system's components against defects in material and manufacturer's workmanship for a period of one year from date of acceptance by the Owner or Site Representative. Replacement or repair of system components only (job-site labor not included) shall be at the Manufacturer's discretion and provided at no expense to the Owner.
   5. The supplying Contractor shall have attended the Manufacturer's installation and service school or have been authorized by the Manufacturer to install the equipment.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Installer's Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair, restore, or replace system components and work that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

   1. Failures include, but are not limited to, component and system failure, including the need for excessive maintenance.
   2. Perform warrant service on 24-hour, 7 days per week basis, with response time to not exceed 4 hours.
   3. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following systems or pre-approved equal (minimum 10 station capacity):
   1. ARCU-10, ADA-1000
   2. RATH 2500 Series 10 Call box base station.
   3. Talkaphone CU-16.

2.2 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM

A. When in use the system shall provide two-way audio communications between the Master control station unit, remote area station and/or a call to "9-1-1". Communication at the remote area station shall be hands-free after initial contact from the area station. Call out to "9-1-1" shall be a timed occurrence when the master station has not been picked up after a call from a remote station.

B. When an emergency call is placed by the master unit, it provides the following indications at the area remote station to assure the caller that the call is being processed. After pressing the "PUSH FOR HELP" call button:
   1. Audio and visual confirmation:
      a. A "HELP REQUESTED" LED shall illuminate.
      b. An audible alarm shall sound.

C. The Master control unit allows Emergency Personnel to check status of each area station and to talk with each area station on an individual basis or all of them together.

D. A lighted green LED labeled "RESCUE SERVICES" indicates that an emergency is in progress.

E. If an emergency call is in progress, by lifting the handset on the master control unit you can automatically join the conversation. At this point you can place any or all remote stations on hold by pushing the hold button corresponding to that unit, which will leave them talking to the called party. Or you can disconnect the called party by pressing the "DISCONNECT TO CALL SERVICES" button, which will leave you talking to the remote area unit.

F. If there is no emergency call in progress you can call into any or all remote area unit by pressing the corresponding talk button to that unit.

G. By hanging up the master station you disconnect from the conversation while leaving the remote area station continuing any ongoing conversation with the called party.

2.3 COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of ARCU or comparable product line listed above.

B. Remote area station speakerphone:
   1. Flush mounted.
   2. Vandal proof 16-guage 304 stainless steel construction with engraved lettering.
   3. 3" diameter button:
      a. Engraved with "PUSH FOR HELP" lettering backfilled in red.
      b. Capable of being activated from any angle with a minimum of effort.
      c. No other hardware shall protrude from the station as high as the pushbutton.
   4. Red LED indicator confirms transmission of the "HELP REQUESTED" SIGNAL.
   5. Piezoelectric alarm.
   6. 3" Mylar 45 ohm speaker.
   7. Dual audio and visual alarms for the hearing and visually impaired.

C. Master two-way communication system:
   1. Stainless Steel
   2. Flush Mounted
   3. Handset for Talk/ Listen
   4. LED for each area
   5. Talk & Hold buttons for each area
   6. Power Led (red)
   7. Battery Back-up w\ light
   8. Green Led to indicate outgoing call initiated from any area station

9. Override button to cancel any outgoing call
10. Audio alert signaling for outgoing call from the area station

D. Wiring
1. System wiring shall be in accordance with good engineering practices as established by the EIA and NEC.
2. Wiring shall meet all established state and local electrical codes. All wiring shall test free from shorts and grounded as specified.
3. Wiring shall be accomplished using labeled, captive screw, plug-in connectors and 22 AWG shielded twisted pairs for all connections.
4. All cable shall be as recommended by the manufacturer or an approved equivalent.
   a. Area Station wiring to master station shall be a 4 conductor overall shielded twisted pairs.
   b. Master station wiring shall be 2-wire analog telephone line, and shall have 120vac power (provided by electrical contractor).

2.4 PATHWAYS

A. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with Section 26 05 33 "raceways and boxes for electrical systems."

1. See manufacturer for all required junction box sizing and rough-in requirements.

2. Physical Protection: Wiring and cabling shall maintain a 2 hour rating for pathway survivability. Basis of design shall be 2 hour fire rated MC cable.
   a. Manufacturers:
      1) VITALink
      2) Lifeline
      3) Or equal

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING METHODS

A. Wiring Method: Install cables in pathways and cable trays except within consoles. Conceal pathway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
2. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
3. Comply with requirements for pathways and boxes specified in Section 26 05 33 "raceways and boxes for electrical systems."

B. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

C. System field wiring diagrams shall be provided to the Contractor by the system Manufacturer prior to installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Open-Cable Installation:
   1. Suspend cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceiling by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.
   2. Cable shall not be run through structural members or be in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
   3. Exposed installations shall use conduit.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of system components and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

B. Mounting height:
   1. Remote area station: call button centered at 40” AFF unless otherwise noted.
   2. Master station: Top call button centered at 40” AFF unless otherwise noted.

3.4 GROUNDING

A. Ground cable shields and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

   1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

   1. Schedule tests with at least seven days' advance notice of test performance.
   2. After installing the two-way system and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
   3. Operational Test: Perform tests that include master station and remote area stations properly communicate. Verify the call out function to “9-1-1” properly calls out after the set duration.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the two-way communication system and equipment. Refer to Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training." A minimum four-hour training system shall be provided on a single coordinated day.

END OF SECTION 27 51 23.10

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 265561 – THEATRICAL LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wall-box, modular dimming controls.
2. LED fixtures and track.
3. Fixture accessories.

DEFINITIONS

B. Fade Rate: The time it takes each zone to arrive at the next scene, dependent on the degree of change in lighting level.

C. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70, the term for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling, and power-limited circuits.

D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

E. Scene: The lighting effect created by adjusting several zones of lighting to the desired intensity.

F. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.

G. Zone: A luminaire or group of luminaires controlled simultaneously as a single entity. Also known as a "channel."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For modular dimming controls; include elevation, dimensions, features, characteristics, ratings, and labels.
2. Device plates and plate color and material.
3. Driver combinations compatible with dimmers.
4. Sound data including results of operational tests of central dimming controls.

5. Operational documentation for software and firmware.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail assemblies of standard components, custom assembled for specific application on Project. Indicate dimensions, weights, arrangement of components, and clearance and access requirements.

1. Include elevation views of front panels of control and indicating devices and control stations.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Informational documentation:

1. Show interconnecting signal and control wiring, and interface devices that show compatibility of inputs and outputs.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For standalone modular dimming controls to include in operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
   a. Adjustments of scene preset controls, and fade overrides.
   b. Operation of adjustable zone controls.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of standalone modular dimming controls that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Damage from transient voltage surges.

2. Warranty Period: Cost to repair or replace any parts for two years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.7 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Cooper Greengate.
2. Acuity.
3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
4. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
5. Philips Lighting Controls.
6. Wattstopper DLM

1.8 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Compatibility:

1. Dimming control components shall be compatible with luminaires and drivers.

B. Dimmers and Dimmer Modules: Comply with UL 508.

1. Audible Noise and RFI Suppression: Solid-state dimmers shall operate smoothly over their operating ranges without audible lamp or dimmer noise or RFI. Modules shall include integral or external filters to suppress audible noise and RFI.
2. Dimmer or Dimmer-Module Rating: Not less than 125 percent of connected load unless otherwise indicated.

C. (3) dimming switches shall be provided to control each dedicated circuit for “white” (no color lens), “blue” and “red”, respectively.

1.9 WALL-BOX MULTISCENE DIMMING CONTROLS

A. Description: Factory-fabricated equipment providing manual dimming consisting of a wall-box-mounted controller.

B. Dimmers: Each zone shall be configurable to control the following loads:
1. LED lamps.

C. Dimmers: Regulate voltages to maintain a constant light level, with no visible flicker, when the source voltage varies plus or minus 2 percent of rms voltage.

D. Device Plates: Style, material, and color shall comply with Section 262726 "Wiring Devices." Master-control cover plate shall be one piece.

E. Controller shall include the following:

1. Cover-mounted switches, all bright, and selectors for each scene.
2. Cover-mounted LED indicator lights.
3. A raise/lower switch for each zone.

F. Basis of design: Cooper Greengate WBSD-SMT with PE400-1 power extender (1000W) total. 120V. Line voltage basis.

1.10 LED TRACK FIXTURES

A. Basis of design HALOL808 25 NF 90 40 MB 00lm package 35W or approved equal.
   1. Narrow flood, 90 CRI, 4000K CCT, 2500 lumens, black finish.
   2. (20) total LED fixture heads (platform)
   3. (20) total LED fixtures (cafeteria).
   4. (16) total 4” spot reflectors and (16) total 4” flood reflectors.
   5. Track type Halo (2) circuit track or equal. Total length, 18’, for the platform and 18’ for the cafeteria. Provide end of track feed sections as required. Provide (3) separated sections (one for each color) for each respective location.
   6. Provide (16) of each filter, red and blue (LND-RED, LND-BLU).
   7. Fixture shall be able to rotate 180 degrees vertically and 350 degrees horizontally.

1.11 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

1.12 STAGE COMPONENTS

A. Stage channel lighting assembly shall consist of a steel unistrut channel (3) 20’ long hung to structure. See detail for intent.

B. Suspend assembly with chains a minimum of 12’ above finished floor with 36” of slack for adjustment. Conductors supplied to fixtures shall also have 36” of slack. See plans for exact height.

C. Track shall be mounted to Unistrut channel. The 20’ section of Unistrut shall have (3) 6’ track sections with red and blue filter fixtures on the two ends. The center section shall be the non-filter fixtures.

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wiring Method: Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4 inch.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

E. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

F. Mount power extender above switch location (above platform level opening), in the same vertical of the switch location. Mount flush with a 4" square junction box.

G. All equipment and components shall be constructed to UL specification 1573, "Stage and Studio Lighting Units" and shall be UL listed and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.

H. Structures shall be NEMA 1 general purpose, heavy gauge steel, and built in compliance with UL requirements.

I. Each circuit shall have a dedicated neutral.

2.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Label each scene control button with approved scene description. Provide a phenolic label above each respective switch indicating the specific zones:
1. "Platform lights red" - Dimmer
2. "Platform lights white" - Dimmer
3. "Platform lights blue" – Dimmer
4. "Cafeteria lights red" - Dimmer
5. "Cafeteria lights white" - Dimmer
6. "Cafeteria lights blue" – Dimmer

2.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Continuity tests of circuits.
2. Operational Test: Set and operate controls to demonstrate their functions and capabilities in a methodical sequence that cues and reproduces actual operating functions.

    a. Include testing of modular dimming control equipment under conditions that simulate actual operational conditions. Record control settings, operations, cues, and functional observations.

D. Dimming control components will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Test Labeling: After satisfactory completion of tests and inspections, apply a label to tested components indicating test results, date, and responsible agency and representative.

F. Reports: Written reports of tests and observations. Record defective materials and workmanship and unsatisfactory test results. Record repairs and adjustments.

G. Aim fixtures according to owner input. Initial aiming shall have each color to evenly cover three zones on the stage. Stage left, stage right, center.

2.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain modular dimming controls, filter changing, and optic changing.

END OF SECTION 265561.01

SECTION 265619 – LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
2. Luminaire supports.
3. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color rendering index.

C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."

D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.

E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79.

a. Manufacturer's Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

6. Wiring diagrams for power, control, and signal wiring.
7. Photoelectric relays.
8. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable for components involved.

B. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For luminaire supports.

1. Include design calculations for luminaire supports and seismic restraints.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Luminaires.
2. Structural members to which equipment and luminaires will be attached.
3. Underground utilities and structures.
4. Existing underground utilities and structures.
5. Above-grade utilities and structures.
6. Existing above-grade utilities and structures.
7. Building features.
8. Vertical and horizontal information.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of the following:

1. Luminaire.
2. Photoelectric relay.

E. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

F. Source quality-control reports.

G. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and photoelectric relays to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project; use manufacturers' codes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products and complying with applicable IES testing standards.

C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

E. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

F. Comply with IEEE C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."

G. Comply with NFPA 70, “National Electrical Code.”

H. Comply with NECA/IESNA 501, “Standard for Installing Exterior Lighting Systems.”

I. Comply with UL 1598, “Standard for Luminaires.”

J. Comply with UL 8750, “Standard for Safety for Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products.”

K. Comply with IESNA LM-79, “Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Solid-State Lighting Products”.

L. Fixtures will be required to be DesignLights Consortium compliant (DLC). Fixtures specified must meet DLC certification or supplier will be responsible for submitting an “equal” fixture to the listed schedule fixture.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.

B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: 2 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, product(s) indicated on Drawings.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

B. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.

2.3 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.

C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.

D. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 5000 K.

E. L70 lamp life minimum of 50,000 hours.

F. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.

G. Internal driver. Provide a quick disconnect for driver and diode board.

H. Source Limitations: For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.4 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

B. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.

D. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.

F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.

G. Housings:

1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

H. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:

a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage and coating.
c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.5 FINISHES

A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.

C. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.

a. Color: Dark bronze.

D. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.

a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors.

2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

2.7 STEEL POLES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Lighting.
2. Hapco.
3. Hubbell Incorporated.
4. KIM Lighting.
5. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
6. LSI Corporation of America.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain poles from single manufacturer or producer.

C. Source Limitations: For poles, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of pole from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

D. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 500/A 500M, Grade B carbon steel with a minimum yield of 46,000 psig; one-piece construction up to 40 feet in height with access handhole in pole wall.

1. Shape: Square, straight.
2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.

E. Steel Mast Arms: Manufacturer recommended type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish same as plate.

F. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.

1. Adaptor fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole-mounted adapter, then bolted together with galvanized-steel bolts.
2. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire. Match pole material and finish.

G. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.

H. Fasteners: Stainless steel, size and type as determined by manufacturer. Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.

1. Materials: Compatible with poles and standards as well as the substrates to which poles and standards are fastened and shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.

I. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size indicated, and accessible through handhole.

J. Handhole: Oval shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches, with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.

K. Intermediate Handhole and Cable Support: Weatherproof, 3-by-5-inch handhole located at midpoint of pole, with cover for access to internal welded attachment lug for electric cable support grip.

L. Cable Support Grip: Wire-mesh type with rotating attachment eye, sized for diameter of cable and rated for a minimum load equal to weight of supported load multiplied by a 5.0 safety factor.

M. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces according to SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
2. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
3. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.

    a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range. Basis of design: Dark Bronze.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.

C. Examine walls, roofs, canopy ceilings and overhang ceilings for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is substantially complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.

C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.

E. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

F. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.

G. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated. Install luminaires at height and aiming angle as indicated on Drawings.

H. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.

I. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.

J. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTED LUMINAIRES

A. Aim as indicated on Drawings.

B. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.5 CORROSION PREVENTION

A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.

B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch-thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.

C. Illumination Tests:

1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IES testing guide(s), as applicable to the specific luminaire use:

    a. IES LM-5.
    b. IES LM-50.
    c. IES LM-52.
    d. IES LM-64.
    e. IES LM-72.

2. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.

D. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires and photocell relays.

3.9 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 265619

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 265668 - EXTERIOR ATHLETIC LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes lighting for the following outdoor sports venues:

1. Baseball fields.
2. Softball fields.
3. Football fields.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Coefficient of Variation (CV): A statistical measure of the weighted average of all relevant illumination values for the playing area, expressed as the ratio of the standard deviation for all illuminance values to the mean illuminance value.

B. Fixture: See "Luminaire."

C. Illuminance: The metric most commonly used to evaluate lighting systems. It is the density of luminous flux, or flow of light, reaching a surface divided by the area of that surface.

1. Horizontal Illuminance: Measurement in foot-candles, on a horizontal surface 36 inches above ground unless otherwise indicated.
2. Target Illuminance: Average maintained illuminance level, calculated by multiplying initial illuminance by LLF.
3. Vertical Illuminance: Measurement in foot-candles, in two directions on a vertical surface, at an elevation coinciding with plane height of horizontal measurements.

D. LC: Lighting Certified.

E. Light-Loss Factor (LLF): A factor used in calculating the level of illumination after a given period of time and under given conditions. It takes into account temperature, dirt accumulation on the luminaire, lamp depreciation, maintenance procedures, and atmospheric conditions. An LLF includes a recoverable light-loss factor.

F. Luminaire: A complete lighting unit. Luminaires include lamps and the parts required to distribute light, position and protect lamps, and connect lamps to power supply. Note that "fixture" and "luminaire" may be used interchangeably and the "IES Lighting Handbook" uses "luminaire" over "fixture."

G. Pole: Luminaire support structure, including tower used for large area illumination.

H. Uniformity Gradient (UG): The rate of change of illuminance on the playing field, expressed as a ratio between the illuminances of adjacent measuring points on a uniform grid.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of lighting product.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of the luminaires.
4. Driver, including BF, UL listing and recognition, ANSI certification, and Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007 compliance.
5. Lamps, including life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES "Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides," of each lighting luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps, driverss, and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project.
    a. Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
7. Photoelectric relays.
8. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that attachment is suitable for components involved.

B. Product Schedule: For luminaires. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For exterior athletic lighting indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Drawings and specifications for construction of lighting system.
2. Manufacturer's determination of LLF used in design calculations.
3. Wind Load requirements and design calculations.
4. Lighting system design calculations for the following:
    a. Target illuminance.
    b. Point calculations of horizontal and vertical illuminance, CV, and UG at minimum grid size and area.
    c. Point calculations of horizontal and vertical illuminance in indicated areas of concern for spill light. This includes at the property line.
    d. Calculations of source intensity of luminaires observed at eye level from indicated properties near the playing fields.
5. Electrical system design calculations for the following:
    a. Short-circuit current calculations for rating of panelboards.
    b. Total connected and estimated peak-demand electrical load, in kilowatts, of lighting system.
    c. Capacity of service required to supply lighting system.

6. Wiring requirements, including required conductors, cables, and wiring methods.
7. Structural analysis data and calculations used for pole selection.

    a. Manufacturer Wind-Load Strength Certification: Submit certification that selected total support system, including poles, complies with AASHTO LTS-6-M for location of Project.

    b. Minimum wind speed calculation: 115 MPH.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, manufacturer, professional engineer, and testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Product Certificates:

1. For each type of driver-controlled luminaire, from manufacturer.
2. For support structures, including brackets, arms, appurtenances, bases, anchorages, and foundations, from manufacturer.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all luminaire types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer's responsibilities include fabricating sports lighting and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.

1. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of delegated-design submittals and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.

a. Analysis shall include pole design (structural, bases, poles, masts, etc.)
b. Photometric layout.
c. Feeder and branch circuit analysis.
d. Fixture counts, types, luminaires, housings, drivers, etc.

C. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of luminaires, and luminaire alignment products and to correct misalignment that occurs subsequent to successful acceptance tests. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, and unauthorized repairs and alterations from special warranty coverage.

1. Luminaire Warranty: Luminaire and luminaire assembly shall be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of five years from date of Substantial Completion.

2. Alignment Warranty: Accuracy of alignment of luminaires shall remain within specified illuminance uniformity ratios for a period of five years from date of successful completion of acceptance tests.

a. Realign luminaires that become misaligned during the warranty period.
b. Replace alignment products that fail within the warranty period.
c. Verify successful realignment of luminaires by retesting as specified in "Field Quality Control" Article.

B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

\

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Facility Type: Middle school.

B. Illumination Criteria:

1. Minimum average target illuminance level for each lighted area for each sports venue and for the indicated class of play according to IES RP-6.
2. CV and maximum-to-minimum uniformity ratios for each lighted area equal to or less than those listed in IES RP-6 for the indicated class of play.
3. UG levels within each lighted area equal to or less than those listed in IES RP-6 for the indicated speed of sport.

C. Illumination Calculations: Computer-analyzed point method complying with IES RP-6 to optimize selection, location, and aiming of luminaires.

1. Grid Pattern Dimensions: For playing areas of each sport and areas of concern for spill-light control, correlate and reference calculated parameters to the grid areas. Each grid point represents the center of the grid area defined by the length and width of the grid spacing.
2. Spill-Light Control: Minimize spill light for each playing area on adjacent and nearby areas.
   a. For areas indicated on Drawings as "spill-light critical," limit the level of illuminance directed into the area from any luminaire or group of luminaires, and measured 36 inches above grade to the following:

      1) Maximum Horizontal Illuminance: 0.0 fc.
      2) Maximum Vertical Illuminance from the Direction of the Greatest Contribution of Light: 1.0 fc.

   b. Calculate the horizontal and vertical illuminance due to spill light for points spaced 20 feet apart in areas indicated on Drawings as "spill-light critical," to ensure that design complies with the above limits.

3. Glare Control: Design illumination for each playing area to minimize direct glare in adjacent and nearby areas.
   a. Design source intensity of luminaires that may be observed at an elevation of 60 inches above finished grade from designated "spill-light critical" areas to be less than 12,000 candela when so observed.
   b. Fixtures shall be provided with a hood/visor to minimize glare.

4. Determine LLF according to IES RP-6 and manufacturer's test data.

   a. Use LLD at 100 percent of rated lamp life. LLF shall be applied to initial illumination to ensure that target illumination is achieved at 100 percent of lamp life and shall include consideration of field factor.

5. Luminaire-Mounting Height: Comply with IES RP-6, with consideration for requirements to minimize spill light and glare.

D. Baseball Fields:

1. IES RP-6: Class of Play III.
2. Speed of Sport: Moderate.
3. Grid Pattern Dimensions: 30 by 30 feet.

E. Softball Fields:

1. IES RP-6: Class of Play III.
2. Speed of Sport: Moderate.
3. Grid Pattern Dimensions: 20 by 20 feet.

F. Football Fields:

1. IES RP-6: Class of Play II.
2. Speed of Sport: Fast.
3. Grid Pattern Dimensions: 30 by 30 feet.

G. Egress Lighting: In case of power failure, provide a minimum of 1.0-fc illumination, measured at grade in spectator and spectator egress areas.

1. Duration of emergency illumination shall be not less than 90 minutes.

H. Lighting Control: Manual, low voltage, or digital; providing the following functions, integrated into a single control station, with multiple subcontrol stations as indicated:

1. Control Station: Key-operated master switch, manual push-button controls, and system status indicator lights. Test switch of egress lighting system.

I. Electric Power Distribution Requirements:

1. Electric Power: See plans.

a. Balance load between phases. Install wiring to balance three phases at each support structure.
b. Include required overcurrent protective devices and individual lighting control for each sports field or venue.

2. Maximum Total Voltage Drop from Source to Load: 5 percent, including voltage drops in branch circuit, subfeeder, and feeder.

J. Seismic Performance: Luminaires, drivers, and support structures shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

2.2 LUMINAIRE SYSTEM

A. Luminaires: Complying with requirements described in Section 26 56 19 "LED Exterior Lighting."

1. Listed and labeled, by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for compliance with UL 1598 for installation in wet locations.
2. Exposed Hardware: Stainless-steel latches, fasteners, and hinges.
3. Spill-Light Control Devices: Internal louvers and external baffles furnished by manufacturer and designed for secure attachment to specific luminaire.

B. Driver Mounting: At location of associated luminaires unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 SUPPORT STRUCTURES

A. Support Structures: Steel or Concrete poles and other support structures, brackets, arms, appurtenances, bases, anchorages and foundations as complying with requirements described in Section 26 56 13 "Lighting Poles and Standards." and as recommended by the supplying sports lighting manufacturer.

1. Provide safety cages (platform), safety cables for tethering, and climbing steps.

2. Pole basis of design is concrete.

2.4 POWER DISTRIBUTION AND CONTROL

A. Wiring Method for Feeders, Subfeeders, Branch Circuits, and Control Wiring: Underground nonmetallic raceway; No. 10 AWG minimum conductor size for power wiring.

B. Overhead-, pole-, or structure-supported wiring and transformers are not permitted.

C. Electrical Enclosures Exposed to Weather: NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure constructed from stainless steel corrosion-resistant material, with hinged doors fitted with padlock hasps or lockable latches.

D. Pole Wiring: For football stadiums, Provide hard wired, unspliced conductors for full pole height. "Quick wiring" and intermediate connectors are not acceptable.

E. Support down cables from luminaires at top of pole to control box are well supported, without strain on connections.

F. Provide terminal block connections at top of down cables. Pin-type connections are not acceptable.

2.5 SURGE PROTECTION

A. Surge Protection: Comply with requirements in Section 26 43 13 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits" and include surge suppressors with the following requirements:

1. Panelboard type.
2. Nonmodular, with digital indicator lights.
3. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 20 kA per phase.

2.6 POLE AND BASE PROTECTION

A. Pole Pads: Wraparound pad, with 4 inches of extra-firm polyfoam, 360-degree coverage of ground-mounted poles and supports, continuous hook-and-loop fastening; and not less than 72 inches high.

2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical and communications conduit to verify actual locations of connections before pole or luminaire installation.

C. Examine foundations for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways, except when cables are installed within boxes and poles. Conceal raceways and cables.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

C. Coordination layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.

D. Use web fabric slings (not chain or cable) to raise and set structural members. Protect equipment during installation to prevent corrosion.

E. Install poles and other structural units level, plumb, and square.

F. Install luminaires at height and aiming angle as indicated on Drawings.

G. Except for embedded structural members, grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrinking or expanding concrete grout firmly packed in entire void space. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch-diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole. Nonshrink grout is specified in Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications."

H. Install pole pads at all poles inside playing field boundaries and when located within 20 feet of the field boundary.

I. Extend cast-in-place bolted base foundations 36 inches above grade, minimum.

J. Install protective pipe bollards on three sides of each embedded pole installed in paved areas. See Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for pipe bollards.

K. Install controls and driver housings in cabinets mounted on support structure at least 10 feet above finished grade.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Electrical contractor will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Coordinate with contractor's testing agency which will perform the following tests and inspections:

1. After installing sports lighting system and after electrical circuits have been energized, perform proof-of-performance field measurements and analysis for compliance with requirements.
2. Playing and Other Designated Areas: Make field measurements at intersections of grids, dimensioned and located as specified in "Performance Requirements" Article and as described below:

    a. Baseball Fields: Measure at least 25 points of the infield and 87 points of the outfield. Extend the grid 15 feet outside the foul lines, extending to outfield boundary or fence.
    b. Softball Fields: Measure at least 16 points of the infield and 48 points of the outfield. Extend the grid 15 feet outside the foul lines, extending to outfield boundary.
    c. Football Fields: Lighted area is 180 by 360 feet. Measure at least 91 points.

3. Make field measurements at established test points in areas of concern for spill light and glare.
4. Perform analysis to demonstrate correlation of field measurements with specified illumination quality and quantity values and corresponding computer-generated values that were submitted with engineered design documents. Submit a report of the analysis. For computer-generated values, use manufacturer's LED lumens that are adjusted to LED age at time of field testing.

C. Correction of Illumination Deficiencies for Playing Areas: Make corrections to illumination quality or quantity, measured in field quality-control tests, that varies from specified illumination criteria by plus or minus 10 percent.

1. Add or replace luminaires; change mounting height and aiming; or install louvers, shields, or baffles.
2. If luminaires are added or mounting height is changed, revise aiming and recalculate and modify or replace support structures if indicated.
3. Do not replace luminaires with units of higher or lower wattage without Architect's approval.
4. Retest as specified above after repairs, adjustments, or replacements are made.
5. Report results in writing.

D. Correction of Excessive Illumination in Spill-Light-Critical Areas: If measurements indicate that specified limits for spill light are exceeded, make corrections to illumination quantity, measured in field quality-control tests, that reduce levels to within specified maximum values.

1. Replace luminaires; change mounting heights and revise aiming; or install louvers, shields, or baffles.
2. Obtain Architect's approval to replace luminaires with units of higher or lower wattage.
3. If mounting height is changed, revise aiming and recalculate and modify or replace support structures if indicated.
4. Retest as specified above after repairs, adjustments, or replacements are made.
5. Report results in writing.

E. Sports lighting will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust luminaires and supports to maintain orientation and aiming as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 265668

SECTION 270526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Grounding conductors.
2. Grounding connectors.
3. Grounding busbars.
4. Grounding labeling.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. As-Built Data: Plans showing as-built locations of grounding and bonding infrastructure, including the following:

1. BCT, PBB, SBBs, and routing of their bonding conductors.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of ITS Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
2. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as a RCDD to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

C. Comply with latest TIA-607 standard.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Panduit Corporation
2. The Siemon Company
3. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
4. Tyco Electronics Corp.
5. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems

B. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

C. Insulated Conductors: Stranded copper wire, green or green with yellow stripe insulation, insulated for 600 V, and complying with UL 83.

1. Ground wire for custom-length equipment ground jumpers shall be No. 6 AWG, 19-strand, UL-listed, Type THHN wire.
2. Cable Tray Equipment Grounding Wire: No. 6 AWG.

D. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmils, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, and 1/4 inch in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with two-hole copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

2.3 CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Panduit Corporation
2. The Siemon Company
3. Harger Lightning & Grounding.

4. Tyco Electronics Corp.
5. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems

B. Irreversible connectors listed for the purpose. Listed by an NRTL as complying with NFPA 70 for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

C. Compression Wire Connectors: Crimp-and-compress connectors that bond to the conductor when the connector is compressed around the conductor. Comply with UL 467.

1. Electroplated tinned copper, C and H shaped.

D. Busbar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type, mechanical connector; with a long barrel and two holes for a two-bolt connection to the busbar.

E. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

2.4 GROUNDING BUSBARS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Panduit Corporation
2. The Siemon Company
3. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
4. Tyco Electronics Corp.
5. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems
6. Eaton B-Line

B. PBB: Predrilled, wall-mounted, rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 4 inches in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be NRTL listed for use as PBB and shall comply with latest TIA-607 standard.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide a 4-inch clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

C. SBB: Predrilled rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 2 inches in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be for wall mounting, shall be NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and shall comply with latest TIA-607 standard.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide at least a 2-inch clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

D. Rack and Cabinet Grounding Busbars: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with latest TIA-607 standard. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.

1. Cabinet-Mounted Busbar: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the cabinet.
2. Rack-Mounted Horizontal Busbar: Designed for mounting in 19-inch equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
3. Rack-Mounted Vertical Busbar: 72-inch long, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements for identification products in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the ac grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of the electrical system.

B. Inspect the test results of the ac grounding system measured at the point of BCT connection.

C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with connection of the BCT only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Bonding shall include the ac utility power service entrance, the communications cable entrance, and the grounding electrode system. The bonding of these elements shall form a loop so that each element is connected to at least two others.

B. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Comply with latest TIA-607 standard.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

1. The bonding conductors between the SBB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.
2. The bonding conductors between the PBB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 2 AWG minimum.

C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

D. Conductor Support:

1. Secure grounding and bonding conductors at intervals of not less than 36 inches.

E. Grounding and Bonding Conductors:

1. Install in the straightest and shortest route between the origination and termination point, and no longer than required. The bend radius shall not be smaller than eight times the diameter of the conductor. No one bend may exceed 90 degrees.
2. Install without splices.
3. Support at not more than 36-inch intervals.
4. Install grounding and bonding conductors in 3/4-inch PVC conduit until conduit enters a telecommunications room. The grounding and bonding conductor pathway through a plenum shall be in EMT. Conductors shall not be installed in EMT unless otherwise indicated.

    a. If a grounding and bonding conductor is installed in ferrous metallic conduit, bond the conductor to the conduit using a grounding bushing and bond both ends of the conduit to a SBB.

3.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODE SYSTEM

A. The BCT between the PBB and the ac service equipment ground shall not be smaller than No. 3/0 AWG.

3.5 GROUNDING BUSBARS

A. Indicate locations of grounding busbars on Drawings. Install busbars horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 60 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

B. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Bond metallic equipment in a telecommunications equipment room to the grounding busbar in that room, using equipment grounding conductors not smaller than No. 6 AWG.

B. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.

C. Daisy chaining of connections is not permitted. Individual bonding conductors must be utilized for components needing to be connected to the SBB or PBB.

D. Provide and use self-scoring installation hardware on devices that have painted surfaces. Prior to installation, remove paint from bonding surface and secure bonding connector using self-scoring hardware.

E. Assemble the wire connector to the conductor, complying with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

1. Use crimping tool and the die specific to the connector.
2. Pretwist the conductor.
3. Apply an antioxidant compound to all bolted and compression connections.

F. Primary Protector: Bond to the PBB with insulated bonding conductor.

G. Interconnections: Interconnect all SBBs with the PBB with the telecommunications backbone conductor. If more than one PBB is installed, interconnect PBBs using the grounding equalizer conductor. The telecommunications backbone conductor and grounding equalizer conductor size shall not be less than 2 kcmils/linear foot of conductor length, up to a maximum size of No. 3/0 AWG unless otherwise indicated.

H. Telecommunications Enclosures and Equipment Racks: Bond metallic components of enclosures to the telecommunications bonding and grounding system. Install [top-mounted] [vertically mounted] rack grounding busbar unless the enclosure and rack are manufactured with the busbar. Bond the equipment grounding busbar to the SBB No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.

I. Structural Steel: Where the structural steel of a steel frame building is readily accessible within the room or space, bond each SBB and PBB to the vertical steel of the building frame.

J. Electrical Power Panelboards: Where an electrical panelboard for telecommunications equipment is located in the same room or space, bond each SBB to the ground bar of the panelboard.

K. Shielded Cable: Bond the shield of shielded cable to the SBB in communications rooms and spaces. Comply with TIA-568-C.1 and TIA-568-C.2 when grounding shielded balanced twisted-pair cables.

L. Rack- and Cabinet-Mounted Equipment: Bond powered equipment chassis to the cabinet or rack grounding bar. Power connection shall comply with NFPA 70; the equipment grounding conductor in the power cord of cord- and plug-connected equipment shall be considered as a supplement to bonding requirements in this Section.

M. Access Floors: Bond all metal parts of access floors to the SBB.

N. Cable Tray: Bond all segments of cable tray to the adjacent segments of cable tray using bonding jumper. Bond all corners using bonding jumper. At a location near the SBB, bond the tray system to the SBB using a No. 2 AWG bonding conductor.

O. Sleeve systems: Bond all sleeve systems entering the telecommunications spaces to the local SBB using a No. 2 AWG bonding conductor.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.

1. Label PBB(s) with "fs-PBB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the PBB.
2. Label SBB(s) with "fs-SBB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the SBB.
3. Label the BCT and each telecommunications backbone conductor at its attachment point: "WARNING! TELECOMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTOR. DO NOT REMOVE OR DISCONNECT!"

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Test the bonding connections of the system using an ac earth ground-resistance tester, taking two-point bonding measurements in each telecommunications equipment room containing a PBB and a SBB and using the process recommended by BICSI TDMM. Conduct tests with the facility in operation.

    a. Measure the resistance between the busbar and the nearest available grounding electrode. The maximum acceptable value of this bonding resistance is 100 milliohms.

3. Test for ground loop currents using a digital clamp-on ammeter, with a full-scale of not more than 10 A, displaying current in increments of 0.01 A at an accuracy of plus/minus 2.0 percent.

a. With the grounding infrastructure completed and the communications system electronics operating, measure the current in every conductor connected to the PBB and in each SBB. Maximum acceptable ac current level is 1 A.

C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground at the BCT exceeds 5 ohms, notify Engineer promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

D. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 270526

SECTION 270536 - CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. ~~Ladder~~ *Cable runway tray.*
2. Wire-mesh cable tray.
3. Cable tray accessories.
4. Warning signs.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems" for cable trays and accessories serving electrical systems.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type of cable tray.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For seismic restraints.

1. Seismic-Restraint Details: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer, licensed in the state where Project is located, who is responsible for their preparation.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
3. Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported cable trays.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for cable trays, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

B. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design cable tray supports and seismic bracing.

B. Seismic Performance: Cable trays and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7

1. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CABLE TRAYS

A. Cable Trays and Accessories: Identified as defined in NFPA 70 and marked for intended location, application, and grounding.

B. Sizes and Configurations: See the Cable Tray Schedule on Drawings for specific requirements for types, materials, sizes, and configurations.

C. Structural Performance: See articles on individual cable tray types for specific values for uniform load distribution, concentrated load, and load and safety factor parameters.

2.3 ~~LADDER~~ CABLE RUNWAY TRAY

A. Manufacturers:

1. Legrand: ~~Itray Series~~ *09-8104-Length-12-BK*
2. Eaton B-Line: ~~Redi-Rail Series~~
3. Snake Tray: ~~653~~ *610 Series*
4. MonoSystems: ~~PowerTray Series~~
5. Middle Atlantic: *CLB Series*

B. Description:

1. Configuration: Two longitudinal side rails with transverse rungs swaged or welded to side rails, complying with NEMA VE 1.
2. Minimum Width: 12 inches unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
3. Minimum Usable Load Depth: ~~4~~ *1* inches.
4. Straight Section Lengths: 10 feet except where shorter lengths are required to facilitate tray assembly.
5. Rung Spacing: 9 inches o.c.
6. Radius-Fitting Rung Spacing: 9 inches at center of tray's width.
7. Minimum Cable-Bearing Surface for Rungs: 7/8-inch width with radius edges.
8. No portion of the rungs shall protrude below the bottom plane of side rails.
9. Structural Performance of Each Rung: Capable of supporting a maximum cable load, with a safety factor of 1.5, plus a 200-lb concentrated load, when tested according to NEMA VE 1.
10. Fitting Minimum Radius: 12 inches.
11. Splicing Assemblies: Bolted type using serrated flange locknuts.
12. Splice-Plate Capacity: Splices located within support span shall not diminish rated loading capacity of cable tray.

C. Materials and Finishes:

1. ~~Aluminum~~ *Steel*

a. ~~Materials: Alloy 6063-T6 according to ANSI H35.1/H 35.1M for extruded components, and Alloy 6061-T6 according to ANSI H35.1/H 35.1M for fabricated parts.~~

2.4 WIRE-MESH CABLE TRAY

A. Manufacturers:

1. Legrand: Cablofil Series
2. Eaton B-Line: Flex Tray Series
3. Snake Tray: Mega-Snake Series
4. MonoSystems: Mono-Mesh
5. Siemon: RouteIT Series

B. Description:

1. Configuration: steel wire mesh, complying with NEMA VE 1.
2. Minimum Width: 12 inches unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
3. Minimum Usable Load Depth: 4 inches
4. Straight Section Lengths: 10 feet except where shorter lengths are required to facilitate tray assembly.
5. Structural Performance: Capable of supporting a maximum cable load, with a safety factor of 1.5, plus a 200-lb concentrated load, when tested according to NEMA VE 1.
6. Class Designation: Comply with NEMA VE 1.
7. Splicing Assemblies: Bolted type using serrated flange locknuts.
8. Splice-Plate Capacity: Splices located within support span shall not diminish rated loading capacity of cable tray.

C. Materials and Finishes:

1. Steel: Electroplated Zinc

a. Straight Sections and Fittings: Steel
b. Steel Tray Splice Plates: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, HSLAS, Grade 50, Class 1.
c. Fasteners: Steel

2.5 CABLE TRAY ACCESSORIES

A. Fittings: Tees, crosses, risers, elbows, and other fittings as indicated, of same materials and finishes as cable tray.

B. Barrier Strips: Same materials and finishes as for cable tray.

C. Cable tray supports and connectors, including bonding jumpers, as recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

2.6 WARNING SIGNS

A. Comply with requirements for identification in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

B. Lettering: 1-1/2-inch-high, black letters on yellow background with legend "Warning! Not To Be Used as Walkway, Ladder, or Support for Ladders or Personnel."

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Test and inspect cable trays according to NEMA FG 1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CABLE TRAY INSTALLATION

A. Install cable trays according to NEMA FG 1.

B. Install cable trays as a complete system, including fasteners, hold-down clips, support systems, barrier strips, adjustable horizontal and vertical splice plates, elbows, reducers, tees, crosses, cable dropouts, adapters, covers, and bonding.

C. Fasten cable tray supports to building structure

D. Design fasteners and supports to carry cable tray, the cables, and a concentrated load of 200 lb.

E. Install center-hung supports for single-rail trays designed for 60 versus 40 percent eccentric loading condition, with a safety factor of 3.

F. Support wire-basket cable trays with center support hangers.

G. Support center support hangers for wire-basket trays with 1/4-inch-diameter rods.

H. Make connections to equipment with flanged fittings fastened to cable trays and to equipment. Support cable trays independent of fittings. Do not carry weight of cable trays on equipment enclosure.

I. Install expansion connectors where cable trays cross building expansion joints and in cable tray runs that exceed dimensions recommended in NEMA FG 1. Space connectors and set gaps according to applicable standard.

J. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

K. Install capped metal sleeves for future cables through firestop-sealed cable tray penetrations of fire and smoke barriers.

L. Install barriers to separate cables of different systems, such as power, communications, and data processing; or of different insulation levels, such as 600, 5000, and 15 000 V.

M. Install permanent covers, if used, after installing cable. Install cover clamps according to NEMA VE 2.

N. Install warning signs in visible locations on or near cable trays after cable tray installation.

3.2 CABLE TRAY GROUNDING

A. Ground cable trays according to NFPA 70 unless additional grounding is specified. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

B. Cable trays with shall be bonded together with splice plates listed for grounding purposes or with listed bonding jumpers.

C. Bond cable trays to power source for cables contained within with bonding conductors sized according to NFPA 70, Article 250.122, "Size of Equipment Grounding Conductors."

3.3 CABLE INSTALLATION

A. Install cables only when each cable tray run has been completed and inspected.

B. Fasten cables on horizontal runs with cable clamps or cable ties according to NEMA VE 2. Tighten clamps only enough to secure the cable, without indenting the cable jacket.

C. Fasten cables on vertical runs to cable trays every 18 inches.

D. Fasten and support cables that pass from one cable tray to another or drop from cable trays to equipment enclosures. Fasten cables to the cable tray at the point of exit and support cables independent of the enclosure. The cable length between cable trays or between cable tray and enclosure shall be no more than 72 inches.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect raceways to cable trays according to requirements in NEMA VE 2 and NEMA FG 1.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections.

1. After installing cable trays and after electrical circuitry has been energized, survey for compliance with requirements.
2. Visually inspect cable insulation for damage. Correct sharp corners, protuberances in cable trays, vibrations, and thermal expansion and contraction conditions, which may cause or have caused damage.

3. Verify that the number, size, and voltage of cables in cable trays do not exceed that permitted by NFPA 70. Verify that communications or data-processing circuits are separated from power circuits by barriers or are installed in separate cable trays.
4. Verify that there are no intruding items such as pipes, hangers, or other equipment in the cable tray.
5. Remove dust deposits, industrial process materials, trash of any description, and any blockage of tray ventilation.
6. Visually inspect each cable tray joint and each ground connection for mechanical continuity. Check bolted connections between sections for corrosion. Clean and retorque in suspect areas.
7. Check for missing, incorrect, or damaged bolts, bolt heads, or nuts. When found, replace with specified hardware.
8. Perform visual and mechanical checks for adequacy of cable tray grounding; verify that all takeoff raceways are bonded to cable trays. Test entire cable tray system for continuity. Maximum allowable resistance is 1 ohm.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed cable trays and cables.

END OF SECTION 270536

SECTION 270553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Tapes.
5. Signs.
6. Cable ties.
7. Fasteners for labels and signs.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Identification Schedule:

1. Outlets: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
2. Backbone Cabling: Riser diagram showing each communications room, backbone cable, and proposed backbone cable designation.
3. Racks: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
4. Patch Panels: Enlarged scaled drawings showing rack row, number, and proposed designations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NFPA 70 and TIA 606-B.

B. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

C. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

A. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on a white field.

2.3 LABELS

A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.

B. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil-thick, vinyl flexible labels with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
1. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating protective shields over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
2. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
3. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.

C. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, machine transfer-printed, 3-mil-thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
1. Minimum Nominal Size:

a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches for raceway and conductors.
b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches for equipment.
c. 3/8” high, bold type for cabling
d. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 SIGNS

A. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches.

B. Laminated-Acrylic or Melamine-Plastic Signs:

1. Engraved legend.
2. Thickness:

a. For signs up to 20 sq. in., minimum 1/16 inch thick.
b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in., 1/8 inch thick.
c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face
d. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.5 CABLE TIES

A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
4. Color: Black.

C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F according to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi.
3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F.
5. Color: Black.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project. Verify and coordinate with owner prior to start of any labeling.

B. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

C. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.

D. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

E. Labels shall be easily visible on both ends of cable runs.

F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of communications systems and connected items.

G. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

H. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:

1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
3. Provide label 6 inches from cable end.

~~I. Snap-Around Labels:~~

~~1. Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.~~
~~2. Provide label 6 inches from cable end.~~

J. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels:

1. Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Provide label 6 inches from cable end.

K. Self-Adhesive Labels:

1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.

L. Cable Ties: General purpose, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.

B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations with high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.

C. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify covers of each junction and pull box with self-adhesive labels containing wiring system legend.

1. System legends shall be as follows:

a. Telecommunications.

D. Faceplates: Label individual faceplates with self-adhesive labels. Place label at top of faceplate. Each faceplate shall be labeled with its individual, sequential designation, numbered clockwise when entering room from primary egress, composed of the following, in the order listed:

1. Wiring closet designation.
2. ~~Colon~~. *Dash*
3. ~~Faceplate number~~. *Patch Panel*
4. Port Number(s)

E. Equipment Room Labeling:
1. Racks, Frames, and Enclosures: Identify front and rear of each with self-adhesive labels containing equipment designation.
2. Patch Panels: Label individual rows and outlets, starting at to left and working down, with self-adhesive labels.
3. Data Outlets: Label each outlet with a self-adhesive label.

F. Backbone Cables: Label each cable with a vinyl-wraparound label the location of the far or other end of the backbone cable. Patch panel or punch down block where cable is terminated should be labeled identically.

G. Horizontal Cables: Label each cable with a vinyl-wraparound label indicating the following, in the order listed:
1. Coordinate labeling scheme with owner prior to installation.

H. Ceiling Grids: Label ceiling grid for WAP and Camera Cabling.
1. Coordinate labeling scheme with owner prior to installation.

I. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels.

J. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures: Self-adhesive labels.

1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.

A. Equipment Identification Labels:
1. Indoor Equipment: Laminated-acrylic or melamine-plastic sign.
2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated-acrylic or melamine-plastic sign.
3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
   a. Communications cabinets.
   b. Uninterruptible power supplies.
   c. Computer room air conditioners.
   d. Power distribution components.

END OF SECTION 270553

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 271116 - COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. 19-inch equipment racks.
2. 19-inch wall-mounted equipment cabinets.
3. Power strips.
4. Grounding.
5. Labeling.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Access Provider: An operator that provides a circuit path or facility between the service provider and user. An access provider can also be a service provider.

B. Service Provider: The operator of a telecommunications transmission service delivered through access provider facilities.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For communications racks, frames, and enclosures. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
3. Grounding: Indicate location of TGB and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall-mounting brackets.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer**,** qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, from manufacturer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under direct supervision of Technician.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under direct supervision of Installer 2, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD to perform on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Equipment shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event.

B. UL listed.

C. RoHS compliant.

D. Compliant with requirements of the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard.

2.2 19-INCH EQUIPMENT RACKS

A. Description: ~~four-post~~ *two-post* racks with threaded rails designed for mounting telecommunications equipment. Width is compatible with EIA/ECIA 310-E, 19-inch equipment mounting with an opening of 17.72-inches between rails.

B. Manufacturers:

1. Panduit
2. Great Lakes
3. Siemon
4. Middle Atlantic
5. Ortronics
6. Chatsworth

C. General Requirements:

1. Frames: Modular units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
2. Material: Steel
3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.

4. Color: Black

D. Floor-Mounted Racks:

1. Overall Height: 84 inches
2. Four-Post Load Rating: 2500 lb
3. Number of Rack Units per Rack: 45

a. Numbering: Every rack units, on interior of rack.

4. Threads: 12-24
5. Vertical and horizontal cable management channels, top and bottom cable troughs, grounding lug and a power strip.
6. Base shall have a minimum of four mounting holes for permanent attachment to floor.
7. Top shall have provisions for attaching to cable tray or ceiling.
8. Self-leveling.

E. Cable Management:

1. Horizontal wire management panel: 1.75" high by 19" wide, distribution rings, rack mountable horizontal individual wire management panel utilized for cable management within the patch panel and network equipment racks.

2. Vertical Wire Management Panel: Rack mountable vertical wire management system utilized for cable management between network equipment racks. 6" required.

~~2.3 19-INCH EQUIPMENT CABINETS~~

~~A. Description: Manufacturer-assembled four-post frame enclosed by side and top panels and front and rear doors, designed for mounting telecommunications equipment. Width is compatible with EIA/ECIA 310-E, 19-inch equipment mounting with an opening of 17.72 inches between rails.~~

~~B. Manufacturers:~~

~~1. Panduit~~
~~2. Great Lakes~~
~~3. Siemon~~
~~4. Middle Atlantic~~
~~5. Ortronics~~
~~6. Chatsworth~~

~~C. General Cabinet Requirements:~~

~~1. Modular units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.~~
~~2. Material: Steel~~
~~3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.~~
~~4. Color: Black~~

~~D. Modular Freestanding Cabinets:~~

1. ~~Overall Height: 84 inches~~
2. ~~Overall Depth: 29 inches~~
3. ~~Load Rating: 3000 lb~~
4. ~~Number of Rack Units: 45~~

    a. ~~Numbering: Every rack units, on interior of rack.~~

5. ~~Threads: 12-24~~
6. ~~Removable and lockable side and top panels.~~
7. ~~Hinged and lockable front and rear doors.~~
8. ~~Adjustable feet for leveling.~~
9. ~~Screened ventilation openings in roof and rear door.~~
10. ~~Cable access provisions in roof and base.~~
11. ~~TGB.~~
12. ~~550-cfm fan with filter.~~
13. ~~Power strip.~~
14. ~~All cabinets keyed alike.~~

E. Wall-Mounted Cabinet:

1. Height: 24 inches
2. Depth: 25 inches
3. Load Rating: 250 lb
4. Number of Rack Units per Rack: 12
5. Threads: 12-24
6. Wall Attachment: Four mounting holes.
7. Equipment Access: Integral swing.

F. Cable Management:

1. Metal, with integral wire retaining fingers.
2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
3. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.
4. Provide horizontal crossover cable manager at top of each relay rack, with a minimum height of two rack units each.

2.4 POWER STRIPS

A. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Rack mounting, with flanges.
3. Height: 1 RU.
4. Housing: Metal
5. Six 20-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R receptacles.
6. Rear-facing receptacles.
7. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
8. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.

9. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.
10. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
11. Cord connected with 15-foot line cord.
12. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in on position.
13. Surge Protection: UL 1449, Type 3.

    a. Maximum Surge Current, Line to Neutral: 27 kA
    b. Protection modes shall be line to neutral, line to ground, and neutral to ground.
    c. UL 1449 Voltage Protection Rating for line to neutral and line to ground shall be 600 V and 500 V for neutral to ground.

2.5 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

2.6 LABELING

A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout of communications equipment spaces.

C. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM for installation of communications equipment spaces.

D. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

E. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment in racks and room. Coordinate service entrance configuration with service provider.

1. Meet jointly with system providers, equipment suppliers, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment configurations and installation interfaces.
2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
3. Adjust configurations and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment spaces to accommodate and optimize configuration and space requirements of telecommunications equipment.
4. Adjust configurations and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in equipment room.

F. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Coordinate system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements in Section 270553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.

C. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 4 level of administration**,** including optional identification requirements of this standard.

D. Labels shall be machine printed. Type shall be 1/4 inch in height.

END OF SECTION 271116

SECTION 271323 - COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. 850 nanometer laser-optimized 50/125 micrometer multimode optical fiber cable (OM4).
2. Optical fiber cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
3. Cabling identification products.

1.2 OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING DESCRIPTION

A. Optical fiber backbone cabling system shall provide interconnections between communications equipment rooms, main terminal space, and entrance facilities in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of backbone cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for backbone-to-backbone cross-connection.

B. Backbone cabling cross-connects may be located in communications equipment rooms or at entrance facilities. Bridged taps and splitters shall not be used as part of backbone cabling.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Reviewed and stamped by RCDD.

1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
3. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
4. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics including the following:

    a. Telecommunications rooms plans and elevations.
    b. Telecommunications pathways.
    c. Telecommunications system access points.
    d. Telecommunications grounding system
    e. Cross-connects.
    f. Patch panels.
    g. Patch cords.

5. Cross-connects and patch panels.

C. Optical fiber cable testing plan.

D. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For RCDD, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings by an RCDD.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Backbone cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA-568-C.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

B. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569-D.

C. Grounding: Comply with TIA-607-C-1.

2.2 850 NANOMETER LASER-OPTIMIZED, 50/125 MICROMETER, MULTIMODE OPTICAL FIBER CABLE (OM4)

A. Description: Multimode, 50/125-micrometer, Armored, Indoor/Outdoor**,** tight buffer, optical fiber cable.

B. Manufacturers:

1. Corning
2. Panduit
3. Siemon Company
4. OCC

C. Standards:

1. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA-492AAAD for detailed specifications.

D. Maximum Attenuation: 3.50 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.

E. Minimum Overfilled Modal Bandwidth-length Product: 3500 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.

F. Minimum Effective Modal Bandwidth-length Product: 4700 MHz-km at 850 nm.

G. Jacket:

1. Jacket Color: Aqua
2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA-598-D.
3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches.

2.3 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers:

1. Corning
2. Panduit
3. Siemon Company
4. OCC

B. Standards:

1. Comply with Optical Fiber Connector Intermateability Standard specifications of the TIA-604 series.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3.

C. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.

1. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.

2. Fiber Optic Cabinet & Associated Items: 24-fiber optic cabinet, 48-fiber optic cabinet designed to accept duplex "SC" coupler plates. 19" rack mount, universal cabinet, providing front access to adapter panels, plexi-glass front door. Cabinet to utilize six (6) "SC" adapter panels with 3 or 6 duplex "SC" multi/single-mode adapters per panel.

3. Fiber Patch Cable (Multi-Mode): 2-Strand, 50/125 micron multi-mode, "FDDI" Grade, Ceramic ferrule, "Duplex SC to LC" fiber patch cord with strain relief. Provide 2 patch cables for every pair of terminated fiber.

D. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch lengths.

E. Connector Type: Type SC complying with TIA-604-10-B connectors.

F. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:

1. Male; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single optical fiber cable.
2. Insertion loss not more than ~~0.75 dB~~. 0.50 dB.
3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

G. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:

1. Female; quick-connect, simplex and duplex; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single optical fiber cable.
2. Insertion loss not more than ~~0.75 dB~~. 0.50 dB.
3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
4. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.

2.4 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA-526-14-B and TIA-568-C.3.

C. Factory test pre-terminated optical fiber cable assemblies according to TIA-526-14-B and TIA-568-C.3.

D. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

F. GCS will NOT accept any fiber loss readings over 2.5db for lengths fewer than 1000 feet.

G. The test shall be conducted utilizing a light loss fiber optic tester. The test shall indicate at a minimum:
1. Cable Length
2. dB loss (Attenuation)
3. Polarity

H. Each test result shall indicate the cable number, test date and tester name. All printed test results are to be submitted to the GCS Cable Project Manager in a neat, clean and orderly nature within a three ring binder. The test sheets are to be divided by panel and in numeric order. Dividers are to be placed between each panel's test sheets. Include an electronic copy as well as the any viewing software at no additional charge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

A. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

3.2 WIRING METHODS

A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Comply with requirements for pathways specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1, NECA 301, and NECA/BICSI 568.

B. General Requirements for Optical Fiber Cabling Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.1 and TIA-568-C.3.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
3. Terminate all cables; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
5. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
6. Bundle, lace, and train cable to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
7. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
8. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
9. In the communications equipment room, provide a 10-foot- long service loop on each end of cable.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
11. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.

C. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

~~D. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:~~

~~1. Install plenum-rated cable only.~~
~~2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.~~
~~3. Coil cable 6 feet long not less than 12 inches in diameter below each feed point.~~

E. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.5 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to BICSI ITSIMM, "Grounding (Earthing), Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. Comply with TIA-607-B and NECA/BICSI-607.

C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

1. Administration Class: Class 4.
2. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.

B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 4 level of administration including optional identification requirements of this standard.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 271523 "Communications Optical Fiber Horizontal Cabling" for cable and asset management software.

D. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.

E. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.

F. Cable and Wire Identification:

1. Label each cable within 4 inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.

2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet.
4. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.

G. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA 606-B, for the following:

1. Flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect optical fiber jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:

    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
    b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:

        1) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in one direction according to TIA-526-14-B, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
        2) Attenuation test results for backbone links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than those calculated according to equation in TIA-568-C.1.

D. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.

E. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

F. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 271323

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 271513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Category 6 twisted pair cable (Used for camera and intercom cabling only)
2. Category 6a twisted pair cable
3. Twisted pair cable hardware, including plugs and jacks.
4. Cable management system.
5. Grounding provisions for twisted pair cable.

1.2 COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

A. Cabling system consists of horizontal cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for horizontal-to-horizontal cross-connection.

1. TIA-568-C.1 requires that a minimum of two equipment outlets be installed for each work area.
2. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications equipment outlet.
3. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.

B. A work area is approximately 100 sq. ft and includes the components that extend from the equipment outlets to the station equipment.

C. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet. This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet to the workstation equipment or in the horizontal cross-connect.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Reviewed and stamped by RCDD.

1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
3. Cabling administration Drawings and printouts.
4. Wiring diagrams and installation details of telecommunications equipment, to show location and layout of telecommunications equipment.

C. Twisted pair cable testing plan.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For RCDD, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings by an RCDD.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA-568-C.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

B. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569-D.

C. Grounding: Comply with TIA-607-C-1.

2.2 GENERAL CABLE CHARACTERISTICS

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with the applicable standard and NFPA 70 for the following types:

1. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP complying with UL 1685 or Type CMP in listed plenum communications raceway or Type CMP in listed cable routing assembly.
2. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CM, Type CMG, Type CMP, Type CMR, or Type CMX in metallic conduit installed according to NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."

B. RoHS compliant.

2.3 CATEGORY 6 TWISTED PAIR CABLE

A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250MHz.

B. Manufacturers:

1. Design Make - General Cable: Genspeed 6
2. Panduit
3. Siemon
4. Commscope
5. Hubbell

C. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.

D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.

E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP)

F. Cable Rating: Plenum.

G. Jacket: Refer to drawings for system specific color coding.

2.4 CATEGORY 6a TWISTED PAIR CABLE

A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, with internal spline, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6a cable at frequencies up to 500MHz.

B. Manufacturers:

1. Design Make - General Cable: Genspeed 10,000 UTP
2. Panduit
3. Siemon
4. Commscope
5. Hubbell

C. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6a cables.

D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.

E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP)

F. Cable Rating: Plenum.

G. Jacket: Refer to drawings for system specific color coding.

2.5 TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate twisted pair copper communications cable.

B. Manufacturers:

1. Panduit
2. Siemon
3. Commscope
4. Hubbell

C. General Requirements for Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:

1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6a.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain twisted pair cable hardware from single source from single manufacturer.

E. Connecting Blocks:

1. 110-style IDC for Category 6a.
2. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

F. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.

1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

G. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.

1. Features:

a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.

c. Replaceable connectors.
d. 24 or 48 ports.

2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch equipment racks.
3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair cable indicated

H. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables, ~~in 36-inch lengths~~; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.

1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.
3. Contractor shall provide patch and equipment cords. *10' Length at Station Ends, 5' or 7' Length at MDF and IDF Rack Ends.* Coordinate lengths with owner.

I. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:

1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
2. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

J. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:

1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.
3. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

K. Faceplate:
1. ~~Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel complying with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."~~ *Plastic faceplate*
2. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.

~~a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.~~

L. Legend:

~~1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.~~
2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.6 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF TWISTED-PAIR HORIZONTAL CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA/BICSI 568.

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays, except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables, except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.

D. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.1.
2. Comply with BICSI's Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section.
3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
4. Do not untwist twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
5. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
6. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
7. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, prevent straining connections, and prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
8. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
9. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation, and replace it with new cable.
10. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
11. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- long service loop on each end of cable.
12. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Pulling and Installing Cable" Section. Monitor cable pull tensions.

E. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

F. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with recommendations from BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D for separating unshielded copper communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.

3.2 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with "Firestopping Systems" Article in BISCI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."

3.3 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to the "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" chapter in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."

B. Comply with TIA-607-B and NECA/BICSI-607.

C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall, allowing at least a 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground, using a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than a No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 4 level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.

C. Equipment grounding conductors.

D. Cable and Wire Identification:

1. Label each cable within 4 inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if wire color is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.

3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet.
4. Label each terminal strip, and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.

    a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group, extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device, with the name and number of a particular device.
    b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.

5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and -connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.

E. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type, with a printing area and font color that contrast with cable jacket color but still comply with TIA-606-B requirements for the following:

1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Test twisted pair cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.

C. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similarly to Table 10.1 in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual," or shall be transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, printed, and submitted.

D. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

E. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 UNIT PRICING

A. Six Position Data Drop Location:

1. For the sum noted below, the Proposer will furnish and install a drop location with the assumptions of: a) Drop configuration of six Category-6A UTP data cables, b) One six position single gang faceplate; c) six RJ45, Cat-6, 568B wired jacks, d) A cable routing of 250'; e) All cables fully terminated and tested; f) There is space available within the required patch panel and wiring block for the termination of the cables in the wiring closet; g) The project is not complete and the cabling contractor is on site.

UNIT PRICE – FISHED: "ADD" $_____.
UNIT PRICE – FISHED: "DELETE" $_____.
UNIT PRICE – RACEWAY: "ADD" $_____.
UNIT PRICE – RACEWAY: "DELETE" $_____.

B. Quad Position Data Drop Location:

1. For the sum noted below, the Proposer will furnish and install a drop location with the assumptions of: a) Drop configuration of four Category-6A UTP data cables, b) One four position single gang faceplate; c) four RJ45, Cat-6, 568B wired jacks, d) A cable routing of 250'; e) All cables fully terminated and tested; f) There is space available within the required patch panel and wiring block for the termination of the cables in the wiring closet; g) The project is not complete and the cabling contractor is on site.

UNIT PRICE – FISHED: "ADD" $_____.
UNIT PRICE – FISHED: "DELETE" $_____.
UNIT PRICE – RACEWAY: "ADD" $_____.
UNIT PRICE – RACEWAY: "DELETE" $_____.

C. Dual Position Data Drop Location:

1. For the sum noted below, the Proposer will furnish and install a drop location with the assumptions of: a) Drop configuration of two Category-6A UTP data cables, b) One two position single gang faceplate; c) two RJ45, Cat-6, 568B wired jacks, d) A cable routing of 250'; e) All cables fully terminated and tested; f) There is space available within the required patch panel and wiring block for the termination of the cables in the wiring closet; g) The project is not complete and the cabling contractor is on site.

UNIT PRICE – FISHED: "ADD" $_____.
UNIT PRICE – FISHED: "DELETE" $_____.
UNIT PRICE – RACEWAY: "ADD" $_____.
UNIT PRICE – RACEWAY: "DELETE" $_____.

D. Single Position Data Drop Location (Camera/Intercom:

1. For the sum noted below, the Proposer will furnish and install a drop location with the assumptions of: a) Drop configuration of one Category-6 UTP data cables, b) One two position single gang faceplate; c) one RJ45, Cat-6, 568B wired jacks, d) A cable routing of 250'; e) All cables fully terminated and tested; f) There is space available within the

required patch panel and wiring block for the termination of the cables in the wiring closet; g) The project is not complete and the cabling contractor is on site.

UNIT PRICE – FISHED: "ADD" $_____.
UNIT PRICE – FISHED: "DELETE" $_____.
UNIT PRICE – RACEWAY: "ADD" $_____.
UNIT PRICE – RACEWAY: "DELETE" $_____.

END OF SECTION 271513

SECTION 275116 - PUBLIC ADDRESS SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The drawings and general provisions of the Contract Documents apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This section includes a fully operational, IP-based system for a district-wide and individual school internal communication, notification, and classroom workflow enhancement system. The system shall provide bell scheduling, general paging and intercom functions, school safety enhancements and critical communications with individual school and districtwide emergency notification and management capabilities, and classroom workflow enhancement features, all provided on an enterprise-based, single server platform. The following attributes shall be required and shall be described as:

B.

1. A TCP/IP enterprise platform installed on a single server that serves the entire district. All capabilities listed within these specifications are intended to be native to a single platform. Systems that require third party application/platform integration or more than one server, or individual servers or PCs at individual school locations shall not be acceptable.
2. Classrooms shall be capable of initiating indication of changing room attributes such as “Needs Cleaned.” Rooms needing cleaned will be identified by illuminating room status light and changing room status on mapping. When the room has been cleaned a “Cleaned” status change shall be initiated from the classroom and each status shall be logged on integrated system software. Workflow requests and completion statuses shall be indicated on classroom Status Lights and integrated mapping. Emails relating to requests shall also be sent to user defined response group and each status shall be logged on integrated system software.
3. Shall benefit hallway protocols with wayfinding, workflow and shall be accomplished through user-defined, preprogrammed messaging in hallways between classes. Visual indication of direction of hallway traffic flow shall be visible on hallway message boards and incremental audio messages reminding students of proper hallway etiquette shall be heard on overhead speakers in hallway zones.
4. Shall include the ability for emergency announcements to override any field adjusted volume levels, assuring that all Emergency/Lockdowns etc., are heard at each speaker location. Any systems requiring local, hardwired volume controls to control speaker volumes shall not be acceptable.
5. Capable of sending written Emergency Notification instructions directly to classroom or office staff on the interactive POE workflow interface.
6. Capable of creating custom, pre-recorded emergency announcements that can be activated by an administrative console, panic button, SIP trunk connected phone, mobile application, POE classroom workflow interface, REST API and web browser user interface.

7. Integrated two-way, handsfree audio separate from district or facility VOIP phone systems. Platforms that rely on district or facility VOIP telephones as the only two-way audio path to classrooms shall not be acceptable.
8. Including a REST Application Programming Interface (API) for interface to third party systems. Systems that do not provide logic-based integration or rely solely on unsupervised, electronic relay inter-connections shall not be acceptable.
9. Including a same-source, interactive floor plan that displays system activity including call-in and lockdown initiation location as well as device status at each connected school in the district. System device failures and/or off-line status as displayed on floorplan map shall be communicated via email to user defined recipient, or group of recipients. Maps shall be customizable and specific to each school and viewed on system browser-based, user interface.
10. Capable of generating visual notifications based on system activity. Emergency priority calls from classrooms shall be visually indicated on all message boards. Visual notification shall include the priority of the call and its origin by classroom name and/or number. Notifications shall also include indication on all associated Status Lights.
11. Capable of providing authorized administrators the ability to initiate any preprogrammed emergency condition from any classroom with the proper credentials. Systems that are limited to classroom telephone integration, 3rd party mobile applications, or unsupervised hardware to accomplish this shall also provide a second, supervised means to initiate school-wide emergency notifications from all classrooms.
12. Classroom emergency calls shall initiate a Text-To-Speech, location specific, real-time audio message to a speaker, zone of speakers or all speakers. Emergency call-in generated overhead audio messaging shall also be automatically activated or deactivated based on time of day.
13. Including the ability to send a live or pre-recorded audio page to a SIP trunk connected SIP phone or group of SIP phones.
14. Providing an associated, same-source IOS and Android mobile application. The mobile application shall give the authorized user the ability to initiate local emergencies from their mobile device, from any location within a school. The mobile application shall also provide authorized users the ability view, in real-time, classroom check-in status on their mobile device. Mobile application must deactivate once the mobile device has left the school it is associated with. Users of the APP shall be managed via the browser-based user interface.
15. Capable of network time protocol synchronization (NTP) with class change tones utilizing multiple, programmable schedules for each zone.
16. Providing district-wide and individual school distribution of pre-recorded and live pages, tones, music and visual messaging.
17. Including a web-based user interface for programming, configuration, bell scheduling and access for all uses as described herein with the proper credentials.
18. Providing multiple levels of call-in priorities which shall be user-definable, allowing each call station to place a call with a user-selected priority as chosen from a minimum of 999 different priorities.
19. Allowing any authorized administrator to call from outside the school into any classroom, page a zone, or entire school directly, via the School District supplied, SIP trunk enabled Telephone Network. This access shall include remote monitoring, and two-way conversation from outside the facility as well as paging into the system. Call-ins from the intercom platform to the SIP Trunk connected VIOP phone system shall display all Caller ID information on SIP phones with a display.

20. Providing the capability for authorized system users to create automated sequences that include any or all of the following: voice instructions, tones, emails, program distribution, systems activations by relay and logical integration through a REST API, message board notification and automatic Text-To-Speech announcements.
21. Capable of initiating automated audio and visual message strings from a single-button on a console, a panic button, mobile app, web-based user interface and third-party interfaces as directed by the end user.
22. Providing paging from any system console or SIP trunk connected telephone for each campus or the whole district.
23. Providing the means to allow each single campus installation to remain 100% operational for intercom, paging, bells, and emergencies such as lockdown, even when the main, district connection is unavailable. Survivability of individual schools shall last for a minimum of 14 days without connection to main server.
24. Capable of providing a same-source, integrated, district-wide option for displaying all schools' locations on a single map, showing school status including active emergencies and connection status. Integrated, same source District-Wide application shall allow for live and prerecorded district-wide audio and initiation of emergency sequences to one or all schools in the district. Systems that require a third party or OEM option for this purpose shall not be acceptable.
25. Including the ability to send specific and appropriate written response instructions to all classrooms when an emergency or non-emergency condition has been initiated. Written instructions shall be in addition to audio and visual notifications sent to speakers and message boards. The instructions must be specific as to the type of condition and shall have the ability to be included or excluded from condition sequences. Receipt of instructions shall not solely rely on classroom computers to be received and read.
26. Any costs for annual system firmware updates shall be provided at no charge from the manufacturer for the life of the product (local installation fees may apply). Any fees for annual licensing shall be provided by the installing contractor, for the life of the product.
27. Systems that do not comply with the feature-sets highlighted in this Specification will not be considered.

1.3 DEFINITION OF TERMS

A. Installer(s): Shall refer to the person, persons, or company who or which actually contracts to perform the work specified herein.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product data for each component.

B. Shop Drawings: Prior to proceeding with the work: Provide detailed equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, location of each field connection, and a complete schedule of all equipment and materials with associated manufacturer's cuts sheets which are to be used.

   a. Wiring Diagrams: Detail wiring for power, signal, and control systems and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring. Identify terminals to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance. Include a single-line

diagram showing cabling interconnection of components and levels throughout system and impedances.

b. Artwork drawings and lists indicating proposed nameplate nomenclature and arrangements for control panels and plug panels prior to fabrication reflecting equipment used.

c. Each drawing shall have a descriptive title and all sub-parts of each drawing shall be labeled. All drawings shall have the name and locations of the project, Systems Contractor's name in the title block.

d. Details and descriptions of any other aspect of the system, which must differ from the contract documents due to field conditions or equipment, furnished.

C. FCC Approval: The system shall be approved for direct interconnection to the telephone utility under Part 68 of FCC rules and regulations. Systems, which are not FCC approved or utilize an intermediary device for connection, will not be considered. Provide the FCC registration number of the system being proposed as part of the submittal process.

D. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that products furnished comply with specified requirements.

E. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that Installers comply with specified requirements.

F. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that they comply with specified requirements.

G. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements. Include record of final matching transformer-tap settings, and signal ground-resistance measurement certified by Installer.

H. Maintenance Data: For equipment to be included in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

a. Record of Owners equipment-programming option decisions.

b. All instructions necessary for proper operation and manufacturer's instructions.

c. "Proof of Performance" information.

d. Manufacturer's maintenance information.

e. Copies of non-proprietary computer programs and system set up disks documenting all programmable features of the installed system.

I. Record Drawings: Prior to final acceptance, provide three (3) complete sets of drawings indicating all cable numbers and construction details in accordance with the actual system installation. Revise all shop drawings to represent actual installation conditions. These Record Drawings will be used during "Final Acceptance Testing".

J. System Training: Submit the following information describing the training programs and system trainers as outlined in paragraph 1.6 of this specification and in accordance with Division 1 specifications.

a. Include with the submittal a preliminary staff development training program in outline form for review and approval by the owner's representative.

b. Include with the submittal a current copy of the trainer's certification from the manufacturer that certifies and identifies the trainer(s) who are eligible to provide training and support for the project.

c. Include with the submittal a current copy of trainer's needs assessment form which will be reviewed with the owner's designated representative for the system's preliminary system programming and configuration.
d. Include with the submittal copies of all documentation used to identify for the owner those participants attending and completing the training programs.

K. A copy of the manufacturer's standard statement of warranty proving all equipment provided for the school communications network is covered with the required five-year warranty shall be included with the project submittal. This statement of warranty shall be provided on the manufacturer's stationary.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced Installer who is an authorized representative of equipment manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of equipment required for this Section. Provide the following within thirty (30) days after notification to proceed:
1. Provide a list of installations that the Installer has specifically installed for verification by the Owner. Random installations from other vendors and/or Installers shall not be accepted. The Installer, not its employees, must meet these qualifications.
2. The Installer shall be bondable.
3. The Installer shall demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Owner or his representative that he has:
a. Adequate plant and equipment to pursue the work properly and expeditiously.
b. Adequate staff and technical experience to implement the work.
c. Suitable financial status to meet the obligations of the work.
d. Technically capable and factory trained service personnel at a local service facility to provide routine and emergency service for all products used in this project.

B. Any Contractor, who intends to bid on this work and does not meet the requirements of the "Quality Assurance" paragraph(s), shall employ the services of an "Installer" who does meet the requirements and who shall provide the equipment, make all connections and continuously supervise the installation. A subcontractor so employed as the "Installer" must be acceptable to the Architect/Engineer. The "Installer" shall be identified within thirty (30) days of notification to proceed for acceptance by the Architect/Engineer.

C. Because the life expectancy of this type of communications structure normally exceeds 10 years, the owner expects continuity from the service provider. If the installing/servicing company has not been an authorized provider of the manufacturers product for it least (5) years, the following is required:
1. A list of (2) systems manufacturers of which they currently are authorized service providers where the relationship exceeds (5) years.
2. A letter from the manufacturer outlining the details of changes in service providers over the last (5) years and what actions they will take to ensure continuity of service to the customer.

D. Each major component of equipment shall have the manufacturers name, address and model number on a plate securely affixed in a conspicuous place. NEMA code ratings, UL Label, or other data that is die-stamped into the surface of the equipment shall be easily visible.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Comply with NFPA 70

G. Comply with NEMA Standard SB-40 for Emergency Communications in K-12 schools.

H. Comply with UL 60950.

1.6 IN-SERVICE TRAINING

A. The contractor shall provide and implement a complete and comprehensive staff training program for all administrators, facility staff members, and teachers. This mandatory training program will provide school staff a complete understanding of how to utilize and properly operate all functions.

B. The training program shall be implemented by a staff member/trainer employed by the contractor. The trainer must be factory certified to provide training on their product.

C. All staff development training is to be coordinated through the owner's designated representative. As training sessions are completed, the trainer will provide the school's administrative staff and school district's staff a document listing all of the staff and faculty members who attended, received, and completed the training program.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Provide a manufacturer's five-year warranty of the school communications network equipment against defects in material and workmanship. This warranty will cover all electronic system components. Additional warranties cover clocks, speakers, and call in switches. If any defects are found within the warranty period, the defective equipment shall be replaced at no cost (equipment only); a one year warranty shall be provided for labor.

B. A copy of the manufacturer's standard statement of warranty proving all equipment provided for the school communications network is covered with the required five-year warranty shall be included with the project submittal. This statement of warranty shall be provided on the manufacturer's stationary. The standard five-year warranty is an important element in establishing a standard in quality. Manufacturers who circumvent the five-year warranty by offering special "extended warranties" that are not part of their normal published warranty will not be accepted.

C. Contractor shall respond, excluding weekends and holidays, within 24 hours to any warranty service calls. If equipment cannot be repaired within 24 hours of service visit, the contractor shall provide "loaner" equipment to the facility at no charge.

D. Make available a service contract offering continuing factory authorized service of the system after the initial warranty period.

1.8 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following system:
   1. Telecenter U manufactured by Rauland - Owner Preferred, Provide System Cost
   2. Atlas Globalcom **NOT Accepted**

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide complete and satisfactorily operating district-wide and individual school internal communication, notification, emergency notification, management, and classroom workflow enhancement system as described herein, using materials and equipment of types, sizes, ratings, and performances as indicated.

B. The single, MS Windows server, software-based platform shall natively provide but not be limited to, a minimum of 10 audio channels for each individual school, classroom IP Speaker Modules, Status Lights, Message Boards, call switches, IP Zone Modules, IP Administrative Console(s), SIP trunk enabled VOIP integration, local and district-wide paging, emergency notifications, calendar-based scheduling, application programming interface and integrated mapping. System shall include the latest classroom workflow enhancement capabilities as described herein.

C. Each Classroom shall be provided with a speaker, a Speaker Module interface, a status light, and call-in capability from the POE classroom workflow interface. The interface shall provide the classroom teacher with the ability to place up to 168 different types of calls and workflow requests to specific locations, including “Normal,” “Emergency,” “Check-in,” “Needs Cleaned,” “Cleaned,” etc. Systems that rely solely on a phone or intercom handset or systems that cannot silently indicate classroom lockdown status shall not be acceptable.

D. Call-ins shall be prioritized, and each classroom shall be able to select a minimum of 5 call locations simultaneously. Systems that do not allow for classrooms to initiate call-ins and or workflow requests to more than one location, simultaneously shall not be acceptable.

E. Call-ins shall automatically display priority and origin location on administrative consoles, interactive map, and SIP trunk enabled phones. System shall provide the ability to annunciate a Text-To-Speech audio message of call-ins that include priority and origin location information, automatically using overhead speakers. Workflow requests shall also be capable of initiating a Text-to-Speech overhead page and visual notification on message boards as described herein.

F. Call-ins shall be programmed to automatically change priority and annunciation destination based on age of call-in or time of day the call-in is placed. Workflow requests shall also be capable of being escalated as described herein.

G. After office staff depart for the day, classroom call-in destinations shall be automatically re-routed to locations attended by security personnel or designated location as defined by end-user. Classroom call-in destinations shall automatically return to default call destinations prior to the start of each school day.

H. The platform shall lend itself to expansion by simple addition of hardware modules without having to adjust or change the main software.

I. The system shall allow for the adjustment of individual volume levels of incoming intercom, paging and program volumes from within the classroom, by properly credentialed personnel on the interactive POE workflow interface. Locally adjusted volume levels shall not interfere with the volume and distribution of emergency notifications.

J. The system shall include Text-To-Speech capability. Text-To-Speech is required to allow for the automatic distribution of audio messages generated by user-designated system activity. For Text-To-Speech audio messages, individual specifics of a classroom call-in shall be included in an audio notification which is then distributed to a speaker, group of speakers or all speakers. Messages shall also be displayed visually on designated message boards.

K.

1. This specific project requires the system to distribute an audio message to all speakers when an emergency call-in has been activated from a classroom. Audio message shall contain and identify the priority name, priority number, room name, room extension. (*All call switches must be capable of initiating a minimum of normal and emergency call priorities from their location.*)
2. Example audio and visual page for this specific project: "...An **emergency call** has been activated in **room 116**..."
3. Duration, volume and content shall be programmable and customizable but must include the origin location and priority of the call.

L. The platform shall connect directly to an existing, standard protocol WAN/LAN network, without the need for a separate server or PC at each school location. Daily use, configuration, bell schedules, and emergency sequences shall all be accessible by an authorized user on the native, web-based user interface.

M. The platform shall provide the ability to monitor individual classrooms in emergency situations from any administrative console or SIP trunk connected telephone from within the facility or from outside the facility. Communication from within the classroom shall be hands-free.

N. The system shall provide but not be limited to the following during a Lockdown condition:

1. A prerecorded, condition specific (Lockdown) audio message, shall be distributed to every designated speaker within the affected facility.
2. A visual notification shall be distributed to every designated message board in the facility.
3. User defined, integrated systems shall be activated through logical, API integrations.
4. User defined, automatic municipal notification.
5. Classroom and zone status lights shall indicate lockdown and check-in status condition.
6. Initiate classroom check-in requirement.
7. Appropriate response instructions shall be sent to classrooms and viewable on the POE classroom workflow interface.
8. Classrooms shall be capable of indicating the successful completion of their classroom lockdown procedures via their call switch and or POE classroom workflow interface. All check-in procedures shall be logged with the system activity logging software.

9. Administrators shall be able to initiate two-way communication, without a pre-announcement tone, to the classroom during an emergency via the administrative console or any SIP trunk connected phone.
10. Individual classroom check-in and school emergency status shall be viewed from the web-based user interface on the native mapping, a local Administrative Console, or the IOS/Android mobile application.
11. Bell schedules shall be automatically disabled during user-selected emergency sequences.
12. At the conclusion of the emergency, a system-wide All Clear shall be capable of being sent from an Administrative Console, classroom workflow interface or the native, web-based, user interface.
13. Pre-recorded Lockdown audio message shall also be transmitted to all school district radios. If the owner desires, audio message shall also be capable of being transmitted to local municipal responder radios.

O. IP Addressable Classroom Speaker Modules for individual rooms shall be system programmable and may be assigned any two through six-digit number as well as name and description. Any extension may be reassigned at any time. Systems that do not allow for IP assignment of classroom control devices shall not be acceptable. Systems that limit or do not contain TCP\IP configuration or systems that only configure by a MAC address for classrooms shall not be acceptable.

P. IP-enabled two-way voice communication shall be available from any administrative console, SIP trunk connected telephone to classroom speakers in a school within the district. A programmable pre-announce tone shall sound immediately before the intercom path is opened and a supervisory tone shall continue to sound at regular intervals when the talk/listen path is active, complying fully with all privacy legislation. Preannounce tone, supervisory tones and bell schedule tones shall be programmed to automatically disable during designated emergencies. The system shall also be able to provide two-way intercom and messaging to the interactive POE workflow interface for general and emergency communications.

Q. The platform shall include a native, calendar-based scheduling application that allows users to view and amend bell schedules by selecting the month(s) and day(s) to view in a calendar format. Authorized users shall be able to configure multiple bell schedules per school, with a minimum of 500 unique events per schedule. Scheduled events shall include daily bell tones, relay actions, wayfinding announcements and direction, email notifications, visual messaging, status lights and paging exclusions as system configuration changes. The platform shall allow control of the bell schedules via the district WAN/LAN without the need for a separate server or PC at each school location. Bell schedules shall be locally or remotely created and changed by an authorized user through the native web-based user interface. Scheduling shall include the following minimum features:

1. 20 unique bell schedules per school
2. Minimum of 5 simultaneously active schedules on any given campus.
3. User selectable tones as well additional user created and uploaded audio files for class change signaling and messaging.

R. The platform shall connect to existing PA/intercom systems throughout the district and utilize them to provide distribution of live, pre-recorded, emergency or ad-hoc audio distribution as well

as bell schedule tones. Connection to existing PA/intercom systems shall also support visual message boards, classroom status lights, POE classroom workflow interfaces and panic buttons in schools regardless of the manufacturer of the existing and installed intercom system in each school.

S. The platform shall allow for the hybrid connection of existing 25 Volt analog speakers and call-in devices that remain connected on existing wiring to provide two-way audio, call-in, and event/bell scheduling, classroom check-in and software-based volume level adjustments. The system shall also provide for the ability to utilize IP-addressable classroom speakers and hybrid connectivity within the same school.

T. The school district shall not be responsible for recurring annual licensing or subscription fees related to this system. A minimum of 12 years of licensing fees for the provided system shall be included and provided in this contract by the installing contractor at no additional cost to the owner.

U. The platform allows for emergencies to be initiated as a "Drill." Drill sequences replicate all on-site emergency procedures and can be programmed to exclude any outside connection to municipal responders or actions as determined by the owner. All system activity for drills shall be documented on the included system reporting software.

V. The platform shall provide status lights that display the status of individual classrooms, and aggregately for hallways, zones or sections of a school and school-wide status. Status lights shall be customizable in color and flash rate based on event type and priority.

W. Visual message boards shall be available in 2 sizes. Small message boards shall have 8 by 40 LED display with 3 color LED's. Large message board shall provide 1 or 2 lines with 16 by 80 LED display with 3 color LED's. During idle time, the message boards can display date and time. Message boards shall also be capable of providing countdowns for class change, display emergency status, comply with COVID protocols for wayfinding and creating messages on the fly. Classroom message boards shall also be capable of a count-up/count-down function for testing.

X. During a lockdown, status lights shall be configurable so as not to display classroom status until first responders arrive. Check-in notifications shall still be viewable on web-based browser, the mobile application, system console(s) and mapping application with the appropriate administrative credentials.

Y. The system shall include a native graphical map application accessible from the web-based user interface. The mapping feature shall include a visual floorplan of the school and informs the user of system activity in real-time. Call-ins, active audio, active emergencies, and device status shall be capable of being viewed on the mapping screen for any school or all schools.

Z. The system shall provide the ability to connect to other critical systems within this school via a REST API for logic based inbound and outbound control to and from other systems within a school that include but are not limited to; fire alarm, access control, security systems and IPCCTV cameras and systems. Systems that rely solely on unsupervised, electronic relay connection of inbound and outbound control shall not be acceptable.

2.2 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIAL

A. Server Software

1. Provides district-wide paging, bell event scheduling, emergency notification and configuration for entire district.
2. Ability to configure system and initiate system features, per school and district-wide via web-based user interface.
3. The software has the ability to sync system time to the Atomic Clock Signal or to the school's or district's network time server.
4. The software will provide a web browser to deliver district-wide emergency paging, pre-recorded messages and tones from any authorized computer in the facility or the district. The software must be capable of automatically notifying district personnel via the WAN/LAN of an alarm condition.
5. The software can automatically broadcast emergency instructions via associated system hardware throughout an entire district when an alarm (e.g. lockdown, lockout, security, fire) is initiated via the web-based user interface. The emergency instructions are preprogrammed and require no user intervention. Bell tones are able to be halted during an emergency. The system provides redundant alarm annunciation over intercom/paging speakers and is not meant to replace primary fire alarm or security systems.
6. The software allows for user-uploaded pre-recorded messages and tones. Software supports the upload of MP3 and WAV file types. User-uploaded pre-recorded messages and tones can be part of emergencies, sequences, and bell schedules.
7. The software can be installed in cloud, virtual or physical server environments.
8. The web-based user interface supports secure HTTP browsing.
9. The software supports encryption to ensure secure access.
10. The system shall monitor itself if devices go offline and system actions are not received. Specified users shall receive email notifications when devices go offline. The software shall be able to keep a log and report on system activity within a school or all schools district-wide for a minimum of one year. These reports can be exported to excel spreadsheets.
11. The software will support a minimum of 20 bell schedules per school, with 5 schedules assignable to a specific school day. Bell schedules can be programmed to annunciate tones, activate relays, send emails, activate program distribution, and notify SIP phones.
12. The system allows programmable end points to be automatically included or excluded for live paging, bell tones, or prerecorded audio, depending on the time or day or day of the week. These inclusions/exclusions can be applied manually or automatically depending on their schedule.
13. The software can automatically send an email, as part of a programmed sequence of events, to district administrators alerting them of an emergency within the district.
14. The software provides the ability to view schools that are in an emergency status, using any web browser on the district's network. The software shall identify the name of the school in an emergency as well the type of emergency that school is in.
15. The software provides the ability to view individual classrooms that are not checked-in during an emergency, using any web browser on the district's network. The software shall identify the name, extension, and description of the classroom that is not checked-in during the emergency.
16. The system has a minimum of 5 customizable emergencies, one of them being an All-Clear – with the ability to return the system from an emergency to normal status. Each emergency shall have a minimum of 500 unique events.

17. As a district-wide communications solution, the system shall be able to provide simultaneous communications to all schools or groups of schools within a district. The system shall allow a user to initiate district-wide communications to individual schools, all schools or groups of schools, from a web-based user interface. The system shall allow a user to initiate prerecorded audio, live paging, or programmed sequences to individual schools, all schools or groups of schools, from the web-based user interface. Programmed sequences shall be customizable per school, and the system shall be able to activate them simultaneously to individual schools, all schools or groups of schools, from the web-based user interface.
18. The communications software must allow upgrade from an individual school system to multiple schools, or an entire school district, using the same web-based user interface. The communications software from an individual school system must be identical in typical user operation to the multiple schools or entire school district communications system software.

B. Campus Controller
1. Provides call routing for paging and intercom for a single facility.
2. System shall connect to the district provided Telephone Network via a SIP connection.
3. Support a flexible numbering plan allowing two, three, four, five, or six digit extensions.
4. SIP interface to a district provided Telephone Network shall be capable of allowing connected phones to display classroom call-ins, answer internal intercom call-ins, make pages and change priorities of call-ins in progress.
5. Direct dialing, two-way amplified voice intercom between any provided telephone or admin console and speaker without the use of a press-to-talk or talk-listen switch.
6. Ability to upgrade priority level from individual call switch.
7. The ability to answer intercom call-ins registered at administrative consoles and pre-selected telephones.
8. The ability to automatically escalate incoming call-ins to an alternate telephone or group of telephones if they remain unanswered for a predetermined amount of time.
9. The ability to manually upgrade an intercom call-in to an alternate telephone or group of telephones.
10. The ability for classrooms to “check-in” via push button when they have successfully secured their location during emergency.
11. Administrative console shall display locations that have not checked in to confirm their secured location and provide hands-free audio monitoring and communication to unsecured locations.
12. The controller shall not need direct connection to any classroom via home run or distributed wiring. It shall communicate solely through the IP network.
13. Single button access from any console on the system to distribute emergency announcements within the facility to all or select locations equipped with speakers. Emergency announcements originating from any assigned administrative console shall have priority over all regular system functions.
14. Ability for administrative consoles and connected phones to selectively monitor audio at any two way speaker during an emergency.
15. Stores a minimum of 48 hours’ worth of Bell Event Schedules, all emergency notification sequences as well as facility wide configuration.
16. System has the ability to sync system time to the Atomic Clock Signal or to the school’s or districts network time server.

17. System's SIP Interface shall provide:
    a. Audio paging access from any telephone to any single intercom speaker, zone (group) of intercom/paging speakers, or all speakers/paging horns throughout the entire facility.
    b. Ability to answer a call-in directed to that SIP extension.
    c. Ability to upgrade a call-in directed to that SIP extension.
    d. Single button access from any telephone on the system to initiate alarm signals within the facility to all or select locations equipped with speakers. A minimum of 25 separate distinct alarm signals shall be provided. Alarm signals originating from any assigned administrative telephone shall have priority over all regular system functions.
    e. Ability to initiate a school-wide emergency including lockdown and evacuate sequences.
    f. SIP device shall display call-in information from call in switch. Information will include a minimum of Classroom Name, Number, and Priority Level.
18. The system will have the ability to utilize a web browser and a USB microphone connected to the PC to deliver district-wide live emergency paging, pre-recorded messages and tones from any authorized computer in the facility or the district. The system must be capable of automatically notifying district personnel via the WAN of an alarm condition.
19. The system can automatically broadcast emergency instructions throughout an entire campus when an alarm (e.g. lockdown, lockout, security, fire) is tripped or manually activated. The emergency instructions are preprogrammed and require no user intervention. Bell tones are able to be halted during an emergency. The system provides redundant alarm annunciation over intercom/paging speakers and is not meant to replace primary fire alarm or security systems.

C. IP Addressable Modules:
    1. System shall provide multiple IP Addressable Modules for intercom, paging and relay activation.
        a. All Modules are POE 802.3af compliant
        b. All Modules support DHCP.
        c. All Modules connect to network with a single RJ45 connector
    2. IP Addressable Speaker Module
        a. Shall interface to school's data network, a classroom speaker, and multiple call switches.
        b. A minimum of 5 levels of call-in can be placed from an IP Speaker Module. The call-ins are routed to administrative consoles and select SIP connected telephones and can only be cleared from the system once answered. If a call-in is not answered within a preprogrammed time the call-in may reroute to other telephones, consoles, and speakers.
        c. An option for Privacy call in switches is supported. When the Privacy switch is activated it prevents administrative or classroom telephones from monitoring the specific classroom/location intercom speaker.
        d. The ability to belong to one or more of a minimum of 100 independent zones for zone paging, program/music distribution zones and class change tone zones; this assignment is a programmable function, changeable by time of day. Each IP Speaker Module's location shall be programmed in software to belong to any combination of software zones. IP Speaker Modules shall be designed to mount near ceiling and wall speakers and in the plenum space.

e. Intercom and paging volume adjustable from Software interface.

3. IP Addressable Zone Paging Module
   a. Zone Paging Module shall connect multiple speakers for district all page, all page, zone paging, bells, audio events and, emergency notification.
   b. Zone Paging Modules shall be rack and wall mountable.
   c. Zone Paging Modules shall be able to belong to one or more of 100 independent zones for live paging, bells, pre-recorded audio and emergency notification.
4. IP Addressable Aux I/O Module
   a. Aux I/O Module shall have two input contacts and two output contacts.
   b. Input and output contacts are individually addressable.
   c. Aux I/O Module shall be wall and rack mountable.
   d. User can program relays to be activated manually, through an event/bell schedule, or during emergency notification.
   e. Aux I/O Module can perform school lockdown from a single press of a panic button.
5. IP Addressable Program Line Input Module
   a. Program Line Input Module shall provide line level audio program distribution into system.
   b. Program Line Input Module shall have a 3.5mm cable jack.
   c. Program Line Input Module shall be configured via web-based user interface.
   d. User can configure program distribution to be activated manually or automatically through an event/bell schedule.
   e. Program Line Input Module will have a system priority level such that emergency communications override program distribution.

D. IP Addressable Analog Gateway
1. IP Addressable Gateway provides integration with existing analog wiring infrastructure – consisting of shielded two-pair classroom field wiring. The Gateway provides the ability to reuse speaker wiring, speakers, and punch blocks to integrate analog infrastructure with IP platform.
2. Each Gateway will have 5 watts of power per port and 25 watts total per device.
3. Supports 24 classrooms that utilize 25 Volt speakers and all current Telecenter call switches for front office notification.
4. Supports minimum of 5 call switch priorities per classroom, capable of lockdown check-in functionality, while reusing existing shielded two-pair classroom field wiring.
5. Classroom intercom volume adjustable from Software interface.
6. Classroom paging volume adjustable from Software interface.
7. Configured to the school network and can be used in conjunction with IP Addressable Modules.

E. IP Addressable Administrative Console
1. A full color screen with 64 soft keys, 3 line select, volume control, push to talk, speakerphone mode and left/right and up/down scrolling.
2. Audio paging access from any Console to any single intercom speaker, zone (group) of intercom/paging speakers, or all speakers/paging horns throughout the entire school.
3. Programmable soft key access from any console on the system to initiate alarm signals within the school to all or select locations equipped with speakers. A minimum of 25 separate distinct alarm signals shall be provided. Alarm signals

originating from any assigned administrative console shall have priority over all regular system functions.

4. Programmable soft key access from any console to automatically broadcast page emergency instructions throughout an entire school when an alarm (e.g. lockdown, lockout, security, fire) is tripped or manually activated. The emergency instructions are preprogrammed and require no user intervention. The system provides redundant alarm annunciation over intercom/paging speakers and is not meant to replace primary fire alarm or security systems.
5. Ability to perform intercom to any single IP Addressable Speaker Module.
6. Ability to display 3 call-ins at a time on the screen while other call-ins are annunciating and the ability to scroll to view all call-ins.
7. Ability to upgrade a call-in via soft key.
8. Programmable soft key access from any console for activating relays, campus wide.
9. Ability to maintain, along with controller and other IP Modules system functions, including intercom, bells and paging for the local campus in the event of district-wide connection loss.
10. Classrooms that have not 'checked-in' during an emergency are listed on the Administrative Console's screen.
11. The time duration of an emergency is shown on the screen of the administrative console. The check-in timer is shown on the screen of the administrative console.

F. Audio Paging/Program Amplifiers
1. Power amplifier(s) shall be provided to provide a minimum of 2 watts of power to all paging speakers, and 15 watts of power to all paging horns.
2. The maximum load on the paging/program amplifiers shall be 80% of the rated maximum output of the amplifiers.

G. Normal/Emergency Call Switch – Rauland Dual Level Call In Switch
1. Normal/Emergency Call Switches indicated on the drawings shall provide the following functions and features:
a. One (1) "Normal" call switch that shall activate a distinctive "NORMAL" level call from single button activation. The button shall be clearly marked "NORMAL" and will route the call-in to any one or more Administrative Consoles and/or Marquee Displays for quick and easy response from an Administrative Console.
b. One (1) "Emergency" call switch that shall activate a distinctive "EMERGENCY" level call from single button activation. The button shall be red in color and shall be clearly marked "EMERGENCY" and will route the call-in to any one or more Administrative Consoles and/or Displays for quick and easy response from an Administrative Consoles.

H. Emergency/Check-In Call Switch – Rauland Check-In Call In Switch
1. Emergency/Check-In Call Switched indicated on the drawings shall provide the following functions and features:
a. One (1) "Emergency" call switch that shall activate a distinctive "EMERGENCY" level call from single button activation. The button shall be red in color and shall be clearly marked "EMERGENCY" and will route the call-in to any one or more Administrative Consoles and/or Displays for quick and easy response from an Administrative Consoles.
b. One (1) "CHECK-IN" call switch that shall activate a distinctive "CHECK-IN" level call from single button activation. The button shall be blue in color and shall be

clearly marked "CHECK-IN" and will route the call-in to any one or more Administrative Consoles. This button will be used for emergency check-ins during school emergencies, notifying the front office of the classroom occupants' safety during an emergency.

I. Equipment Racks
1. All equipment racks shall provide 44 spaces (77") minimum for mounted system equipment.
2. All equipment racks shall be multi-rack format ("gangable") style, bolted together, and open cavity.
3. All equipment racks will be provided with lockable rear doors.
4. Equipment rack(s) shall be located in climate-controlled areas/rooms as shown on drawings.
5. All head-end, distribution, and source equipment, including data and power, shall be located in racks configured as approved by the Engineer.
6. Rack mounted equipment shall be accessible from front and rear.
7. All unused rack spaces will be covered with appropriate blank/vent panels.

J. Interior Ceiling Speakers
1. Provide Ceiling Speaker Assembly consisting of 8 Ohm, 8" speaker mounted in a 2 foot by 2 foot, lay-in baffle, with an integrated back box that covers the full area of the baffle.
2. The speaker shall be connected by inserting an 8-pin RJ45 terminated Category cable unless otherwise noted on the drawings.
3. The speaker shall include provisions to allow attachment of a safety cable if required.

K. Wall Mounted Horns
1. Provide double re-entrant type horn loudspeakers with integral driver. The horn loudspeaker shall be impervious to weather and vandalism. Horn shall be constructed of heavy-duty ABS plastic. Horn loudspeaker drivers shall be rated at 15 watts with a frequency response of 480 Hz to 14 KHz. Sensitivity shall be 106 dB 1 watt, 1 meter. Transformer assembly shall be dual voltage multi-tap type suitable for 25 or 70-volt installations. Dispersion pattern shall be 180 degrees conical. The horn loudspeaker shall be constructed of treated heavy gauge aluminum, with all exposed parts potted and a sealed driver. Wiring terminal shall be fully enclosed. The speaker flange and mounting surface shall have a cork-rubber gasket. The horn loudspeakers finish shall be gray baked on enamel.
2. The recessed back box shall be of heavy gauge cold-rolled steel, spot welded for stability with a rust-retardant gray primer finish. Acoustically treat the interior to eliminate mechanical resonance. The back box shall be 10-3/4"x10-3/4"x6" deep.
3. The baffle shall be vandal proof, the faceplate constructed of 14-gauge carbon steel with a minimum tensile strength of 55,000 PSI. A lattice grid sub-plate shall deny access to the horn but be acoustically transparent for sound projection. Provide tamper proof, stainless steel mounting hardware. The baffle shall a mar/scratch baked epoxy rust inhibitive finish.

L. Uninterruptible Power Supplies (UPS)
1. UPS equipment provided for this system will include Power Conditioning to smooth current and voltage fluctuations.

2. UPS equipment will be sized in accordance with the system manufacturer's recommendations.
3. Provide an individual UPS for EACH SYSTEM CONTROLLER (Gateway) furnished with the system.
4. Provide additional UPS(s) for protection of all other equipment furnished with the system and housed in the equipment racks.
5. All UPS equipment shall be rack mounted.

M. EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

a. WIRELESS TRANSMITTER
   1) FCC Part 90 Approved, 467.2125-467.4375 MHz frequency range
   2) Radio Technology (Narrowband FM, 12.5 KHz bandwidth)
   3) 10 selectively available channels
   4) 5 watt transmitter
   5) Daylight Savings Time pre-programmed
   6) Time Zone Pre-set
   7) Non-Volatile Memory
   8) LCD Display for time, date, year, power, time zone and signal reception
   9) Operating Range (32 degrees F to 158 degrees F)
   10) Rack or Shelf Mount
   11) Power Supply Input: 120-volt AC, Output: 12-volt DC, 3 Amps
   12) 7" Rear Mounted Antenna
   13) Dimensions: 12"L x 6"W x 1.75"H Weight: 2 lbs.
   14) NTP or GPS Receiver
   15) Optional External Antenna for use in large campus applications.

b. ALTERNATE PROGRAM CHANNEL
   1) Equipment shall be mounted in the central office.
   2) Sources shall include: All Call Microphone (with jack), Compact Disk Player, & Bluetooth receiver. Automotive type units will not be accepted.
   3) Provide a mixer/preamplifier for individual line level control
   4) A line amplifier shall be supplied as required.

c. SPARE PARTS
   1) Provide additional spare parts as follows: (2) 2x2 Duplexing Speaker, (1) External Horn, & (2) Call Buttons.

d. ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS
   1) Provide and install (2) additional administrative telephone where indicated by owner. Telephones must function independent of any VOIP Phone Integration.
   2) Call buttons shall be installed in the provided flush mounted call button boxes.
   3) Wall speakers will be installed in the provided recessed boxes unless otherwise indicated.
   4) System should integrate into Active Directory for authenticating and authorizing users.

5) In the event of a WAN Outage, the IP Intercom System shall continue to function on a local level. Classroom two-way communication, and paging from the admin phone should not cease to operate.
6) Licensing for all devices for the lifetime of the system. Include number of years licensed in proposal. Provide user training for local administrative staff, as well as maintenance training for electronics technicians.
7) Integrate panic alarm system into the intercom system. If panic alarm is initiated, a predetermined tone and message(s) will be broadcast on all speakers. The message or tone will be determined by the School District. A minimum of 7 messages can be preselected by the user from the administrative phones. The vendor shall provide a professional voice for the messages.
8) Two (2) LED Display /speaker combo units located in the cafeteria and multipurpose room that will display messages, including the automatic lock down message when the panic button is engaged along with the other prerecorded messages.
9) Interface with owners VoIP phone system over LAN. Cisco phones. Any costs associated with a third party vendor will be paid by the successful vendor.
10) Provide alternate pricing for additional 4 year maintenance contract for a total of 5 years from the date of acceptance.
11) Network switches shall be provided by intercom vendor in base bid. (Cisco CBS) Provide a deduct alternate in bid for network switches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions, with the Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting the performance of the School Communications and School Safety Network.

B. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install system in accordance with NFPA 70 and other applicable codes. Install equipment in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Furnish and install all material, devices, components and equipment for a complete operational system.

C. Impedance and Level Matching: Carefully match input and output impedance’s and signal levels at signal interfaces. Provide matching networks where required.

D. Control Circuit Wiring: Install control circuits in accordance with NFPA 70 and as indicated. Provide number of conductors as recommended by system manufacturer to provide control functions indicated or specified.

E. All housings are to be located as indicated.

F. The contractor shall provide necessary transient protection on the AC power feed, all copper station lines leaving or entering the building, and all central office trunks. All protection shall be as recommended by the equipment supplier and referenced to earth ground.

G. Wiring within Enclosures: Provide adequate length of conductors. Bundle, lace, and train the conductors to terminal points with no excess. Provide and use lacing bars.

H. Provide physical isolation from speaker-microphone, telephone, line-level wiring, and power wiring. Run in separate raceways, or where exposed or in same enclosure, provide 12 inch minimum separation between conductors to speaker-microphones, telephone wiring and adjacent parallel power. Provide physical separation as recommended by equipment manufacturer for other system conductors.

I. Identification of Conductors and Cables: Use color coding of conductors and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so all media are identified in coordination with system wiring diagrams.

J. Weatherproofing: Provide weatherproof enclosures for items to be mounted outdoors or exposed to weather.

3.3 GROUNDING

A. Provide equipment grounding connections for Integrated Electronic Communications Network systems as indicated. Tighten connections to comply with tightening torques specified in UL Standard 486A to assure permanent and effective grounds.

B. Ground equipment, conductor, and cable shields to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize to the greatest extent possible, ground loops, common mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments. Provide 5-ohm ground at main equipment location. Measure, record, and report ground resistance.

C. Provide all necessary transient protection on the AC power feed and on all copper station lines leaving or entering the building. Note in system drawings, the type and location of these protection devices as well as all wiring information.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Services: Provide services of a duly factory authorized service representative for this project location to supervise the field assembly and connection of components and the pre-testing, testing, and adjustment of the system.

B. Inspection: Make observations to verify that units and controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified. Provide a list of final tap settings of paging speaker line matching transformers.

C. Testing: Rectify deficiencies indicated by tests and completely re-test work affected by such deficiencies at Contractor's expense. Verify by the system test that the total system meets the Specifications and complies with applicable standards.

3.5 FINAL ACCEPTANCE TESTING

A. The Final Acceptance Testing shall be provided to the Owner or the Owners designated representative only. Final acceptance testing to any other trade or service provider for the project will not comply with the requirements of this section.

B. The contractor will provide a Final Acceptance Test record document signed by both the contractor and the Owner or designated Owner’s Representative establishing the “In Warranty” date. The warranty period will not commence until the Final Acceptance Test is completed.

C. Be prepared to verify the performance of any portion of the installation by demonstration, listening and viewing test, and instrumented measurements. Make additional adjustments within the scope of work and which are deemed necessary by the Owner because of the acceptance test.

3.6 COMMISSIONING

A. The contractor shall train the Owner's maintenance personnel in the procedures and schedules involved in operating, troubleshooting, servicing, and preventative maintenance of the system. This training will be in accordance with the training as outlined in Section 1.6 of these specifications. In addition to the Training Materials provided, the contractor will also furnish Operators Manuals and Users Guides at the time of this training.

B. Schedule training with Owner through the owners representative, with at least seven days advance notice.

3.7 OCCUPANCY ADJUSTMENTS

A. The contractor shall provide Occupancy Adjustments in accordance with Section 1.6 of these specifications. A response scenario amenable to both the owner and the contractor will be established and followed for the first year of service.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Prior to final acceptance, the contractor shall vacuum and clean all system components and protect them from damage and deterioration. All blank spaces in equipment cabinets will be covered with blank panels. Top and side panels, and all cabinet doors will be installed. All general areas within and around all equipment rack/cabinets in the facility will be swept, vacuumed, and cleaned up. No cabinets will be left unlocked and all cabinet keys will be turned over to the owner or designated owner’s representative.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 275116.01 MULTI-PURPOSE ROOM AND GYMNASIUM SOUND SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Sound Reinforcement System for multipurpose rooms and gymnasium, including:
   1. Power amplifiers.
   2. Microphones.
   3. Volume limiter/compressors.
   4. Control console.
   5. Equipment rack.
   6. Loudspeakers.
   7. Microphone and headphone outlets.
   8. Bluetooth Receiver.
   9. RF transmitters, antenna, and rack mounting kit.
   10. Portable FR receivers and ear speakers.
   11. Conductors and cables.
   12. Pathways.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Channels: Separate parallel signal paths, from sources to loudspeakers or loudspeaker zones, with separate amplification and switching that permit selection between paths for speaker alternative program signals.

B. Sound System: The Electronic Sound Reinforcement System specified herein with all components.

C. VU: Volume unit.

D. Zone: Separate group of loudspeakers and associated supply wiring that may be arranged for selective switching between different channels.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For supports and seismic restraints for control consoles, equipment cabinets and racks, and components indicated to comply with performance

requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of supports and seismic restraints for control consoles, equipment cabinets and racks, and components.

C. Shop Drawings:
1. Rack/cabinet arrangements of components.
2. Single line drawing of the system, maintaining signal flow
3. Loudspeaker support structures and or brackets.

D. Wiring diagrams detailing wiring for power, signal and control differentiating clearly between manufacturer installed wiring and field installed wiring. Identify terminal numbers and wiring color codes to facilitate installation, operation and maintenance.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For control consoles, equipment cabinets and racks, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation. Include qualification data for testing agency.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For public address systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. In addition to items specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" and Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
a. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
b. Operating instructions laminated and mounted adjacent to operating console location.
c. Training plan.
d. Provide owner's manuals complete with operating instructions, wiring diagrams, and as built installation drawings.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
   1. Installer shall be a North Carolina Licensed Low Voltage Contractor who has been regularly engaged in the furnishing and installation of Sound Reinforcement Systems of the scope of this specification for a minimum of five years.
   2. Installer shall maintain a fully staffed and equipped service office within 50 miles of the project that regularly offers maintenance and service for systems this design and size

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified agency, with the experience and capability to conduct testing indicated.
   1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NICET at Level III to supervise on-site testing.

C. EIA Compliance, as follows:
   1. Sound Systems, EIA - 160
   2. Loudspeaker, Dynamic Magnetic Structures and Impedance, EIA – 299-A
   3. Racks, Panels and Associated Equipment, EIA-310-A

D. Electrical Component Standard: Provide work complying with applicable standards of NFPA 70

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Installer's Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair, restore, or replace sound system components and work that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Failures include, but are not limited to, component and system failure, including the need for excessive maintenance.
   2. Perform warrant service on 24-hour, 7 days per week basis, with response time to not exceed 4 hours.
   3. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain sound system equipment from single source and to the greatest extent practicable from a single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design supports and seismic restraints for control consoles, equipment cabinets and racks, and components, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Seismic Performance: Supports and seismic restraints for control consoles, equipment cabinets and racks, and components shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

C. Reference Standard Compliance:
1. NFPA 70.
2. EIA 160 for Sound Systems
3. EIA 299A for Speakers
4. EIA 310C for Racks, Panels, and Associated Equipment.
5. UL 50 for Enclosures.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

E. Accessibility Requirements: For assistive listening devices, comply with the DOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1.

2.3 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM

A. System Functions:
1. Selectively connect any zone to any available signal channel.
2. Selectively control sound from microphone outlets and other inputs.
3. Reproduce high-quality sound that is free of noise and distortion at all loudspeakers at all times during equipment operation including standby mode with inputs off; output free of non-uniform coverage of amplified sound.

2.4 SOUND REINFORCEMENT SYSTEM EQUIPMENT

A. Sound Reinforcement System, General: Equipment includes microphones, microphone stands, microphone cables, mixing consoles, pre-amplifiers, amplifiers, equipment cabinets, power filtering devices, loudspeakers, rigging hardware, cables, connectors, accessories, outlet boxes and miscellaneous sound system hardware.
1. Provide audio inputs for owner provided program source components not in this standard.

B. Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide listed products or comparable product approved by Engineer.

1.	One (1)	Mackie	1403VLZ4 Mixer with rack kit
2.	Two (2)	QSC	RMX850 2 Channel power amp
3.	One (1)	QSC	CMX 300Va Amplifier for Monitor Speaker (Multi-purpose Room
4.	One (1)	Atlas	APS-15L Rack power conditioner and distribution unit with downlight
5.	As required	Atlas	Miscellaneous blank panels
6.	One (1)	Lowell	Wall mounted rack, size as required with locking door, sliding rails and convenient rear service access.
7.	Two (2)	Shure	SM-58S Microphone with On/Off Switch
8.	Two (2)	Atlas	MS12CE Microphone floor stand
9.	Two (2)	TOA	WT4820 UHF wireless Dual Channel microphone system with necessary receiver modules.
10.	One (1)	TOA	WM-5270 Handheld microphone transmitter
11.	One (1)	TOA	MB-WT3 Rack Mounting Kit
12.	Two (2)	TOA	YW-4500 External antenna units

13.	One (1)	Tascam	CD200BT CD/MP3/BLUETOOTH Player
14.	Two (2)	Switchcraft	K3FS 1 gang stainless dual mic outlet.
15.	Two (2)	Rapco	SJ-25 25 ft long mic cables with XLR's
16.	Two or Four	Community	V2-1596 Speaker enclosure with mounting hardware
17.	One (1)	Community	MX-10 Monitor speaker (Multi-purpose Room Only)
18.	As required	Community	D8 Ceiling mount speakers
19.	As required	Community	Speaker mounting hardware
20.	West Penn	452	22-2 Shielded Cable for rack wiring
21.	West Penn	292	20-2 Shielded mic cable (PVC)
22.	West Penn	227	12-2 speaker cable (PVC).

2.5 ASSISTED LISTENING SYSTEM

A. Assisted Listening System, General: System includes the following listed components, with accessory materials required for fully functional system. Provide quantities determined by capacity calculations performed in accordance with ADA/ABA and accessibility requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide listed products or comparable product by Phonic Ear On Wave.

1.	One (1)	Listen Tech. Corp.	LS-03-216 Performance System (216MHZ)
2.	One (1)	Listen Tech. Corp.	LA-326 Rack Mounting Kit
3.	One (1)	Listen Tech. Corp.	LA-107 Ground Plane Antenna
4.	As Required	Listen Tech. Corp.	LR-400-216 Display receiver
5.	As Required	Listen Tech. Corp.	LA-164 Ear speaker
6.	As Required	Listen Tech. Corp.	LA-362 NiMH Rechargeable AA Batteries
7.	As Required	Listen Tech. Corp.	LA-166 Neckloop
8.	As Required	Listen Tech. Corp.	LA-325 16 Unit drop in charging/case
9.	As Required	Listen Tech. Corp.	LA-317 4 Unit charging/carrying case

C. Assisted listening matrix below. This shall be used to calculate the above devices "as required" for the project. See architectural plans for seating capacity for the respective area.

1.

2.

D. CAPACITY OF SEATING IN ASSEMBLY AREA	E. MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED RECEIVERS	F. MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED RECEIVERS REQUIRED TO BE HEARING AID COMPATBIBLE
G. 50 OR LESS	H. 2	I. 2
J. 51 TO 200	K. 2, PLUS 1 PER 25 SEATS OVER 50	L. 2

	SEATS	
M. 201 TO 500	N. 2, PLUS 1 PER 25 SEATS OVER 50 SEATS	O. 1 PER 4 RECEIVERS
P. 501 TO 1000	Q. 20, PLUS 1 PER 33 SEATS OVER 500 SEATS	R. 1 PER 4 RECEIVERS
S. 1001 TO 2000	T. 35, PLUS 1 PER 50 SEATS OVER 1000 SEATS	U. 1 PER 4 RECEIVERS
V. 2001 AND OVER	W. 55 PLUS 1 PER 100 SEATS OVER 2000 SEATS	X. 1 PER 4 RECEIVERS
Y.	Z.	AA.

BB.

1.

2.6 CONNECTORS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of Switchcraft or comparable product approved by Architect.

B. Phasing and proper pin configuration shall be maintained throughout the installation.

C. Refer to connector schedule as shown on the drawings.

2.7 PATHWAYS

A. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with Section 260544 "raceways and boxes for electrical systems."
   1. Outlet boxes shall be not less than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING METHODS

A. Wiring Method: Install cables in pathways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal pathway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
   1. Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
   2. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
   3. Comply with requirements for pathways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

B. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "raceways and boxes for electrical systems." for installation of conduits and wireways.

B. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Cable Installation Requirements:
1. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at outlets and terminals.
2. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Arrange on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Cables may not be spliced.
3. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
4. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
5. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
6. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used.

C. Open-Cable Installation:
1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend speaker cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceiling by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or be in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

D. Separation of Wires: Separate speaker-microphone, line-level, speaker-level, and power wiring runs. Install in separate pathways or, where exposed or in same enclosure, separate conductors at least 12 inches apart for speaker microphones and adjacent parallel power and telephone wiring. Separate other communication equipment conductors as recommended by equipment manufacturer.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of system components and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

B. Match input and output impedances and signal levels at signal interfaces. Provide matching networks where required.

C. Identification of Conductors and Cables: Color-code conductors and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so they identify media in coordination with system wiring diagrams.

D. Equipment Cabinets and Racks:
   1. Group items of same function together, either vertically or side by side, and arrange controls symmetrically. Mount monitor panel above the amplifiers.
   2. Arrange all inputs, outputs, interconnections, and test points so they are accessible at rear of rack for maintenance and testing, with each item removable from rack without disturbing other items or connections.
   3. Blank Panels: Cover empty space in equipment racks so entire front of rack is occupied by panels.

E. Wall-Mounted Outlets: Flush mounted.

F. Floor-Mounted Outlets: Conceal in floor and install cable nozzles through outlet covers. Secure outlet covers in place. Trim with carpet in carpeted areas.

G. Conductor Sizing: Unless otherwise indicated, size speaker circuit conductors from racks to loudspeaker outlets not smaller than No. 18 AWG and conductors from microphone receptacles to amplifiers not smaller than No. 22 AWG.

H. Weatherproof Equipment: For units that are mounted outdoors, in damp locations, or where exposed to weather, install consistent with requirements of weatherproof rating.

I. Speaker-Line Matching Transformer Connections: Make initial connections using tap settings indicated on Drawings.

J. Connect wiring according to Section 270200 "Communications Cabling" and Section 280513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security."

3.5 GROUNDING

A. Ground cable shields and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

B. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.
   1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Schedule tests with at least seven days' advance notice of test performance.
   2. After installing public address system and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
   3. Operational Test: Perform tests that include originating program and page messages at microphone outlets, preamplifier program inputs, and other inputs. Verify proper routing and volume levels and that system is free of noise and distortion.
   4. Signal-to-Noise Ratio Test: Measure signal-to-noise ratio of complete system at normal gain settings as follows:
      a. Disconnect microphone at connector or jack closest to it and replace it in the circuit with a signal generator using a 1000-Hz signal. Replace all other microphones at corresponding connectors with dummy loads, each equal in impedance to microphone it replaces. Measure signal-to-noise ratio.
      b. Repeat test for each separately controlled zone of loudspeakers.
      c. Minimum acceptance ratio is 50 dB.
   5. Distortion Test: Measure distortion at normal gain settings and rated power. Feed signals at frequencies of 50, 200, 400, 1000, 3000, 8000, and 12,000 Hz into each preamplifier channel. For each frequency, measure distortion in the paging and all-call amplifier outputs. Maximum acceptable distortion at any frequency is 3 percent total harmonics.
   6. Acoustic Coverage Test: Feed pink noise into system using octaves centered at 500 and 4000 Hz. Use sound-level meter with octave-band filters to measure level at five locations in each zone. For spaces with seated audiences, maximum permissible variation in level is plus or minus 2 dB. In addition, the levels between locations in same zone and between locations in adjacent zones must not vary more than plus or minus 3 dB.
   7. Power Output Test: Measure electrical power output of each power amplifier at normal gain settings of 50, 1000, and 12,000 Hz. Maximum variation in power output at these frequencies must not exceed plus or minus 1 dB.
   8. Signal Ground Test: Measure and report ground resistance at public address equipment signal ground. Comply with testing requirements specified in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

D. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly labeled, and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified. Prepare a list of final tap settings of paging speaker-line matching transformers.

E. Sound system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1. Include a record of final speaker-line matching transformer-tap settings and signal ground-resistance measurement certified by Installer.

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
   1. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's submittal and installation requirements.
   2. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. Provide complete commissioning of Sound System. This shall include demonstration and training of up to six hours in duration.

3.8 ADJUSTING

A. On-Site Assistance: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to provide on-site assistance in adjusting sound levels, resetting transformer taps, and adjusting controls to meet occupancy conditions.
   1. Arrange with Owner's representative for period of complete quiet for testing and adjustments to the sound system. These periods may occur at night.
   2. Perform adjustments, equalization, time delay and balancing to prepare this system for Owner's use.

B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the public-address system and equipment. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 275116.01

SECTION 281000 - ACCESS CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Head-end Hardware and Software

B. Field Panels

C. Readers

D. Request-to-Exit Devices

E. Wiring

1.2 SUMMARY

A. LABOR AND MATERIALS

A. Unless otherwise noted in the Drawings and Specifications, the Contractor shall provide and pay for all labor, materials, equipment, tools, utilities, construction equipment and machinery, transportation and other facilities and services necessary for the proper execution, operation and completion of the Work.

B. SPECIFICATION LANGUAGE

1. Specifications and notes are written in imperative and abbreviated form. Imperative language of the technical specifications is directed at the Contractor, unless specifically noted otherwise. Incomplete sentences shall be completed by inserting "shall", "shall be", "the Contractor shall", and similar mandatory phrases by inference. The words "shall be" is supplied by inference where a colon (:) is used within product specifications.

C. DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

A. Contractor shall carefully study the Drawings and Specifications, and shall at once report any error, unforeseen circumstances, inconsistency or omission upon discovery.

D. INTENT AND CORRELATION

1. The intent of the Project Drawings and Specifications is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work.

2. The Project Drawings and Specifications are complementary, and what is required by any one shall be as binding as if required by both.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. Submit the project and customer information of customers for at least three other projects of similar size and complexity using similar technologies.

1. Shall include a minimum of the following:
   a) Customer Name
   b) Customer Point of Contact
   c) Customer Point of Contact Phone Number and email address d) Address of project
   e) Title of Project
   f) Type of project completed

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Industry standard words and phrases are used throughout the Drawings and Specifications, except:

1. Words which have well-known technical or trade meanings are used in accordance with such recognized meanings.
2. Whenever the following listed words and phrases are used, they shall be mutually understood to have the following respective meanings:

B. The words "as indicated." means: as shown on the Drawings, and in accordance with the Specifications.

C. The words "as required." means: as required to provide a complete and satisfactory Work in full conformance with the Drawings and Specifications.

D. The word "New" means: new Work to be provided by Contractor.

E. The word "Provide" means: furnish, install, connect, test and make ready for use.

F. The words "Relocate existing" means: remove existing item from present location. Reinstall, re-connect, and test existing item and make ready for use at new location as shown on the Drawings.

G. The words "Remove existing "means: remove existing item and return item to Gaston County Schools.

H. The word "Replace" means: remove existing item and return item to Gaston County Schools. Provide new item as indicated.

I. The word "Work": The Work is the completed construction required by the Drawings and Specifications, and includes all labor necessary to produce such construction, and all materials and equipment incorporated or to be incorporated in such construction.

J. The word "Furnish" means: supply item as specified. Item to be installed by others.

1.5 CONTRACTOR DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. The Project Drawings represent the level of system design to be provided by Gaston County Schools. Contractor shall provide all additional system design work required, including:

1. Conduit layout and sizing.
2. Wire and cable layout and sizing.
3. Point-to-point wiring and equipment hook-up information.
4. Equipment mounting details.
5. Design of equipment enclosures.
6. Other detailed design work required.

B. Contractor's design shall conform to all applicable codes and ordinances. All electrical design, including the sizing and placement of conduit, raceways and conductors, shall be in accordance with NFPA 70: National Electrical Code, current version, unless local codes establish more stringent requirements.

C. Contractor's design work is subject to review and approval by Gaston County Schools' Project Manager.

D. Contractor's design shall also include:

1. The addition of all wire, cable, conduit, connectors and junction boxes required for system operation.
2. The installation of conduit between the control components and all equipment at each door, as necessary.
3. Completed"as-built" documentation of all security systems, including documentation of existing equipment, wiring, conduits, and raceways.
4. Other Work as defined within the Project Drawings and Specifications.

1.6 SYSTEM USER REQUIREMENTS

A. System Overview

1. The contractor shall provide and install a new integrated security management system that shall provide a simple and easy-to use graphical user interface. The system shall provide local operational control of all access points and alarm sensors. System shall have a basis of design of Paxton Net2 system owned and maintained by Gaston County Schools.

2. Configuration of the system shall be capable of meeting the requirements of UL-294 and UL-1076.

3. The manufacturer of the proposed system shall require resellers to pass a

formal training program prior to being certified as authorized to sell and install the system. Such certification shall require annual re-qualification. The system integrator proposing the system shall be in possession of such a certification.

4. The Security Management System (SMS) client and server software shall be used in conjunction with intelligent controllers to provide a distributed access control and alarms monitoring system. In the event of a communications failure between the host server and the field controllers, the controllers shall continue to make local access control decisions and save all transactions in memory until communications are restored. At that time the controller shall upload all stored transactions to the server.

5. The SMS shall seamlessly integrate the functions of access control, alarms monitoring and response, and visitor management. All SMS user interface components shall run in an integrated application environment as part of a single application executable. Systems which provide their user interface through multiple separate applications programs shall not be acceptable, except as specifically indicated below.

B. Performance Requirements

1. Access control equipment used shall be covered by a manufacturer's guarantee against electrical failure for a minimum of 5 years. Tokens shall carry a lifetime warranty.
2. The ACS shall be capable of supporting up to 50,000 tokens/credentials.
3. The ACS shall use a single database for access-control and credential-creation functions.
4. Any change made in configuration of the ACS shall automatically be sent to all ACUs.
5. Distributed Processing
   a. The system shall be a fully distributed processing system so that information (including time, date, valid codes, access levels, and similar data) is downloaded to Controllers in such manner that each Controller makes access-control decisions for that location.
   b. Intermediate Controllers shall be unacceptable for access control.
   c. If communications to Central Station are lost, all Controllers shall automatically buffer event transactions until communications are restored, at which time buffered events shall be uploaded to the Central Station.

6. Capacities:

   a. 1000 card access controlled doors.
   b. 50,000 card holders per controlled door.
   c. 2000 input points.

d. 2000 output points.

e. 10,000 individual access levels

f. 64 time schedules and 512 segments per time zone

7. System Network Requirements:

a. The system shall support communication from the server to the field devices through the following communication channels:

1. USB Serial.

2. IP Network.

b. The system shall support IP network communication from the server to the client computers.

8. Access Control capabilities shall be at a minimum:

a. 500 doors.

b. 50,000 cardholder records.

c. 10 million event history file at the server.

d. Anti-passback features:

1. Hard anti –passback requiring entry/exit usage.

2. Timed anti-passback from 0-60 minutes.

3. Automatic reset of anti-passback condition at specific time.

4. Global anti-passback.

e. Pre-defined scheduled door lock/unlock times.

f. Elevator control.

g. Image Verification with automatic photo image recall.

h. Access Card enrollment by a USB desktop reader

i. System wide triggers / actions.

j. Real-time display of events including date, time, user, event, and details.

k. Muster report locations for emergency gathering.

1.7 APPLICATION SOFTWARE

A. The ACS shall use a familiar style user interface, preferably similar to Windows Outlook, enabling intuitive use.

B. The ACS software shall be available in various languages to suit the installation and operator. Languages required at no additional cost includes Arabic, Danish, Dutch, English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Norwegian, Portuguese, Spanish and Swedish.

C. A SQL server database shall be used for the storage of user data and events.

D. The software shall be capable of importing and exporting all user data in .vcf, .csv or .txt formats.

E. The ACS shall be structured to support multiple workstations without extra license charges being levied.

F. Access permissions

1. Access levels shall be used to administer the control of who is permitted through which access points and what times they are allowed through, on a minute by minute basis.
2. A minimum of 10,000 individual access levels shall be supported.
3. The system shall be able to give alternative access permissions to some or all staff, to accommodate flexible scheduling and holidays.

G. Reporting

1. User and system events shall be shown in real time.
2. Reporting shall offer filtering options to allow for selection of all events, access events, alarm events and system events. Such event filtering and selection shall be customizable by time periods.
3. Reports shall be customizable. They shall allow for selection of date, time, users or user groups and access points.
4. Reports shall be configured within the access control user software and not a third-party application. A simple wizard shall be used to make configuring and saving reports as simple as possible for the user.

H. Users

1. The system shall be capable of supporting 50,000 unique cardholder records.
2. Users shall be able to have a minimum of 27 active tokens/credentials.
3. Tokens/credentials shall be able to be designated as lost and, if used, creates a special event message.
4. The system shall be capable of setting a valid date range for user. Outside this date range any cards for that user shall be recognized as invalid.
5. The system shall have user 16 definable fields that can be tailored by the system administrator to store customer specific information.

I. The system shall allow users to be grouped into departments with validity dates and card templates. Departments shall be selectable when generating event reports and setting access permissions.

J. Operators

1. Any user may be given operator rights that allow them to log onto the software and administer the system.
2. A minimum of 50 operators shall be supported.
3. The system shall allow the restriction of operator privileges from certain areas of the software.

K. Access control alarms

1. Certain alarms shall require handling by the access control system: door forced open, door left open, power supply primary failure, and control unit housing tamper.
2. Each alarm event shall be reported in the event log. The system shall allow for alarm events to be acknowledged by an authorized operator.
3. The system shall support ACS texting and email notification of alarm information. a. An alarm sound shall be generated local to sensitive access points.

   b. Both the exact nature of the sound and the time delay before sounding shall be configurable for each type of alarm at each door.

1.8 ENROLLMENT READER

A. The enrollment reader shall facilitate assigning tokens to users, and identifying tokens/credentials that have been assigned to users. The enrollment reader shall eliminate the need to know each token's number. The enrollment reader is the only method of adding tokens/credentials to the system. Cards that include a facility code/site code shall not be accepted.

B. An enrollment reader shall be included for administration at server/client or both.

C. The enrollment reader must connect to either client or server PCs via the USB port.

D. In systems with several client PCs, the system shall be able to support multiple enrollment readers.

E The enrollment reader shall operate in an intuitive mode:

1. When an unassigned token/credential is presented, the ACS software shall automatically create the user record and user screen for entering user information as well as other security settings.
2. When the operator is already in a user record, and an unassigned token/credential is presented, the software shall display the option to add the token/credential to the current record.

3. When an existing token/credential is presented to the enrollment reader, the software shall automatically retrieve and display the user record associated with that user. If there are multiple tokens/credentials assigned to that user, the software shall highlight the specific one presented.

1.9 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data

1. Product Data submittal shall only be required if the Contractor requests a substitution or recommended brand product which is not specified or recommended.

B. Procedures

1. Provide submittals to the project designer.
2. Submit three (3) copies for each submittal.

C. Shop Drawings

1. General Shop Drawings for the project as described elsewhere.
2. Provide other Shop Drawings only if specifically requested by Gaston County Schools' Project Manager.

D. Manufacturers Installation and Programming Instructions

1. Provide Manufacturers Installation and Programming Instructions as requested in the various Specification Sections.

E. Project Record Drawings

1. Definition: Project Record Drawings are drawings that completely record and document all aspects and features of the Work. (Also known as "as-built" drawings.)

2. The purpose of Project Record Drawings is to provide factual information regarding all aspects of the Work, to enable future service, modifications, and additions to the Work.

3. Project Record Drawings are an important element of this Work. Contractor shall accurately maintain Project Record Drawings throughout the course of this project. Project Record Drawings shall include documentation of all Work, including the documentation of existing equipment, wiring, conduits, and raceways that are to be reused in the Work.

4. Contractor shall maintain a working set of Project Record Drawings at the project site throughout the course of the Work. The working set shall be updated on a daily basis as the Work progresses.

5. Project Record Drawings shall accurately show the physical placement of the

following:

a) Equipment and devices.
b) Conduit and raceways.
c) Junction and pull box locations.
d) End-of-line resistor locations.
e) Interfaces to external equipment.
t) Connections to power and telephone circuits.

F. Project Record Drawings shall show the physical placement of each device and conduit or aerial center line, to be accurate to within one foot (l ') of the nearest landmark. Where site plans conflicts with actual conditions, Contractor shall amend site plan as required. Indicate exact description of conduit runs (above ground, two foot trench, along outside wall of building, etc.).

G. Project Record Drawings shall show wire and cable runs, zone numbers, tamper circuit configuration, panel/circuit breaker numbers from which equipment is powered, and splice points. Such information may be shown on the site plans.

H. Project Record Drawings shall be available for inspection by the designer on a daily basis.

I. Upon completion of Work, and prior to Final Acceptance, Contractor shall prepare and submit to the designer a final record set of Project Record Drawings. This set shall consist of all data transferred from the working set, supplemented by Riser Diagrams and other information. The final record set of Project Record Drawings shall be drafted by a skilled draftsperson, under the supervision of Contractor. All final Project Record Drawings shall be provided to the owner.

J. System Documentation

1. Definition: System Documentation is a complete collection of all installation, programming, operation, and maintenance manuals and work sheets relating to the equipment provided as part of the Work.

2. Contractor shall maintain a file of System Documentation at the project site throughout the course of the Work. Such file shall be updated with new information as equipment is received and installed. System Documentation shall be available for inspection by the designer on a daily basis.

3. Upon completion of Work, and prior to final Acceptance, Contractor shall prepare and submit three (3) sets of System Documentation.

K. Closeout Submittals

1. Provide a set of as-built drawings and manuals including:
a) As-Built Drawings
b) Mounting Details

c) Product Data
d) Installation Manuals
e) Operating Manuals
f) Maintenance/Service Manuals

2. Provide the as part of the Operating and Maintenance Manuals: all programming sheets, keys to the equipment cabinets, as-built drawings, operating manuals, maintenance/repair manuals, spare fuses, all programming sheets and keys to the equipment cabinets, tools for tamper-resistant enclosures and tools for manual resetting devices.

1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications of Contractor

1. Contractor shall be an installation and service contractor regularly engaged in the sale, installation, maintenance and service of access control systems.
2. Contractor shall have three years' experience with the installation, start-up and programming of systems of a similar size and complexity to the one proposed.
3. Contractor shall be a factory authorized dealer of the system proposed for at least two years.
4. Contractor shall provide factory certified technicians to perform the installation of all intelligent controller components in this project. Evidence of the certification shall be in writing from the manufacturer and shall be on the technicians person at all times while on site.

B. Supervision of Work

1. Contractor shall employ a competent Foreman to be in responsible charge of the Work. Foreman shall be on the project site daily during the execution of the Work.
2. Contractor's Foreman shall be a regular employee, principle, or officer of Contractor, who is thoroughly experienced in projects of a similar size and type. Contractor shall not use contract employees or Subcontractors as Foremen.

C. Qualifications of Technicians

1. All electronic systems Work shall be performed by electronic technicians thoroughly trained in the installation and service of specialty low -voltage electronic systems.
2. Journeyman Wireman electrical workers may be used to install conduit, raceways, wiring, and the like, provided that final termination, hook-up, programming, and testing is performed by a qualified electronic technician, and that all such work is supervised by the Contractor's

Foreman.

3. All incidental work, such as cutting and patching, lock hardware installation, painting, carpentry, and the like, shall be accomplished by skilled craftsperson's regularly engaged in such type of work. All such work shall comply with the highest standards applicable to that respective industry or craft.

4. All 120 VAC power wiring and connections are to be performed by a qualified Journeyman Wireman, licensed to perform such work in Gaston County Schools.

D. Subcontractors

1. Definition: A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform any of the Work at the site.

2. Use of any Subcontractor is subject to the approval of Gaston County Schools. The Contractor shall identify all Subcontractors on the Bid Form. The Contractor shall make no substitution for any Subcontractor previously selected without approval from Gaston County.

3. Contractor's Foreman shall be on the project site daily during all periods when Subcontractors are performing any of the Work. Contractor's Foreman shall be in responsible charge of all Work, including any Work being performed by Subcontractors.

4. By an appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by the terms of the Drawings and Specifications, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities which the Contractor, by these documents, assumes toward Gaston County Schools.

E. Supervision And Construction Procedures

1. The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using his best skill and attention. Contractor is solely responsible for all construction means, methods, and techniques.
2. The Contractor shall employ a competent foreman who shall be in attendance at the project site during the progress of the Work. The foreman shall represent the Contractor and all communications given to the foreman shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

F. Regulatory Requirements

1. All Work is to conform to all building, fire, and electrical codes and ordinances applicable in the Gaston County Schools. In case of conflict between the Drawings/Specifications and codes, the codes shall govern.
2. Contractor shall secure and pay for all licenses, permits, plan reviews, engineering certifications, and inspections required by regulatory agencies.

Contractor shall prepare, at Contractor's expense, any documents, including drawings that may be required by regulatory agencies.

G. Permits

1. The Contractor shall make application for and obtain any and all permits required by federal, state, county, city, or other authority having jurisdiction over the work.

1.11 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Security of Contractor's Tools and Equipment: Gaston County Schools is not responsible for the care, storage or security of any of the Contractor's tools or equipment.

1.12 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions

1. Power: Electrical power will be supplied by the project to the extent that the usage is compatible with available facilities in the vicinity of the work.

2. Parking: Gaston County Schools reserves the right to limit or restrict Contractor parking based upon the daily requirements of the other contractors on site.

3. Dust Control: Make provisions to control all dust, dirt, and foreign material caused by the performance of the Work.

4. Use of explosive type fastening equipment is prohibited.

5. Notify Gaston County Schools immediately of any damage or possible damage to any other equipment.

B. Clean-Up

1. Contractor shall clean-up, on a daily basis as the Work progresses, all dirt, dust and debris caused by Contractor's operations. Clean-up shall be completed by the end of each workday to the satisfaction of owner's on-site representative.

2. In the event that Contractor fails to clean-up, the owner may elect to have clean up performed by others, with the costs of such clean-up being charged to the Contractor.

C. Construction Aids

1. Definition: Construction Aids are facilities and equipment required by personnel to facilitate the execution of the Work. Construction Aids include

scaffolds, staging, ladders, platforms, hoists, cranes, lifts, trenchers, core drillers, protective equipment, and other such facilities and equipment.

2. Contractor shall provide all Construction Aids required in the execution of the Work. Construction Aids that are the property of Gaston County Schools or other contractors shall not be used without permission.
3. Storage of Construction Aids shall be coordinated with Gaston County Schools's on- site representative.

D. Safety

1. The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work.
2. Contractor shall comply with all local, state, and federal regulations and laws for the safety of the work place.

E. Accident Reports

1. Serious or fatal accidents shall be reported immediately by telephone or radio to the General Contractor.

1.13 SEQUENCING

A. Description

1. This implementation plan describes the general approach that shall be followed in order to minimize the time for the access control systems to be operational.

B. Approach: Contractor shall plan and schedule all work in such a sequence as to minimize the time before the system is operational. The following is a suggested work sequence:

1. Order all equipment needed and notify any subcontractors to schedule their participation.
2. Perform all system layout work.
3. Insure there are an adequate number of power receptacles available to operate all security equipment and coordinate with Gaston County Schools as to where power is available.
4. Provide shop drawings to verify location of all equipment, conduit runs, power connections, etc. Submit shop drawings to the designer.
5. Coordinate with Gaston County Schools to provide space in each building's Communications Room for mounting of processors.
6. Provide training on how to fill out the programming sheets for access levels.
7. Prepare and pre-test all equipment to the greatest extent possible.
8. Install all equipment.
9. Provide training on the programming other various options.
10. Test and inspect all systems.
11. Perform all other Work as required.

12. Perform the Acceptance Test.
13. Provide training.
14. Provide as-built drawings.

1.14 SCHEDULING

A. The Contractor, within five (5) days after being awarded the contract, shall prepare and submit an estimated progress schedule for the Work. The progress schedule shall be related to the entire project, and shall indicate start and completion dates.

1.15 WARRANTY

A. Contractor warrants that all Work furnished (material and labor) under this Contract will be of good quality, free from faults and defects, and in conformance with the Project Drawings and Specifications.

B. Contractor shall provide a parts and labor guarantee on all Work. Unless otherwise specified herein, Contractor's guarantee shall be for a period of two (2) years from date of Acceptance, except where any specific guarantees from a supplier or equipment manufacturer extends for a longer time.

C. Contractor's guarantee shall cover all costs associated with troubleshooting, repair, and replacement of defective Work, including costs of labor, transportation, lodging, materials, and equipment.

D. Guarantee shall not cover any damage to material or equipment caused by accident, misuse, unauthorized modification or repair by Gaston County, or acts of god.

E. Contractor shall promptly respond to Gaston County Schools's requests for service during the guarantee period. Contractor shall provide repair service as soon as reasonably possible upon request from Gaston County Schools, but in no case shall service response exceed 8 hours
from time of request.

1.16 SYSTEM STARTUP

A. Power shall only be applied to the system after re-checking for proper grounding of the system and measuring all loops for lack of shorts, grounds, and open circuits.

1.17 OWNER'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. Coordination with Gaston County Schools

1. Contractor shall closely schedule and coordinate his activities with designated Gaston County Schools representatives.
2. Contractor shall provide the designer, project manager, and Gaston County Schools Schools with a work plan on a weekly basis. Such work -plan will describe locations of

intended activities, types of activities, and potential conflicts to facility operations.

B. Gaston County Schools's Right To Carry Out The Work

1. If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Project Drawings and Specifications and fails within seven days after receipt of written notice from Gaston County Schools to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, Gaston County Schools may, after seven days following receipt of an additional written notice and without prejudice to any other remedy Gaston County Schools may have, make good such deficiencies. In such case, an appropriate Change Order shall be issued deducting from the payments then or thereafter due the Contractor the cost of correcting such deficiencies.

C. Minor Changes In The Work

1. Gaston County Schools shall have the authority to order minor changes in the Work not involving an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time and not inconsistent with the intent of the Project Drawing and Specifications. Such changes shall be provided by written order.

1.18 COMMISSIONING

A. After all Work is completed, and prior to requesting the Acceptance test, Contractor shall conduct a final inspection, and pre-test all equipment and system features. Contractor shall correct any deficiencies discovered as the result of the inspection and pre-test.

B. Contractor shall submit a request for the Acceptance test in writing to the project designer, no less than fourteen days prior to the requested test date. The request for Acceptance test shall be accompanied by a certification from Contractor that all Work is complete and has been pre-tested, andthat all corrections have been made.

C. During Acceptance test, Contractor shall demonstrate all equipment and system features to Gaston County Schools. Contractor shall remove covers, open wiring connections, operate equipment, and perform other reasonable work as requested by Gaston County Schools.

D. Any portions of the Work found to be deficient or not in compliance with the Project Drawing and Specifications will be rejected. The designer

will prepare a list of any such deficiencies observed during the Acceptance test. Contractor shall promptly correct all deficiencies. Upon correction of deficiencies, Contractor shall submit a request in writing to the designer for another Acceptance Test.

E. If, at the conclusion of the Acceptance Test, all Work is found to be acceptable and in compliance with the Project Drawings and Specifications, the designer will issue a letter of Acceptance to Contractor and Gaston County Schools.

1.19 MAINTENANCE

A. Provide full procedures for all database back-ups.

B. Provide full procedures for server/workstation hard\drive maintenance, such as defrag, etc.

C. Provide full procedures for maintaining physical and software firewalls.

D. Provide full procedures for upgrading software.

E. Provide full procedures for testing battery condition on all field panels for adequate back• up time.

F. Provide full procedures for any other tasks that must be performed to ensure the warranty remains intact.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. All products not provided by Gaston County Schools shall be new and unused, and shall be of manufacturer's current and standard production.

B. Where two or more equipment items of the same kind are provided, all shall be identical and provided by the same manufacturer.

C. Drawings and Specifications indicate major system components, and may not show every component, connector, module, or accessory that may be required to support the operation specified. Contractor shall provide all components needed for complete and satisfactory operation.

D. Product Availability

1. Contractor, prior to submitting a proposal, shall determine product availability and delivery time, and shall include such considerations into his proposed Contract Time.

2. Certain products specified may only be available through

factory authorized dealers and distributors. Contractor shall verify his ability to procure the products specified prior to submitting a proposal.

E. Wire and Cable

1. General: Provide all wire and cable required to install systems as indicated. Wire and cable shall be sized to provide minimum voltage drop and minimum resistance to the devices being suppled.

2. All cables shall be specifically designed for their intended use (direct burial, aerial, etc.).

3. Comply with equipment manufacturers recommendations for wire and cable size and type.

4. Comply with all applicable codes and ordinances.

5. ACU to ACU - CAT5e or CAT6 cable consisting of 4 twisted pairs 4 cores shall be used for data.

6. BICSI cabling standards on all data cabling must be adhered to.

F. Conduit And Raceway Systems

1. General: The placing of surface mounted conduit on the exterior of any building shall be approved by Gaston County Schools prior to its installation.

2. Interior Conduit:
   a) Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT)
   b) Flexible Metal Conduit
   c) Provide fittings and connectors as required for installation of EMT or flexible conduit.

3. Surface Raceways:
   a) Sheet metal channel with fitted cover, suitable for use as surface metal raceway, WIREMOLD or approved equal.
   b) Provide fittings, elbows, and connectors designed for use with raceway system.

4. Exterior Conduit:
   a) Rigid Steel Conduit
   b) Rigid Aluminum Conduit
   c) Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit
   d) Intermediate

Metal Conduit

e) Provide rain-tight fittings and connectors as required for installation of exterior conduit.

5. Exterior Flexible Conduit:
   a) Liquidtight Flexible Conduit: Flexible metal conduit with PVC jacket.
   b) Provide rain-tight fittings and connectors as required for installation of Liquidtight Flexible Conduit.

G. Junction and Pull Boxes

1. Interior Boxes: Sheet Metal Outlet Boxes: Sizes to be determined in accordance with code requirements for conductor fill. No box shall be smaller than a single gang 1-1/2 deep. Provide box covers as required.
2. Exterior Boxes: All exterior boxes shall NEMA 4 or NEMA 3R, watertight and dust- tight
3. All interior and exterior boxes shall have their covers fastened using security screws.

2.2 ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM - SYSTEM SPECIFICATIONS A.

Standard Proximity Reader

1. Readers shall be available in different sizes and styles.
2. Reader bezel shall be removable and available in additional colors (gray, silver, navy blue, graphite black, and metallic white).
3. Fascia shall be removable and replaceable for aesthetic considerations.

B. Reader shall be rated to IPX7 suitable for external and internal use. Electronics shall be completely encapsulated in a watertight potting compound.

C. Reader shall be capable of operating within the temperature range -4ºF to 158ºF.

D. The reader shall be a maximum of 1.75 inches wide to fit on a standard mullion mount.

E. The reader shall include three LED's to indicate access granted, power, and PIN code required. A single multi-color LED shall not be supported.

F. A customer defined fascia color and logo shall be provided for inclusion on the reader. A sticker shall not be accepted.

G. Proximity Reader with Keypad

1. Reader shall combine both Proximity functionality and keypad functionality in one unit.
2. Reader shall be available in both mullion and wall sizes.
3. Reader bezel shall be removable and available in additional colors (gray, silver, navy blue, graphite black, and metallic white).
4. Keypad buttons shall be backlit.

5. Reader shall be rated to IPX7 suitable for external and internal use. Electronics shall be encapsulated in a watertight potting compound.
6. The reader shall include three LED's to indicate access granted, power, and PIN code required. A single multi-color LED shall not be supported.
7. Reader shall be capable of reading passive Paxton proximity tokens.
8. Reader shall be capable of operating within the temperature range -4ºF to 158ºF. H.

Keypad Only

1. Keypad shall be available in three (3) sizes to allow unique mounting positions and locations throughout the facility.
2. The keypad shall be available in ABS plastic, stainless steel, or vandal resistant cold-rolled steel.
3. The ABS keypad bezel shall be removable and available in additional colors (gray, silver, navy blue, graphite black, metallic white).
4. Keypad buttons shall be backlit.
5. Keypad shall be rated to IPX7 suitable for external and internal use. Electronics shall be encapsulated in a watertight potting compound.
6. Keypad shall be capable of operating within the temperature range -4ºF to 158ºF.
7. The reader shall include three LED's to indicate access granted, power, and PIN code required. A single multi-color LED shall not be supported.

I. Proximity vandal proof reader

1. Reader tube shall be cylindrical for unobtrusive embedding in a wall or door frame to prevent vandalism causing a failure.
2. Reader shall be rated to IPX7 suitable for external and internal use. Electronics shall be encapsulated in a watertight potting compound.
3. Additional colored reader caps (red, green, yellow, blue, grey, clear blue) shall be available.
4. Reader shall be capable of operating within the temperature range -4ºF to 104ºF.

J. Proximity metal reader

1. The metal reader shall have a metal casing and shall be provided with security screws to prevent tampering. The reader shall be mounted on 3" steal posts.
2. Reader shall be rated to IPX7 suitable for external and internal use. Electronics shall be encapsulated in a watertight potting compound.
3. Reader shall be capable of reading passive proximity tokens.
4. Reader shall be capable of operating within the temperature range -4ºF to 158ºF.
5. The reader shall include three LED's to indicate access granted, power, and PIN code required. A single multi-color LED shall not be supported.

K. Proximity panel mount reader shall be used for elevator control & intercom systems

1. Reader shall be suitable for mounting in an audio or video entry panel with a suitable cut out.

2. Reader shall be rated to IPX7 suitable for external and internal use. Electronics shall be encapsulated in a watertight potting compound.
3. Reader shall be capable of reading passive proximity tokens.
4. Reader shall be capable of operating within the temperature range -4ºF to 158ºF.
5. The reader shall include three LED's to indicate access granted, power, and PIN code required. A single multi-color LED shall not be supported.

L. LCD Graphics reader

1. The main visible face of the reader shall be a full color backlit LCD screen.
2. The LCD screen shall permit display of up to four configurable images, to allow for display of words or images of the customer's choice, access granted, access denied, and enter PIN.
3. The LCD reader shall be designed for surface mounting onto a wall using the backplate provided with the product. Placement shall support vertical and horizontal installations. The orientation of the images shall be configured through a LCD programming software.
4. The reader shall have a moisture resistance rating to IPX7, suitable for external and internal use. Electronics shall be completely encapsulated in a watertight potting compound.
5. The LCD reader images shall be modified via 2.4 GHz wireless connection to a laptop computer or other appropriate device. The software utility shall allow importing of images, orientation of image, selection of reader and downloading accordingly.
6. Each LCD reader shall support unique images.

M. GSM Access Reader

1. The GSM Access reader shall connect similar to other readers into the reader input device of an ACU, but respond to a phone call from either a land line or cell phone. The call can be made from anywhere service is permitted.
2. A phone number shall be entered into the ACS as a credential and downloaded to the ACU. A call made to the GSM will retrieve the phone number through caller ID technology and send to the ACU for the access decision.
3. The GSM reader shall allow a proximity reader to be connected to it providing dual technology access at a portal.
4. The GSM shall use a SIM card for phone number identification.
5. Any access attempt through proximity credential or phone shall be logged into history.

N. Multi-Technology Access Reader

1. The multi-technology reader shall support HID 125 kHz or Paxton Clock & Data access cards as standard. The default shall be HID 125 kHz and can be changed to Paxton by presenting a Paxton card within 3 minutes after power up.
2. Once the reader has been configured it shall remain as default even if power is reset.
3. There shall be a minimum of three styles of readers available including

mullion mount, panel mount and metal mount.

O. Badging Station and Software

1. The card designer program shall allow unlimited configurations, with multiple templates saved for each user group. The ability to import company logo's and background images, overlay watermarks, static text fields and layers shall all be required components.
2. The ACS shall include a card designer application for the design of custom badges.
3. The designer shall support static text, shapes, and colors.
4. The designer shall support automatically generated text based on information entered into the user record.
5. The designer shall support the creation of single or double sided designs. Each design shall be labeled a template that can be entered into a user record.
6. All user defined fields shall be available for inclusion on the card design.
7. The ACS shall have the ability to print cards using a standard Windows card printer.
8. Station and Software shall be installed on TSS approved computer system.
   i) Badging station shall be located in Office of administration approved by Gaston County Schools Facilities. Contractor shall coordinate location prior to start of construction.

P. Door Hardware

1. Door hardware provided by door hardware contractor. Refer to architectural door schedule for additional information.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ACCEPTABLE INSTALLERS

A. The system shall only be provided by Contractors who are factory authorized to install, service and maintain the system by the access control manufacturer.

B. The Contractor must have been a factory authorized dealer with the proposed manufacturer for a period of at least one (1) year before the Bid Opening Date.

C. The Contractor's installers and technicians must also be factory trained and certified to perform such tasks.

3.2 EXAMINATION

A. The Contractor shall be required to visit the installation site prior to bidding the job.

B. The Contractor shall report any discrepancies between the Specifications, Drawings, and Site Examination prior to the Bid Opening Date.

3.3 PREPARATION

A. The Contractor shall order all required parts and equipment upon notification of

award of the Work.

B. The Contractor shall bench test all equipment prior to delivery to the job site.

C. The Contractor shall verify the availability of power where required. If a new source of power is required, a licensed electrician shall be used to install it.

D. The Contractor shall arrange for obtaining all programming information including access times, free access times, door groups, operator levels, etc.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. The Contractor shall coordinate with the Gaston County Schools's IT Department if connecting to their network.

B. The Contractor shall carefully follow the instructions in the manufacturers' Installation Manual to insure all steps have been taken to provide a reliable, easy to operate system.

C. Perform all Work as indicated in the Drawings and Specifications.

D. The Contractor shall install the appropriate cable from the CPU to readers, door contacts, request-to-exit devices, and electric locks at each door and/or gate.

E. All communications cables shall be kept away from power circuits.

F. The Contractor shall install the power supply(s) for electric locks in locations where they won't interfere with other operations.

G. The Contractor shall also execute adequate testing of the system to insure proper operation.

H. The Contractor shall provide 8 hours of on-site training of the system users to insure adequate understanding to prevent operating errors.

3.5 WORKMANSHIP

A. Comply with highest industry standards, except when specified requirements indicate more rigid standards or more precise workmanship.

B. Perform work with persons experienced and qualified to produce workmanship specified.

C. Maintain quality control over suppliers and Subcontractors.

D. Quality of workmanship is considered important. Gaston County Schools Project Manager will have the authority to reject Work which does not conform to the Drawings and Specifications.

3.6 EQUIPMENT PRE-TEST

A. All equipment shall be bench tested prior to delivery to job site and prior to installation. Bench test per manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.7 WIRE AND CABLE

A. Design, layout, size, and plan new wire and cable runs as required.

B. All wire and cable from the processors to all devices at each door shall be "home-run" unless otherwise specified.

C. All wire and cable shall be installed in conduit, except as follows:

D. Wire or cable, in lengths of less than ten (10) feet, that is "fished" within walls, ceilings, and door frames.

E. All wire and cable passing thru metalwork shall be sleeved by an approved grommet or bushing.

F. Avoid splicing conductors. All splices shall be made in junction boxes (except at equipment). Splices shall be made with an approved crimp connection. Wire nuts shall not be used on any low-voltage wiring.

G. Identify all wire and cable at terminations and at every junction box. Identification shall be made with an approved permanent label, Brady or equal.

3.8 WIRE AND CABLE TERMINATIONS

A. Identify all inputs and outputs on terminal strips with permanent marking labels.

B. Neatly dress and tie all wiring. The length of conductors within enclosures shall be sufficient to neatly train the conductor to the terminal point with no excess. Run all wire and cable parallel or normal to walls, floors and ground.

C. Install connectors as required by equipment manufacturers.

D. Terminations shall be made so that there is no bare conductor at the terminal. The conductor insulation shall bear against the terminal or connector shoulder.

E. Do not obstruct equipment controls or indicators with wire or cable. Route wire and cable away from heat producing components such as resistors, regulators, and the like.

3.9 CONDUIT AND RACEWAY INSTALLATION

A. Design, lay-out, size and plan new conduit and raceway systems as required.

B. Indoor Requirements:

1. Route exposed conduit and raceway parallel and perpendicular to walls and adjacent piping.
2. Maintain minimum six (6) inch clearance between conduit and piping.
3. Group conduit in parallel runs where practical and use conduit rack constructed of steel channel with conduit straps or clamps.
4. Use conduit bodies to make sharp changes in direction, as around beams. Fasten conduits and raceways to structural steel using approved spring clips or clamps.
5. Where conduit penetrates fire-rated walls and floors, seal opening with UL listed fire rated sealer or other methods as approved by codes.
6. No exposed conduit, raceway, or junction box shall be installed within any office area.
7. Install all boxes straight and plumb.
8. Do not support conduit from mechanical, plumbing, or fire sprinkler systems.
9. Drill or core drill all holes in walls, ceilings, or floors where required for new conduits. Do not cause damage to any structural steel or other structural support member by drilling or cutting.
10. Do not use flexible conduit in lengths longer than six (6) feet.

C. Outdoor Requirements:

1. Where conduit penetrates exterior walls, seal opening around conduit in an approved manner to make watertight.
2. Use galvanized straps and fasteners on all exterior conduit.
3. All exterior boxes will only be used to aid in pulling the cable between points.

3.10 PENETRATIONS

A. Do not penetrate any roof, flashing, exterior wall, or parapet without prior approval from Gaston County Schools' s designated Construction Project representative.

B. When penetrating a fire wall for passage of cables and/or conduit, always provide a fire stop system that complies with code and the local authority having jurisdiction.

3.11 FIRE RATED DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Do nothing to modify a UL. Rated door or frame that would void the UL. Label or fire rating.

3.12 GROUNDING

A. Provide earth-grounding of equipment as required by equipment manufacturer. Earth ground shall be connected to ground rod or approved cold water pipe. Electrical or telephone ground connections shall not be used as earth grounds. Connections to mounting posts or building structural steel shall not be used as earth grounds.

3.13 POWER TO SECURITY EQUIPMENT

A. Power all equipment from 120 VAC circuit dedicated for security use, except as noted. Mark all panel circuit breakers with labels worded “Security Equipment - Do Not Operate", or equivalent.

B. All plug-in transformers shall be located at the security control panels. Secure all low voltage plug-in transformers to outlet with screw or strap. Clearly label all transformers to identify purpose and use.

3.14 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. The Contractor shall be responsible for all cutting, fitting or patching that may be required to complete the Work.

3.15 PLYWOOD BACKING

A. Install the processor(s), power supplies, and all other related equipment on a plywood backboard for testing in the shop. The mounted assembly will then be transported "as is" to the job site for mounting in the Security Room.

B. Fasten the plywood backing to the wall using a hanger bolt at the four corners which align with pre-drilled holes in the plywood. Secure with flat washers and a nut.

3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Upon reaching Substantial Completion, perform a complete test and inspection of the system. If found to be installed and operating properly, notify Gaston County Schools of your readiness to perform the formal Test & Inspection of the complete system.

B. Submit the Record Drawings (as-builts) to Gaston County Schools for review prior to inspection.

C. During the formal Test & Inspection (Commissioning) of the system, have personnel available with tools and equipment to remove devices from their mounts to inspect wiring connections. Provide wiring diagrams and labeling charts to properly identify all wiring.

D. If corrections are needed, the Contractor will be provided with a Punch -List of all discrepancies. Perform the needed corrections in a timely fashion.

E. Notify Gaston County Schools when ready to perform a re-inspection ofthe installation.

3.17 INITIAL PROGRAMMING AND CONFIGURATION

A. Contractor shall provide initial programming and configuration of the security management system. Programming shall include defining hardware, doors, monitor

points, clearance codes, time codes, door groups, alarm groups, operating sequences, and the like. Input of all program data shall be by Contractor. Contractor shall consult with Security Consultant and Owner to determine operating parameters.

B. Contractor shall develop and input system graphics, such as maps and standby screens. Owner shall provide floor plan drawings as the basis for the creation of maps. Development of maps shall include the creation of icons for all doors, monitor points, and tamper circuits. Owner shall provide floor plan drawings, in the form of AutoCAD .DWG or .DXF files, as the basis for the creation of maps.

C. Owner, with the cooperation and assistance of Contractor, will input the cardholder data for each access card.

D. Contractor shall maintain hard copy worksheets which fully document the system program and configuration. Worksheets shall be kept up to date on a daily basis by Contractor until final Acceptance by Owner. Worksheets shall be subject to inspection and approval by Owner. Provide final copies to Owner prior to Project Close-out.

E. Contractor shall maintain a complete, up-to-date digital backup of the system configuration and cardholder database. Backup shall be maintained throughout programming period until final Acceptance by Owner. Submit back-up drive to Owner upon Final Acceptance.

F. Approximately sixty (60) days after start-up of system, Contractor shall return to project to provide follow-up assistance with system configuration as requested by Owner. Contractor shall include an allowance of sixteen (16) hours of labor for follow-up assistance in his Base Bid price.

3.18 TRAINING

A. At Owners discretion Contractor shall provide complete operator training on the Security Management System. Training shall consist of eight hours of classroom instruction for four people selected by Owner, plus two (2) hours of individual hands-on training for each of four people selected by Owner. Hands-on training shall include the opportunity for each person to operate the system, and to practice each operation that an operator would be expected to perform.

B. Training shall cover all operating features of the system, including the following:

1. System set-up and cardholder database configuration.
2. Access control features.
3. Alarm monitoring features.
4. Report generation and searches.
5. Card management and Badge Design/Printing
6. Disk backup procedures
7. Routine maintenance and adjustment procedures.

C. Training sessions are to be held at Owner's facility, and are to be scheduled at the convenience of Owner. Contractor shall provide written training outline and agenda

for each training session prior to scheduling.

D. Contractor shall provide written training materials for each of four (4) people.

E. OPERATOR TRAINING

1. At Owners discretion Contractor shall provide complete operator training on the Security Management System. Two types of operator training shall be provided:

   a) System Administrator Training: Three-day comprehensive training course for system managers and maintenance personnel. Provide two (2) separate on-site training sessions.

2. Training sessions shall include the opportunity for each person to operate the system, and to practice each operation that an operator would be expected to perform.

3. Contractor shall provide written training materials for each of four (4) people at each training session.

4. Training sessions are to be held at Owner's facility, and are to be scheduled at the convenience of Owner. Some training sessions may be required to be held during evening hours and on weekends to accommodate users whose schedule does not permit attendance during regular hours.

5. Contractor shall provide written training outline and agenda for each training session prior to scheduling.

~~PART 4 - APPENDIX~~

~~4.1 DOOR SCHEDULE~~

~~A. DOOR OPENINGS: #1, 3, 10, 12, AND 13~~
~~1. 1 EACH - ED520~~
~~2. 1 EACH - 632F TRIM~~
~~3. 1 EACH - ELR KIT~~
~~4. 1 EACH - CYLINDER~~
~~5. 1 EACH - ELECTRIFIED HINGE~~

~~B. DOOR OPENINGS: #2~~
~~1. 1 EACH - ELR KIT~~
~~2. 1 EACH - ELECTRIFIED HINGE~~

~~C. DOOR OPENINGS: #4, 5, 6, 7, AND 11~~
~~1. 1 EACH - ELR KIT~~
~~2. 1 EACH - CONCEALED POWER TRANSFER~~

~~D. DOOR OPENINGS: #8, AND 9~~
~~1. 1 EACH - 55 SERIES ELECTRIC STRIKE~~
~~2. 1 EACH - STAINLESS STEEL LATCH GUARD~~

END OF SECTION 28 10 00

SECTION 281600 - INTRUSION DETECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Provide combination intrusion detection control panels, including engineering, components, installation and commissioning.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 080600: Openings

B. Section 081000: Doors and Frames

C. Section 260500: Common Work Results for Electrical, for interface and coordination with building electrical systems and distribution.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. Reference Standards: Provide systems which meet or exceed the requirements of the following publications and organizations as applicable to the Work of this Section:

1. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):

a. UL 365: Police Station Connected Burglar Alarm Units and Systems.
b. UL 609: Local Burglar Alarm Units and Systems. c. UL 611: Central Station Burglar-Alarm Units.
d. UL 636: Holdup Alarm Units and Systems.

e. UL 684: Local, Central Station, and Remote

Station. f. UL 1023: Household Burglar-Alarm System

Units.

g. UL 1076: Proprietary Burglar-Alarm Units and

Systems. h. UL 1610: Central-Station Burglar-Alarm Units.

2. Federal Communications Commission (FCC):

a. Code of Federal Regulations Title 47: Part 15: Radio Frequency

Devices.

b. Code of Federal Regulations Title 47: Part 68: Connection of

Terminal Equipment to the Telephone Network.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Intrusion Detection Control Panels: Basis-of-design is the Honeywell VISTA 128BPT System, a burglary/access control/CCTV switching system that includes the following capabilities:

1. Listed for UL Commercial Burglary.
2. Supports up to 128 zones.
3. Supports up to 8 separate partitions.
4. Supports up to 150 users.
5. Supports commercial wireless devices.
6. Provides integrated security, access control, and CCTV switching capability.
7. Provides supervision of peripheral devices.
8. Supports up to 96 optional relay outputs.
9. Supports long-range radio (LRR) communication.
10. Provides scheduling capability to allow for automated operations.
11. Supports alarm reporting via Internet.
12. Interfaces with automation software.
13. Monitors smoke detector maintenance signals

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturer's Product Data: Submit manufacturer's data sheets indicating systems and components proposed for use, including instruction manuals.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit complete shop drawings including connection diagrams for interfacing equipment, list of connected equipment, and locations for major equipment components.

C. Record Drawings: During construction maintain record drawings indicating location of equipment and wiring. Submit an electronic version of record drawings not later than Substantial Completion of the project.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit manufacturer's operation and maintenance data, customized to the system installed. Include system and operator manuals.

E. Field Tests: Submit results of field testing of every device including date, testing personnel, retesting date if applicable, and confirmation that every device passed field testing.

F. Maintenance Service Agreement: Submit a sample copy of the manufacturer's maintenance service agreement, including cost and services for a one year period for

Owner's review. Maintenance shall include, but not be limited to, labor and materials to repair the system, provide test and adjustments, and regular inspections.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer: Minimum ten years experience in manufacturing and maintaining similar systems. Alarm manufacturer shall be certified compliant with ISO 9001.

B. Installer: Minimum two years experience installing similar systems, and acceptable to the manufacturer.

C. Environmental Conditions: System shall be designed to function in the following environmental conditions:

1. Storage Temperature: Designed for a storage temperature of -10° C to 70°C.

2. Operating Temperature: System shall be designed for an operating temperature of 0° C to 50°C (32° F to 120°F).

3. Humidity: System shall be designed for normal operation in an 85% relative humidity environment.

4. Electromagnetic Interference: System shall meet or exceed the requirements of FCC Part 15, Class B devices, FCC Part 68, IEC EMC directive.

D. Power Requirements: Components shall have the following electrical specifications. The system shall operate using standard 120 VAC, 50 Hz/60 Hz power.

1. Control Primary Power: Transformer power shall be 16.5 VAC, 40 VA.

2. Backup Battery: Rechargeable 12 VDC, gel type, lead acid backup battery shall be provided. The battery shall be rated between 12 and 34-ampere hours (AH).

3. Alarm Power: 12 VDC, 1.7 amps for each bell output

4. Auxiliary Standby Power: 12 VDC, 0.75 amp maximum.

5. Total Power: Combined auxiliary standby and alarm currents shall be 2.3 amps.

6. Fusing: The battery input, auxiliary, and bell outputs shall be protected using PTC circuit breakers. All outputs shall be power limited.

E. Control Panel Enclosure: A metal cabinet, suitable for wall mounting. Dimensions shall not exceed 14.5 inches (36.8 cm) in height, 12.5 inches (31.8 cm) in width or 3 inches (7.6 cm) in depth.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's labeled packages. Store and handle in accordance with manufacturer's requirements, in a facility with environmental conditions within recommended limits.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit manufacturer's standard one-year warranty for the system.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

Basis of design: Intrusion Detection Alarm Panel Manufacturer: VISTA 128BPT by Honeywell, www.security.honeywell.com.
Acceptable equals: Edwards Signaling, Bosch Security Systems.

2.2 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

A. Control Panel: The control panel shall be an 8-partition, UL commercial and burglary control panel that supports up to 128 zones using basic hardwired, polling loop, and wireless zones, RF receivers, and relay modules. The control shall provide the ability to schedule time-driven events, and allow certain operations to be automated by pressing a single button. The system shall be capable of interfacing with an ECP long range radio (LRR) unit that can send Contact ID messages. The control shall provide integrated access control and CCTV-switching capability with the use of a single downloader and database.

1. Intrusion Detection System components shall be connected using the following Honeywell Genesis Series Cables:

a. Keypads use four conductor, 22AWG or 18AWG, non-shielded cable:

1) 22AWG

(a) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1104

(b) Riser applications use Part #: 2104

(c) Plenum applications use Part #: 3104

2) 18AWG

(a) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1119

(b) Riser applications use Part #: 2115

(c) Plenum applications use Part #: 3115

b. VPLEX Zone Expanders shall connect to a VPLEX data bus using two conductor,18AWG, non-shielded cable

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1118

2) Riser applications use Part #: 2114

3) Plenum applications use Part #: 3114

4) Direct burial applications use Part #: 4156

c. VPLEX Fire detection devices and two wire fire detection devices connect using two conductor, 18AWG, non-shielded fire alarm cable

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 4106

2) Riser applications use Part #: 4306

3) Plenum applications use Part #: 4506

4) Direct burial applications use Part #: 4156

d. Four wire fire detection devices connect using four conductor, 18AWG, non- shielded fire alarm cable

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 4107

2) Riser applications use Part #: 4307

3) Plenum applications use Part #: 4507

4) Direct burial applications use Part #: 4157

e. Unpowered detection devices connect to zone inputs using two conductor,

22AWG, non-shielded cable

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1102

2) Riser applications use Part #: 2102

3) Plenum applications use Part #: 3102

f. Powered detection devices connect to zone inputs using four conductor, 18AWG, non-shielded cable

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1119

2) Riser applications use Part #: 2115

3) Plenum applications use Part #: 3115

4) Direct burial applications use Part #:

4157 g. The Bell output shall use two conductor, 16AWG, non-shielded cable

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1125

2) Riser applications use Part #: 2121

3) Plenum applications use Part #: 3121

h. Power connections for control panels shall be made using two conductor, 16AWG, non-shielded cable.

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1125

2) Riser applications use Part #: 2121

3) Plenum applications use Part #: 3121

i. Ground connections to control panels shall be made using 14AWG solid insulated copper ground wire.

1) General Purpose applications use Part #: 1131

2. Basic Hardwired Zones: Control shall provide 8 style-B hardwire zones with the following characteristics:

a. EOLR supervision (optional for zones 2-8) shall support N.O. or N.C.sensors(EOLR supervision required for UL installations).

b. Zones/Points shall be individually assignable to any

partition. c. Supports up to 16 two-wire smoke detectors on zone

1.

d. Supports four-wire smoke or heat detectors on any zone (power to four-wire smoke detectors must be supervised with an EOL device).

3. Optional Expansion Zones:

a. Polling Loop Expansion: Control shall support up to 120 additional hardwire zones using a built-in two-wire polling (multiplex) loop interface. The polling loop shall provide power and data to remote point modules, and constantly monitor the status of all zones on the loop. Maximum current draw shall not exceed 128 mA. The polling loop zones shall have the following characteristics:

1) Interface with RPM (Remote Point Module) devices that provide Class B, Style Y (e.g., 4208U/4208SN) or a combination of Class B, Style Y, and
Class A, Style Z (e.g., 4208SNF) zones.

2) Individually assignable to one of 8 partitions.

3) Supervised by the control panel.

4) A 12,000 ft (3658 m) wire run capability without using shielded cable.

b. Wireless Expansion Zone: Control shall support up to 128 wireless zones using a 5800 series RF receiver (fewer if using hardwire and/or polling loop zones). Wireless zones shall have the following characteristics:

1) Supervised by control panel for check-in signals (except certain non- supervised transmitters).

2) Tamper-protection for supervised zones.

3) Individually assignable to one of 8 partitions.

4) Individually assignable to bell outputs and/or auxiliary relays.

5) Support wireless devices listed for Commercial Burglary using the 5881ENHC RF Receiver.

4. Partitions: Control shall provide the ability to operate 8 separate areas, each functioning as if it had its own control. Partitioning features shall include:

a. A Common Lobby partition (1-8), which can be programmed to perform the following functions:

1) Arm automatically when the last partition that shares the common lobby is armed.

2) Disarm when the first partition that shares the common lobby is disarmed.

b. A Master partition (9), used strictly to assign keypads for the purpose of viewing the status of all 8 partitions at the same time (master keypads).

c. Assignable by zone.

d. Assignable by keypad/annunciator.

e. Assignable by relay to one or all 8 partitions.

f. Ability to display burglary and panic and/or trouble conditions at all other partitions' keypads (selectable option).

g. Certain system options selectable by partition, such as entry/exit delay and subscriber account number.

5. User Codes: Control shall accommodate 150 user codes, all of which can operate any or all partitions. Certain characteristics must be assigned to each user code, as follows:

a. Authority level (Master, Manager, or several other Operator levels). Each User Code (other than the installer code) shall be capable of being assigned the same or a different level of authority for each partition that it will operate.

b. Opening/Closing central station reporting

option. c. Specific partitions that the code can

operate.

d. Global arming capability (ability to arm all partitions the code has access to in one command).

e. Use of an RF (button) to arm and disarm the system (RF key must first be enrolled into the system).

6. Peripheral Devices: Control shall support up to 30 addressable ECP devices, which can be any combination of keypads, RF receivers, relay modules, and interactive phone module. Peripheral devices have the following characteristics:

a. Each device set to an individual address according to the device's

instructions. b. Each device enabled in system programming.

c. Each device's address shall be supervisable (via a programming option).

7. Keypad/Annunciator: Control shall accommodate up to 16 keypads or six (6) touch-screen (i.e.; advanced user interface) keypads. The keypads shall be capable of the following

a. Performing all system arming

functions. b. Being assigned to any

partition.

c. Providing four programmable single-button function keys, which can be used for:

1) Panic Functions: activated by wired and wireless keypads; reported separately by partition.

2) Keypad Macros: 32 keypad macro commands per system (each macro is a series of keypad commands). Assignable to the A, B, C, and D keys by partition.

d. (3) Keypads are to be provided. (Gym Lobby, Cafeteria, & School). Coordinate exact location with owner. System shall be capable of being partitioned/zoned for separate arming and disarming.

8. Optional Output Relays: A total of 96 relay outputs shall be accommodated using relay modules. Each relay module shall provide four (4) Form C (normally open and normally closed) relays for general-purpose use. The relays shall be capable of being:

a. Programmed to activate in response to system

events.

b. Programmed to activate using time intervals.

c. Activated manually.

d. Assigned an alpha descriptor.

e. A combination of 4204 (ECP) and 4101SN (polling loop) relays.

9. Optional Vista Interactive Phone Module: The control shall support the ADEMCO 4285/4286 VIP Modules, which permit access to the security system in order to perform the following functions:

a. Obtain system status information.

b. Arm and disarm the security

system. c. Control relays.

d. Battery saving feature.

10. Integrated Access Control: Control shall be capable of the following:

a. Providing a command that activates relays to allow access doors to open (e.g., lobby door), lights to be turned on or off, etc.

b. Becoming a fully integrated access control system by using numerous VistaKey
Single-Door Access Control Modules.

c. Supporting up to 15 VistaKey Access Control Modules. The VistaKey Access Control Modules shall use the same Compass Downloader as the Vista-128BPT and shall be programmable from the Compass Downloader or the Keypad/Annunciators.

d. Assigning any number of access control relays to each partition (up to 96 for the system).

e. Supporting up to 500 access card holders using VistaKey.

11. CCTV Switching: System shall be capable of supporting the VistaView 100 CCTV Switching System. The CCTV system shall be fully integrated and be event driven by Burglary or Access events. When cameras are not event driven, they shall be driven by an automatic preset dwell time. The system shall also be capable of:

a. Activating the CCTV system via a Form-C relay output.

b. Operating up to 60 camera inputs and 30 video outputs.

12. Commercial Wireless Equipment: Control shall be compatible with UL Listed
Commercial Wireless Security equipment including:

a. ADEMCO 5881ENHC Commercial Wireless Receiver: The receiver shall be capable of receiving as many points as the control panel is rated for. Up to two (2) Receivers may be used on any system. Receivers may be remotely located anywhere on the system Keypad/Annunciator bus.

b. Honeywell 5808W3 Wireless Photoelectric Smoke and Heat Detector: The device shall be UL 268 listed and shall have Maintenance Alert capability and Automatic Drift Compensation.

c. ADEMCO 5809 Wireless 135D Fixed Temperature and Rate of Rise Heat Detector: The device shall be UL 521 listed for commercial applications.

d. ADEMCO 5817CB Wireless Universal Contact Monitoring Transmitter: This device shall be capable of making any conventional UL listed contact device a wireless device. The device shall be UL listed for commercial burglary applications as follows: UL 365, 609, 1023, 1076 and 1610 for security and nurse call.

e. ADEMCO 5869 Wireless Hold Up Switch/Transmitter: This device shall be UL

636 listed for commercial burglary applications.

13. Optional Keyswitch: Control shall support the ADEMCO 4146 Keyswitch on any one of the system's 8 partitions. If used, zone 7 is no longer available as a protection zone.

14. Voltage Triggers: System shall provide voltage triggers, which change state for different conditions. Used with devices such as a remote keypad sounder or keyswitch ARMED and READY LEDs.

15. Event Log: System shall maintain a log of different event types (enabled in programming). The event log shall provide the following characteristics:

    a. Stories up to 512 events.

    b. Viewable at the keypad or through the use of Compass software.

    c. Printable on a serial printer, including zone alpha descriptors.

16. Scheduling: Provides the following scheduling capabilities:

    a. Open/close schedules (for control of arming/disarming and reporting).

    b. Holiday schedules (allows different time windows for open/close schedules).

    c. Timed events (for activation of relays, auto-bypassing and un-bypassing, auto- arming and disarming, etc.).

    d. Access schedules (for limiting system access to users by time).

    e. End User Output Programming Mode (provides 20 timers for relay

    control). f. The system shall automatically adjust for daylight savings time.

17. Communication Features: Supports the following formats and features for

the primary and secondary central station receivers:

a. Formats: ADEMCO Express; ADEMCO Contact ID 4 and 10 Digit Acct

number. b. Backup reporting: The system shall support backup reporting via the following: Secondary phone number; ECP long-range radio (LRR) interface; option to select long range radio (LRR) or dialup as the primary reporting method (dynamic signaling feature).

c. Internet reporting: The system shall be capable of communicating with the central station via the internet using Alarmnet-i. It shall provide the user with the ability to control the system via a browser interface (i.e., AOL, Netscape, Internet Explorer). All packet data transmitted to the monitoring station shall be encrypted with a minimum of 1024 bits of encryption.

18. Audio Alarm Verification Option: Provides a programmable Audio Alarm Verification (AAV) option that can be used in conjunction with an output relay to permit voice dialog between an operator at the central station and a person at the premises.

19. Cross-Zoning Capability: Helps prevent false alarms by preventing a zone from going into alarm unless its cross-zone is also faulted within 5 minutes.

    a. Alarm notification appliances, including but not limited to sirens horns, bells and strobes.

    b. Auxiliary devices capable of operating using full-wave rectified unfiltered voltage.

20. Exit Error False Alarm Prevention Feature: System shall be capable of differentiating between an actual alarm and an alarm caused by leaving an entry/exit door open. If not subsequently disarmed, the control panel shall:

    a. Bypass the faulted E/E zone(s) and/or interior zones and arm the system.

    b. Generate an Exit Error report by user and by zone so the central station knows it was an exit alarm and who caused it.

21. Built-in User's Manual and Descriptor Review: For end-user convenience, the control panel shall contain a built-in User’s Manual. It shall include the following capabilities:

    a. By depressing any of the function keys on the keypad for five (5) seconds, a brief explanation of that function shall scroll across the alphanumeric display.

    b. By depressing the READY key for five (5) seconds, all programmed zone descriptors shall be displayed (one at a time). This feature shall

provide a check for installers and ensure all descriptors have been entered properly.

22. Programming: Control shall be capable of being programmed locally or remotely using the ADEMCO Compass Downloader and shall be capable of:

    a. Uploading and downloading all programming information at 300 baud. b. Uploading and displaying firmware revision levels from the control.

23. Automation Software: The Control shall be capable of interfacing with automation software via an RS232 input on a single partition.

2.3 COMPONENTS

A. System Integration: System shall integrate with facility doors, windows, and departments. The system shall also integrate with external systems, such as building appliances and building alert systems for remote control and central collection of external system alerts. When integrated with external systems, the system shall connect to the external system to receive status changes by way of a dry contact output from the external system. The system shall use its user interface to provide local status messages from external systems, providing for the initiation of local building policies. Optionally, the system may transmit information to an off-site monitoring service to provide initiation of remote policies when appropriate. The installer shall follow manufacturer's instructions when installing and programming system equipment.

1. V-Plex Bus Extensions: Extended system V-Plex bus branch circuits shall be scaleable to increase the total size of the bus in larger installations. Branch circuits leading from different buildings or from different floors in multi-story buildings shall be isolated from one another so that a shorted or grounded branch circuit is isolated away from other near-side branch circuits, allowing other V-Plex devices to be isolated so that they can continue to operate.

2. Zone Input: System zone inputs allow the system to sense the change in state of an output from an external device, such as a door/window position sensor, a motion detector, a relay output from an appliance, the output of an external alert system, or other devices that provide a dry closure output.

3. Wireless Receivers for Commercial Applications: Include Commercial Wireless Receivers where designated. The wireless receiver shall be UL Listed, Factory Mutual Approved, MEA Listed, and CSFM Listed for the application. The wireless receiver shall receive messages from wireless devices indicating device detection loop open, normal, shorted, tamper alarm, and low battery status when sent from transmitters associated with the system. Each wireless transmitter shall send

periodic check-in signals to its associated control panel. The transmitter's associated control panel shall report any missing transmitter within four and one-half hours. Each transmitter shall report any low battery condition a minimum of seven days before its battery becomes too discharged to power the transmitter. The transmitter's associated control panel shall report any low battery condition by providing a local indication at system keypads, and shall send a trouble report to the central monitoring station. The model number of the receiver is Honeywell 5881ENHC or equivalent.

4. Wireless Repeaters for Commercial Applications: Include Commercial Wireless Repeaters where designated. The wireless repeater shall be UL Listed for the application. The wireless repeater shall receive and forward messages from wireless devices indicating device detection loop open, normal, shorted, tamper alarm, and low battery status when sent from transmitters associated with the system. Each wireless transmitter shall send periodic check-in signals to its associated control panel. The transmitter's associated control panel shall report any missing
transmitter within four and one-half hours. Each transmitter shall report any low battery condition a minimum of seven days before its battery becomes too discharged to power the transmitter. The transmitter's associated control panel shall report any low battery condition by providing a local indication at system keypads, and shall send a trouble report to the central monitoring station. The model number of the repeater is Honeywell 58xxRPT or equivalent.

5. Combined AlarmNet-I (Internet) and AlarmNet-GSM (Global System for Mobile) Fire Alarm Communication: The facility system shall be monitored using both the AlarmNet-I and the AlarmNet-G Communication services. The system shall use Honeywell's AlarmNet IGSMCF Fire Alarm transmitter or equivalent. The communication service shall employ a two-way Internet connection through AlarmNet Communication Service as the primary method of communication, and then the two-way GPRS (General Packet Radio Service) as the secondary means of communication and shall use SMS (Short Message Service) as a tertiary means of communication. The equipment shall be UL listed for use in this application. The installer shall follow manufacturer's instructions when installing the AlarmNet unit.

6. VSI Bus Isolation and Integrity: System V-Plex bus branch circuits shall be isolated from one another so that a shorted, overloaded, or grounded branch circuit is isolated away from other near-side branch circuits, allowing undamaged V-Plex bus circuits to continue to operate. VSI Isolation modules shall be installed at near-side connections to cable runs leading to additional buildings, at cable runs leading to additional floors in multi-story buildings, and at junction boxes leading to multiple V- Plex branch circuits within the system. The installer shall use the Honeywell VSI module or equivalent.

7. Zone Input: System zone inputs allow the system to sense the change in state of an output from an external device, such as a door/window position sensor, a motion

detector, a relay output from an appliance, the output of an external alert system, or other devices that provide a dry closure output.

8. Dual-Tec Motion Detector, Wall-Mounted, V-Plex: Selected areas in the protected site will use motion detectors to sense motion in rooms or areas of rooms. Where designated in the plans, install a Honeywell Model DT7500SN V-Plex Dual-Tec Motion Detector or equivalent.

9. Passive Infrared Motion Detector, Ceiling-mounted, V-Plex: Selected areas in the protected site will use motion detectors to sense motion in rooms or areas of rooms. Where designated in the plans, install a Honeywell Model IS280CM Ceiling Mounted Passive Infrared Motion Detector or equivalent.

10. Panic Buttons: Include manual panic buttons under desks, in storage rooms, in walk- in refrigeration units and other designated locations. The panic button shall be the Honeywell Model 269SN or equivalent.

11. Keypad, Alpha Display: The system keypad shall include a two-line, alphanumeric LCD display. Use the Honeywell Vista 6160 keypad or equivalent. The installer shall follow manufacturer's installation instructions when installing system equipment.

12. Siren Outdoor in Enclosure: Monitor the status of protected openings and areas in the armed and disarmed state. When an audible alarm occurs, the system shall sound a Honeywell Model 719 Siren or equivalent located inside a 742BE Enclosure. The installer shall install the siren as directed by manufacturer instructions.

13. Siren Indoor, Flush Mount: Monitor the status of protected openings and areas in the armed and disarmed state. When an audible alarm occurs, the system shall sound a Honeywell Model Wave2F Siren or equivalent. The installer shall install the siren as directed by manufacturer instructions.

14. Premium Keypad, Alpha Display: The system keypad shall include a two-line, reverse display alphanumeric LCD display. Use the Honeywell Vista 6460 keypad or equivalent. The installer shall follow manufacturer's installation instructions when installing system equipment.

15. Portrait-style Keypad, Alpha Display: The system keypad shall include a two-line, reverse display alphanumeric LCD display. Use the Honeywell Vista 6165EX Portrait- style keypad or equivalent. The installer shall follow manufacturer's installation instructions when installing system equipment.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine site conditions prior to installation. Notify Architect and Owner in writing if unsuitable conditions are encountered. Do not start installation until site conditions are acceptable.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Intrusion detection and fire alarm control panel system shall be installed and tested in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

1. Coordinate interfaces with Owner's representative where appropriate.

2. Provide backboxes, pullboxes, connectors, supports, conduit, cable, and wire for a complete and reliable installation. Obtain Owner's approval for exact location of all boxes, conduit, and wiring runs prior to installation.

3. Install conduit, cable, and wire parallel and square with building lines, including raised floors areas. Do not exceed forty percent fill in conduits. Gather wires and tie to create an orderly installation.

4. Coordinate with other trades to provide proper sequencing of installation.

3.3 FIELD COMMISSIONING AND CERTIFICATION

A. Field Commissioning: Test system as recommended by manufacturer, including the following:

1. Conduct complete inspection and testing of equipment, including verification of operation with connected equipment.

2. Test devices and demonstrate operational features for Owner's representative and authorities having jurisdiction as applicable.

3. Correct deficiencies until satisfactory results are obtained.

4. Submit written copies of test results.

3.4 TRAINING

A. Conduct on-site system training, with the number of sessions and length of sessions as recommended by the manufacturer. Training shall include administration, provisioning, configuration, operation and diagnostics.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 282000 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes a video surveillance system consisting of cameras, network video recorder, software and additional associated hardware.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions and data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For video surveillance. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Functional Block Diagram: Show single-line interconnections between components for signal transmission and control. Show cable types and sizes.
3. Dimensioned plan and elevations of equipment racks, control panels, and consoles. Show access and workspace requirements.
4. UPS: Sizing calculations.
5. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Design Data: Include equipment list consisting of every piece of equipment by model number, manufacturer, serial number, location, and date of original installation.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For video surveillance, cameras, camera-supporting equipment, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions: Capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Interior, Controlled Environment: System components, installed in temperature-controlled interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 36 to 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosures.
2. Interior, Uncontrolled Environment: System components installed in non-temperature-controlled interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 0 to 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosures.
3. Exterior Environment: System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of minus 30 to plus 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation when exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250 and winds up to 85 mph. Use NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosures.
4. Security Environment: Camera housing for use in high-risk areas where surveillance equipment may be subject to physical violence.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of cameras, equipment related to camera operation, and control-station equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion. Provide pricing for an additional two years of warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

A. Video-signal format shall comply with NTSC standard, composite interlaced video.

B. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor's entry connection to components.

1. Minimum Protection for Power Connections 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."

2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Connections: Comply with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits" as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.

C. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, control units, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Control-station, control-unit alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NECA 1.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

E. Electronic data exchange between video surveillance system with an access-control system shall comply with SIA TVAC.

2.3 IP CAMERAS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Pelco - Owner Standard

B. Interior Color Camera:

1. Power over Ethernet (PoE), IEEE 802.3af
2. Resolution: 2 Megapixel
3. Low-Light Performance: 0.05 lux
4. Lens: 3-9mm Varifocal
5. ONVIF Profile S, Profile G, and Profile Q Conformant
6. Refer to Camera Schedule on Drawings
7. Products shall be the latest version available that meets or exceeds specifications.

C. Exterior Color Camera:

1. Power over Ethernet (PoE), IEEE 802.3af
2. Resolution: 3 Megapixel
3. Low-Light Performance: 0.05 lux with IR
4. Lens: 3-9mm Varifocal
5. ONVIF Profile S, Profile G, and Profile Q Conformant

6. Refer to Camera Schedule on Drawings
7. Products shall be the latest version available that meets or exceeds specifications.

2.4 CAMERA-SUPPORTING EQUIPMENT

A. Manufacturers:

1. Shall be the same as camera manufacturer

B. Minimum Load Rating: Rated for load in excess of the total weight supported times a minimum safety factor of two.

C. Pan-and-Tilt Units: Motorized units arranged to provide remote-controlled aiming of cameras with smooth and silent operation, and equipped with matching mounting brackets.

1. Panning Rotation: 0 to 355 degrees, with adjustable stops.
2. Tilt Movement: 90 degrees, plus or minus 5 degrees, with adjustable stops.
3. Speed: 12 degrees per second in both horizontal and vertical planes.
4. Wiring: Factory prewired for camera and zoom lens functions and pan-and-tilt power and control.
5. Built-in encoders or potentiometers for position feedback
6. Pan-and-tilt unit shall be available with preset positioning capability to recall the position of a specific scene.

D. Mounting Brackets for Fixed Cameras: Type matched to items supported and mounting conditions. Include manual pan-and-tilt adjustment.

E. Protective Housings for Fixed and Movable Cameras: Aluminum enclosures with internal camera mounting and connecting provisions that are matched to camera/lens combination and mounting and installing arrangement of camera to be housed.

1. Tamper switch on access cover sounds an alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Central-control unit shall identify tamper alarms and indicate location in alarm display. Tamper switches and central-control unit are specified in Section 283100 "Intrusion Detection."
2. Camera Viewing Window: Polycarbonate window, aligned with camera lens.
3. Duplex Receptacle: Internally mounted.
4. Alignment Provisions: Camera mounting shall provide for field aiming of camera and permit removal and reinstallation of camera lens without disturbing camera alignment.
5. Sun shield shall not interfere with normal airflow around the housing.
6. Mounting bracket and hardware for wall or ceiling mounting of the housing. Bracket shall be of same material as the housing; mounting hardware shall be stainless steel.
7. Finish: Housing and mounting bracket shall be factory finished using manufacturer's standard finishing process suitable for the environment.

2.5 NETWORK VIDEO RECORDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Pelco: Video Xpert Professional

B. Description:

1. Video and audio recording over TCP/IP network.
2. Video recording of MPEG-2 and MPEG-4 streams.
3. Video recording up to 48 Mbps for internal storage and up to 100 Mbps for external storage.
4. Duplex Operation: Simultaneous recording and playback.
5. Continuous and alarm-based recording.
6. Full-Featured Search Capabilities: Search based on camera, time, or date.
7. Automatic data replenishment to ensure recording even if network is down.
8. Digital certification by watermarking.
9. Storage for 30 days with max resolution per camera recording at ~~5~~ 10 fps, 12 hours a day for interior cameras and 24 hours a day for exterior cameras. Smart compression shall be disabled.
10. Full integration with LAN, Intranet, or Internet through standard Web browser or video management software.
11. Integrated Web server FTP server functionality.
12. Supports up to 100 devices.
13. Rack mounted servers
14. Products shall be the latest version available that meets or exceeds specifications.
15. Windows 10

2.6 Video Management Systems

A. Manufacturers:

1. Pelco: Video Xpert Professional

B. Description:

1. System shall provide high-quality delivery and processing of IP-based video, audio, and control data using standard Ethernet-based networks.
2. System shall have seamless integration of all video surveillance and control functions.
3. Graphical user interface software shall manage all IP-based video matrix switching and camera control functions, two-way audio communication, alarm monitoring and control, and recording and archive/retrieval management. IP system shall also be capable of integrating into larger system environments.
4. System design shall include all necessary compression software for high-performance, dual-stream, MPEG-2/MPEG-4 video. Unit shall provide connections for all video cameras, camera PTZ control data, bidirectional audio, discreet sensor inputs, and control system outputs.
5. All camera signals shall be compressed, encoded, and delivered onto the network for processing and control by the IP video-management software.

6. Camera system units shall be ruggedly built and designed for extreme adverse environments, complying with NEMA Type environmental standards.
7. Encoder/decoder combinations shall place video, audio, and data network stream that can be managed from multiple workstations on the user's LAN or WAN.
8. All system interconnect cables, workstation PCs, PTZ joysticks, and network intermediate devices shall be provided for full performance of specified system.
9. Provide a minimum of (5) copies of the latest version of the video management software.
10. Products shall be the latest version available that meets or exceeds specifications.

2.7 Lobby Workstation

A. Manufacturers:

1. Dell
2. Hewlett Packard
3. IBM
4. Lenovo

B. Description (Minimum Requirements):

1. Processor: Intel Xeon E3-1275 v3
2. Operating System: Microsoft Windows 10
3. RAM: 8 GB DDR RAM ECC
4. SSD Storage: 120 GB
5. Optical Drive: DVD ± RW
6. Video Graphics: Intel HD Graphics P47400
7. Outputs: (2) Display Port, (1) DVI-D, (1) VGA
8. Resolution: DP - 3840 x 2160 @ 60 HZ, DVI-D/VGA - 1920 x 1200 @ 60 HZ
9. Web browsers: Internet Explorer 11.0 (or later), Firefox 66 (or later)
10. Media Player: Pelco Media Player
11. USB Ports: (3) USB 2.0, (2) USB 3.0

2.8 Rack Mounted Monitor, Keyboard, & Mouse

A. Manufacturers:

1. Eclipse Rackmount - ERF-17 - 1U 1080p 17" Rackmount LCD, Keyboard and KVM
2. Dell
3. Hewlett Packard
4. IBM
5. Lenovo

B. Description (Minimum Requirements):

1. 1-2 RU
2. 17” Rackmount LCD
3. Resolution: 1920 x 1200 @ 60 HZ
4. Minimum 3-port KVM switch to control lobby workstation via network

2.9 Rack Mounted UPS

A. Manufacturers:

1. APC: SURTA1500RMXL2UNC
2. APC: SMART-UPS RT 1500VA 120V

B. Description:

1. Network card
2. Battery bank to supply 60 minutes of runtime for full system operation

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways unless otherwise indicated.

1. Except raceways are not required in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and attics.
2. Except raceways are not required in hollow gypsum board partitions.
3. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: For power and control wiring, use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

E. For communication wiring, comply with the following:
1. Section 271323 "Communications Optical Fiber Backbone Cabling."
2. Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

F. Grounding: Provide independent-signal circuit grounding recommended in writing by manufacturer.

G. Cabling contractor shall provide a dedicated Category 6 cable per each camera location. Color shall be green. Coordinate with cabling Contractor.

3.2 VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install cameras with 84-inch-minimum clear space below cameras and their mountings. Change type of mounting to achieve required clearance.

B. Set final camera position and to obtain the field of view required for camera with owners direction. Connect all controls and alarms, and adjust.

C. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled, and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
2. Pretesting: Align and adjust system and pretest components, wiring, and functions to verify that they comply with specified requirements. Conduct tests at varying lighting levels, including day and night scenes as applicable. Prepare video-surveillance equipment for acceptance and operational testing as follows:

    a. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses.
    b. Set back-focus of fixed focal length lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Adjust until image is in focus with and without the filter.
    c. Set back-focus of zoom lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Additionally, set zoom to full wide angle and aim camera at an object 50 to 75 feet away. Adjust until image is in focus from full wide angle to full telephoto, with the filter in place.
    d. Set and name all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
    e. Set sensitivity of motion detection.
    f. Connect and verify responses to alarms.
    g. Verify operation of control-station equipment.

3. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has been successfully completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.
4. Operational Tests: Perform operational system tests to verify that system complies with Specifications. Include all modes of system operation.

C. Video surveillance system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

E. Installers must hold a North Carolina Alarm Systems Business License.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain video-surveillance equipment. Provide a minimum of 8 hours of factory training on the system for Gaston County employees.

END OF SECTION 282000

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 283111 – DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE, FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-alarm control unit.
2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
3. System smoke detectors.
4. Non-system smoke detectors.
5. Heat detectors.
6. Notification appliances.
7. Magnetic door holders.
8. Remote annunciator.
9. Addressable interface device.
10. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. LED: Light-emitting diode.

B. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Noncoded, UL-certified addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission, dedicated to fire-alarm service only.

B. Noncoded addressable system, with automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors and multiplexed signal transmission, dedicated to fire-alarm service only.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Fire-alarm control unit and raceways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:

    a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
    b. NICET-certified fire-alarm technician, Level III minimum.
    c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

C. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Comply with recommendations in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Include voltage drop calculations for notification appliance circuits.
3. Include battery-size calculations.
4. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector, verifying that each detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
5. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale and coordinating installation of duct smoke detectors and access to them. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
6. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
7. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For smoke and heat detectors indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Drawings showing the location of each smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the detector.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72.

E. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

F. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fire-alarm control unit, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

G. Field quality-control reports.

H. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Comply with the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Provide "Record of Completion Documents" according to NFPA 72 article "Permanent Records" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
3. Record copy of site-specific software.
4. Provide "Maintenance, Inspection and Testing Records" according to NFPA 72 article of the same name and include the following:

    a. Frequency of testing of installed components.
    b. Frequency of inspection of installed components.
    c. Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
    d. Manufacturer's user training manuals.

5. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
6. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit.
7. Copy of NFPA 25.

I. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.

B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level II technician.

C. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Obtain fire-alarm system from single source from single manufacturer. Components shall be compatible with, and operate as, an extension of existing system.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

E. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by a UL-listed alarm company.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

1.9 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Existing Fire-Alarm Equipment: Maintain existing equipment fully operational until new equipment has been tested and accepted. As new equipment is installed, label it "NOT IN SERVICE" until it is accepted. Remove labels from new equipment when put into service and label existing fire-alarm equipment "NOT IN SERVICE" until removed from the building.

B. Equipment Removal: After acceptance of new fire-alarm system, remove existing disconnected fire-alarm equipment and wiring.

1.10 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Comply with UL 864.

B. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for two years.

C. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.

1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

1.11 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps for Remote Indicating Lamp Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 1 unit.
2. Lamps for Strobe Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 1 unit.
3. Smoke Detectors, Fire Detectors, Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 1 unit of each type.

4. Detector Bases: Quantity equal to 2 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 1 unit of each type.
5. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked and tamperproofed components.
6. Audible and Visual Notification Appliances: One of each type installed.
7. Fuses: Two of each type installed in the system.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Fire-Lite MS-9600UDLS
2. NOTIFIER Onyx NFS320; a Honeywell company.
3. Silent Knight SK-6808 with voice panel.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices:

1. Manual stations.
2. Heat detectors.
3. Flame detectors.
4. Smoke detectors.
5. Duct smoke detectors.
6. Verified automatic alarm operation of smoke detectors.
7. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
8. Heat detectors in elevator shaft and pit.
9. Fire standpipe system.

B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:

1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances.
2. Identify alarm at fire-alarm control unit.
3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
4. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
5. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
6. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
7. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
8. Activate smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighter smoke-control system panel.
9. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
10. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
11. Activate emergency lighting control.
12. Activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
13. Record events in the system memory.

C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Valve supervisory switch.
2. Low-air-pressure switch of a dry-pipe sprinkler system.
3. Elevator shunt-trip supervision.

D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
4. Ground or a single break in fire-alarm control unit internal circuits.
5. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
6. Break in standby battery circuitry.
7. Failure of battery charging.
8. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
9. Fire-pump power failure, including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
10. Low-air-pressure switch operation on a dry-pipe or preaction sprinkler system.

E. System Trouble and Supervisory Signal Actions: Initiate notification appliance and annunciate at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators. Record the event on system printer.

2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:

1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864 and listed and labeled by an NRTL.

a. System software and programs shall be held in flash electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM), retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.

2. Addressable initiation devices that communicate device identity and status.

a. Smoke sensors shall additionally communicate sensitivity setting and allow for adjustment of sensitivity at fire-alarm control unit.
b. Temperature sensors shall additionally test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.

3. Addressable control circuits for operation of mechanical equipment.

B. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.

1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 3 line(s) of 80 characters, minimum.
2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands and to indicate control commands to be entered into the system for control of smoke-detector sensitivity and other parameters.

C. Circuits:

1. Initiating Device, Notification Appliance, and Signaling Line Circuits: NFPA 72, Class A.

    a. Initiating Device Circuits: Style D
    b. Notification Appliance Circuits: Style Z.
    c. Signaling Line Circuits: Style 2
    d. Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling line circuit.

2. Initiating Device, Notification Appliance, and Signaling Line Circuits: NFPA 72, Class B.

    a. Initiating Device Circuits: Style A.
    b. Notification Appliance Circuits: Style W
    c. Signaling Line Circuits: Style 1
    d. Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling line circuit.

3. Serial Interfaces: Two RS-232 ports for printers.

D. Smoke-Alarm Verification:

1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
2. Activate an NRTL-listed and -approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
3. Record events by the system printer.
4. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
5. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.

E. Notification Appliance Circuit: Operation shall sound in a Temporal Pattern

F. Elevator Recall:

1. Smoke detectors at the following locations shall initiate automatic elevator recall

    a. Elevator lobby detectors except the lobby detector on the designated floor.
    b. Smoke detector in elevator machine room.
    c. Smoke detectors in elevator hoistway.

2. Elevator lobby detectors located on the designated recall floors shall be programmed to move the cars to the alternate recall floor.
3. Water-flow alarm connected to sprinkler in an elevator shaft and elevator machine room shall shut down elevators associated with the location without time delay.

a. Water-flow switch associated with the sprinkler in the elevator pit may have a delay to allow elevators to move to the designated floor.

G. Door Controls: Door hold-open devices that are controlled by smoke detectors at doors in smoke barrier walls shall be connected to fire-alarm system.

H. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on system printer.

I. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.

J. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided as a special module that is part of fire-alarm control unit.

1. Indicated number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of different announcements to different zones or for manual transmission of announcements by use of the central-control microphone. Amplifiers shall comply with UL 1711 and be listed by an NRTL.

a. Allow the application of and evacuation signal to indicated number of zones and, at same time, allow voice paging to the other zones selectively or in any combination.
b. Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
c. Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
d. Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification appliance circuits of fire-alarm control unit.

2. Status Annunciator: Indicate the status of various voice/alarm speaker zones and the status of firefighters' two-way telephone communication zones.
3. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators shall automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure.

K. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitters and digital alarm radio transmitters shall be powered by 24-V dc source.

1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.

L. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.

1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.

M. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

2.4 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.

1. Single-action mechanism, lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
3. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.
4. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm.

2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

A. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:

1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
2. Detectors shall be two-wire type.
3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type indicating detector has operated.
7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be analog-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by fire-alarm control unit.

    a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for 15 or 20 deg F (8 or 11 deg C) per minute.
    b. Fixed-temperature sensing shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at 135 or 155 deg F (57 or 68 deg C).
    c. Provide multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.

B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.

2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:

    a. Primary status.
    b. Device type.
    c. Present average value.
    d. Present sensitivity selected.
    e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

C. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:

    a. Primary status.
    b. Device type.
    c. Present average value.
    d. Present sensitivity selected.
    e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector.
4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.6 NONSYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS (only where called out by the plans)

A. Single-Station Smoke Detectors:

1. Comply with UL 217; suitable for NFPA 101, residential occupancies; operating at 120-V ac.
2. Auxiliary Relays: One.
3. Audible Notification Appliance: Piezoelectric sounder rated at 90 dBA at 10 feet (3 m) according to UL 464.
4. Visible Notification Appliance: 177-cd strobe.
5. Heat sensor, 135 deg F (57 deg C) fixed temperature.
6. Test Switch: Push to test; simulates smoke at rated obscuration.
7. Tandem Connection: Allow tandem connection of number of indicated detectors; alarm on one detector shall actuate notification on all connected detectors.
8. Plug-in Arrangement: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a plug-in module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
9. Self-Restoring: Detectors shall not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
10. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type indicating detector has operated.

B. Single-Station Duct Smoke Detectors:

1. Comply with UL 268A; operating at 120-V ac.
2. Sensor: LED or infrared light source with matching silicon-cell receiver.

    a. Detector Sensitivity: Smoke obscuration between 2.5 and 3.5 percent/foot when tested according to UL 268A.

3. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. The fixed base shall be designed for mounting directly to air duct. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.

    a. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector.

4. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
5. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.7 HEAT DETECTORS

A. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.

B. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F per minute unless otherwise indicated.

1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

C. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 190 deg .

1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

D. Continuous Linear Heat-Detector System:

1. Detector Cable: Rated detection temperature 155 deg F. NRTL listed for "regular" service and a standard environment. Cable includes two steel actuator wires twisted together with spring pressure, wrapped with protective tape, and finished with PVC outer sheath. Each actuator wire is insulated with heat-sensitive material that reacts with heat to allow the cable twist pressure to short- circuit wires at the location of elevated temperature.
2. Control Unit: Two-zone or multizone unit as indicated. Provide same system power supply, supervision, and alarm features as specified for fire-alarm control unit.
3. Signals to Fire-Alarm Control Unit: Any type of local system trouble shall be reported to fire-alarm control unit as a composite "trouble" signal. Alarms on each detection zone

shall be individually reported to central fire-alarm control unit as separately identified zones.

4. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

2.8 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

A. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Individually addressed, connected to a signaling line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.

B. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.

1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.

C. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights comply with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch-high letters on the lens.

1. Rated Light Output:

a. [15] [30] [75] [110] [177] cd.: As Noted On the Drawings
b. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.

2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, white.

D. Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:

1. Appliances shall comply with UL 1480 and shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL.
2. High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W.
3. Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
4. Mounting: semirecessed or surface mounted and bidirectional.
5. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.

2.9 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

A. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.

1. Electromagnet: Requires no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf holding force.
2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
3. Rating: 24-V ac or dc.
4. Rating: 120-V ac.

B. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.

2.10 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.

1. Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.

B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

2.11 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

A. Description: Microelectronic monitor module, NRTL listed for use in providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.

B. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown.

2.12 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

A. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632 and be listed and labeled by an NRTL.

B. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit and automatically capture two telephone line(s) and dial a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.

C. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:

1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
2. Programming device.
3. LED display.
4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.

5. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.

D. Digital data transmission shall include the following:

1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
2. Address of the supervisory signal.
3. Address of the trouble-initiating device.
4. Loss of ac supply or loss of power.
5. Low battery.
6. Abnormal test signal.
7. Communication bus failure.

E. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.

F. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

2.13 DEVICE GUARDS

A. Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.

1. Factory fabricated and furnished by manufacturer of device.
2. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NFPA 72 for installation of fire-alarm equipment.

B. Equipment Mounting: Install fire-alarm control unit on concrete base with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Install seismic bracing. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
3. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

C. Equipment Mounting: Install fire-alarm control unit on finished floor with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
2. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

D. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:

1. Comply with NFPA 72, "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for smoke-detector spacing.
2. Comply with NFPA 72, "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for heat-detector spacing.
3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet
4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Appendix A or Appendix B in NFPA 72.
5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 3 feet from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture.

E. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct.

F. Heat Detectors in Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location.

G. Single-Station Smoke Detectors: Where more than one smoke alarm is installed within a dwelling or suite, they shall be connected so that the operation of any smoke alarm causes the alarm in all smoke alarms to sound.

H. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install near each smoke detector and each sprinkler water-flow switch and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.

I. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille.

J. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches below the ceiling.

K. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

L. Fire-Alarm Control Unit: Surface mounted, with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

M. Annunciator: Install with top of panel not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.

1. Verify that hardware and devices are NRTL listed for use with fire-alarm system in this Section before making connections.

B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 3 feet from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
1. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
2. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
3. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.
4. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
5. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
6. Supervisory connections at low-air-pressure switch of each dry-pipe sprinkler system.
7. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt trip breaker.
8. Supervisory connections at fire-pump power failure including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
9. Supervisory connections at fire-pump engine control panel.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.4 GROUNDING

A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field tests shall be witnessed by Architect.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

D. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.

   a. Inspection shall be based on completed Record Drawings and system documentation that is required by NFPA 72 in its "Completion Documents, Preparation" Table in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter.
   b. Comply with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" Table in the "Inspection" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.

2. System Testing: Comply with "Test Methods" Table in the "Testing" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.

E. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.

F. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

H. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

I. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

END OF SECTION 283111

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 311000 - SITE CLEARING AND EROSION CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Protecting existing vegetation to remain.
2. Removing existing vegetation.
3. Clearing and grubbing.
4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
5. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
6. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities.
7. Temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated surface-soil layer containing organic matter and sand, silt, and clay particles; friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other nonsoil materials.

B. Tree Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and defined by the drip line of individual trees or the perimeter drip line of groups of trees, unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

A. Except for stripped topsoil to be stockpiled on site or other materials indicated to remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Photographs or videotape, sufficiently detailed, of existing conditions of trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.

B. Record drawings, according to Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents," identifying and accurately locating capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Authorities Having Jurisdiction: Conform to requirements of all authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Where conflicts exist between the requirements of the Contract Documents and those of authorities having jurisdiction, the higher quality or more restrictive requirement shall apply.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.

1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Salvable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises where indicated.

C. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing. Do not proceed with operations until existing utilities are located and clearly marked.

D. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures are in place.

E. Suspend clearing operations during wet conditions unless otherwise directed by Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

A. Satisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 Soil Classification Groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM, AASHTO M 145 Soil Classification Groups A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5, and A-3, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.

1. Obtain approved borrow soil materials off-site when satisfactory soil materials are not available on-site.

2.2 EROSION CONTROL MATERIALS

A. Silt Fence Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for silt fence applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 20 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:

1. Grab Tensile Strength: 100 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
2. Permittivity: 0.05 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
3. UV Stability: 70 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

B. Silt Fence Post: Steel, either integrally manufactured with the silt fence as part of a complete system or separately provided. Where separately provided, the following shall apply:

1. Steel posts: T or U cross-sectional shape. Minimum weight 1.3 pounds per foot. Minimum length 5 feet. Shall have projections to aid in fastening wire of fabric. Shall have a metal plate welded near the bottom such that, when driven to proper depth, it will be below ground and will aid stability.
2. Fasteners: Galvanized wire or other fasteners as required for a secure installation.
3. Maximum Spacing: 6 feet on center.

C. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:

1. Grab Tensile Strength: 200 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
2. Sewn Seam Strength: 180 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
3. Puncture Strength: 80 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
4. Apparent Opening Size: No. 60 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
5. Permittivity: 0.1 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
6. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

D. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:

1. Grab Tensile Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
2. Sewn Seam Strength: 80 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
3. Puncture Strength: 40 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
4. Apparent Opening Size: No. 40 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
5. Permittivity: 0.2 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
6. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

E. Woven Wire Fabric: ASTM A 116, Class1, wire and opening sizes as indicated.

F. Erosion Control Aggregate: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of crushed gravel or stone, in accordance with the gradation requirements indicated on the Drawings and the material requirements of Section 1005 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Material shall be free of shale, clay, friable material, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, organic material, or other deleterious matter.

G. Riprap: Broken, irregular size and shape, graded stone conforming to Section 1042 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.
1. Gradation: Class 1.
2. Broken concrete shall not be used

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.

B. Locate and clearly flag trees and vegetation to remain or to be relocated.

C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.

1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

A. Provide temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to a Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP), specific to the site, that complies with EPA 832/R-92-005 or the requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.

B. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion and sedimentation control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.

C. When directed by Architect, remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

3.3 TREE PROTECTION

A. Do not excavate within tree protection zones, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Where excavation for new construction is required within tree protection zones, hand clear and excavate to minimize damage to root systems. Use narrow-tine spading forks, comb soil to expose roots, and cleanly cut roots as close to excavation as possible.

1. Cover exposed roots with burlap and water regularly.
2. Temporarily support and protect roots from damage until they are permanently redirected and covered with soil.
3. Coat cut faces of roots more than 1-1/2 inchesin diameter with an emulsified asphalt or other approved coating formulated for use on damaged plant tissues.
4. Backfill with soil as soon as possible.

C. Repair or replace trees and vegetation indicated to remain that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Architect.

1. Employ an arborist, licensed in jurisdiction where Project is located, to submit details of proposed repairs and to repair damage to trees and shrubs.
2. Replace trees that cannot be repaired and restored to full-growth status, as determined by Architect.

3.4 UTILITIES

A. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utilities indicated to be removed.

1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.

B. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner, Architect and operating utility not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without the permission of all of the parties noted above.

C. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.

D. Fill depressions caused by utility removal operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated and is to be performed immediately. Do not leave depressions overnight.

1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.5 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, grass, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.

1. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
2. Cut minor roots and branches of trees indicated to remain in a clean and careful manner where such roots and branches obstruct installation of new construction.
3. Completely remove stumps and roots greater than 1” in diameter, obstructions, and debris extending to a depth of 24 inches below exposed subgrade.
4. Use only hand methods for grubbing within tree protection zone.

B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated and is to be performed immediately. Do not leave depressions overnight.

1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.6 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.

B. Strip topsoil to whatever depths are encountered in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.

1. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.

C. Stockpile topsoil materials away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.

1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to 10 feet..
2. Do not stockpile topsoil within tree protection zones.
3. Dispose of excess topsoil as specified for surplus soil material in disposal article below.

3.7 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction.

B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.

1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut length of existing pavement to remain before removing existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain to prevent corrosion.

3.8 DISPOSAL

A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
1. Do not burn or chip demolished or waste materials on Owner’s property.
2. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other nonrecyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials and transport them to recycling facilities.

END OF SECTION 311000

SECTION 312000 - EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Two geotechnical reports have been prepared for the site by ECS Southeast, LLP and dated Nov. 4, 2021 and Jan. 11, 2022 respectively.

1. Copies of the geotechnical reports shall be provided upon request.
2. All Work shall be performed in accordance with the recommendations of the report and any subsequent recommendations by geotechnical engineer.
3. Where material or installation requirements differ from those of this specification, those of the report or subsequent recommendations by the geotechnical engineer shall govern.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, lawns and grasses, and exterior plants.
2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
3. Drainage course for slabs-on-grade.
4. Base course for concrete walks and pavements.
5. Base course for asphalt paving.
6. Base course for grass paving system.
7. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
8. Excavating and backfilling trenches and pits for buried utilities.

1.3 ALLOWANCES

A. Allowances for earth moving are included in Division 01 Section "Allowances."

B. Dimensions of excavations shall be established and accepted by Architect prior to initiation of Work. Quantity for payment shall be based on calculation of volume using accepted dimensions. Volumes documented by truck counts are not acceptable.

C. Volumes shall be based on in-situ measure. Swell factors for expansion of excavated material will not be accepted.

D. Payment shall not be made without prior acceptance of proposed work by the Architect, or for quantities in excess of the quantity accepted by the Architect.

E. Allowance No. 1: General Mass Rock Excavation and Disposal Offsite

1. Volume of naturally occurring in-situ rock actually removed, as defined for bulk rock excavation in Article 1.4 below, measured in original position, but not to exceed the following:

a. Excavations more than 10 feetin width and more than 30 feet in length.
b. 24 inchesoutside of concrete forms other than at footings.
c. 12 inchesoutside of concrete forms at footings.
d. 6 inchesoutside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
e. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
f. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.

2. Excavated rock shall be removed from the site and legally disposed.

F. Allowance No. 2: Utility Trench Rock Excavation and Disposal Offsite

1. Volume of naturally occurring in-situ rock actually removed, as defined for excavation of footings, trenches, and pits in Article 1.4 below, measured in original position, but not to exceed the following:

a. Excavations less than 10 feetin width, regardless of length.
b. 24 inchesoutside of concrete forms other than at footings.
c. 12 inchesoutside of concrete forms at footings.
d. 6 inchesoutside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
e. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
f. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
g. 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

2. Excavated rock shall be removed from the site and legally disposed.

G. Allowance No. 3: Structural Fill/Backfill (Imported) In-Place On-Site.

1. Volume of Satisfactory Soil (imported from offsite) as defined in Article 2.1 below.
2. Where utilized to replace excavated unsuitable material, replace as quickly as practical after excavation, but not before review and acceptance of excavation by Architect.
3. Volume for payment shall be the measured in place after completion of required compaction.

H. Allowance No. 4: Unsuitable Soil Removal and Disposal Offsite

1. Volume of naturally occurring in-situ unsatisfactory soil removed, measured in original position.
2. Excavated unsatisfactory soil shall be removed from the site and legally disposed.

I. Allowance No. 6: No. 57 Washed Crushed Stone for Foundation Bridging of Alluvial Soils

1. Volume of naturally or artificially graded crushed stone in accordance with the gradation requirements for Coarse Aggregate #57 as defined in Section 1005 and 1006 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.
2. Volume for payment shall be the measured in place after completion of required consolidation.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.

B. Base Course: Course placed between the subgrade and paving materials[(or a choker course, where applicable)].

C. Bedding Course: Course placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.

D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.

E. Drainage Course: Course supporting a slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.

F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.

1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices.
2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10 feetin width and more than 30 feet in length.
3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, shall be without additional compensation.

G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.

H. Filter aggregate: Aggregate backfill material that acts as a filter medium in subdrainage systems.

I. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed 1 cu. yd. for bulk excavation or 3/4 cu. yd. for footing, trench, and pit excavation that cannot be removed by rock excavating equipment equivalent to the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted:

1. Excavation of Footings, Trenches, and Pits: Late-model, track-mounted hydraulic excavator; equipped with a 42-inch-wide, maximum, short-tip-radius rock bucket; rated at not less than 138-hp flywheel power with bucket-curling force of not less than 28,090 lbf and stick-crowd force of not less than 18,650 lbf; measured according to SAE J-1179.
2. Bulk Excavation: Late-model, track-mounted loader; rated at not less than 210-hp flywheel power and developing a minimum of 48,510-lbf breakout force with a general-purpose bare bucket; measured according to SAE J-732.

J. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.

K. Subgrade: Soil surface or elevation remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below base course, subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials, as applicable.

L. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Geotextile.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated:

1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487 of each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.

a. For locations within areas of DOT jurisdiction, perform testing in accordance with applicable DOT standards and procedures.

2. Laboratory compaction curves according to [ASTM D 698] [ASTM D 1557] for each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.

a. For locations within areas of DOT jurisdiction, provide laboratory compaction curves in accordance with applicable DOT standards and procedures.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Authorities Having Jurisdiction: Conform to requirements of all authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Where conflicts exist between the requirements of the Contract Documents and those of authorities having jurisdiction, the higher quality or more restrictive requirement shall apply.

a. For locations within areas of DOT jurisdiction, perform all work, testing, and inspections in accordance with applicable DOT standards and procedures.

B. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct soil materials and rock-definition testing, as documented according to ASTM D 3740 and ASTM E 548.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted in writing by Architect and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated.

1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
3. Contact utility-locator service for area where Project is located before excavating.

B. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies to shut off services if lines are active.

C. Where Sandy Gravel Base Course (SGBC) is indicated, plan construction to mitigate potential contamination with sediment from adjoining grounds and vehicular traffic.

1. Where practicable, delay installation until as late as possible in the construction sequence to avoid potential for contamination.
2. Implement and maintain protection measures, as indicated in the “Protection” article below, immediately after installation is complete.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.

B. Satisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 Soil Classification Groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM, AASHTO M 145 Soil Classification Groups A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5, and A-3, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.

1. For locations within areas of DOT jurisdiction, Satisfactory Soils shall be as defined by Standard Specifications for that DOT for the applicable work classification.

C. Unsatisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 Soil Classification Groups GC, SC, CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT, AASHTO M 145 Soil Classification Groups A-2-6, A-2-7, A-4, A-5, A-6, and A-7 , or a combination of these groups.

1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not brought to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction. These soils are not eligible for compensation under any Unit Price provisions for removal of unsatisfactory soil.

D. “Skinned” Clay for Ball Field Infields: Premixed and processed soil mixture, free of rock or gravel in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.

1. The mix shall consist of the following percentages:

   a. 60% sand (Fine Aggregate 2S per Section 1005 of NCDOT Standard Specs)
   b. 30% clay
   c. 10% silt

2. A ¼” depth of vitrified clay soil conditioner such as TurFace, Terra-Green, Pave’ Rouge, or Diamond Pro will be applied and uniformly incorporated into surface after placement and fine grading is complete.
3. Mixture shall be red in color.

E. Clay Mix for Pitchers Mound and Home Plate Area: Premixed and processed soil mixture, free of rock or gravel in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.

1. The mix shall consist of the following percentages:

   a. 50% sand (Fine Aggregate 2S per Section 1005 of NCDOT Standard Specs)
   b. 40% clay
   c. 10% silt

2. Mixture shall be red in color.

2.2 AGGREGATE MATERIALS

A. All sand and aggregate materials shall be free of shale, clay, friable material, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, organic material, or other deleterious matter.

B. Aggregate materials shall not be composed of marine limestone or slag unless specifically allowed in the individual paragraph(s) below.

C. Graded Aggregate Base Course (GABC): Naturally or artificially graded crushed stone in accordance with the gradation requirements for Coarse Aggregate ABC as defined in Sections 1005, 1006 and 1010 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

D. Sandy Gravel Base Course (SGBC): Naturally or artificially graded mixture of sand and crushed gravel or stone, in accordance with the following gradation requirements:

Sieve	% Passing
1”	100
3/4”	90-100
3/8”	70-80
#4	55-70
#10	45-55
#40	25-35
#200	3-8

E. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded crushed stone in accordance with the gradation requirements for Coarse Aggregate #57 as defined in Section 1005 and 1006 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. For locations within areas of NCDOT jurisdiction, bedding for drainage pipe culverts shall be Class II-Type 1 or Class III-Type 1 select materials in accordance with Section 1016-3 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

F. Drainage Course: Naturally or artificially graded crushed stone in accordance with the gradation requirements for Coarse Aggregate #57 as defined in Section 1005 and 1006 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

G. Filter Aggregate: Naturally or artificially graded crushed stone in accordance with the gradation requirements for Coarse Aggregate #57 as defined in Section 1005 and 1006 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

H. Sand: Natural or manufactured sand in accordance with the gradation requirements for Fine Aggregate 2S or 2MS as defined in Section 1005 and 1006 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

2.3 GEOTEXTILES

A. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:

1. Type 1 as defined in Table 1056-1, Section 1056 of NCDOT Standard Specs.
2. Grab Tensile Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
3. Puncture Strength: 60 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
4. Trapezoidal Tear: 40 lbf; ASTM D-4533
5. Apparent Opening Size: No. 70 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
6. Permittivity: 2.2 second-1, minimum; ASTM D 4491.

7. UV Stability: 70 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.
8. Water Flow Rate: 150 gal/min/ft^2; ASTM D-4491

B. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 15 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:

1. Type 4 as defined in Table 1056-1, Section 1056 of NCDOT Standard Specs.
2. Grab Tensile Strength: 200 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
3. Mullen Burst: 400 psi; ASTM D-3786
4. Puncture Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
5. Trapezoidal Tear: 75 lbf; ASTM D-4533
6. Apparent Opening Size: No. 50 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
7. Permittivity: 0.05 second-1, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
8. UV Stability: 70 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.
9. Water Flow Rate: 5 gal/min/ft^2; ASTM D-4491

2.4 PIPE DETECTION MATERIALS

A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inchesdeep; colored as follows:

1. Red: Electric.
2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
4. Blue: Water systems.
5. Green: Sewer systems.

B. Locator Wire In addition to warning tape where required by operating utility.

1. Material, Gauge and Insulation: as required by operating utility.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.

B. Preparation of subgrade for earthwork operations including removal of vegetation, topsoil, debris, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface is specified in Section titled "Site Clearing."

C. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified in Section titled "Site Clearing," during earthwork operations.

3.2 DEWATERING

A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.

B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.

1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
2. Where required, install a dewatering system to keep subgrades dry and convey ground water away from excavations. Maintain until dewatering is no longer required.

3.3 EXPLOSIVES

A. Explosives: Do not use explosives.

3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

A. Classified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations. Material to be excavated will be classified as earth and rock. Do not excavate rock until it has been classified and cross sectioned by Architect, based on the recommendations of the Geotechnical Testing Agency. The Contract Sum will be adjusted for rock excavation according to Allowances included in the Contract Documents. Changes in the Contract time may be authorized for rock excavation.

1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials or rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials. The Contract Sum will be adjusted for replacement of unsatisfactory soils according to Allowances included in the Contract Documents.
2. Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; together with soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.
    a. Intermittent drilling, ram hammering, or ripping of material not classified as rock excavation is earth excavation.
3. Rock excavation includes removal and disposal of rock. Remove rock to lines and subgrade elevations indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:
    a. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
    b. 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
    c. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
    d. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
    e. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs on grade.
    f. 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.

1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
2. Pile Foundations (if applicable): Stop excavations 6 to 12 inches above bottom of pile cap before piles are placed. After piles have been driven, remove loose and displaced material. Excavate to final grade, leaving solid base to receive concrete pile caps.
3. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

3.7 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.

1. Beyond building perimeter and where specific gradients, lines, depths, and elevations are not indicated, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line or a minimum depth of 36” below finished grade, whichever is greater.

B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Clearance: 12 inches each side of pipe or conduit or as indicated.

C. Trench bottoms where bedding course is indicated: Excavate trenches 4 inches deeper than bottom of pipe elevation to allow for bedding course, unless otherwise indicated.

1. See “Utility Trench Backfill” paragraph below for bedding course requirements.

D. Trench bottoms where no bedding course is indicated: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.

1. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches in nominal diameter and flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
2. For pipes and conduit 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
3. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

3.8 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

A. Notify Architect when excavations have reached required subgrade.

B. If Architect, based on the recommendations of the Geotechnical Testing Agency, determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material.

1. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Allowances included in the Contract Documents.

C. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades. Unless otherwise directed by Architect, based on the recommendations of the Geotechnical Testing Agency (typically, in order to avoid over-compaction of porous pavement subgrades) perform proof-rolls as follows:

1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction and, where dimensions permit, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
2. Proof-roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons.
3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, based on the recommendations of the Geotechnical Testing Agency, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.

D. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, based on the recommendations of the Geotechnical Testing Agency, without additional compensation.

3.9 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations, wall footings, utility pipe, or other construction as directed by Architect, based on the recommendations of the Geotechnical Testing Agency.

3.10 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.

1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.11 BACKFILL

A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following, as applicable:

1. Making arrangements for required testing and evaluation of subdrainage requirements by Geotechnical Testing Agency.
2. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
3. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.

4. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
5. Removing concrete formwork.
6. Removing trash and debris.
7. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
8. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.

B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

C. Comply with the requirements indicated in the paragraph below titled “Compaction of Soil Backfills and Fills”.

3.12 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

A. For locations within areas of NCDOT jurisdiction, bedding and backfill for drainage pipe culverts shall be in accordance with Sections 235 and 300 and of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

B. Bedding Course: Where indicated or required by agency having jurisdiction, place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.

1. Unless otherwise indicated or required by agency having jurisdiction, bedding course shall be required for the following pipe materials:

    a. Corrugated High Density Polyethylene Pipe (AASHTO M 252M)
    b. Corrugated Steel Pipe (ASTM A 760)
    c. Gravity Flow Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe (ASTM D 3034)
    d. Gravity Flow Ductile Iron Pipe (ASTM A 746)
    e. Elliptical Concrete Pipe (ASTM C 507)
    f. Concrete Box Culvert (ASTM C 1433)

C. Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches of bottom of footings as directed by Architect, based on the recommendations of the Geotechnical Testing Agency.

D. Initial Backfill—Bedding Material: Where indicated or required by agency having jurisdiction, place and compact initial backfill of bedding course to a height of 2 inches over the utility pipe or conduit.

1. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

E. Initial Backfill—Satisfactory Soil: Where no other initial backfill is indicated, place and compact initial backfill of satisfactory soil to a height of 6 inches over the utility pipe or conduit.

1. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit.
2. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

F. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while installing and removing shoring and bracing.

G. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil, in accordance with requirements for Backfill as indicated above, to final subgrade elevation.

H. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

I. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

J. Comply with the requirements indicated in the paragraph below titled “Compaction of Soil Backfills and Fills”.

3.13 SOIL FILL

A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.

B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:

1. Make arrangements for required testing by Geotechnical Testing Agency as required. Do not place subsequent layers until required testing is complete and acceptable results have been obtained and documented.
2. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
3. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
4. Under steps and ramps, use satisfactory soil material.
5. Under building slabs, use satisfactory soil material.
6. Under footings and foundations, use satisfactory soil material.

C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

D. Do not place soil fill on yielding or unapproved subgrade.

3.14 “SKINNED” CLAY FOR BALL FIELD INFIELD, PITCHER’S MOUND, AND HOME PLATE AREA

A. Lightly scarify prepared subgrade so clay soil mixture will bond to subgrade surface.

B. Place and compact clay soil mixture to required slope and elevations.

1. Minimum depth of soil clay mixture shall be 6 inches.

C. Finish grade shall be within a plus or minus ½ inch tolerance:

3.15 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.

1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry density.

3.16 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

A. For locations within areas of NCDOT jurisdiction, soil backfills and fills shall be in accordance with Section 235 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

B. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

1. Make arrangements for required testing by Geotechnical Testing Agency as required. Do not place subsequent layers until required testing is complete and acceptable results have been obtained and documented.

C. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.

D. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry density according to ASTM D 698:

1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 100 percent.
2. Under walkways, compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
3. Under lawn or unpaved areas, compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 90 percent.
4. For utility trenches under lawns or unpaved areas, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 90 percent. For all other areas compact to the level required for that area.
5. For porous pavements, compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material to the level specified by the Architect, based on the recommendations of the Geotechnical Testing Agency. Generally, this level will be that required to provide a level of permeability and stability that is equivalent to the original, undisturbed subgrade soil.

3.17 GRADING

A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.

1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.

B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:

1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
2. Walks and Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.

C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

3.18 SUBSURFACE DRAINAGE

A. Subsurface Drainage (if applicable): Specified in Section titled "Subdrainage."

B. Make arrangements for evaluation of subsurface drainage requirements by Geotechnical Testing Agency as required.

C. If Architect, based on the recommendations of the Geotechnical Testing Agency, determines that subsurface drainage requirements differ from those indicated in the Contract Documents, install revised subsurface drainage as directed.

D. Authorized adjustments of Subsurface Drainage will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices. If Contract does not provide units prices for Subsurface Drainage, adjustment will be based on mutually acceptable pricing established prior to the initiation of the Work.

3.19 GRADED AGGREGATE BASE COURSE (GABC)

A. For locations within areas of NCDOT jurisdiction, base course installation, compaction and testing shall be in accordance with Section 520 and other applicable Sections of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

B. Place GABC on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

C. Immediately prior to placing GABC, proof-roll subgrade as directed in the “Subgrade Inspection” paragraph above. Do not proceed with placement of GABC until subgrade is approved.

D. On prepared and approved subgrade, place GABC under pavements as follows:

1. Make arrangements for required testing by Geotechnical Testing Agency.
2. Where indicated, install separation geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
3. Place GABC material over subgrade under pavements as indicated.
4. Shape GABC to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
5. Place GABC 8 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
6. Place GABC that exceeds 8 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 8 inches thick or less than 4 inches thick.

    a. Do not place subsequent layers until required testing is complete and acceptable results have been obtained and documented.

7. Compact GABC at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 100 percent of maximum dry density according to ASTM D 1557.

E. Shoulders: Where installation is not bordered by concrete curb, walks or alternate confinement system, place shoulders along edges of GABC to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each base layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry density according to ASTM D 698.

3.20 SANDY GRAVEL BASE COURSE (SGBC)

A. Place SGBC on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. Immediately prior to placing SGBC, proof-roll subgrade as directed in the “Subgrade Inspection” paragraph above. Do not proceed with placement of SGBC until subgrade is approved.

C. On prepared and approved subgrade, place SGBC under pavements as follows:

1. Make arrangements for required testing by Geotechnical Testing Agency.
2. Where indicated, install separation geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
3. Place SGBC material over subgrade under pavements as indicated.
4. Shape SGBC to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
5. Place SGBC 8 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
6. Place SGBC that exceeds 8 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 8 inches thick or less than 4 inches thick.
   a. Do not place subsequent layers until required testing is complete and acceptable results have been obtained and documented.
7. Compact SGBC at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry density according to ASTM D 1557.

D. Shoulders: Where installation is not bordered by concrete curb, walks or alternate confinement system, place shoulders along edges of SGBC to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each base layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry density according to ASTM D 698.

3.21 DRAINAGE COURSE

A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. Immediately prior to placing drainage course, proof-roll subgrade as directed in the “Subgrade Inspection” paragraph above. Do not proceed with placement of GABC until subgrade is approved.

C. On prepared and approved subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:

1. Make arrangements for observation of consolidation efforts by Geotechnical Testing Agency.
2. Where indicated, install subdrainage geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
3. Place drainage course 6 inches or less in consolidated thickness in a single layer.
4. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches in consolidated thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no consolidated layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
5. Consolidate each layer of drainage course with vibratory roller or plate compactor until aggregate appears to be completely consolidated and no additional settlement or consolidation is apparent during a final pass.
6. Protect drainage course from displacement by traffic until subsequent layer or pavement course is installed. Where drainage course is displaced, re-consolidate before placement of subsequent layers or slab-on-grade.

D. Shoulders: Where installation is not bordered by concrete foundation walls or alternate confinement system, place shoulders along edges of drainage course to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches wide, of satisfactory soil materials and

compact simultaneously with each drainage course layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry density according to ASTM D 698.

3.22 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Geotechnical Testing Agency: Contractual responsibilities for testing are identified in Division 1 Section “Quality Requirements”. Responsible party will engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.

B. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports in accordance with requirements of International Building Code Chapter 1704.7.

1. Soils: Verify site preparation complies with approved soils report.
2. Placement and Compaction: Verify placement and compaction of fill materials comply with approved soils report.
3. Dry-Density: Verify dry-density of compacted fill complies with approved soils report.

C. Allow Geotechnical Testing Agency to inspect and test subgrades, each fill or backfill layer, and each base course layer as applicable. Proceed with subsequent earthwork only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.

D. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect, based on the recommendations of the Geotechnical Testing Agency.

E. Geotechnical Testing Agency will test compaction of soils and base course in place according to ASTM D 1556 or ASTM D 2922 as applicable, except for locations within areas of NCDOT jurisdiction which shall be tested according to applicable NCDOT procedures and rates.

1. Unless otherwise indicated or required by NCDOT or other authorities having jurisdiction, tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:

a. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade, each compacted fill and backfill layer, and each base course layer, at least 1 test for every 5000 sq. ft or less of paved area or building slab, but in no case fewer than 3 tests.
b. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least 1 test for each 100 feet or less of wall length, but no fewer than 2 tests.
c. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least 1 test for each 300 feet or less of trench length, but no fewer than 2 tests.

F. When Goetechnical Testing Agency reports that subgrades, fills, backfills, or base course have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.23 PROTECTION

A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.

B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.

1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.

C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.

1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

A. Protect SGBC installations from deposition of sediments from adjoining grounds and vehicular traffic.

1. Install and maintain erosion control measures as necessary, at boundaries of installations, to prevent migration of sediment onto the base course surface.
2. Erect and maintain barricades to prevent construction traffic on the base course surface.
3. Do not allow tracking of mud or debris onto the pavement surface by any vehicle.
4. If deposition of sediment on the base course surface is noted, immediately contact Architect and request instructions for cleaning and repair. Do not delay cleaning efforts as subsequent rainfall events will wash sediments into lower levels of the base course and worsen potential damage.
5. Do not use SGBC installations as construction access roads without prior approval of Architect. If approval is received, implement, monitor, and maintain any specified protection measures.

3.24 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Disposal: Unless directed to stockpile onsite, remove surplus satisfactory and unsatisfactory soil and legally dispose of it off Owner's property. Remove waste material, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312000

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 313116 - TERMITE CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Soil treatment.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include the EPA-Registered Label for termiticide products.
2. Include certificate of registration withNorth Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services Structural Pest Control Division (NCDOA).

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of termite control product.

C. Soil Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:

1. Date and time of application.
2. Moisture content of soil before application.
3. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
4. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
5. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
6. Areas of application.
7. Water source for application.

D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A specialist who is licensed according to regulations of authorities having jurisdiction to apply termite control treatment and products in jurisdiction where Project is located and who employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer to install manufacturer's products.

1. Installer shall be licensed as a Pest Control Operator (PCO) by NCDOA.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Soil Treatment:

1. Environmental Limitations: To ensure penetration, do not treat soil that is water saturated or frozen. Do not treat soil while precipitation is occurring. Comply with requirements of the EPA-Registered Label and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Related Work: Coordinate soil treatment application with excavating, filling, grading, and concreting operations. Treat soil under footings, grade beams, and ground-supported slabs before construction.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Soil Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work consisting of applied soil termiticide treatment will prevent infestation of subterranean termites, including Formosan termites (Coptotermes). If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.

1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain termite control products from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 SOIL TREATMENT

1. Termiticide: EPA-Registered termiticide acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution formulated to prevent termite infestation. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum termiticide concentration allowed for each specific use, according to product's EPA-Registered Label. Use compatible dye in termiticide to provide visible evidence of treatment.
    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
        1) BASF; Thermidor.
        2) Bayer Environmental Science.
        3) FMC Specialty Products.
        4) Syngenta.
2. Service Life of Treatment: Soil treatment termiticide that is effective for not less than three years against infestation of subterranean termites.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for moisture content of soil per termiticide label, interfaces with earthwork, slab and foundation work, landscaping, utility installation, and other conditions affecting performance of termite control.

B. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. General: Prepare work areas according to the requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and according to manufacturer's written instructions before beginning application and installation of termite control treatment(s). Remove extraneous sources of wood cellulose and other edible materials, such as wood debris, tree stumps and roots, stakes, formwork, and construction waste wood from soil within and around foundations.

B. Soil Treatment Preparation: Remove foreign matter and impermeable soil materials that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated, except previously compacted areas under slabs and footings. Termiticides may be applied before placing compacted fill under slabs if recommended in writing by termiticide manufacturer.

1. Fit filling hose connected to water source at the site with a backflow preventer, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 APPLYING SOIL TREATMENT

A. Application: Mix soil treatment termiticide solution to a uniform consistency. Distribute treatment uniformly. Apply treatment at the product's EPA-Registered Label volume and rate for maximum specified concentration of termiticide to the following so that a continuous horizontal and vertical termiticidal barrier or treated zone is established around and under building construction.

1. Slabs-on-Grade and Basement Slabs: Under ground-supported slab construction, including footings, building slabs, and attached slabs as an overall treatment. Treat soil materials before concrete footings and slabs are placed.
2. Foundations: Soil adjacent to and along the entire inside perimeter of foundation walls; along both sides of interior partition walls; around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating the slab; around interior column footers, piers, and chimney bases; and along the entire outside perimeter, from grade to bottom of footing.
3. Crawlspaces: Soil under and adjacent to foundations. Treat adjacent areas, including around entrance platform, porches, and equipment bases. Apply overall treatment only where attached concrete platform and porches are on fill or ground.
4. Masonry: Treat voids.
5. Penetrations: At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs and below-grade walls will be penetrated.

B. Post warning signs in areas of application.

C. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, grading, landscaping, or other construction activities following application.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Avoid disturbance of treated soil after application. Keep off treated areas until completely dry.

B. Protect termiticide solution dispersed in treated soils and fills from being diluted by exposure to water spillage or weather until ground-supported slabs are installed. Use waterproof barrier according to EPA-Registered Label instructions.

3.5 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of termite-control-treatment Installer. Include quarterly maintenance as required for proper performance according to the product's EPA-Registered Label and manufacturer's written instructions. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

B. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: Provide from termite-control-treatment Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard yearly (or other period) maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.

1. Include annual inspection for termite activity and effectiveness of termite treatment according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 313116

SECTION 321216 - ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
2. Pavement-marking.
3. Wheel stops.

1.3 DEFINITION

A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 8 for definitions of terms.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Material Test Reports: For each paving material.

B. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Authorities Having Jurisdiction: Conform to requirements of all authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Where conflicts exist between the requirements of the Contract Documents and those of authorities having jurisdiction, the higher quality or more restrictive requirement shall apply.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of the North Carolina Department of Transportation for asphalt paving work.

1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1. Review methods and procedures related to hot-mix asphalt paving including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Review proposed sources of paving materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt.
b. Review condition of subgrade and preparatory work.
c. Review requirements for protecting paving work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for remainder of construction period.
d. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pavement-marking materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and type of material, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.

B. Store pavement-marking materials in a clean, dry, protected location within temperature range required by manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

1. Where Work activities encroach into public rights-of-way, provide traffic control to maintain safe transit of work area by vehicular and pedestrian traffic.

a. All traffic control shall be in accordance with the requirements of the authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is frozen, wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the conditions defined in Section 610-4 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specification for Roads and Structures are not met.

C. Pavement-Marking: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and in accordance with the temperature and seasonal limitations defined in Section 1205 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specification for Roads and Structures. Do not apply pavement markings if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate drying.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASPHALT PAVING MIXES

A. Prime Coat: Asphalt binder or emulsified asphalt in accordance with Sections 600. 1020-5 and other applicable Sections of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

B. Tack Coat: Asphalt binder or emulsified asphalt in accordance with Sections 605, 1020-2, 1020-3 and other applicable Sections of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

C. Intermediate (Binder) Course: Asphaltic Concrete Intermediate Course Type I19.0C in accordance with Sections 610 and other applicable Sections of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

D. Asphalt Surface Course: Asphaltic Concrete Surface Course TypeS9.5B in accordance with Sections 610 and other applicable Sections of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

2.2 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

2.3 PAVEMENT MARKINGS

A. Pavement-Marking Paint: Reflectorized, heavy metals free, fast drying, waterborne paint for pavement markings in accordance with Section 1087 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Color: As indicated.
2. Glass Beads: as indicated in NCDOT Standard Spec Section 1087-4.

B. Thermoplastic Pavement Markings: Reflectorized mixture of thermoplastic binder and spherical glass beads in accordance with Section 1087 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Color: As indicated.
2. Glass Beads: as indicated in NCDOT Standard Spec Section 1087-4.

2.4 WHEEL STOPS

A. Wheel Stops: Precast, air-entrained concrete, 2500-psi minimum compressive strength, 5 inches high by 9 inches wide by 72 inches long. Provide chamfered corners, drainage slots on underside, and holes for anchoring to substrate.

1. Dowels: Galvanized steel, diameter 1/8” smaller than anchor holes provided in wheel stop, 24-inch minimum length.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that the base course has been installed in accordance with the requirements of Division 31 Section “Earth Moving”, and that its dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.

B. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared base course is ready to receive paving.

B. Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted graded-aggregate base course at the rates indicated below. Apply enough material to penetrate and seal but not flood surface. Allow prime coat to cure.

1. Perform work in conformance with applicable subsections of Section 600 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.
2. Apply to base course at a rate of 0.25 to 0.30 gal./sq. yd.
3. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
4. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.

C. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at rate indicated for substrate in Section 605-7 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Perform work in conformance with applicable subsections of Section 605 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.
2. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
3. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

3.3 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING

A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.

1. Perform work in conformance with applicable subsections of Sections 609, 610 and 620 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.
2. Place hot-mix asphalt intermediate (binder) course to the total thicknesses indicated in lifts not to exceed 4 inches in thickness.
3. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course to the total thicknesses indicated in lifts not to exceed 3 inches in thickness.
4. Spread mix at temperature of not less than 250 deg F nor more than 325 deg F.
5. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
6. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.

B. Place paving in a minimum number of equal width consecutive strips, up to a maximum width of 12 feet for each strip.

1. Adjust width and number of strips as necessary to provide the minimum number while maintaining requirement for longitudinal joint spacing of successive courses as indicated below. Make adjustments in lower courses such that the top course will be applied using the minimum possible number of strips.
2. The width of each strip of the top course shall equal the width of the travel lane unless otherwise indicated.
3. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Complete a section of each asphalt course before beginning a succeeding course.

C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

3.4 JOINTS

A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.

1. Perform work in conformance with Sections 610-11 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.
2. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
3. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.
4. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches.
5. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time. Construct these joints using "papered" method according to NCDOT Standard Specifications.
6. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
7. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

3.5 COMPACTION

A. General: Begin compaction, starting at outside edges and joints, as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.

1. Perform work in conformance with Sections 610-10 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.
2. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.
3. Roll with an 8 to 12 ton tandem steel-wheel roller conforming to the requirements of Section 610-10 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.

C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:

1. Minimum Required Density: as indicated for the pavement mix type in Table 610-7 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications.

D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.

E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.

F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.

G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.

H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

3.6 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. For locations within areas of DOT jurisdiction, comply with finish and thickness tolerances as defined in Section 610 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures. For all other locations, comply with the following:

B. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:

1. Intermediate (Binder) Course: Plus or minus 1/4 inch.
2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.

C. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:

1. Intermediate (Binder) Course: 1/4 inch.
2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.
3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.

3.7 PAVEMENT MARKING

A. Do not apply pavement-markings until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.

B. Allow paving to age for 30 days before starting pavement marking.

C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.

D. Surface shall be dry and free of glaze, oil, dirt, grease or other foreign contaminants.

E. Apply paint with mechanical equipment for the application of asphalt paint in accordance with applicable subsections of Section 1205 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.
2. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet pavement markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal.

F. Apply thermoplastic pavement markings with mechanical equipment for the application of thermoplastic pavement markings in accordance with applicable subsections of Section 1205 of

the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a finished thickness of 90 mils.
2. Glass beads shall be mechanically applied to the surface of the thermoplastic material immediately after it is applied to the pavement surface and while it is still molten. Uniformly apply at a rate of 12 lb per 100 sq ft.

G. Apply to produce pavement markings of the dimensions indicated; which are straight or of uniform curvature; of consistent width; and with crisp, uniform, edges.

1. The finished line markings shall be free from waviness and the lateral deviations shall not exceed 2 inches in 15 feet.
2. No markings shall be less than the specified width.

3.8 WHEEL STOPS

A. Securely attach wheel stops to pavement with not less than two galvanized-steel dowels embedded at one-quarter to one-third points. Securely install dowels into pavement and bond to wheel stop. Recess head of dowel beneath top of wheel stop.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Contractual responsibilities for testing are identified in Division 1 Section “Quality Requirements”. Responsible party will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined by core samples in accordance with applicable subsections of Sections 609 and 610 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than 3 samples taken, except for locations within areas of DOT jurisdiction which shall be sampled according to applicable DOT rates.
2. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.

C. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.

D. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement in accordance with applicable subsections of Sections 609 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to applicable subsections of Section 609 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures., and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by nuclear gauge in accordance with NCDOT Specification Section 609, as applicable.

a. One test will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than 3 tests taken, except for locations within areas of DOT jurisdiction which shall be tested according to applicable DOT rates.

E. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

3.10 PROTECTION

A. Protect paving installations from deposition of sediments from adjoining grounds and vehicular traffic.

1. Install and maintain erosion control measures as necessary, at boundaries of paving installations, to prevent migration of sediment onto the pavement surface.
2. Where practicable, erect and maintain barricades to prevent construction traffic on the paving surface.
3. Do not allow tracking of mud or debris onto the pavement surface by any vehicle.
4. If deposition of sediment on the paving surface is noted, remove and clean pavement surface immediately. Do not delay cleaning efforts as subsequent rainfall events may worsen potential damage.

END OF SECTION 321216

SECTION 321313 - CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes exterior cement concrete pavement for the following:

1. Driveways and roadways.
2. Curbs and gutters.
3. Pavement markings.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control test reports.

B. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Authorities Having Jurisdiction: Conform to requirements of all authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Where conflicts exist between the requirements of the Contract Documents and those of authorities having jurisdiction, the higher quality or more restrictive requirement shall apply.

a. For locations within areas of DOT jurisdiction, perform all work, testing, and inspections in accordance with applicable DOT standards and procedures.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products who complies with the equipment, material and production requirements of Sections 700 and 1000 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

C. Concrete Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 and ASTM C 1077 to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.

D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

1. Where Work activities encroach into public rights-of-way, provide traffic control to maintain safe transit of work area by vehicular and pedestrian traffic.

a. All traffic control shall be in accordance with the requirements of the authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Environmental Limitations: Do not install concrete paving if subgrade is frozen, wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the ambient air temperature is below, or is expected to fall below, 40 deg F during the time of placement.

C. Pavement-Marking: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces; at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of at least 55 deg F, and not exceeding 95 deg F; and at a maximum relative of 85%. Do not apply pavement markings if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate drying.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FORMS

A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces.

1. Use flexible or curved forms for curves as necessary in order to prevent a chord effect in the alignment of the finished work.

B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: AASHTO M 55, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

B. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60; deformed.

C. Plain Steel Wire: AASHTO M 32, as drawn.

D. Joint Dowel Bars: Plain steel bars, AASHTO M 31, Grade 60. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

E. Tie Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.

F. Hook Bolts: ASTM A 307, Grade A, internally and externally threaded. Design hook-bolt joint assembly to hold coupling against pavement form and in position during concreting operations, and to permit removal without damage to concrete or hook bolt.

G. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete, and as follows:

1. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
2. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.

H. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid two-part epoxy repair coating, compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement.

I. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780.

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Pavement Class Portland Cement Concrete in accordance with Section 1000 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Design the mix to produce an average strength sufficient to indicate that a minimum strength of 650 psi in flexure and 3,500 psi in compression will be achieved in the field within 28 days.

B. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.

C. Admixtures: Air-entraining, accelerating, retarding, and water reducing admixtures shall be in accordance with Section 1000 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

2.4 CURING MATERIALS

A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 4, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing not less than 12 oz. per running yd. dry, based on 40 inch width.

B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film.

C. Water: Potable.

D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.

1. Products:

a. Axim Concrete Technologies; Cimfilm.
b. Burke by Edeco; BurkeFilm.
c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Aquafilm.
e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film.
f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucobar.
g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Vapor Aid.
h. Lambert Corporation; Lambco Skin.
i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-Con.

j. MBT Protection and Repair, ChemRex Inc.; Confilm.
k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Evapre.
l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
m. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Monofilm.
n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
o. Symons Corporation; Finishing Aid.

E. Clear Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.

1. Products:

a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
b. Burke by Edoko; Aqua Resin Cure.
c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; W.B. Resin Cure.
e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Kurez DR VOX.
g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 420.
h. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-Clear.
i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R.
j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100 Clear.
k. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Resin Cure E.
l. Symons Corporation; Resi-Chem Clear.
m. Tamms Industries Inc.; Horncure WB 30.

F. White Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B.

1. Products:

a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 WP WB.
b. Burke by Edoco; Resin Emulsion White.
c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure 2000.
d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; W.B. Resin Cure.
e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem White Pigmented Cure (J-10-W).
f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Kurez VOX White Pigmented.
g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 450.
h. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-White.
i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R-2.
j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1200-White.
k. Symons Corporation; Resi-Chem White.
l. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Horncure 200-W.

2.5 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Preformed Joint Filler: AASHTO M 153, preformed sponge rubber expansion joint filler.

1. Use only materials manufactured from rubber.
2. Use materials that require a load of not less than 340 kPa or greater than 5,200kPa to compress to 50% of its thickness when tested in accordance with AASHTO T 42.
3. Use materials that have a recovery of at least 70% when tested in accordance with AASHTO T 42.

B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

C. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to requirements, and as follows:

1. Types I and II, non-load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

2.6 PAVEMENT MARKINGS

A. Pavement-Marking Paint: Reflectorized, heavy metals free, fast drying, waterborne paint for pavement markings in accordance with Section 1087 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Color: As indicated.
2. Glass Beads: as indicated in NCDOT Standard Spec Section 1087-4.

B. Thermoplastic Pavement Markings: Reflectorized mixture of thermoplastic binder and spherical glass beads in accordance with Section 1087 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Color: As indicated.
2. Glass Beads: as indicated in NCDOT Standard Spec Section 1087-4.

2.7 WHEEL STOPS

A. Wheel Stops: Precast, air-entrained concrete, 2500-psi minimum compressive strength, 5 inches high by 9 inches wide by 72 inches long. Provide chamfered corners, drainage slots on underside, and holes for anchoring to substrate.

1. Dowels: Galvanized steel, diameter 1/8” smaller than anchor holes provided in wheel stop, 24-inch minimum length.

2.8 CONCRETE MIXTURES

A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to Section 1000 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete determined by either laboratory trial mixes.

1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete mixture designs for the trial batch method.

B. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:

1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 3,500 psi.
2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: in accordance with Section 1000-3 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.
3. Slump Limit: Maximum of 3 inches where placed by hand methods and 1.5 inches where placed by a fully mechanized paving train.

C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:

1. Air Content: 5 percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size

D. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to the requirements of Section 1000 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures as follows:

1. Fly Ash: not to exceed 30 percent.
2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: not to exceed 50 percent.

2.9 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix and deliver concrete materials and concrete according to Section 1000 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.

1. Conform to applicable weather and temperature requirements as indicated in Sections 700 and 1000 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.

B. For concrete curb and gutter and pavements to be subjected to vehicular traffic, proof-roll prepared subbase surface with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.

1. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
2. Proof-roll with a loaded 10-wheel tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons.
3. Subbase with soft spots and areas of pumping or rutting exceeding depth of 1/2 inch require correction according to requirements in Section titled "Earth Moving."

C. Proceed with concrete pavement operations only after nonconforming conditions have been corrected and subgrade is ready to receive pavement.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for pavement to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.

B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Comply with Section 425 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures and CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.

C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.

D. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

3.5 JOINTS

A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edgings true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.

1. When joining existing pavement, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints, unless otherwise indicated.
2. For locations within areas of DOT jurisdiction, perform all work, testing, and inspections in accordance with applicable DOT standards and procedures.

B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of pavement and at locations where pavement operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless pavement terminates at isolation joints.

1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of pavement strips, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide tie bars at sides of pavement strips where indicated.
3. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent or epoxy bonding adhesive at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
4. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt-coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.

1. Unless otherwise indicated, joints shall be 3/4 inch in width.
2. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 100 feet, unless otherwise indicated.

3. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface.
5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
6. Protect top edge of joint filler during concrete placement with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.

D. Contraction (Control) Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows:

1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/2-inch radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover marks on concrete surfaces unless indicated to remain.

2. Spacing in Pavements: Unless otherwise indicated, locate as follows:

a. Locate transverse contraction joints at intervals twice the width of the pavement, not to exceed 10 feet.

b. Where the pavement width exceeds 10 feet to a maximum of 24 feet, locate a longitudinal contraction joint along the centerline of the pavement.

c. Where the pavement width exceeds 24 feet, locate longitudinal contraction joints at evenly spaced divisions not to exceed 10 feet.

3. Spacing in Curb: Unless otherwise indicated, locate contraction joints to coincide with the adjoining concrete pavement or, where an adjoining concrete pavement does not exist, at an interval of 10 feet.

E. Edging: Tool edges of pavement, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete after initial floating with an edging tool to a 1/2-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces unless indicated to remain.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other trades to permit installation of their work.

B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.

C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.

D. Comply with the requirements of Sections 700 and 710 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures for transporting and placing concrete.

E. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.

F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.

G. Consolidate concrete according to Sections 700 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.

1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.

H. Screed pavement surfaces with a straightedge and strike off.

I. Provide initial finishing of concrete according to Sections 710-6 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning final finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.
2. Utilize mechanical equipment to extend practicable to minimize hand finishing.

J. Curbs and Gutters: When automatic machine placement is used for curb and gutter placement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as specified for formed concrete. If results are not approved, remove and replace with formed concrete.

K. Slip-Form Pavers: When automatic machine placement is used for pavement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce pavement to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as required for formed pavement.

1. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of paver machine during operations.

L. When adjoining pavement lanes are placed in separate pours, do not operate concrete installation equipment on placed concrete until it has attained 85 percent of its 28-day compressive strength.

M. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with Sections 700 and 1000 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures and as follows when cold weather conditions exist:

1. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
2. Concrete operations shall not be undertaken when air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F.
3. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
4. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mix designs.

N. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with Sections 700 and 1000 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures and as follows when hot weather conditions exist:

1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.7 FLOAT FINISHING

A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.

B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.

1. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Unless otherwise indicated or required by authority having jurisdiction, draw a soft bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.

3.8 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.

B. Comply with Section 700 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures for cold, hot and rainy weather protection.

C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.

E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:

1. Moist Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:

   a. Water.
   b. Continuous water-fog spray.
   c. Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.

2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at

least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.

3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.9 PAVEMENT TOLERANCES

A. For locations within areas of DOT jurisdiction, comply with finish and thickness tolerances as defined in Section 710 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures. For all other locations, comply with the following:

1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- long, unleveled straightedge not to exceed 1/4 inch.
4. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1 inch.
5. Vertical Alignment of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1/4 inch.
6. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: 1/2 inch.
7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: Length of dowel 1/4 inch per 12 inches.
8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

3.10 PAVEMENT MARKING

A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.

B. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.

C. Surface shall be dry and free of glaze, oil, dirt, grease or other foreign contaminants.

A. Apply paint with mechanical equipment for the application of asphalt paint in accordance with applicable subsections of Section 1205 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.
2. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet pavement markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal.

B. Apply thermoplastic pavement markings with mechanical equipment for the application of thermoplastic pavement markings in accordance with applicable subsections of Section 1205 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a finished thickness of 90 mils.
2. Glass beads shall be mechanically applied to the surface of the thermoplastic material immediately after it is applied to the pavement surface and while it is still molten. Uniformly apply at a rate of 12 lb per 100 sq ft.

C. Apply to produce pavement markings of the dimensions indicated; which are straight or of uniform curvature; of consistent width; and with crisp, uniform, edges.

1. The finished line markings shall be free from waviness and the lateral deviations shall not exceed 2 inches in 15 feet.
2. No markings shall be less than the specified width.

3.11 WHEEL STOPS

A. Securely attach wheel stops to pavement with not less than two galvanized-steel dowels embedded at one-quarter to one-third points. Securely install dowels into pavement and bond to wheel stop. Recess head of dowel beneath top of wheel stop.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Contractual responsibilities for testing are identified in Division 1 Section “Quality Requirements”. Responsible party will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements, except for locations within areas of DOT jurisdiction, which shall be sampled according to applicable DOT rates and procedures:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least 1 composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mix placed each day.

    a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.

2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test 1 specimen at 7 days and 2 specimens at 28 days.

    a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from 2 specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.

7. Strength of each concrete mix will be satisfactory if average of any 3 consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
8. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete

testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.

9. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
10. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
11. Remove and replace concrete pavement where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
12. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.13 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section.

B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory pavement areas with portland cement concrete bonded to pavement with epoxy adhesive.

C. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude vehicular traffic from pavement for at least 7 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.

D. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 321313

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 321400 - UNIT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Concrete pavers set in aggregate setting beds.
2. Concrete edge restraints (curbs)

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For materials other than water and aggregates.

B. Samples for Verification:

1. Full-size units of each type of unit paver indicated.

C. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified unit paving installer meeting the following qualifications.

1. Experience: three years' experience in unit paving installation in addition to requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements."
2. Installer's Field Supervision: Installer shall maintain the above certified supervisor on Project site full-time when work is in progress.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of unit paver, joint material, and setting material from one source with resources to provide materials and products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

D. Authorities Having Jurisdiction: Conform to requirements of all authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Where conflicts exist between the requirements of the Contract Documents and those of authorities having jurisdiction, the higher quality or more restrictive requirement shall apply.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store pavers on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied.

B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

D. Store liquids in tightly closed containers protected from freezing.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Cold-Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade, base course, or setting beds. Remove and replace unit paver work damaged by frost or freezing.

B. Install products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Where practicable, delay installation of unit paving until as late as possible in the construction sequence to avoid potential damage by construction traffic.

D. Implement and maintain protection measures, as indicated in the “Protection” article below, immediately after installation is complete.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE PAVERS

A. Concrete Pavers: Solid interlocking paving units complying with ASTM C 936 and resistant to freezing and thawing when tested according to ASTM C 67, made from normal-weight aggregates.

1. Thickness: As indicated.
2. Face Size and Shape: As indicated.
3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Job-Built Concrete Edge Restraints: Comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mixed concrete with minimum 28-day compressive strength of 4,500 psi.

2.3 AGGREGATE SETTING-BED MATERIALS

A. All sand and aggregate materials shall be free of shale, clay, friable material, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, organic material, or other deleterious matter.

B. Graded Aggregate Base Course: Specified in Division 31 Section “Earth Moving”.

C. Sand for Leveling Course: Natural or manufactured sand in accordance with the gradation requirements for Fine Aggregate 2S or 2MS as defined in Section 1005 and 1006 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

D. Sand for Joints: Natural or manufactured sand in accordance with the gradation requirements for Fine Aggregate 2S or 2MS as defined in Section 1005 and 1006 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas indicated to receive paving, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
2. Where pavers are to be installed over waterproofing, examine waterproofing installation, with waterproofing installer present, for protection from paving operations. Where applicable, examine areas where waterproofing system is turned up or flashed against vertical surfaces and horizontal waterproofing. Proceed with installation only after protection is in place.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Confirm that base course has been prepared and tested according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving". Confirm that damage or degradation to base course has not occurred since testing was completed. Proceed with unit paver installation only after deficient base course has been corrected and is ready to receive leveling course for unit pavers.

B. Confirm that job-built concrete edge restraints comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Do not use unit pavers with chips, cracks, voids, discolorations, and other defects that might be visible in finished work.

B. Mix pavers from several pallets or cubes, as they are placed, to produce uniform blend of colors and textures.

C. Cut unit pavers with motor-driven masonry saw equipment to provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units to provide pattern indicated and to fit adjoining work neatly. Use full units without cutting where possible. Hammer cutting is not acceptable.

D. Exercise care in handling coated brick pavers to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. Remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting brick.

E. Joint Pattern: As indicated.

F. Pavers over Waterproofing (where applicable): Exercise care in placing pavers and setting materials over waterproofing so protection materials are not displaced and waterproofing is not punctured or otherwise damaged. Carefully replace protection materials that become displaced and arrange for repair of damaged waterproofing before covering with paving.

1. Where applicable, provide joint filler at waterproofing that is turned up on vertical surfaces, unless otherwise indicated; where unfilled joints are indicated, provide temporary filler or protection until paver installation is complete.

G. Tolerances: Do not exceed 1/16-inch unit-to-unit offset from flush (lippage) nor 1/8 inch in 24 inches and 1/4 inch in 10 feet from level, or indicated slope, for finished surface of paving.

H. Provide edge restraints as indicated. Install edge restraints before placing unit pavers.

1. Install Job-Built Concrete Edge Restraints as indicated on the Drawings and in accordance with the requirements of Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving".

I. Where applicable, provide steps made of pavers as indicated. Install paver steps before installing adjacent pavers.

1. Where pavers set in mortar bed are indicated for steps constructed adjacent to pavers set in aggregate setting bed, install steps and allow mortar to cure before placing aggregate setting bed and remainder of pavers. Cut off mortar bed at a steep angle so it will not interfere with aggregate setting bed.

3.4 AGGREGATE SETTING-BED APPLICATIONS

A. Where indicated, place separation geotextile over prepared subgrade, overlapping ends and edges at least 12 inches.

B. Where indicated, place drainage geotextile over compacted base course, overlapping ends and edges at least 12 inches.

C. Place leveling course and screed to thickness indicated, taking care that moisture content remains constant and density is loose and constant until pavers are set and compacted.

D. Treat leveling course with herbicide to inhibit growth of grass and weeds.

E. Set pavers with a minimum joint width of 1/16 inch and a maximum of 1/8 inch, being careful not to disturb leveling base. If pavers have spacer bars, place pavers hand tight against spacer bars. Use string lines to keep straight lines. Fill gaps between units that exceed 3/8 inch with pieces cut to fit from full-size unit pavers.

1. When installation is performed with mechanical equipment, use only unit pavers with spacer bars on sides of each unit.

F. Vibrate pavers into leveling course with a low-amplitude plate vibrator capable of a 3500- to 5000-lbf compaction force at 80 to 90 Hz. Perform at least three passes across paving with vibrator. Vibrate under the following conditions:

1. After edge pavers are installed and there is a completed surface or before surface is exposed to rain.
2. Before ending each day's work, fully compact installed concrete pavers to within 36 inches of the laying face. Cover pavers that have not been compacted, and leveling course on which pavers have not been placed, with nonstaining plastic sheets to protect them from rain.

G. Spread dry sand and fill joints immediately after vibrating pavers into leveling course. Vibrate pavers and add sand until joints are completely filled, then remove excess sand. Leave a slight surplus of sand on the surface for joint filling.

H. Do not allow traffic on installed pavers until sand has been vibrated into joints.

I. Repeat joint-filling process 30 days later.

3.5 REPAIRING

A. Remove and replace unit pavers that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Provide new units to match adjoining units and install in same manner as original units, with same joint treatment and with no evidence of replacement.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect paving installations from deposition of sediments from adjoining grounds and vehicular traffic.

1. Install and maintain erosion control measures as necessary, at boundaries of paving installations, to prevent migration of sediment onto the pavement surface.
2. Where practicable, erect and maintain barricades to prevent construction traffic on the paving surface.
3. Do not allow tracking of mud or debris onto the pavement surface by any vehicle.
4. If deposition of sediment on the paving surface is noted, remove and clean pavement surface immediately. Do not delay cleaning efforts as subsequent rainfall events may worsen potential damage.

END OF SECTION 321400

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 321530 – AGGREGATE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Plantation mix surface course.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct soil materials and rock-definition testing, as documented according to ASTM D 3740 and ASTM E 548.

B. Authorities Having Jurisdiction: Conform to requirements of all authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Where conflicts exist between the requirements of the Contract Documents and those of authorities having jurisdiction, the higher quality or more restrictive requirement shall apply.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

1. Do not dump or store aggregates near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Cold-Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade, base course, or setting beds.

B. Install products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Where practicable, delay installation of aggregate paving until as late as possible in the construction sequence to avoid potential for contamination by sediment.

D. Implement and maintain protection measures, as indicated in the “Protection” article below, immediately after installation is complete.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATE MATERIALS

A. All sand and aggregate materials shall be free of shale, clay, friable material, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, organic material, or other deleterious matter.

B. Plantation Mix: Evenly blended mixture consisting of equal parts by weight of the following:
   1. Naturally or artificially graded mixture of crushed gravel or stone, in accordance with the gradation requirements for Coarse Aggregate #78M as defined in Section 1005 and 1006 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.
   2. Natural or manufactured sand in accordance with the gradation requirements for Fine Aggregate 2S or 2MS as defined in Section 1005 and 1006 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that the subgrade has been installed in accordance with the requirements of Division 31 Section “Earth Moving”, and that its dry, at proper grade and cross-section, uncontaminated by soil deposits, and in suitable condition to begin paving.

   1. Do not proceed with installation of paving until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and subgrade has been approved.

3.2 PLANTATION MIX

A. Place plantation mix on subgrade free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. On prepared and approved subgrade, place plantation mix as follows:

   1. Make arrangements for required testing by Geotechnical Testing Agency.
   2. Place plantation mix material over subgrade as finished pavement course as indicated.
   3. Shape plantation mix to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
   4. Place plantation mix 8 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
   5. Place plantation mix that exceeds 8 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 8 inches thick or less than 4 inches thick.
      a. Do not place subsequent layers until required testing is complete and acceptable results have been obtained and documented.
   6. Compact plantation mix at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry density according to ASTM D 1557.

C. Shoulders: Where installation is not bordered by concrete curb, walks or alternate confinement system, place shoulders along edges of plantation mix to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each base layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry density according to ASTM D 698.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Geotechnical Testing Agency: Contractual responsibilities for testing are identified in Division 1 Section “Quality Requirements”. Responsible party will engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.

B. Allow Geotechnical Testing Agency to inspect and test each aggregate fill layer. Proceed with subsequent work only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.

C. Geotechnical Testing Agency will test compaction of aggregate in place according to ASTM D 1556, or ASTM D 2922, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:

1. Paved Areas: At each compacted aggregate fill layer, at least 1 test for every 5000 sq. ft or less of paved area, but in no case fewer than 3 tests.

D. When Goetechnical Testing Agency reports that aggregate fills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, re-compact and re-test until specified compaction is obtained.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect paving installations from deposition of sediments from adjoining grounds and vehicular traffic.

1. Install and maintain erosion control measures as necessary, at boundaries of paving installations, to prevent migration of sediment onto the pavement surface.
2. Do not allow tracking of mud or debris onto the pavement surface by any vehicle.
3. If deposition of sediment on the paving surface is noted, immediately contact Architect and request instructions for cleaning and repair. Do not delay cleaning efforts as subsequent rainfall events will wash sediments into lower levels of the paving system and worsen potential damage.

B. Erect and maintain barricades to prevent construction traffic on the paving surface.

1. Provide alternate construction traffic routes to discourage potential use of paving installation by construction traffic.
2. Where alternative construction routes are not available, contact Architect instructions regarding use of pavement for construction access. Implement, monitor, and maintain any specified protection measures.

END OF SECTION 329200

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 321801 – TRACK & FIELD LINE MARKINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division-1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This section covers all labor and materials required to install the track & field line markings.

B. The Track Surface Contractor is responsible for the purchase and installation of all paints and line markings.

1.3 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Codes and standards follow the current guidelines set forth by the National Federation of State High School Associations (NFSHSA).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. The following information shall be submitted prior to installation of specified work:

1. A list depicting the colors of all line markings and labels of the events to be included for approval prior to installation. Also, all symbols and markings clearly identified, illustrated, and their colors stated. The recommended NFSHSA colors shall be used.
2. Installation process and requirements for line markings and any conditions that may limit the installation or affect quality of installation.
3. Material safety data sheets on all products, as necessary.

B. The following information shall be submitted at the completion of the specified work:

1. Upon completion of all Line Markings, the Track & Field Surfacing Contractor shall submit the attached Track & Field Measurements Form, completed by a Surveyor, which shall be a registered professional in the State of North Carolina stating the installed track surface and line markings meet the requirements outlined in the NFSHSA Rulebook. The Surveyor, selected by the Track & Field Surfacing Contractor, must survey the facility's as-built line markings.

    a. NFSHSA Rulebook includes:
        1) levels of the track, runway, approach and landing surfaces;
        2) start and finish lines;
        3) track lanes;
        4) baton-passing zones;
        5) hurdle placements; and
        6) throwing surfaces – the shot.

2. Upon completion of all line markings, the Track & Field Surfacing Contractor shall submit to the Owner a five (5) diagram/drawing depicting and identifying all line markings: 1) a key to the color codes, 2) a chart for all symbols, and 3) labels for all events.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PAINT

A. The paint is 100% acrylic latex line paint compatible for use on Track & Field Asphalt Surface.

2.2 TEMPORARY REFERENCE MARKINGS

A. These markings shall be removed at the completion of the project.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SUMMARY

A. General line markings of the 400 meter track and field events, shall be applied, using only paint, primers and finishes supplied and guaranteed by the approved manufacturer and/or supplier.

B. All markings shall be in accordance with the rules of the NFSHSA and shall be certified for accuracy. The color code of the NFSHSA shall be followed.

C. No line markings shall be installed if the adverse weather conditions are present (too windy).

D. Allow asphalt or concrete paving to cure for 30 days before starting pavement marking.

E. Sweep, wash, and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.

F. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings of dimensions indicated with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils (0.4 mm).

3.2 LINE MARKINGS

A. The following list of colors is to be used for marking the running track:

Starting Lines:	**Color:**
100 meter	White
110 HH	White
200 meters	White
300 meters	White
400 meters	White
800 meters	Green
1600/3200 meters	White
800-meter Relay	Red
1600-meter Relay	Blue
Finish Line	**White**
Break Line	**Green**
Relay Exchange Zones:	
400 meters	Yellow
800 meters –Lane 1 only split color-Red/Yellow	Red
1-2 and 2-3 Red: 3-4 Yellow (same mark as 400 meters, 2-3)	
1600 meters	Blue
3200 meters	Green
Hurdle Locations:	
100 meter HH (girls)	Yellow
100 meter HH (boys)	Blue
300 meter LH/IH (girls/boys)	Red

One-turn stagger ..... Green
Two-turn stagger ..... White
Three-turn stagger ..... Blue
Four-turn stagger ..... Red

B. All line markings shall be installed according to the recommended colors as outlined by the National Federation of State High School Associations (NFSHSA). All color markings listed above must be reviewed and verified as correct, as per the rules and regulations of the governing body.

C. All line markings must be reviewed and verified with the Owner's representative (Architect and Track Coach) prior to installation.

END OF SECTION 321801

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 321802 – FIELD EVENT MATERIALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division-1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This section covers all labor and materials required to install the special field event materials

1. Sand - for the long and triple jump sand pits.

B. The Contractor is responsible for the purchase and installation of all materials.

1.3 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Codes and standards follow the current guidelines set forth by the National Federation of State High School Associations (NFSHSA).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Provide one (1) gallon sample of sand for visual inspection, testing and approval prior to installation.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The physical make-up of these products vary across the region; therefore the Contractor shall use is best efforts to supply the Owner with a product that best meets the performance specifications listed below.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SAND

A. All sand for the long/triple jumps sand pits shall follow the specifications outlined by the United States Golf Association (USGA) guidelines for Bunker Sand. The website for this information is: http://turf.lib.msu.edu/1990s/1998/980109.pdf .

B. The sand shall be washed and sized as follows:

Screen No.	Size in MM	Range % Within
18	1.00	75%
35	0.50	75%
60	0.25	75%
140	0.10	25%

1. Sand shall be free of trash, organic matter, clay, silt and rocks.
2. Sand shall meet the following technical requirements:

    a. Water permeability or filtration rate with a minimum of 20 inches/hour
    b. Bulk density of 1.55 grams per cubic centimeter
    c. Penetrometer Reading of 1.8 to 2.2 kg/cm2
    d. Sand shape of high sphericity and rounded

C. Sand varies around the region; therefore, prior to installation the Contractor shall provide the Owner or Owner's representative with a one (1) gallon sample for review and approval.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and adjoining construction, and conditions under which work is to be installed. Do not proceed with work until satisfactory conditions are corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Sand - The sand shall be one of the last items installed on the facility to maintain the physical properties.

1. Do not install the sand until subdrainage pipe is installed and connected to drainage system.

END OF SECTION 32 18 02

SECTION 323113 - CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Chain-Link Fences.
2. Gates: swing.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for chain-link fences and gates.

1. Fence and gate posts, rails, and fittings.
2. Chain-link fabric, reinforcements, and attachments.
3. Gates and hardware.
4. Accessories.

B. Shop drawings showing location of fence, gates, each post, and details of post installation, extension arms, gate swing, hardware, and accessories.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of chain-link fence and gate indicated.

1. Polymer-coated steel wire (for fabric) in 6-inch lengths.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed chain-link fences and gates similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

1. At least three years' experience and has completion of at least five chain link fence projects with same material and of similar scope to that indicated for this Project with a successful construction record of in-service performance.

2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for chain-link fences and gates, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.

3. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain chain link fences and gates, including accessories, fittings, and fastenings, from a single source.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for chain-link fences and gates shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CHAIN-LINK FENCE FABRIC

A. General: Height indicated on Drawings. Provide fabric in one-piece heights for fencing 12 feet and less in height, measured between top and bottom of outer edge of selvage knuckle or twist. Comply with ASTM A 392, CLFMI CLF 2445, and requirements indicated below:

1. Steel Wire Fabric: Metallic and Polymer-coated wire with a diameter of 0.148 inch (9 gauge).

a. Mesh Size: 2 inches.
b. Weight of Metallic (Zinc) Coating: ASTM A 392, Type II, Class 1, 1.2 oz./sq. ft.
c. Polymer Coating: ASTM F 668, Class 1 over metallic-coated steel wire.

1) Color: Black.

2. Selvage: Knuckled top and bottom.

2.2 FENCE FRAMING

A. Round member sizes are given in actual outside diameter (OD) to the nearest thousandth of inches. Round fence posts and rails are often referred to in ASTM standard specifications by nominal pipe sizes (NPS) or the equivalent trade sizes in inches. The following indicates these equivalents all measured in inches:

Actual OD	NPS Size	Trade Size
1.315	1	1-3/8
1.660	1-1/4	1-5/8
1.900	1-1/2	2
2.375	2	2-1/2
2.875	2-1/2	3
3.500	3	3-1/2
4.000	3-1/2	4
6.625	6	6-5/8
8.625	8	8-5/8

B. Type I Round Posts: Standard weight (schedule 40) galvanized-steel pipe conforming to ASTM F 1083, according to heavy industrial requirements of ASTM F 669, Group IA, with minimum yield strength of 25,000 psi, not less than 1.8 oz. of zinc per sq. ft. Type A coating inside and outside according to ASTM F 1234, as determined by ASTM A 90, and weights per foot as follows:

Actual OD	Weight (lb/ft)	NPS Size
1.315	1.68	1
1.660	2.27	1-1/4
1.900	2.72	1-1/2
2.375	3.65	2
2.875	5.79	2-1/2
3.500	7.58	3
4.000	9.11	3-1/2
6.625	8.97	6
8.625	28.55	8

C. Top Rail: Manufacturer's longest lengths (17 to 21 feet) with wedged-end or expansion-type coupling, approximately 6 inches long for joining. Provide rail ends or other means for attaching top rail securely to each gate corner, pull, and end post.
   1. Round Steel: 1.660-inch OD Type I or II steel pipe.

D. Steel posts for fabric heights over 6 feet:
   2. Round Line or Intermediate Posts: 2.375-inch OD Type I or II steel pipe.
   3. Round End, Corner, and Pull Posts: 3.5-inch OD Type I or II steel pipe.

E. Swing Gate Posts: Furnish posts to support single gate leaf, or one leaf of a double-gate installation, according to ASTM F 900, sized as follows for steel and aluminum pipe posts:
   4. Steel posts for fabric height over 6 feet and gate leaf width:
   a. Up to and Including 6 Feet: 2.875-inch OD pipe weighing at least 4.64 lb per ft.
   b. Over 6 to 12 Feet: 4.000-inch OD pipe weighing at least 8.65 lb per ft.

F. Coating: hot dipped galvanized.

2.3 FITTINGS AND ACCESSORIES

A. Material: Comply with ASTM F 626. Mill-finished aluminum or galvanized iron or steel to suit manufacturer's standards.

   1. Steel and Iron: Unless specified otherwise, hot-dip galvanize pressed steel or cast-iron fence fittings and accessories with at least 1.2 oz. zinc per sq. ft. as determined by ASTM A 90.
   2. Aluminum: Die cast conforming to ASTM B 26, aluminum-alloy 360 or sand cast conforming to ASTM B 85, aluminum-alloy 365, ZG61A, or Tenzalloy.

B. Post and Line Caps: Provide weathertight closure cap for each post. Provide line post caps with loop to receive tension wire or top rail.

C. Post Brace Assembly: Manufacturer's standard adjustable brace. Use material specified below for brace, and truss to line posts with 3/8-inch-diameter rod and adjustable tightener. Provide manufacturer's standard galvanized-steel, cast-iron or cast-aluminum cap for each end.

   1. Round Steel: 1.660-inch OD Type I or II steel pipe.

D. Bottom and Center Rail: Same material as top rail. Provide manufacturer's standard galvanized-steel, cast-iron or cast-aluminum cap for each end.

E. Tension or Stretcher Bars: Hot-dip galvanized steel with a minimum length 2 inches less than the full height of fabric, a minimum cross section of 3/16 inch by 3/4 inch, and a minimum of 1.2 oz. of zinc coating per sq. ft. Provide one bar for each gate and end post, and two for each corner and pull post, except where fabric is integrally woven into the post.

F. Tension and Brace Bands: 3/4-inch-wide minimum hot-dip galvanized steel with a minimum of 1.2 oz. of zinc coating per sq. ft.

1. Tension Bands: 0.074 inch thick (14 gage) minimum.
2. Brace Bands: 0.105 inch thick (12 gage) minimum.

G. Tension Wire: 7 GA. Coil spring galvanized tension wire attached to bottom of fabric with 12 ½ GA Galvanized hog ring spaced 24” on center.

1. Coating Type II zinc in the following class as determined by ASTM A 90.

a. Class 2, with a minimum coating weight of 1.20 oz. per sq. ft. of uncoated wire surface.

H. Tie Wires: 8 ¼ inch 9 GA. Aluminum tie wire and 6 ½ inch 9 GA Aluminum tie wire spaced 15 inches on center for line posts and 24 inches on center for rails or equal, to match fabric wire.

2.4 GATES

A. Fabricate perimeter frames of gates from same material and finish as fence framework. Assemble gate frames by welding. Provide horizontal and vertical members to ensure proper gate operation and attachment of fabric, hardware, and accessories. Space frame members maximum of 8 feet apart unless otherwise indicated.

1. Fabric: Same as for fence unless otherwise indicated. Secure fabric at vertical edges with tension bars and bands and to top and bottom of frame with tie wires.
2. Bracing: Install diagonal cross-bracing consisting of 5/16-inch-diameter adjustable-length truss rods on gates to ensure frame rigidity without sag or twist.

B. Swing Gates: Comply with ASTM F 900.

1. Steel: Gates up to 8 feet wide:

a. Up to 6 Feet High: Fabricate perimeter frames of 1.660-inch minimum OD Type I or II steel pipe or 1-1/2-inch-square galvanized-steel tubing weighing 1.84 lb per sq. ft.
b. Over 6 Feet High: Fabricate perimeter frames of 1.90-inch minimum OD Type I or II steel pipe or 2-inch-square galvanized-steel tubing weighing 2.52 lb per sq. ft.

2. Gate Hardware: Provide galvanized hardware and accessories for each gate according to the following:

a. Hinges: Size and material to suit gate size, non-lift-off type, offset to permit 180-degree gate opening. Provide 1-1/2 pair of hinges for each leaf over 6-foot nominal height.
b. Latch: Forked type or plunger-bar type to permit operation from either side of gate, with padlock eye as an integral part of latch.
c. Keeper: Provide a keeper for vehicle gates that automatically engages gate leaf and holds it in the open position until manually released.

d. Gate Stops: Provide gate stops for double gates consisting of mushroom-type flush plate with anchors, set in concrete, and designed to engage a center drop rod or plunger bar. Include a locking device and padlock eyes as an integral part of the latch, permitting both gate leaves to be locked with a single padlock.

2.5 CONCRETE

A. Materials: Portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I aggregates complying with ASTM C 33, and potable water for ready-mixed concrete complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M. Measure, batch, and mix Project-site-mixed concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M.

1. Concrete Mixes: Normal-weight concrete[air entrained] with not less than 3000-psi compressive strength (28 days), 3-inch slump, and 1-inch maximum size aggregate.

B. Materials: Dry-packaged concrete mix complying with ASTM C 387 for normal-weight concrete mixed with potable water according to manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed, unless otherwise permitted by Architect.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, and underground structures.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install chain-link fencing to comply with ASTM F 567 and more stringent requirements specified.

3.4 CHAIN-LINK FENCE INSTALLATION

A. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacings indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.

1. If not indicated on Drawings, excavate holes for each post to minimum diameter recommended by fence manufacturer, but not less than four times the largest cross section of post.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, excavate hole depths approximately 3 inches lower than post bottom, with bottom of posts set not less than 36 inches below finish grade surface.

B. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.

1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect above ground portion of posts from concrete splatter.

    a. Exposed Concrete: Extend concrete 2 inches above grade; shape and smooth to shed water.

C. Terminal Posts: Locate terminal end, corner, and gate posts per ASTM F 567 and terminal pull posts at changes in horizontal or vertical alignment of 30 degrees or more.

D. Line Posts: Space line posts uniformly at 10 feet o.c.

E. Post Bracing and Intermediate Rails: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Install braces at end and gate posts and at both sides of corner and pull posts.

1. Locate horizontal braces at midheight of fabric 6 feet or higher, on fences with top rail and at 2/3 fabric height on fences without top rail. Install so posts are plumb when diagonal rod is under proper tension.

F. Tension Wire: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Pull wire taut, without sags. Fasten fabric to tension wire with 0.120-inch- diameter hog rings of same material and finish as fabric wire, spaced a maximum of 24 inches o.c. Install tension wire in locations indicated before stretching fabric.

1. Top Tension Wire: Install tension wire through post cap loops.
2. Bottom Tension Wire: Install tension wire within 6 inches of bottom of fabric and tie to each post with not less than same diameter and type of wire.

G. Top Rail: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Run rail continuously through line post caps, bending to radius for curved runs and terminating into rail end attached to posts or post caps fabricated to receive rail at terminal posts. Provide expansion couplings as recommended in writing by fencing manufacturer.

H. Center Rails: Install center rails in one piece between posts and flush with post on fabric side, using rail ends and special offset fittings where necessary.

I. Bottom Rails: Install, spanning between posts.

J. Chain-Link Fabric: Apply fabric on security side of enclosing framework. Bottom selvage shall touch finished grade. Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, rails, and tension wires. Anchor to framework so fabric remains under tension after pulling force is released.

K. Tension or Stretcher Bars: Thread through fabric and secure to end, corner, pull, and gate posts with tension bands spaced not more than 15 inches o.c.

L. Tie Wires: Use wire of proper length to firmly secure fabric to line posts and rails. Attach wire at 1 end to chain-link fabric, wrap wire around post a minimum of 180 degrees, and attach other end to chain-link fabric per ASTM F 626. Bend ends of wire to minimize hazard to individuals and clothing.

1. Maximum Spacing: Tie fabric to line posts at 12 inches o.c. and to braces at 24 inches o.c.

M. Fasteners: Install nuts for tension bands and carriage bolts on the side of the fence opposite the fabric side. Peen ends of bolts or score threads to prevent removal of nuts.

3.5 GATE INSTALLATION

A. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach fabric as for fencing. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Gate: Adjust gate to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.

1. After repeated operation of completed installation equivalent to 3 days' use by normal traffic, readjust gates for optimum operating condition and safety. Lubricate gate hardware and clean exposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 323113

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 323119 – DECORATIVE METAL FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Ornamental fences and gates.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Material descriptions, construction details, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:

1. Fence and gate posts, rails, and fittings.
2. Gates and hardware.

B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of fences and gates, posts, rails, and details of other hardware and accessories. Indicate materials, dimensions, sizes, weights, and finishes of components. Include plans, elevations, sections, gate swing and other required installation and operational clearances, and details of post anchorage and attachment and bracing.

C. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed ornamental fences and gates similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Source Limitations for Ornamental Fences and Gates: Obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of component for ornamental fences and gates from one source with resources to provide ornamental fences and gates of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for ornamental fences and gates shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Materials and Workmanship. Manufacturer to warrant the original purchaser of fence and gate systems to be free from defects in material and workmanship and all fabrications to be in accordance with NAAMM steel fabrication industry tolerances and standards. Manufacturer to supply written warranty information in accordance with specification requirements.

B. Finish Warranty. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace fence and gate panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Ameristar Montage Plus – Majestic or approved equal.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Steel material for fence panels and posts shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A653/A653M, with a minimum yield strength of 45,000 psi and a minimum zinc (hot-dip galvanized) coating weight of 0.60 oz/ft^2, Coating Designation G-60.

1. Material for pickets shall be 3/4” square x 18 Ga. tubing.
2. The rails shall be steel channel, 1.5” x 1.4375” x 14 Ga.

a. Picket holes in the rail shall be spaced 4.675” o.c.

3. Fence posts shall be 2.5” square x 16 Ga tubing.

4. Gate posts shall meet the minimum size requirements indicated in the table below:

Gate Leaf Length	**Square Tubing Size and Wall Thickness**
Up to 4’	2-1/2” x 14 Ga.
4’1” to 6’	3” x 12 Ga.
6’1” to 10’	4” x 11 Ga.
10’1” to 16’	6” x 3/16” wall

2.3 ORNAMENTAL FENCE AND GATE FABRICATION

A. Form ornamental fences and gates to required shapes and sizes, true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces. Finish exposed surfaces to smooth, sharp, well-defined lines and arris.

B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch, unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

C. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Cope or miter corner joints. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water.

D. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

E. Fabricate panels, posts, attachments, framing, fences and gates and all supplied components per detail shop drawings supplied by manufacturer.

F. Pattern: Provide fence and gate design with configuration as indicated on Drawings.

G. The manufactured fence system shall be capable of meeting the vertical load, horizontal load, and infill performance requirements for Commercial weight fences under ASTM F2408.

2.4 FINISH

A. The manufactured panels and posts shall be subjected to an inline electrode position coating (E-Coat) process consisting of a multi-stage pretreatment/wash, followed by a duplex application of an epoxy primer and an acrylic topcoat.

1. The minimum cumulative coating thickness of epoxy and acrylic shall be 2 mils (0.058 mm).
2. The coated panels and posts shall meet or exceed the coating performance criteria of ASTM F2408.
3. The color shall be Black.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, and underground structures.

3.3 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

A. General: Install fences and gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.

B. Fences and gates. Use sleeves, inserted to depth indicated on contract drawings within proper gate post concrete foundations. Block gate posts firmly in position and hang/install gate leafs on post hinge pins. Check/adjust for proper gate leaf clearance and function. When properly positioned and firmly blocked, remove gate leafs from post hinge pins and install permanent grout in fence post holes. Reinstall gate leafs after proper cure of grout.

C. When cutting/drilling rails or posts adhere to the following steps to seal the exposed steel surfaces:

1. Remove all metal shavings from cut area.
2. Apply zinc-rich primer to thoroughly cover cut edge and/or drilled hole; let dry.
3. Apply 2 coats of custom finish paint matching fence color.
4. Use manufacturer's spray cans or paint pens (provided expressly for that purpose) to prime and finish exposed surfaces; it is recommended that paint pens be used to prevent overspray.

3.4 INSTALLATION – GATES

A. Gate posts shall be spaced according to the manufacturers' gate drawings, dependent on standard out-to-out gate leaf dimensions and gate hardware selected. Type and quantity of gate hinges shall be based on the application; weight, height, and number of gate cycles. The manufacturers' gate drawings shall identify the necessary gate hardware required for the application. Gate hardware shall be provided by the manufacture of the gate and shall be installed per manufacturer's recommendations.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Gate: Adjust gate to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free from binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.

B. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Clean the jobsite of excess materials.

1. Excavated post-hole material shall be removed from the site.

END OF SECTION 323119

SECTION 323223 - SEGMENTAL RETAINING WALLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes segmental retaining walls with and without soil reinforcement.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide segmental retaining walls capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads due to soil pressures resulting from grades indicated, and determined according to NCMA's "Design Manual for Segmental Retaining Walls."

1. Include the effects of sloped backfill as indicated on Drawings.
2. Include the effects of superimposed loads (surcharge) as indicated on Drawings.

B. Seismic Performance: Provide segmental retaining walls capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions determined according to NCMA's "Segmental Retaining Walls--Seismic Design Manual."

1. Seismic Design Criteria: as required by Agencies having Jurisdiction.

C. Drainage: Provide segmental retaining wall drainage system capable of preventing accumulation of groundwater in retained soils and in retaining wall foundation soils.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. For installed systems indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

B. Samples for Verification: For each color and texture of concrete unit required. Submit sections of units not less than 3 inches square.

1. Include one full-size unit for each type of concrete unit required.

C. Qualification Data: For Installer and professional engineer.

D. Preconstruction Test Reports: For segmental retaining wall system.

E. Product Certificates: For segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement, signed by product manufacturer.

1. Include test data for shear strength between segmental retaining wall units according to NCMA SRWU-2.
2. Include test data for connection strength between segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement according to NCMA SRWU-1.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform the following preconstruction testing:

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
2. Test soil reinforcement and backfill materials for pullout behavior according to GRI GG5 or GRI GT6.
3. Test soil reinforcement and backfill materials for coefficient of friction according to ASTM D 5321.

B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects.

1. Build mockups for each type of segmental retaining wall in sizes approximately 72 inches long by 36 inches high above finished grade at front of wall.

a. Include typical base and cap or finished top construction.
b. Include backfill to typical finished grades at both sides of wall.
c. Include typical end construction at one end of mockup.
d. Include 36-inch return at 1 end of mockup, with typical corner construction.

2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store and handle concrete units and accessories to prevent deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, breaking, chipping, or other causes.

B. Store geosynthetics in manufacturer's original packaging with labels intact. Store on elevated platforms, protected from moisture, sunlight, chemicals, flames, temperatures above 160 deg F or below 32 deg F, and other conditions that might damage them. Verify identification of geosynthetics before using and examine them for defects as material is placed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SEGMENTAL RETAINING WALL UNITS

A. Concrete Units: ASTM C 1372, Normal Weight, except that units shall not differ in height more than plus or minus 1/16 inch from specified dimension.

1. Provide units that comply with requirements for freeze-thaw durability.
2. Provide units that interlock with courses above and below by means of integral lugs or lips, pins, or clips.

B. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

C. Shapes: Provide units of any basic shape and dimensions that will produce segmental retaining walls of dimensions and profiles indicated without interfering with other elements of the Work and as follows:

1. Exposed Face: Machine-split textured, shaped face with deeply beveled vertical edges.
2. Batter: Provide units that offset from course below to provide at least 1:24 batter.

D. Cap Units: Provide cap units of same shape as other units with smooth, as-cast top surfaces without holes or lugs.

E. Special Units: Provide corner units, end units, and other shapes as needed to produce segmental retaining walls of dimensions and profiles indicated and to provide texture on exposed surfaces matching face.

2.2 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

A. Pins: Product supplied by segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer for use with units provided, made from nondegrading polymer reinforced with glass fibers.

B. Clips: Product supplied by segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer for use with units provided, made from nondegrading polymer reinforced with glass fibers.

C. Cap Adhesive: Product supplied or recommended by segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer for adhering cap units to units below.

D. Leveling Base: Comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Subdrainage" for drainage fill.

E. Drainage Fill: Comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Subdrainage."

F. Reinforced Soil Fill: Comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for satisfactory soils.

G. Nonreinforced Soil Fill: Comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for satisfactory soils.

H. Filter Fabric: Comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Subdrainage."

I. Drainage Pipe: Comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Subdrainage."

J. Soil Reinforcement: Product specifically manufactured for use as soil reinforcement and as follows:

1. Product Type: Molded geogrid made from high-density polyethylene.
2. Physical Properties: As required for completed segmental retaining walls to comply with performance requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for excavation tolerances, condition of subgrades, and other conditions affecting performance of segmental retaining walls.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 RETAINING WALL INSTALLATION

A. General: Place units according to NCMA's "Segmental Retaining Wall Installation Guide" and segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer's written instructions. Lay units in running bond.

1. Form corners and ends by using special units.

B. Leveling Base: Place and compact base material to thickness indicated and with not less than 95 percent maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

C. Leveling Course: Place unreinforced lean concrete over base course to thickness indicated; compact and screed to a smooth, level surface.

D. First Course: Place first course of segmental retaining wall units on leveling base/course for full length of wall. Place units in firm contact with each other, properly aligned and level.

1. Place and compact fill, either drainage or soil fill as indicated, to top of first course. Place fill on both sides of wall at same time without disturbing alignment of units. Fill voids between and within units with drainage fill.

E. Subsequent Courses: Remove excess fill and debris from tops of units in course below. Place units in firm contact, properly aligned, and directly on course below.

1. For units with lugs designed to fit into holes in adjacent units, lay units so lugs are accurately aligned with holes, and bedding surfaces are firmly seated on beds of units below.
2. For units with lips at front of units, slide units as far forward as possible for firm contact with lips of units below.
3. For units with pins, install pins and align units according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. For units with clips, install clips and align units according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Place fill on both sides of wall at same time, where both sides are indicated to be filled.
6. Fill voids between and within units with drainage fill.

F. Cap Units: Place cap units and secure with cap adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 FILL PLACEMENT

A. General: Comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Earthwork," NCMA's "Segmental Retaining Wall Installation Guide," and segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Place, spread, and compact fill in uniform lifts for full width and length of embankment as wall is laid. Begin at back of wall and place and spread fill toward embankment.

1. Use only hand-operated compaction equipment within 48 inches of wall, or one-half of height above bottom of wall, whichever is greater.
2. Compact drainage fill to not less than 95 percent maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
3. Compact reinforced soil fill to not less than 95 percent maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

    a. In areas where only hand-operated compaction equipment is allowed, compact to not less than 90 percent maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

4. Compact nonreinforced soil fill to comply with Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

C. Place filter fabric against back of wall and place layer of drainage fill at least 12 inches deep behind filter fabric to within 12 inches of finished grade. Place another layer of filter fabric between drainage fill and soil fill.

1. Wrap drainage pipe with filter fabric and place in drainage fill as indicated, sloped 1:50 to drain.
2. Place impervious fill over top edge of drainage fill layer.

D. Place soil reinforcement in horizontal joints of retaining wall where indicated and according to soil reinforcement manufacturer's written instructions. Embed reinforcement a minimum of 8 inches into retaining wall and stretch tight over compacted backfill. Anchor soil reinforcement before placing fill on it.

1. Place additional soil reinforcement at corners and curved walls to provide continuous reinforcement and to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Place geosynthetics with seams, if any, oriented perpendicular to segmental retaining walls.
3. Do not dump fill material directly from trucks onto geosynthetics.
4. Place at least 6 inches of fill over reinforcement before compacting with tracked vehicles or 4 inches before compacting with rubber-tired vehicles.
5. Do not turn vehicles on fill until first layer of fill is compacted and second layer is placed over each soil-reinforcement layer.

3.4 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

A. Variation from Level: For bed-joint lines along walls, do not exceed 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet, 3 inches maximum.

B. Variation from Indicated Batter: For slope of wall face, do not vary from indicated slope by more than 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet.

C. Variation from Indicated Wall Line: For walls indicated as straight, do not vary from straight line by more than 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.

B. Comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for in-place compaction testing.

1. In each compacted backfill layer, perform at least 1 field in-place compaction test for each 150 feet or less of segmental retaining wall length.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace segmental retaining wall construction of the following description:

1. Broken, chipped, stained, or otherwise damaged units. Units may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
2. Segmental retaining walls that do not match approved Samples and mockups.
3. Segmental retaining walls that do not comply with other requirements indicated.

B. Replace units so segmental retaining wall matches approved Samples and mockups, complies with other requirements, and shows no evidence of replacement.

END OF SECTION 323223

SECTION 328400 – IRRIGATION SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Underground irrigation system with piping, valves, heads, water source, pump, control equipment, and other items as indicated on the drawings.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Irrigation system shall be installed in accordance with the plans, details and notes prepared by Irrigation Consultant.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Record Drawings: Include the following, as required by authorities having jurisdiction, for use by surveyor in preparing record drawings:

1. Designation, size and length of irrigation pipe.
2. Designation and location of irrigation zones.
3. Designation and location of irrigation sprinkler type.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sprinklers, controllers and automatic control valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

F. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed projects of similar design and extent to those indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for irrigation system shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Refer to Plans, Details & Notes prepared by Irrigation Consultant)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Refer to Plans, Details & Notes prepared by Irrigation Consultant)

END OF SECTION 328400

SECTION 329200 - TURF AND GRASSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hydroseeding.
2. Sodding.
3. Planting soil and amendments.
4. Erosion-control materials (turf related only)
5. Grass paving.
6. Maintenance.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Certification of Grass Seed: From seed vendor for each grass-seed monostand or mixture stating the botanical and common name, percentage by weight of each species and variety, and percentage of purity, germination, and weed seed. Include the year of production and date of packaging.

1. Certification of each seed mixture for turfgrass sod. Include identification of source and name and telephone number of supplier.

B. Material Test Reports: Soil analysis report for existing in-place surface soil and/or imported topsoil.

1. Report shall be provided at least 15 days prior to incorporation of soil amendments, delivery of offsite topsoil, or initiation of seeding or sodding as applicable.
2. Report shall include, at a minimum, the following information at each sample location:

a. soil pH.
b. Organic content.
c. Gradation.
d. Presence of deleterious matter.
e. Presence of problem salts, minerals, or heavy metals.
f. Plant nutrient content.
g. Recommendations for amendments and/or corrective actions, for each sample location, to provide suitable topsoil for healthy growth of specified turf.

1) Report shall include detailed specifications for content, quantity, and quality of each required soil amendment, including but not limited to:

a) Inorganic soil amendments.
b) Organic soil amendments.
c) Fertilizers.

3. Soil testing laboratory shall oversee soil sampling with depth. location, and number of samples to be taken pre-approved by the Architect.

    a. A minimum of three (3) representative samples shall be obtained for each athletic field site to be sodded (9 total samples).
    b. A minimum of 5 additional samples a shall be taken at random locations for other turf areas located outside of athletic field limits (hydroseed areas).

C. Sod Installation Schedule: Provide schedule of installation dates for sod. Do not install dormant sod without prior approval of Architect.

D. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed landscaping work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful turfgrass establishment.

1. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on the Project site during times that soil preparation and grass planting is in progress.
2. Professional Membership: Installer shall be a North Carolina Registered Landscape Contractor in good standing of either the Professional Landcare Network or the American Nursery and Landscape Association.
3. Experience: Five years' experience in turf installation in addition to requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements."

B. Soil-Testing Laboratory Qualifications: An independent laboratory or university laboratory, recognized by the State Department of Agriculture, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated and that specializes in types of tests to be performed.

C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

D. Authorities Having Jurisdiction: Conform to requirements of all authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Where conflicts exist between the requirements of the Contract Documents and those of authorities having jurisdiction, the higher quality or more restrictive requirement shall apply.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Seed and Other Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws, as applicable.

B. Sod: Harvest, deliver, store, and handle sod according to requirements in "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" and "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Transplanting and Installation" in TPI's "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Deliver sod in time for planting within 24 hours of harvesting. Protect sod from breakage and drying.

C. Bulk Materials:

1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers, lime, and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.

D. Grass Paving Materials:

1. Protect grass paving units from damage during delivery. Store under tarp to protect from sunlight when time from delivery to installation exceeds one week.
2. Where applicable, store proprietary growth mediums provided with paving units in a dark and dry location.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Cold-Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade, base course, or setting beds.

B. Planting Restrictions: Hydroseed and/or install sod during normal planting seasons for type of lawn work required. Coordinate planting periods with initial maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of planting completion. Contractor shall assure established lawn prior to Substantial Completion. Coordinate planting areas with overall project schedule accordingly.

C. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1.7 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Maintenance Service: Maintain as required in Part 3. Begin maintenance immediately after each area is planted and continue until Final Completion of project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SEED

A. Grass Seed: Fresh, clean, dry, new-crop seed complying with AOSA's "Journal of Seed Technology; Rules for Testing Seeds" for purity and germination tolerances.

B. Seed Species: State-certified seed of grass species as follows:

1. Seed: as indicated on Plant Schedule.

2.2 TURFGRASS SOD

A. Turfgrass Sod: Certified Number 1 Quality/Premium, including limitations on thatch, weeds, diseases, nematodes, and insects, complying with "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" in TPI's "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Furnish viable sod of uniform density, color, and texture, strongly rooted, and capable of vigorous growth and development when planted.

1. Turfgrass Species: as indicated on Plant Schedule.
2. Sod shall be delivered to the project site within twenty four (24) hours after harvest at the nursery, and shall be sheltered from the sun and wind until planted by the Contractor.
3. Contractor shall lay sod within thirty six (36) hours after harvest. Sod shall not be laid where the roots have dried due to exposure from the sun and wind, or has thinned for these or other reasons.

2.3 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. Provide inorganic soil amendments in quantities and proportions recommended by soil analysis report.

2.4 ORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. Provide organic soil amendments in quantities and proportions recommended by soil analysis report.

2.5 FERTILIZERS

A. Provide fertilizers in quantities and proportions recommended by soil analysis report.

2.6 PLANTING SOILS

A. At Contractor’s option, provide one or more of the following planting soils. All soils used for planting shall be prepared as necessary using soil amendments and fertilizers in the quantities recommended in the soil analysis report to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable turf.

1. Planting Soil: Existing, native surface topsoil formed under natural conditions with the duff layer retained during excavation process and stockpiled on-site. Verify suitability of native surface topsoil to produce viable planting soil. Clean soil of roots, plants, sod, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.

    a. Supplement with another specified planting soil when quantities are insufficient.
    b. Mix existing, native surface topsoil with soil amendments and fertilizers in the quantities recommended in the soil analysis report to produce planting soil.

2. Planting Soil: Existing, in-place surface soil. Verify suitability of existing surface soil to produce viable planting soil. Remove stones, roots, plants, sod, clods, clay lumps, pockets of coarse sand, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth. Mix surface soil with soil amendments and fertilizers in the quantities recommended in the soil analysis report to produce planting soil.

3. Planting Soil: Imported topsoil or manufactured topsoil from off-site sources. Obtain topsoil displaced from naturally well-drained construction or mining sites where topsoil occurs at least 4 inches deep; do not obtain from agricultural land, bogs, or marshes.

    a. Additional Properties of Imported Topsoil or Manufactured Topsoil: Screened and free of stones 1 inch or larger in any dimension; free of roots, plants, sod, clods, clay lumps, pockets of coarse sand, paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, acid, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth; free of obnoxious weeds and invasive plants including quackgrass, Johnsongrass, poison ivy, nutsedge, nimblewill, Canada thistle, bindweed, bentgrass, wild garlic, ground ivy, perennial sorrel, and bromegrass; not infested with nematodes; grubs; or other pests, pest eggs, or other undesirable organisms and disease-causing plant pathogens; friable and with sufficient structure to give good tilth and aeration. Continuous, air-filled pore space content on a volume/volume basis shall be at least 15 percent when moisture is present at field capacity. Soil shall have a field capacity of at least 15 percent on a dry weight basis.
    b. Mix imported topsoil or manufactured topsoil with soil amendments and fertilizers in the quantities recommended in the soil analysis report to produce planting soil.

2.7 HYDROSEEDING MULCH

A. Fiber Mulch: Biodegradable, non-dyed wood, cellulose-fiber mulch; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors; with a maximum moisture content of 15 percent and a pH range of 4.5 to 6.5.

2.8 PESTICIDES AND HERBICIDES

A. General: Pesticide, registered and approved by EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.

C. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

2.9 EROSION-CONTROL MATERIALS

A. Turf Reinforcement Mat: Three dimensional, woven, highly UV resistant, polypropylene geotextile specifically designed for erosion control applications on steep slope and high velocity, vegetated waterway applications. Conforming to FHWA FP-03, Section 713.18. Include manufacturer’s recommended installation anchor materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements and approval of Architect.

2.10 GRASS-PAVING MATERIALS

A. Grass Paving Units: Lightweight, injection-molded, non-biodegradable, plastic units designed to contain small areas of growth medium and to enhance the ability of turf to support vehicular and pedestrian traffic without rutting or significant compaction of the growth medium. Units shall be of manufacturer's standard nominal mat thickness. Include manufacturer's recommended anchorage system and any additional products supplied by manufacturer as an integral part of a complete installed system.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:

a. Invisible Structures, Inc.; GrassPave2.

A. Sandy Gravel Base Course (SGBC): Specified in Division 31 Section “Earth Moving”.

B. Sand: Natural or manufactured sand in accordance with the gradation requirements for Fine Aggregate 2S or 2MS as defined in Section 1005 and 1006 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

C. Proprietary Growing Mix: Where applicable, as supplied by the manufacturer as an integral part of a complete installed system.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to be planted for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.
2. Do not mix or place soils and soil amendments in frozen, wet, or muddy conditions.
3. Suspend soil spreading, grading, and tilling operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.
4. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable and which is too dusty.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Architect and replace with new planting soil.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities, trees, shrubs, and plantings from damage caused by planting operations.

1. Protect adjacent and adjoining areas from hydroseeding overspray.
2. Protect grade stakes set by others until directed to remove them.

B. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

3.3 TURF AREA PREPARATION

A. Limit turf subgrade preparation to areas to be planted.

B. Newly Graded Subgrades: Loosen subgrade to a minimum depth of 6 inches. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

1. Apply fertilizer directly to subgrade before loosening.
2. Thoroughly blend planting soil off-site before spreading or spread topsoil, apply soil amendments and fertilizer on surface, and thoroughly blend planting soil.

    a. Delay mixing fertilizer with planting soil if planting will not proceed within a few days.
    b. Mix lime with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.

3. Spread planting soil to the depth indicated or to a min. depth of 8 inches, but not less than required to meet finish grades after light rolling and natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.

    a. Spread approximately 1/2 the thickness of planting soil over loosened subgrade. Mix thoroughly into top 4 inches of subgrade. Spread remainder of planting soil.
    b. Reduce elevation of planting soil to allow for soil thickness of sod.

C. Unchanged Subgrades: If turf is to be planted in areas unaltered or undisturbed by excavating, grading, or surface-soil stripping operations, prepare surface soil as follows:

1. Remove existing grass, vegetation, and turf. Do not mix into surface soil.
2. Loosen surface soil to a depth of at least 6 inches. Apply soil amendments and fertilizers according to planting soil mix proportions and mix thoroughly into top 4 inches of soil. Till soil to a homogeneous mixture of fine texture.

    a. Apply fertilizer directly to surface soil before loosening.

3. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, trash, and other extraneous matter.
4. Legally dispose of waste material, including grass, vegetation, and turf, off Owner's property.

D. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Grade to within plus or minus 1/2 inch of finish elevation. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades. Limit finish grading to areas that can be planted in the immediate future.

1. Athletic Fields: in addition to above seedbed and grade preparation, athletic fields shall have an additional requirement of smoothness. Finished grade (topsoil) at acceptance shall have no high or low spots greater than ½” in 10’.

    a. Field areas located in unchanged or cut conditions shall have an additional excavation requirement of 18” below finished grade. Remove and replace top 18” of existing soil prior to completion of finished grade.

E. Moisten prepared area before planting if soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.

F. Before planting, obtain Architect's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.

3.4 TURF REINFORCEMENT MAT (TRM)

A. Prepare area as specified in "Turf Area Preparation" Article.

B. For turf reinforcement mat, install planting soil in two lifts, with second lift equal to thickness and on top of the mat.

C. Install mat and fasten as instructed by material manufacturer.

D. Fill cells of turf reinforcement mat with planting soil and compact before planting.

E. Moisten prepared area before planting if surface is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.

3.5 GRASS-PAVING SYSTEM

A. Verify that the Sandy Gravel Base Course (SGBC) has been installed in accordance with the requirements of Division 31 Section “Earth Moving”, and that its dry, at proper grade and cross-section, uncontaminated by soil deposits, and in suitable condition to begin paving.

1. Do not proceed with installation of paving until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and SGBC has been approved.

B. Install proprietary growing mix as instructed by paving-material manufacturer for site conditions; comply with details shown on Drawings. Compact according to paving-material manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Install paving mat and fasten according to paving-material manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Provide space for expansion as indicated or, where not indicated, as instructed by the manufacturer.

D. Before planting, fill cells of paving mat with [sand] [sand/planting soil mix] as indicated on Drawings and compact according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Moisten prepared area before planting if surface is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.

F. Plant as indicated on Drawings, in other articles of this specification, and in accordance with grass paving material manufacturer’s written instructions.

3.6 HYDROSEEDING

A. Hydroseeding: Mix specified seed, fertilizer, and fiber mulch in water, using equipment specifically designed for hydroseed application. Continue mixing until uniformly blended into homogeneous slurry suitable for hydraulic application.

1. Mix slurry with fiber-mulch manufacturer's recommended tackifier.
2. Apply slurry uniformly to all areas to be seeded in a one-step process. Apply slurry at a rate so that mulch component is deposited at not less than 1500-lb/acre dry weight, and seed component is deposited at not less than the specified seed-sowing rate.

3.7 SODDING

A. Lay sod within 36 hours of harvesting. Do not lay sod if ground is frozen or muddy.

1. Do not lay dormant sod without prior approval of Architect.

B. Lay sod to form a solid mass with tightly fitted joints. Butt ends and sides of sod; do not stretch or overlap. Stagger sod strips or pads to offset joints in adjacent courses. Avoid damage to subgrade or sod during installation. Tamp and roll lightly to ensure contact with subgrade, eliminate air pockets, and form a smooth surface. Work sifted soil or fine sand into minor cracks between pieces of sod; remove excess to avoid smothering sod and adjacent grass.

C. Saturate sod with fine water spray within two hours of planting. During first week after planting, water daily or more frequently as necessary to maintain moist soil to a minimum depth of 1-1/2 inches below sod.

3.8 TURF MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain and establish turf by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable turf. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and remulch to produce a uniformly smooth turf. Provide materials and installation the same as those used in the original installation.

B. Watering

1. Acceptable Watering Methods:

   a. Water Truck
   b. Irrigation
   c. Other methods as approved by Owner

2. Keep turf sufficiently watered throughout the maintenance period through the completion of the warranty period.
3. Contractor to create a temporary watering schedule for turf establishment in areas where there is no irrigation installed.
4. If irrigation is installed, plans for utilization of in-ground irrigation systems shall be submitted for approval prior to use.
5. Install and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and turf-watering equipment to convey water from sources to keep turf uniformly moist to a depth of 4 inches.
6. Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Lay out temporary watering system to avoid walking over muddy or newly planted areas.
7. Water turf with fine spray at a minimum rate of 1 inch per week unless rainfall precipitation is adequate.

C. Mowing: Mow turf as soon as top growth is tall enough to cut. Repeat mowing to maintain specified height without cutting more than 1/3 of grass height. Remove no more than 1/3 of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades

bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet. Schedule initial and subsequent mowings to maintain the following grass height:

1. Mow bermudagrass to a height of 1/2 to 1 inch.

D. Turf Postfertilization: Apply fertilizer after initial mowing and when grass is dry.

1. Use fertilizer that will provide actual nitrogen of at least 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. to turf area.

E. TOPDRESSING / SETTLEMENT

1. If lawn areas do not have the level of smoothness specified herein or turf areas have depressions, tire rutting, or rutting caused by mowers or other equipment stop dressing(s) will be required to correct the uneven grade at contractor's expense. Top dressing material will be sand as specified herein.
2. Maintain ground top surfaces to the finish grades shown on the drawings and deposit whatever top dressing may be required to correct any settlement or erosion that occurs prior to the date of Final Acceptance. The surface upon which additional topdressing is to be deposited shall be raked or otherwise satisfactorily prepared to ensure a proper bond. Fill depressions that develop from settling, tire rutting, or mowing to the finished elevations with topdressing material.

3.9 SATISFACTORY TURF

A. Turf installations shall meet the following criteria as determined by Architect:

1. Satisfactory Seeded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, uniform, close stand of grass has been established, free of weeds and surface irregularities.
2. Satisfactory Sodded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, well-rooted, even-colored, viable turf has been established, free of weeds, open joints, bare areas, and surface irregularities.

B. Use specified materials to reestablish turf that does not comply with requirements and continue maintenance until turf is satisfactory.

3.10 PESTICIDE AND HERBICIDE APPLICATION

A. Apply pesticides and other chemical products and biological control agents in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate applications with Owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify Owner before each application is performed.

B. Post-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.11 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. Promptly remove soil and debris created by turf work from paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.

B. Erect temporary fencing or barricades and warning signs as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain fencing and barricades throughout initial maintenance period and remove after plantings are established.

1. Unless otherwise instructed, do not permit traffic on grass paving areas until turf is established:
   a. For a minimum of 8 weeks on seeded grass pavements.
   b. For a minimum of 4 weeks on sodded grass pavements.

C. Remove nondegradable erosion-control measures after grass establishment period.

END OF SECTION 329200

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 329300 - PLANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Plants.
2. Planting soil and amendments
3. Tree stabilization.
4. Landscape edgings.
5. Mulch.
6. Maintenance.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: The earth used to replace or the act of replacing earth in an excavation.

B. Balled and Burlapped Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they were grown, with ball size not less than diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required; wrapped with burlap, tied, rigidly supported, and drum laced with twine with the root flare visible at the surface of the ball as recommended by ANSI Z60.1.

C. Balled and Potted Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they are grown and placed, unbroken, in a container. Ball size is not less than diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.

D. Bare-Root Stock: Plants with a well-branched, fibrous-root system developed by transplanting or root pruning, with soil or growing medium removed, and with not less than minimum root spread according to ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.

E. Container-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted plants grown in a container, with a well-established root system reaching sides of container and maintaining a firm ball when removed from container. Container shall be rigid enough to hold ball shape and protect root mass during shipping and be sized according to ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.

F. Duff Layer: The surface layer of native topsoil that is composed of mostly decayed leaves, twigs, and detritus.

G. Fabric Bag-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted plants established and grown in-ground in a porous fabric bag with well-established root system reaching sides of fabric bag. Fabric bag size is not less than diameter, depth, and volume required by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant.

H. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.

I. Manufactured Topsoil: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil.

J. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. This includes insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. It also includes substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.

K. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired, or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. These include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.

L. Planting Area: Areas to be planted.

M. Planting Soil: Standardized topsoil; existing, native surface topsoil; existing, in-place surface soil; imported topsoil; or manufactured topsoil that is modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.

N. Plant; Plants; Plant Material: These terms refer to vegetation in general, including trees, shrubs, vines, ground covers, ornamental grasses, bulbs, corms, tubers, or herbaceous vegetation.

O. Root Flare: Also called "trunk flare." The area at the base of the plant's stem or trunk where the stem or trunk broadens to form roots; the area of transition between the root system and the stem or trunk.

P. Stem Girdling Roots: Roots that encircle the stems (trunks) of trees below the soil surface.

Q. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.

R. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.

S. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Material Test Reports: Soil Analysis Report.

B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

C. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified landscape Installer whose work has resulted in successful establishment of plants.

B. Soil-Testing Laboratory Qualifications: An independent or university laboratory, recognized by the State Department of Agriculture, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated and that specializes in types of tests to be performed.

C. Soil Analysis: For each unamended soil type, furnish soil analysis and a written report by a qualified soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter; gradation of sand, silt, and clay content; cation exchange capacity; sodium absorption ratio; deleterious material; pH; and mineral and plant-nutrient content of the soil.

1. Report suitability of tested soil for plant growth.

a. Based upon the test results, state recommendations for soil treatments and soil amendments to be incorporated. State recommendations in weight per 1000 sq. ft. or volume per cu. yd. for nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable plants.
b. Report presence of problem salts, minerals, or heavy metals, including aluminum, arsenic, barium, cadmium, chromium, cobalt, lead, lithium, and vanadium. If such problem materials are present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.

D. Provide quality, size, genus, species, and variety of plants indicated, complying with applicable requirements in ANSI Z60.1.

E. Measurements: Measure according to ANSI Z60.1. Do not prune to obtain required sizes.

F. Plant Material Observation: Architect may observe plant material either at place of growth or at site before planting for compliance with requirements for genus, species, variety, cultivar, size, and quality. Architect retains right to observe trees and shrubs further for size and condition of balls and root systems, pests, disease symptoms, injuries, and latent defects and to reject unsatisfactory or defective material at any time during progress of work. Remove rejected trees or shrubs immediately from Project site.

G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

H. Authorities Having Jurisdiction: Conform to requirements of all authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Where conflicts exist between the requirements of the Contract Documents and those of authorities having jurisdiction, the higher quality or more restrictive requirement shall apply.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws if applicable.

B. Bulk Materials:

1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.

3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers, lime, and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.

C. Deliver bare-root stock plants freshly dug. Immediately after digging up bare-root stock, pack root system in wet straw, hay, or other suitable material to keep root system moist until planting.

D. Do not prune trees and shrubs before delivery. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, wind burn, sweating, whipping, and other handling and tying damage. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy their natural shape. Provide protective covering of plants during shipping and delivery. Do not drop plants during delivery and handling.

E. Handle planting stock by root ball.

F. Store bulbs, corms, and tubers in a dry place at 60 to 65 deg F until planting.

G. Deliver plants after preparations for planting have been completed and install immediately. If planting is delayed more than six hours after delivery, set plants and trees in their appropriate aspect (sun, filtered sun, or shade), protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist.

1. Heel-in bare-root stock. Soak roots that are in dry condition in water for two hours. Reject dried-out plants.
2. Set balled stock on ground and cover ball with soil, peat moss, sawdust, or other acceptable material.
3. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers before time of planting.
4. Water root systems of plants stored on-site deeply and thoroughly with a fine-mist spray. Water as often as necessary to maintain root systems in a moist, but not overly-wet condition.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual grade elevations, service and utility locations, irrigation system components, and dimensions of plantings and construction contiguous with new plantings by field measurements before proceeding with planting work.

1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of each service or utility.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of services or utilities without Owner’s written permission.

B. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

C. Coordination with Turf Areas (Lawns): Plant trees, shrubs, and other plants after finish grades are established and before planting turf areas unless otherwise indicated.

1. When planting trees, shrubs, and other plants after planting turf areas, protect turf areas, and promptly repair damage caused by planting operations.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace plantings and accessories that fail in materials, workmanship, or growth within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from abuse, lack of adequate maintenance, or neglect by Owner, or incidents that are beyond Contractor's control.
b. Structural failures including plantings falling or blowing over.

2. Warranty Periods from Date of Final Completion:

a. Trees, Shrubs, Vines, and Ornamental Grasses: 12 months.
b. Ground Covers, Biennials, Perennials, and Other Plants: 12 months.
c. Annuals: Three months.

3. Include the following remedial actions as a minimum:

a. Immediately remove dead plants and replace unless required to plant in the succeeding planting season.
b. Replace plants that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition at end of warranty period.
c. Provide extended warranty for period equal to original warranty period, for replaced plant material

1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Maintenance Service for Plants: Maintain as required in Part 3. Begin maintenance immediately after plants are installed and continue until date of Final Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLANT MATERIAL

A. General: Furnish nursery-grown plants true to genus, species, variety, cultivar, stem form, shearing, and other features indicated in Plant Schedule shown on Drawings and complying with ANSI Z60.1; and with healthy root systems developed by transplanting or root pruning. Provide well-shaped, fully branched, healthy, vigorous stock, densely foliated when in leaf and free of disease, pests, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sun scald, injuries, abrasions, and disfigurement.

1. Trees with damaged, crooked, or multiple leaders; tight vertical branches where bark is squeezed between two branches or between branch and trunk ("included bark"); crossing trunks; cut-off limbs more than 3/4 inch in diameter; or with stem girdling roots will be rejected.
2. Collected Stock: Do not use plants harvested from the wild, from native stands, from an established landscape planting, or not grown in a nursery unless otherwise indicated.

B. Provide plants of sizes, grades, and ball or container sizes complying with ANSI Z60.1 for types and form of plants required. Plants of a larger size may be used if acceptable to Architect, with a proportionate increase in size of roots or balls.

C. Root-Ball Depth: Furnish trees and shrubs with root balls measured from top of root ball, which shall begin at root flare according to ANSI Z60.1. Root flare shall be visible before planting.

D. If formal arrangements or consecutive order of plants is shown on Drawings, select stock for uniform height and spread, and number the labels to assure symmetry in planting.

2.2 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. Provide inorganic soil amendments in quantities and proportions recommended by soil analysis report.

2.3 ORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. Provide organic soil amendments in quantities and proportions recommended by soil analysis report.

2.4 FERTILIZERS

A. Provide fertilizers in quantities and proportions recommended by soil analysis report.

2.5 PLANTING SOILS

A. At Contractor's option, provide one or more of the following planting soils. All soils used for planting shall be prepared as necessary using soil amendments and fertilizers in the quantities recommended in the soil analysis report to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable plants.

1. Planting Soil: ASTM D 5268 topsoil, with pH range of 5.5 to 7, a minimum of 6 percent organic material content; free of stones 1 inch or larger in any dimension and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth. Mix ASTM D 5268 topsoil with soil amendments and fertilizers in the quantities recommended in the soil analysis report to produce planting soil.
2. Planting Soil: Existing, native surface topsoil formed under natural conditions with the duff layer retained during excavation process and stockpiled on-site. Verify suitability of native surface topsoil to produce viable planting soil. Clean soil of roots, plants, sod, stones, clay lumps, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.
    a. Supplement with another specified planting soil when quantities are insufficient.
    b. Mix existing, native surface topsoil with soil amendments and fertilizers in the quantities recommended in the soil analysis report to produce planting soil.
3. Planting Soil: Existing, in-place surface soil. Verify suitability of existing surface soil to produce viable planting soil. Remove stones, roots, plants, sod, clods, clay lumps, pockets of coarse sand, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth. Mix surface soil with soil amendments and fertilizers in the quantities recommended in the soil analysis report to produce planting soil.

4. Planting Soil: Imported topsoil or manufactured topsoil from off-site sources. Obtain topsoil displaced from naturally well-drained construction or mining sites where topsoil occurs at least 4 inches deep; do not obtain from agricultural land, bogs, or marshes.
   a. Additional Properties of Imported Topsoil or Manufactured Topsoil: Screened and free of stones 1 inch or larger in any dimension; free of roots, plants, sod, clods, clay lumps, pockets of coarse sand, paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, acid, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth; free of obnoxious weeds and invasive plants including quackgrass, Johnsongrass, poison ivy, nutsedge, nimblewill, Canada thistle, bindweed, bentgrass, wild garlic, ground ivy, perennial sorrel, and bromegrass; not infested with nematodes; grubs; or other pests, pest eggs, or other undesirable organisms and disease-causing plant pathogens; friable and with sufficient structure to give good tilth and aeration. Continuous, air-filled pore space content on a volume/volume basis shall be at least 15 percent when moisture is present at field capacity. Soil shall have a field capacity of at least 15 percent on a dry weight basis.
   b. Mix imported topsoil or manufactured topsoil with soil amendments and fertilizers in the quantities recommended in the soil analysis report to produce planting soil.

2.6 MULCHES

A. Organic Mulch: Free from deleterious materials and suitable as a top dressing of trees and shrubs, consisting of one of the following:

1. Type: as indicated on Plant Schedule.
2. Size Range for chipped or shredded mulch (where applicable): 3 inches maximum, 1/2 inch minimum.
3. Color: Natural.

2.7 PESTICIDES AND HERBICIDES

A. General: Pesticide registered and approved by EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.

C. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

2.8 TREE STABILIZATION MATERIALS

A. Stakes and Guys:

1. Upright and Guy Stakes: Rough-sawn, sound, new wood, free of knots, holes, cross grain, and other defects, 2-by-2-inch nominal by length indicated, pointed at one end.
2. Guys and Tie Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1, galvanized-steel wire, two-strand, twisted, 0.106 inch in diameter.
3. Tree-Tie Webbing: UV-resistant polypropylene or nylon webbing with brass grommets.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements and approval of Architect.

4. Flags: Standard surveyor's plastic flagging tape, white, 6 inches long.
5. Proprietary Staking Devices: Proprietary stake and adjustable tie systems to secure each new planting by plant stem; sized as indicated and per manufacturer's written recommendations.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements and approval of Architect.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS PRODUCTS

A. Antidesiccant: Water-insoluble emulsion, permeable moisture retarder, film forming, for trees and shrubs. Deliver in original, sealed, and fully labeled containers and mix according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Burlap: Non-synthetic, biodegradable.

C. Mycorrhizal Fungi: Dry, granular inoculant containing at least 5300 spores per lb of vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and 95 million spores per lb of ectomycorrhizal fungi, 33 percent hydrogel, and a maximum of 5.5 percent inert material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive plants for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting installation and performance.

1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.
2. Do not mix or place soils and soil amendments in frozen, wet, or muddy conditions.
3. Suspend soil spreading, grading, and tilling operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.
4. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable and which is too dusty.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Architect and replace with new planting soil.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities and turf areas and existing plants from damage caused by planting operations.

B. Lay out individual tree and shrub locations and areas for multiple plantings. Stake locations, outline areas, adjust locations when requested, and obtain Architect's acceptance of layout before excavating or planting. Make minor adjustments as required.

3.3 PLANTING AREA ESTABLISHMENT

A. Loosen subgrade of planting areas to a minimum depth of 8 inches. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them.

1. Apply fertilizer and soil amendments after fine grading and mix thoroughly into upper 2 inches of soil.

2. Fertilizer and other necessary soil amendments shall be applied at the rate recommended by the soil analysis.

B. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.

C. Before planting, obtain Architect's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.

3.4 EXCAVATION FOR TREES AND SHRUBS

A. Planting Pits and Trenches: Excavate circular planting pits with sides sloping inward at a 60-degree angle. Excavations with vertical sides shall be avoided. Trim perimeter of bottom leaving center area of bottom raised slightly to support root ball and assist in drainage away from center. Do not further disturb base. Ensure that root ball will sit on undisturbed base soil to prevent settling.

1. Excavate approximately three times as wide as root ball diameter.
2. Excavate at least 12 inches wider than root spread and deep enough to accommodate vertical roots for bare-root stock.
3. Do not excavate deeper than depth of the root ball, measured from the root flare to the bottom of the root ball.
4. Do not excavate subgrades of adjacent paving, structures, hardscapes, or other new or existing improvements.
5. Keep excavations covered or otherwise protected when unattended by Installer's personnel.

B. Subsoil and topsoil removed from excavations may be used as planting soil for individually planted trees that are not located within a prepared plant bed.

C. Obstructions: Notify Owner if unexpected rock or obstructions detrimental to trees or shrubs are encountered in excavations.

D. Drainage: Notify Architect if subsoil conditions evidence unexpected water seepage or retention in tree or shrub planting pits.

3.5 TREE, SHRUB, AND VINE PLANTING

A. Before planting, verify that root flare is visible at top of root ball according to ANSI Z60.1. If root flare is not visible, remove soil in a level manner from the root ball to where the top-most root emerges from the trunk. After soil removal to expose the root flare, verify that root ball still meets size requirements.

B. Remove stem girdling roots and kinked roots. Remove injured roots by cutting cleanly; do not break.

C. Set balled and burlapped stock plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with root flare 2 inches above adjacent finish grades.

1. Use excavated soil for backfill.
2. After placing some backfill around root ball to stabilize plant, carefully cut and remove burlap, rope, and wire baskets from tops of root balls and from sides, but do not remove from under root balls. Remove pallets, if any, before setting. Do not use planting stock if root ball is cracked or broken before or during planting operation.
3. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.
4. Place planting tablets in each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled; in amounts recommended in soil reports from soil-testing laboratory. Place tablets beside the root ball about 1 inch from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole.
5. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.

D. Set container-grown stock plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with root flare 1 inch above adjacent finish grades.

1. Use excavated soil for backfill.
2. Carefully remove root ball from container without damaging root ball or plant.
3. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.
4. Place planting tablets in each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled; in amounts recommended in soil reports from soil-testing laboratory. Place tablets beside the root ball about 1 inch from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole.
5. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.

E. Set fabric bag-grown stock plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with root flare 1 inch above adjacent finish grades.

1. Use excavated soil for backfill.
2. Carefully remove root ball from fabric bag without damaging root ball or plant. Do not use planting stock if root ball is cracked or broken before or during planting operation.
3. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.
4. Place planting tablets in each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled; in amounts recommended in soil reports from soil-testing laboratory. Place tablets beside the root ball about 1 inch from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole.
5. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.

F. Set and support bare-root stock in center of planting pit or trench with root flare 2 inches above adjacent finish grade.

1. Use excavated soil for backfill.
2. Spread roots without tangling or turning toward surface, and carefully work backfill around roots by hand. Puddle with water until backfill layers are completely saturated. Plumb before backfilling, and maintain plumb while working backfill around roots and placing layers above roots.
3. Place planting tablets in each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled; in amounts recommended in soil reports from soil-testing laboratory. Place tablets beside soil-covered roots about 1 inch from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole or touching the roots.
4. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.

G. When planting on slopes, set the plant so the root flare on the uphill side is flush with the surrounding soil on the slope; the edge of the root ball on the downhill side will be above the surrounding soil. Apply enough soil to cover the downhill side of the root ball.

3.6 MECHANIZED TREE SPADE PLANTING

A. Trees may be planted with an approved mechanized tree spade at the designated locations. Do not use tree spade to move trees larger than the maximum size allowed for a similar field-grown, balled-and-burlapped root-ball diameter according to ANSI Z60.1, or larger than the manufacturer's maximum size recommendation for the tree spade being used, whichever is smaller.

B. When extracting the tree, center the trunk within the tree spade and move tree with a solid ball of earth.

C. Cut exposed roots cleanly during transplanting operations.

D. Use the same tree spade to excavate the planting hole as was used to extract and transport the tree.

E. Plant trees as shown on Drawings, following procedures in "Tree, Shrub, and Vine Planting" Article.

F. Where possible, orient the tree in the same direction as in its original location.

3.7 TREE, SHRUB, AND VINE PRUNING

A. Prune, thin, and shape trees, shrubs, and vines according to standard professional horticultural and arboricultural practices. Unless otherwise indicated by Architect, do not cut tree leaders; remove only injured, dying, or dead branches from trees and shrubs; and prune to retain natural character.

B. Do not apply pruning paint to wounds.

3.8 TREE STABILIZATION

A. Install trunk stabilization staking and guying system sized and positioned as recommended by manufacturer unless otherwise indicated and according to manufacturer’s written instructions.

3.9 GROUND COVER PLANTING

A. Set out and space ground cover and plants other than trees, shrubs, and vines as indicated in even rows with triangular spacing.

B. Use planting soil for backfill.

C. Dig holes large enough to allow spreading of roots.

D. For rooted cutting plants supplied in flats, plant each in a manner that will minimally disturb the root system but to a depth not less than two nodes.

E. Work soil around roots to eliminate air pockets and leave a slight saucer indentation around plants to hold water.

F. Water thoroughly after planting, taking care not to cover plant crowns with wet soil.

G. Protect plants from hot sun and wind; remove protection if plants show evidence of recovery from transplanting shock.

3.10 PLANTING AREA MULCHING

A. Mulch backfilled surfaces of planting areas and other areas indicated.

1. Trees and Tree-like Shrubs in Turf Areas: Apply mulch ring of 3-inch average thickness, with 30-inch radius around trunks or stems. Do not place mulch within 3 inches of trunks.
2. Mulch in Planting Areas: Apply 3-inch average thickness of mulch as indicated on Drawings. Extend at least 12 inches beyond edge of individual planting pit or trench and over whole surface of planting area, and finish level with adjacent finish grades. Do not place mulch within 3 inches of trunks or stems.

3.11 EDGING INSTALLATION

A. Shovel-Cut Edging: Separate mulched areas from turf areas with a 45-degree, 4- to 6-inch-deep, shovel-cut edge as shown on Drawings.

3.12 PLANT MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain plantings by pruning, cultivating, watering, weeding, fertilizing, mulching, restoring planting saucers, adjusting and repairing tree-stabilization devices, resetting to proper grades or vertical position, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable plantings. Spray or treat as required to keep trees and shrubs free of insects and disease.

B. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace mulch materials damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.

C. Apply treatments as required to keep plant materials, planted areas, and soils free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated past management practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards.

3.13 PESTICIDE AND HERBICIDE APPLICATION

A. Apply pesticides and other chemical products and biological control agents in accordance with authorities having jurisdiction and manufacturer's written recommendations. Coordinate applications with Owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify Owner before each application is performed.

B. Pre-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Apply to tree, shrub, and ground-cover areas in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations. Do not apply to seeded areas.

C. Post-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.14 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. During planting, keep adjacent paving and construction clean and work area in an orderly condition.

B. Protect plants from damage due to landscape operations and operations of other contractors and trades. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair, or replace damaged plantings.

C. After installation and before Substantial Completion, remove nursery tags, nursery stakes, tie tape, labels, wire, burlap, and other debris from plant material, planting areas, and Project site.

3.15 DISPOSAL

A. Remove surplus soil and waste material including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris and legally dispose of them.

END OF SECTION 329300

This page intentionally left blank.

SECTION 331100 - WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes water-distribution piping and related components outside the buildings for water service and fire-service mains.

B. The Section includes general requirements that will apply to all water systems. In addition, the operating utility (the authority having jurisdiction) has numerous specific requirements for materials and execution that are too varied to cover in this specification.

1. For this Project, the operating utility is Two Rivers Utilities.
2. Materials and execution requirements that are not covered in this Section shall comply with the requirements of the operating utility.
3. Materials and execution requirements that are covered, but are in conflict with the requirements of the operating utility, shall comply with the higher quality or more restrictive requirement.

C. Utility-furnished products include water meters that will beinstalled by the utility upon completion of utility required preparations by Contractor.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CTS: Copper Tubing Size.

B. DIP: Ductile iron pipe.

C. EPDM: Ethylene propylene diene terpolymer rubber.

D. HDPE: High density polyethylene pipe.

E. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.

F. NPS: Nominal pipe size.

G. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

H. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. Ductile iron pipe.
2. Polyvinyl chloride pipe.
3. Tees, elbows, reducers and similar fittings.
4. Joint restraint.
5. Valves and valve boxes.
6. Tapping sleeve assemblies.
7. Fire hydrants.
8. Backflow preventers.
9. Service connection piping and fittings
10. Corrosion-protection piping encasement.

B. Shop Drawings: Detail precast concrete vault assemblies and indicate dimensions, method of field assembly, and components.

C. Bacteriological test reports.

D. Record Drawings: Include the following, as required by authorities having jurisdiction, for use by Owner's surveyor in preparing record drawings:

1. Location of water mains from centerline of road or curb. Contractor shall coordinate with Owners surveyor to allow for location of water main prior to backfilling.
2. Location of fire hydrants, valves, tees, elbows, reducers, and other fittings.
3. Location and elevation of any other below ground appurtenances.
4. Designation, size and length of water lines between fittings.
5. Location and depth below finished grade of service connections.

E. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements:

1. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.
2. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for potable-water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, and disinfection.
3. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.

B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1. Review methods and procedures related to water system installation including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Review requirements of the operating utility.
b. Review site conditions and preparatory work.
c. Review requirements for protecting work.

d. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
e. Review inspection schedule and procedures required to monitor and document quality assurance.

C. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

D. Comply with ASTM F 645 for selection, design, and installation of thermoplastic (PVC and HDPE) water piping.

E. Comply with FMG's "Approval Guide" or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-service-main products.

F. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve and hydrant supervision for fire-service-main piping for fire suppression.

G. NSF Compliance: Comply with NSF 61 for materials for water-service piping and specialties for domestic water.

H. Lead Free Requirement: Section 1417 of the Federal Safe Drinking Water Act has mandated that "Any pipe, solder, or flux used after June 19, 1986, in the installation or repair of public water systems and plumbing used for drinking water must be "Lead Free". The act defines "Lead Free" as less than 0.2-percent lead in solder and flux and less than 8.0-percent lead in pipes and fittings.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Preparation for Transport: Prepare valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:

1. Ensure that valves are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect valves against damage to threaded ends and flange faces.
3. Set valves in best position for handling. Set valves closed to prevent rattling.

B. During Storage: Use precautions for valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:

1. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.
2. Protect from weather. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew-point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.

C. Handling: Use sling to handle valves and fire hydrants if size requires handling by crane or lift. Rig valves to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use hand wheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

D. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

E. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.

F. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.

G. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Water-Distribution Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water-distribution service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect, Owner, and Utility having jurisdiction no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of water-distribution service without Architect's written permission.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Where required, coordinate connection to water main with utility company.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARDS OF OPERATING UTILITY

A. See paragraph 1.2.B above for information regarding materials standards of the operating utility.

2.2 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE (DIP)

A. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless mechanical joint or flanged ends are indicated on Drawings or required by operating utility.

1. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber. Use only non-toxic lubricants approved by the manufacturer and that will not support microbiological growth. Vegetable shortening shall not be used.
2. Pressure class: Class 350 for NPS 3 to NPS 12; Class 250 for NPS 14 and larger.
3. Cement mortar lining: AWWA C 104, standard thickness.
4. Laying length: 18 feet-0 inches to 20 feet-0 inches.
5. Pipe size: No metric sized pipe shall be permitted.
6. Testing: All pipe lengths shall be tested to 500 psi working pressure prior to shipping.
7. Marking: Clearly mark each joint of pipe at convenient intervals, as follows:

    a. Manufacturer’s name.
    b. Nominal pipe size.
    c. Letters “DI” or “Ductile”.
    d. Weight.
    e. Pressure Class.

8. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. American-Cast Iron Pipe Co.
    b. Griffin Pipe Co.
    c. McWane Cast Iron Pipe Co..
    d. U.S. Pipe Co.

B. Flanged Joints: where indicated on Drawings or where required by operating utility and in accordance with standards of operating utility.

C. Mechanical Joints: where indicated on Drawings or where required by operating utility and in accordance with standards of operating utility.

2.3 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PLASTIC PIPE (PVC)

A. PVC, AWWA Pipe: AWWA C900 (4" thru 12" NPS) or AWWA C905 (14" and larger NPS), Class 235, with bell end with gasket, and with spigot end.

1. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, rubber. Use only non-toxic lubricants approved by the manufacturer and that will not support microbiological growth. Vegetable shortening shall not be used.
2. Joints: ASTM D 3139.
3. Laying length: 18 feet-0 inches to 20 feet-0 inches
4. Pipe size: comply with outside diameter dimensions of DIP.
5. Standard dimension ratio: SDR 18.
6. Pipe color: blue.
7. Comply with UL 1285 for fire-service mains if indicated.
8. The use of solvent weld joints is prohibited.
9. Marking: Clearly mark each joint of pipe at convenient intervals, as follows:

    a. Manufacturer's name.
    b. Nominal pipe size.
    c. Pressure class.
    d. Material designation.
    e. National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) seal.

2.4 FITTINGS (NPS 3 AND LARGER)

A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: For NPS 3 and larger, AWWA C110, ductile-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern. For NPS 2 and smaller see "Service Connections" article below.

1. Glands and Gaskets: AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets. Use only non-toxic lubricants approved by the manufacturer and that will not support microbiological growth. Vegetable shortening shall not be used.
2. Nuts and Bolts: 316 Stainless Steel, material shall be marked on nuts and bolts.
3. Material: Cast iron fittings are not permitted.
4. Pressure class: Class 250.
5. Fitting size: Metric sized fittings are not permitted.
6. Cement mortar lining: AWWA C 104, standard thickness.

7. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. American-Cast Iron Pipe Co.
    b. Griffin Pipe Co.
    c. McWane Cast Iron Pipe Co..
    d. U.S. Pipe Co.

2.5 RESTRAINTED JOINTS

A. Push-on (DIP only) or mechanical joint type joint restraint where indicated on Drawings or where required by operating utility and in accordance with standards of operating utility.

1. Push-on Gaskets: AWWA C 111, for use on DIP only, approved for use on the pipe on which it is installed. Use only non-toxic lubricants approved by the manufacturer and that will not support microbiological growth. Vegetable shortening shall not be used.
2. Mechanical Joint Glands, Gaskets and Bolts: AWWA C 111, the gland, gasket and bolts shall be part of an integral system by the same manufacturer and approved for use on the pipe on which it is installed. Installation shall require only standard mechanical joint assembly techniques. Bolts shall be 316 Stainless Steel. Use only non-toxic lubricants approved by the manufacturer and that will not support microbiological growth. Vegetable shortening shall not be used.
3. DIP Pressure Rating: 350 psi.
4. PVC Pressure Rating: rated at a 2:1 safety factor for the pipe on which it is installed.
5. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. American-Cast Iron Pipe Co.
    b. Griffin Pipe Co.
    c. McWane Cast Iron Pipe Co..
    d. U.S. Pipe Co.
    e. Ebba Iron Inc.
    f. Ford Meter Box Co.
    g. Sigma Corporation.

2.6 VALVES (NPS 3 AND LARGER)

A. General:

1. For NPS 2 and smaller: see “Service Connections” article below.
2. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with these requirements and the standards of operating utility, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. American AVK Co.; Valves & Fittings Div.
    b. American Cast Iron Pipe Co.; American Flow Control Div.
    c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group.
    d. East Jordan Iron Works, Inc.
    e. McWane, Inc.; Clow Valve Co. Div. (Oskaloosa).
    f. McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
    g. McWane, Inc.; M & H Valve Company Div.
    h. McWane, Inc.; Tyler Pipe Div.; Utilities Div.
    i. Mueller Co.; Water Products Div.
    j. U.S. Pipe and Foundry Company.

3. Opening direction: As required by operating utility.
4. Operating system: 2” square operating nut for below grade installation, wheel for above grade or vault installations.
5. Exterior Nuts and Bolts: 316 stainless steel
6. Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.

B. AWWA, Gate Valves:

1. Nonrising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:

    a. Description: For NPS 3 to NPS 12, gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.

        1) Standard: AWWA C509.
        2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
        3) End Connections: AWWA C 111, mechanical joint.

C. UL/FMG, Gate Valves:

1. OS&Y, Rising-Stem Gate Valves:

    a. Description: Iron body and bonnet and bronze seating material.

        1) Standards: UL 262 and FMG approved.
        2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
        3) End Connections: Flanged.

D. Tapping-Sleeve Assemblies:

1. Description: Sleeve and valve compatible with drilling machine.

    a. Standard: MSS SP-60.
    b. Tapping Sleeve: Ductile-iron or stainless-steel, two-piece bolted sleeve with flanged outlet for new branch connection. Include sleeve matching size and type of pipe material being tapped and with recessed flange for branch valve.
    c. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
    d. Tapping Valve: AWWA C 509, cast or ductile-iron, nonrising-stem, resilient-seated gate valve.
    e. Valve End Connections: Flanged (ANSI B16.1) for end mating tapping-sleeve flange and mechanical joint (AWWA C111) for opposite end.

2.7 VALVE ACCESSORIES (NPS 3 AND LARGER)

A. Valve Boxes:

1. Material: Cast or ductile-iron, suitable for heavy traffic use and conforming to ASTM A-48, Class 20.

    a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with these requirements and the standards of operating utility, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) East Jordan Iron Works
        2) Tyler Pipe
        3) Bingham and Taylor.

    b. Model: as required by the operating utility.
    c. Elevation Adjustment: as required by operating utility.
    d. Inside Shaft Diameter: 5-1/4 inches.
    e. Coating: Asphaltic, not less than 1 mil thick.
    f. Cover: Heavy cast iron with the word WATER cast in raised letters.

g. Base: Enlarged to enclose and protect valve operating nut without actually being in contact with pipe or valve.

B. Valve Box Protection Rings:

1. Material: Reinforced, precast 3,000 psi concrete.

a. Inside diameter: 9-1/4 inches.
b. Outside Diameter: 27 inches.
c. Thickness" 5 inches at inner diameter with top tapering to 2 inches at outer diameter.
d. Reinforcing: Two #3 rebar, one at 21 inch diameter and one at 24 inch diameter.
e. Min. Weight: 110 lbs.

2.8 FIRE HYDRANTS

A. Dry-Barrel Fire Hydrants:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with these requirements and the standards of authorities having jurisdiction, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. American AVK Co.; Valves & Fittings Div.
b. American Cast Iron Pipe Co.; American Flow Control Div.
c. American Cast Iron Pipe Co.; Waterous Co. Subsidiary.
d. American Foundry Group, Inc.
e. East Jordan Iron Works, Inc.
f. McWane, Inc.; Clow Valve Co. Div. (Oskaloosa).
g. McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
h. McWane, Inc.; M & H Valve Company Div.
i. Mueller Co.; Water Products Div.
j. Troy Valve; a division of Penn-Troy Manufacturing, Inc.
k. U.S. Pipe and Foundry Company.

2. Description: Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 and two NPS 2-1/2 outlets, 5-1/4-inch main valve, drain valve, and NPS 6 mechanical-joint inlet. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550. Hydrant shall have cast-iron body, compression-type valve opening against pressure and closing with pressure.

a. Standard: AWWA C502.
b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.
c. Outlet Threads: NFPA 1963, with external hose thread used by local fire department. Include cast-iron caps with steel chains.
d. Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon, 1-1/2 inches point to flat.
e. Direction of Opening: as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
f. Exterior Finish: Paint type and colors as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.9 WATER METERS

A. See paragraph 1.2.C above regarding water meters.

2.10 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with these requirements and the standards of authorities having jurisdiction, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Regulator Co.
    b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
    d. Flomatic Corporation.
    e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products Div.

2. Standard: AWWA C511 and any other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
5. Size: as indicated on Drawings.
6. Body: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550.
7. End Connections: Flanged.
8. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.

B. Reduced-Pressure-Detector, Fire-Protection Backflow Preventer Assemblies:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with these requirements and the standards of authorities having jurisdiction, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Regulator Co.
    b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
    d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products Div.

2. Standards: ASSE 1047 and UL listed or FMG approved.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Size: as indicated on Drawings.
5. Body: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550.
6. End Connections: Flanged.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.

2.11 CONCRETE VAULTS

A. Description: Precast, reinforced-concrete vault, designed for A-16 load designation according to ASTM C 857 and made according to ASTM C 858.

1. Access Hatch: of type and configuration required by operating utility.

    a. Size: Sufficient to allow easy removal of equipment housed by vault.
    b. Material: Aluminum.
    c. Load Rating:

        1) 300 psf for hatches not subjected to traffic.

2) AASHTO H-20 for hatches in traffic areas.

d. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with these requirements and the standards of operating utility, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Bilco Co.
2) US Foundry, Inc.
3) Halliday Products, Inc.

2. Drain: ASME A112.6.3, cast-iron floor drain with outlet of size indicated. Include body anchor flange, light-duty cast-iron grate, bottom outlet, and integral or field-installed bronze ball or clapper-type backwater valve.

2.12 SERVICE CONNECTIONS (NPS 3 AND SMALLER)

A. Copper Tubing and Fittings

1. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K, water tube, annealed temper.

a. Copper, Pressure-Seal Fittings: wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
b. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: Only acceptable where other connections will not work. ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.

B. PVC Pipe: Schedule 40 in accordance with ASTM D 1785, with solvent cement joints in accordance with ASTM D 2564 and fitting in accordance with ASTM D 2466.

1. Marking: Clearly mark each joint of pipe at convenient intervals, as follows:

a. Manufacturer’s name.
b. Nominal pipe size.
c. Pressure class.
d. Material designation.
e. National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) seal.

C. Tapping Saddles and Sleeves: in accordance with standards of operating utility.

D. Corporation Stops: in accordance with standards of operating utility.

E. Curb Stops: in accordance with standards of operating utility.

F. Meter Boxes: in accordance with standards of operating utility.

G. Water Meters: see paragraph 1.2.C regarding water meters.

H. Miscellaneous Fittings: in accordance with standards of operating utility.

2.13 CORROSION-PROTECTION PIPING ENCASEMENT

A. Encasement for Underground Metal Pipe, Fittings and Appurtenances:

1. Standards: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
2. Form: Tube.
3. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness.
4. Color: Blue.

2.14 PIPE DETECTION MATERIALS

A. Detectable Warning Tape: specified in Section titled “Earth Moving”.

B. Locator Wire In addition to warning tape where required by operating utility. Specified in Section titled “Earth Moving”.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 STANDARDS OF OPERATING UTILITY

A. See paragraph 1.2.B above for information regarding execution standards of the operating utility.

3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Refer to Section titled "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Refer to Section titled "Earth Moving" for installation requirements of pipe detection materials.

3.3 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. General: Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods for piping systems according to the following applications.
   1. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.
   3. Flanges, unions, and special fittings may be used, instead of joints indicated, on aboveground piping and piping in vaults.
   4. Restrained joints shall be provided where required by the operating utility and where indicated on Drawings.
   5. Underground Water Main Piping NPS 3 and larger shall be the following, subject to approval by the operating utility and as indicated on the Drawings:
      a. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe with ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings and gasketed joints.
      b. PVC, push-on-joint pipe with ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings and gasketed joints.

B. Above Ground and Vault Water Main Piping NPS 3 and larger shall be ductile-iron, mechanical or flanged joint pipe and ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and gasketed, restrained joints.

C. Underground Water-Service Piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 2 shall be the following, subject to approval by the operating utility:

1. Soft copper tubing with copper, pressure-seal fittings and pressure-sealed joints. Wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings only where other connections will not work.

3.4 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. General Application: Use mechanical-joint-end valves for NPS 3 and larger underground installation. Use flanged-end valves for installation above ground or in vaults. Use UL/FMG, nonrising-stem gate valves for installation with indicator posts. Use corporation stops and curb stops with ends compatible with piping, for NPS 2 and smaller installation.

B. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:

1. Underground Valves for Water Mains: NPS 3 and Larger: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, resilient-seated gate valves with valve box.
2. Use the following for valves in vaults and above ground:

a. Gate Valves for Water Mains: NPS 3 and Larger: AWWA, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem, resilient seated.
b. Gate Valves for Fire Protection Lines: NPS 3 and Larger: UL/FMG, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem.

3.5 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Water-Main Connection: Tap water main according to requirements of water utility company and of size and in location indicated.

1. Make connections larger than NPS 2 with tapping machine according to the following:

a. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve according to MSS SP-60.
b. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for tapping valve.
c. Install tapping valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with MSS SP-60. Install valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
d. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main. Extract bit and close valve. Remove tapping machine.
e. Slightly open valve briefly to flush out filings. Close valve and connect water-piping.

B. Install ductile-iron pipe according to AWWA C600, AWWA M41 and the standards of the operating utility.

1. Install PE corrosion-protection encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

C. Install PVC, AWWA pipe according to ASTM F 645, AWWA M23 and the standards of the operating utility.

D. Install copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook" and the standards of the operating utility.

E. Install Schedule 40 PVC according to ASTM D 2774, ASTM F 645 and the standards of the operating utility.

F. Install fire-service-main piping according to NFPA 24 and standards of authorities having jurisdiction

1. For DIP, install PE corrosion-protection encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

G. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 36 inches, with top at least 12 inches below level of maximum frost penetration.

H. Install piping by tunneling or jacking, or combination of both, under streets and other obstructions that cannot be disturbed.

I. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction, at locations indicated on Drawings and where required by the operating utility. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports as accepted by the operating utility.

3.6 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Make pipe joints according to the following (as applicable):

1. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Water Main Piping : AWWA C600, AWWA C111 AWWA M41 and standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Fire-Service-Main Piping: UL 194 and standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. PVC Piping Gasketed Joints: Use joining materials according to AWWA C900. Construct joints with elastomeric seals and lubricant according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM D 3139, pipe manufacturer's written instructions and standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use procedure recommended by copper, pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer.
5. Schedule 40 PVC Piping: in accordance with ASTM D 2564 and standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
6. Dissimilar Materials Piping Joints: Use adapters compatible with both piping materials, with correct OD, and with system working pressure at least equal to pipe. Install according to fitting manufacturer's written instructions

3.7 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION

A. Anchorage, General: Install water system piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction, at locations indicated on Drawings, and where required by the operating utility. Subject to acceptance by the operating utility, anchorages and restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:

1. Concrete thrust blocks.
2. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
3. Bolted flanged joints.
4. Heat-fused joints.
5. Pipe clamps and tie rods.

B. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches. Include anchorages for the following piping systems:

1. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron, Water- Piping: According to AWWA C600 and the standards of the operating utility.
2. Gasketed-Joint, PVC Water- Piping: According to AWWA M23 and the standards of the operating utility.
3. Fire-Service-Main Piping: According to NFPA 24 and the standards of jurisdictions having authority.

C. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

3.8 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600, AWWA M44 and standards of the operating utility. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.

B. UL/FMG, Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24 and standards of authorities having jurisdiction. Install each underground valve and valves in vaults with stem pointing up.

C. Corporation and Curb Stops: Install according to the manufacturer's written instructions and to the standards of the operating utility with head pointed up and with service box.

3.9 FIRE HYDRANT INSTALLATION

A. General: Install each fire hydrant with separate and adjoining gate valve in supply pipe, anchor with restrained joints or thrust blocks to standards of operating utility, and support in upright position.

B. AWWA Fire Hydrants: Comply with AWWA M17, standards of operating utility, and standards of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.10 ROUGHING-IN FOR WATER METERS

A. Rough-in piping and specialties, according to standards of the operating utility, ready to receive water meter installation by utility.

3.11 WATER METER BOX INSTALLATION

A. Install meter boxes according to the manufacturer's written instructions and the standards of the operating utility.

B. Install water meter boxes in paved areas flush with surface.

C. Install water meter boxes in grass or earth areas with top 2 inches above surface.

3.12 BACKFLOW PREVENTER INSTALLATION

A. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing health department and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Do not install backflow preventers that have relief drain in vault, or in other spaces subject to flooding, without adequate provisions for drainage.

C. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.

D. Support NPS 2-1/2 and larger backflow preventers, valves, and piping near floor and on brick or concrete piers.

3.13 CONCRETE VAULT INSTALLATION

A. Install precast concrete vaults according to ASTM C 891, the standards of the operating utility, and the standards of the authorities have jurisdiction.

B. Install access hatch according to the manufacturer's written instructions, the standards of the operating utility, and the standards of the authorities have jurisdiction.

3.14 SERVICE CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Extend water-service piping and connect to water meter and building-water-piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.

1. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building-water-piping systems when those systems are installed.

3.15 PIPE DETECTION MATERIALS INSTALLATION

A. Install continuous underground detectable warning tape and locator wire, where required by operating utility. during backfilling of trench for underground water-distribution piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping and according to standards of operating utility. Pipe detection materials are specified in Section titled "Earth Moving."

3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Hydrostatic Test: Conduct test according to AWWA C 600 or C 605, as applicable, and the standards of the authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Pre-testing: The Contractor shall conduct his on pre-tests and confirm that the system is capable of passing prior to requesting the Architect's presence to witness the test.

a. Conduct pre-tests only after all installation is complete including joint restraint. Concrete thrust blocks shall have been in place long enough to have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.
b. Leaks shall be immediately repaired and the test shall be repeated until acceptable results are obtained.
c. The Contractor shall notify the Architect at least 48 hours before the scheduled time of the official test. Passing test performed without the Architect present will be rejected. The Contractor will be required to retest, with the Architect present, without additional compensation.

2. Test Procedures: The line shall be slowly filled with water and all air expelled through air valves or other means. A suitable test pump, water meter and potable water source, furnished by the Contractor, shall be connected to the line by means of a tap (or other suitable means) in the line and the proper test pressure slowly applied to the line. The test pressure shall be maintained for at least two hours.

    a. Test at not less than 150 psi or one-and-one-half times working pressure, whichever is larger, for two hours. If pressure falls more than 5 psi during the test, the pump shall be reactivated and the pressure restored to the starting pressure as often as necessary. At the end of two hours, the pressure shall be restored to the starting pressure a final time and the total quantity of water used (leakage) to maintain the pressure for two hours shall be read.
    b. Open and close each valve within the system several times during the test period.
    c. Service connections, if present, shall be subjected to the hydrostatic test concurrently with the main lines.

3. Allowable Leakage: Allowable leakage shall be determined by the following formula:

    a. $L = 0.000007SD\sqrt{P}$
    b. Where:
    c. L = allowable leakage in gallons per hour.
    d. S = the total length of the pipe tested in feet.
    e. D = the nominal diameter of the pipe in inches.
    f. P = the average test pressure in psi gauge.

B. Preliminary Inspection: Make arrangements with Architect to conduct preliminary final inspection.

1. Pre-inspection: The Contractor shall conduct his own pre-inspection and confirm that the system is capable of passing prior to requesting the Architect's presence to witness the preliminary inspection.

    a. Repair or remove and replace components where test results or pre-inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

2. Preliminary Inspection: The Contractor shall notify the Architect at least 48 hours before the scheduled time of the preliminary inspection.

    a. Preliminary inspection shall include but shall not necessarily be limited to the following (as applicable):

        1) A visual inspection of fire hydrants: Requirements include: verification that hydrant is plumb and at correct elevation, verification that caps are in place and operational, verification that hydrant is operational and that no apparent leakage exists, verification that gate valve is in place and operational, verification that hydrant finish is adequate, verification that hydrant location is correct.
        2) A visual inspection of valves: Requirements include: verification that valves are operational, verification that valve boxes are centered, plumb, at correct elevation, and properly backfilled, verification that valve indicates that water line is at adequate depth, verification that valve location is correct, verification that valve protection rings are properly installed, and verification that any valve appurtenances are properly installed and functioning.
        3) A visual inspection of connections to existing water system: Requirements include: verification of adequacy of connection work, verification that

leakage does not exist, verification that connection valve is off, verification that safeguards are in place to prevent contamination of existing system by backflow from the new system.

4) A visual inspection of water meters, backflow preventers and other appurtenances to confirm proper installation.

b. Repair or remove and replace components where test results or preliminary final inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

c. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

C. Final Inspection: Upon successful completion of the preliminary inspection and after any required documentation has been received and approved by the authorities having jurisdiction, the Contractor, Architect, representatives of the authorities having jurisdiction shall conduct a final inspection of the system.

a. The Contractor shall notify the Architect at least 48 hours before the desired time of the pre-inspection. The Architect shall endeavor to schedule attendance by representatives of the authorities having jurisdiction at the desired time; however, the Architect provides no guarantee of availability at that time. If unavailable, the Architect will schedule the representative at the soonest reasonable time. Final inspections will not be held without the attendance of both the Architect and a representative of the authorities having jurisdiction.

b. Final inspection shall include but shall not necessarily be limited to the items listed for the pre-inspection.

c. Repair or remove and replace components where test results or final inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

d. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

D. Reports of Inspection Activities.

1. Where required, the Architect will provide final required documentation to authorities having jurisdiction for the purpose of obtaining a Permit to Operate. Promptly provide any documents required from Contractor. Once Permit to Operate is received, Architect will notify Contractor. Make final connections, when necessary, and place system in operation. Do NOT place system in operation before notification by Architect that Permit to Operate has been received.

3.17 DISINFECTION AND BACTERIOLOGICAL TESTING

A. Clean and disinfect water-distribution piping as follows:

1. Purge and disinfect according to AWWA C 651 and standards of authorities having jurisdiction.

a. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.

1) Provide adequate openings to ensure that required flushing velocities are met.

2) Where applicable. provide protective measures as required to ensure that flushing waters do not damage property or cause erosion or flooding.

b. Fill lines to be disinfected with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for at least 24 hours.
c. At end of retention time, perform concentration testing of solution at the extreme end of the lines to be disinfected. Solution shall contain not less than 25 ppm of chlorine. If residual chlorine is less than 25 ppm, repeat procedure.
d. Once an acceptable residual chlorine count is obtained, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from the system.

B. Bacteriological Testing:

1. Perform bacteriological testing according to AWWA C 651 and the standards of the authorities having jurisdiction.

a. Using methods acceptable to the Architect and authorities having jurisdiction, take two successive samples, at each dead-end line and at points deemed representative of the water in the newly constructed mains, at a period of at least 24 hours apart.
1) A test for residual chlorine content must be performed within 15 minutes of the time that the sample is drawn. Residual chlorine must be below the level required by AWWA C 651 and the authorities having jurisdiction.
b. Perform tests, at an independent laboratory certified by the authorities having jurisdiction, for coliform growth, non-coliform growth and residual chlorine.
c. Should the test values exceed the maximum acceptable values permitted by the authorities having jurisdiction, repeat disinfection, flushing and testing until acceptable values are obtained (with the exception of residual chlorine, in which case the samples are considered invalid and system must be only be flushed and retested).
d. Prepare reports of purging, disinfecting, and testing activities, including water sample chain of custody and copies of passing bacteriological tests, and provide to Architect.
1) No more than 30 days can have passed between the time that the first passing sample is drawn and the time the corresponding bacteriological test results are submitted, along with all other required water system closeout documents, to the authorities having jurisdiction.
e. After passing samples are obtained, make arrangements for follow-up samples to be taken by the authorities having jurisdiction.
f. As before, should the test values of the follow-up samples exceed maximum acceptable values, repeat disinfection, flushing and testing until acceptable values are obtained.

END OF SECTION 331100

SECTION 333100 – GRAVITY FLOW SANITARY SEWERAGE SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

1. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes gravity sanitary sewer piping and related components outside the buildings.

B. The Section includes general requirements that will apply to all gravity sanitary sewerage systems. In addition, the operating utility (the authority having jurisdiction) has numerous specific requirements for materials and execution that are too varied to cover in this specification.

1. For this Project, the operating utility is Two Rivers Utilities.
2. Materials and execution requirements that are not covered in this Section shall comply with the requirements of the operating utility.
3. Materials and execution requirements that are covered, but are in conflict with the requirements of the operating utility, shall comply with the higher quality or more restrictive requirement.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. DIP: Ductile iron pipe.

B. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.

C. NPS: Nominal pipe size.

D. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

E. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. Polyvinyl chloride pipe.
2. Wyes, elbows, reducers and similar fittings.
3. Precast concrete manholes, frame and covers, and related components.
4. Cleanout caps and covers.
5. Grease traps.

B. Field quality-control test reports.

C. Record Drawings: Include the following, as required by authorities having jurisdiction, for use by Owner's surveyor in preparing record drawings:
1. Designation, size and length of sewer lines between manholes or cleanouts.
2. Location and depth below finished grade of service connections to sewer main.
3. Location and elevation of any other below ground appurtenances.

D. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements:

1. Comply with requirements of the authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Comply with standards of operating utility for sanitary sewer-service piping, including materials, installation, and testing.

B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1. Review methods and procedures related to sanitary sewerage installation including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Review requirements of the operating utility.
b. Review site conditions and preparatory work.
c. Review requirements for protecting work.
d. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
e. Review inspection schedule and procedures required to monitor and document quality assurance.

C. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store plastic materials in direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.

C. Handle manholes and precast concrete structures, according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewer Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sanitary sewer service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect, Owner, and Utility having jurisdiction no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.

2. Do not proceed with interruption of water-distribution service without Architect's written permission.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Where required, coordinate connection to existing sewer lines with operating utility.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STANDARDS OF OPERATING UTILITY

A. See paragraph 1.2.B above for information regarding materials standards of the operating utility.

2.2 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS (DIP)

A. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM A 746, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot ends.

1. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber. Use only lubricants approved by the manufacturer.
2. Fittings: AWWA C110 or AWWA C153.
3. Pressure class: Class 150 minimum or as required by agency having jurisdiction.
4. Interior Lining: Ceramic Epoxy (Protecto 401 or approved equal), 40 mil thickness.
5. Laying length: 18 feet-0 inches to 20 feet-0 inches.
6. Pipe size: No metric sized pipe shall be permitted.
7. Marking: Clearly mark each joint of pipe at convenient intervals, as follows:

    a. Manufacturer’s name.
    b. Nominal pipe size.
    c. Letters “DI” or “Ductile”.
    d. Weight.
    e. Pressure Class.

8. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. American-Cast Iron Pipe Co.
    b. Griffin Pipe Co.
    c. McWane Cast Iron Pipe Co..
    d. U.S. Pipe Co.

2.3 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS (PVC)

A. PVC Sewer Pipe (ASTM): ASTM D 3034, Class 150, with bell end with gasket, and with spigot end.

1. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, rubber. Use lubricants approved by the manufacturer.
2. Fittings: ASTM D 3034. Use of saddle type fittings is prohibited.
3. Joints: ASTM D 3212.
4. Laying length: 18 feet-0 inches to 20 feet-0 inches
5. Pipe size: comply with outside diameter dimensions of DIP.
6. Standard dimension ratio: SDR 35, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

7. Pipe color: green.
8. The use of solvent weld joints is prohibited.
9. Marking: Clearly mark each joint of pipe at convenient intervals, as follows:

    a. Manufacturer's name.
    b. Nominal pipe size.
    c. Pressure class.
    d. Material designation.
    e. National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) seal.

2.4 MANHOLES

A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.

1. Diameter: 48 inches minimum or as required to accommodate pipe size, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation.
3. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
4. Inverts (channels and benches): See "Concrete" article below.
5. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
6. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
7. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
8. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
9. Steps: Individual ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on 1 step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off of step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12 to 16-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 60 inches.
10. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
11. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24 inch ID by 7 to 9 inch riser with 4 inch minimum width flange and 26 inch diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording or design required by agency having authority. Where no specific wording or design is required by agency, wording equivalent to "SANITARY SEWER" shall be cast.

    a. Material: ASTM A 48, Class 35 gray iron, unless otherwise indicated.
    b. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 10-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise

2.5 FIELD INSTALLED PIPE TO MANHOLE CONNECTORS

A. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, design specifically for field installation, for each pipe connection.

2.6 CLEANOUTS

A. PVC Cleanouts: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Canplas Inc.
b. IPS Corporation.
c. NDS Inc.
d. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
f. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Light Commercial Specialty Plumbing Products.

B. Frame and Cover: Traffic grade cast-iron according to the standards of the authorities having jurisdiction, as indicated or, where not indicated, in accordance with the following:

1. Use medium-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in landscaped and foot-traffic areas.
2. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
3. Use extra-heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads areas.

C. Concrete Collar: Where not located as a casting embedded in pavement, provide cast-in-place concrete collar as indicated on Drawings or, where not indicated 18 by 18 by 12 inchesdeep.

2.7 NONPRESSURE-TYPE PIPE COUPLINGS

A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and stainless steel tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

B. Sleeve Materials:

1. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

C. Unshielded Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric sleeve with stainless steel shear ring and stainless steel-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
b. Fernco Inc.
c. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
d. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
e. NDS Inc.
f. Plastic Oddities, Inc.

D. Ring-Type Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric compression seal with dimensions to fit inside bell of larger pipe and for spigot of smaller pipe to fit inside ring.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Fernco Inc.

b. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.

2.8 GREASE TRAPS

A. Description: Precast, reinforced-concrete vault, designed for A-16 load designation according to ASTM C 857 and made according to ASTM C 858, with internal; grease trap configuration as indicated on Drawings.

1. Dimensions: as indicated on Drawings.
2. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation.
3. Riser Sections: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, 4-inch minimum thickness, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
4. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24 inch ID by 7 to 9 inch riser with 4 inch minimum width flange and 26 inch diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording or design required by agency having authority. Where no specific wording or design is required by agency, wording equivalent to "SANITARY SEWER" shall be cast.

    a. Material: ASTM A 48, Class 35 gray iron, unless otherwise indicated.
    b. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 10-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise

5. Internal Components: as indicated on Drawings.

2.9 CONCRETE

A. General: Portland Cement Concrete in accordance with Section 1000 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Design Mix: 3000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.
2. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
3. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.

B. Manhole Channels and Benches: Field formed from concrete.

1. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.

    a. Invert Slope: Minimum of 1 percent or as required to provide uniform slope between invert elevations indicated on Drawings.

2. Benches: Concrete, sloped to drain into channel.

    a. Slope: 8 percent.

C. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Field formed from concrete.

1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.

2.10 CORROSION-PROTECTION PIPING ENCASEMENT

A. Encasement for Underground Metal Pipe, Fittings and Appurtenances:

1. Standards: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
2. Form: Tube.
3. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness.
4. Color: Blue.

2.11 PIPE DETECTION MATERIALS

A. Detectable Warning Tape: specified in Section titled “Earth Moving”.

B. Locator Wire In addition to warning tape where required by operating utility. Specified in Section titled “Earth Moving”.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 STANDARDS OF OPERATING UTILITY

A. See paragraph 1.2.B above for information regarding execution standards of the operating utility.

3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Refer to Section titled "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Refer to Section titled "Earth Moving" for installation requirements of pipe detection materials.

3.3 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Flexible pipe couplings may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Use nonpressure-type flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping of different material type or size, unless otherwise indicated. No other use of flexible couplings will be permitted.

a. Unshielded flexible couplings for same or minor difference OD pipes.
b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible couplings for pipes with different OD.
c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.

B. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure Sewer Piping: Use the following pipe materials as indicated on the Drawings.
1. Ductile-iron, gravity sewer pipe; ductile-iron standard or compact fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. PVC sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewerage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for using lubricants, and other installation requirements.

C. Install manholes for changes in direction, unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for service branch connections, unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.

D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

E. Tunneling: Install pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed by tunneling, jacking, or combination of both.

F. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure, sanitary sewerage piping according to the following:

1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at the slope indicated or, where not indicated, at a minimum slope of 1/2 percent.
2. Install piping with 36-inch minimum cover unless otherwise indicated.
3. Install ductile-iron, gravity sewer piping according to ASTM A 746 and the standards of the operating utility.
4. Install ductile-iron and special fittings according to AWWA C600, AWWA M41 and the standards of the operating utility.
5. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321, ASTM F 1668 and the standards of the operating utility.

G. Install corrosion-protection piping encasement over ductile-iron pipe and fittings according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105 and the standards of the operating utility.

H. Clear interior of piping and manholes of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping, and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure, sanitary sewerage piping according to the following:

1. Join ductile-iron, gravity sewer piping according to AWWA C600 for push-on joints and the standards of the operating utility.
2. Join ductile-iron and special fittings according to AWWA C600, AWWA M41 and the standards of the operating utility.
3. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasket joints and the standards of the operating utility.
4. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type, flexible couplings in accordance with manufacturer’s written instructions.

3.6 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

A. General: Install manholes complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.

B. Install precast concrete manhole sections with sealants according to ASTM C 891.

C. Form continuous concrete channels and benches between inlets and outlet.

D. For manholes that occur in pavements, set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface. Set tops 2 inches above finished surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.

3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Comply with the requirements of Section 825 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures for transporting and placing concrete

3.8 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

A. Install cleanouts and riser extension from sewer pipe to cleanout at grade. Use pipe fittings of same material as pipe at branches for cleanouts and PVC pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.

B. Install cast-iron frames and covers.

1. Use medium-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in landscaped and foot-traffic areas.
2. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
3. Use extra-heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads areas.
4. Set cleanout frames and covers located in earthen areas in cast-in-place concrete collar, 18 by 18 by 12 inchesdeep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding earth grade
5. Set cleanout frames and covers in pavement with tops flush with pavement surface.

3.9 SERVICE CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Extend sanitary sewer-service piping and connect to building sanitary sewer system at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.

1. Terminate sanitary sewer service piping at building wall until building sanitary sewer piping is installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building sanitary sewer piping systems when those systems are installed.

3.10 CONNECTIONS TO EXISTING SANITARY SEWER

A. Where required by operating utility, connections to existing piping or manholes shall be made in the presence of an authorized inspector. Notify the Architect at least 48 hours before starting a connection.

B. Where indicated, construct new manhole over existing gravity main by cutting upper half of existing pipe after base of manhole is completed so as not to obstruct flow of the existing pipe.

C. Where indicated, make connections to existing piping using commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete.

D. Where indicated, make connections to existing underground manholes as follows:

1. Core drill opening into existing manhole large enough to allow installation of resilient manhole connector.
2. Install resilient manhole connector in manhole opening accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Install pipe in resilient connector in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Cut end of connection pipe passing through manhole wall to be flush with inside wall, unless otherwise indicated.
5. On outside of manhole wall, encase entering connection and pipe in 6 inches of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches to provide additional support of connector from connection to undisturbed ground.
6. On inside of manhole wall, encase outside of pipe to flush with face of wall with grout. Form smooth invert channel transition to existing invert or complete installation of internal drop piping as applicable.
7. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.

E. Protect piping and manholes to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

3.11 PIPE DETECTION MATERIALS INSTALLATION

A. Install continuous underground detectable warning tape and locator wire, where required by operating utility. during backfilling of trench for underground sanitary sewerage piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping and according to standards of operating utility. Pipe detection materials are specified in Section titled "Earth Moving."

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During Installation: Inspect interior of piping, to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred, continuously during installation. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of each section of piping between manholes.

1. Defects requiring correction include the following:

a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 95 percent of piping diameter.
c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping or manholes.
d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping or manholes.
e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.

2. Replace defective piping and manholes using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.

B. Testing: The Contractor shall notify the Architect at least 48 hours before the scheduled time of the official tests. Passing test performed without the Architect present will be rejected. The Contractor will be required to retest, with the Architect present, without additional compensation

1. Pipe deflection test: Each section of piping will be tested for internal diametric deflection by the use of a 5% mandrel.

a. The mandrel pull shall be performed according to the "Recommended Standards for Wastewater Facilities" by the Great Lakes - Upper Mississippi River Board of State and Provincial Public Health and Environmental Managers (Ten State Standards)" and the standards of the operating utility.
b. The Contractor shall not use any mechanical device for the mandrel pull.
c. Deflections of greater than 5% shall be corrected.

2. Low Pressure Air Tests: Test gravity sewer piping according to UNI-B-6, and the standards of operating utility.

a. Prior to performing test, system shall be backfilled to final grade and a waiting period, specified by the operating utility, shall have passed.
b. All service connections shall be in place prior to testing.
c. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
d. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

C. Preliminary Inspection: Make arrangements with Architect to conduct preliminary final inspection.

1. Pre-inspection: The Contractor shall conduct his own pre-inspection and confirm that the system is capable of passing prior to requesting the Architect's presence to witness the preliminary inspection.

a. Repair or remove and replace components where test results or pre-inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
b. Remove all sand, dirt, brick, excess grout, and other foreign matter from manholes and piping. Material shall not be flushed into existing sewer lines

2. Preliminary Inspection: The Contractor shall notify the Architect at least 48 hours before the scheduled time of the preliminary inspection.

a. Preliminary inspection shall include but shall not necessarily be limited to the following:

1) A visual inspection of manholes. Requirements include: verification that manhole is plumb and at correct elevation; verification that frame and cover is properly installed, centered, grouted inside and out, and at proper elevation; verification that section joints are sealed watertight and properly grouted; verification that inverts and shelves are smooth, of correct slope, and properly formed; verification that steps are properly positioned, securely embedded, and undamaged; verification that drop manhole piping is properly installed and secure; verification that pipe openings are watertight, properly located, and properly grouted; verification that interior of manhole has been cleaned of dirt and construction debris and verification that grades in the vicinity of the manhole are properly established and well drained.

2) A visual inspection of piping. Requirements include: verification that piping is clean and unobstructed; verification that piping is straight and not visually deflected from a circular cross-section (i.e.: full moon when flashed or lamped); verification that no infiltration or exfiltration is visually evident.
3) Verification of proper elevations, slopes, and horizontal and vertical alignment (under no circumstances will a line be accepted which is below the minimum slope required by the authorities having jurisdiction for a given line size.

b. Repair or remove and replace components where test results or preliminary inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
c. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

D. Final Inspection: Upon successful completion of the preliminary final inspection and after any required documentation has been received and approved by the authorities having jurisdiction, the Contractor, Architect, representatives of the authorities having jurisdiction shall conduct a final inspection of the system.

a. The Contractor shall notify the Architect at least 48 hours before the desired time of the pre-inspection. The Architect shall endeavor to schedule attendance by representatives of the authorities having jurisdiction at the desired time; however, the Architect provides no guarantee of availability at that time. If unavailable, the Architect will schedule the representative at the soonest reasonable time. Final inspections will not be held without the attendance of both the Architect and a representative of the authorities having jurisdiction.
b. Final inspection shall include but shall not necessarily be limited to the items listed for the pre-inspection.
c. Repair or remove and replace components where test results or final inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
d. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

E. Video Documentation: Immediately after final approval of the completed system, complete a videotaped inspection of the completed piping system utilizing equipment made expressly for the purpose. Provide a written report, inspection logs, and a copy of the inspection videotape to the Architect.

F. Reports of Inspection Activities.

1. Where required, the Architect will provide final required documentation to authorities having jurisdiction for the purpose of obtaining a Permit to Operate. Promptly provide any documents required from Contractor. Once Permit to Operate is received, Architect will notify Contractor. Make final connections, when necessary, and place system in operation. Do NOT place system in operation before notification by Architect that Permit to Operate has been received.

END OF SECTION 333100

SECTION 334100 - STORM DRAINAGE SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes gravity-flow, nonpressure storm drainage outside the building with the following components:

1. Pipe culverts.
2. Drainage structures.
3. Channel drainage systems.
4. Outlet protection.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Drainage Structures: catch basins, curb inlets, junction boxes, weir inlets, pond outlet structures.

B. NPS: Nominal pipe size

C. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

D. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

E. SRCP: Reinforced Concrete Pipe (sealant joints)

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure, Drainage-Piping Pressure Rating: Pipe joints shall be at least silt-tight, unless otherwise indicated.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Channel drainage systems.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames and covers for the following:

1. Drainage structures.

C. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Authorities Having Jurisdiction: Conform to requirements of all authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Where conflicts exist between the requirements of the Contract Documents and those of authorities having jurisdiction, the higher quality or more restrictive requirement shall apply.

a. For locations within areas of DOT jurisdiction, perform all work, testing, and inspections in accordance with applicable DOT standards and procedures.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store plastic materials in direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.

C. Handle manholes, drainage structures and pipe culverts according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Architect's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS (PVC)

A. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 15 and Smaller: ASTM D 3034, SDR 26, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

1. Finished joint system shall meet the requirements of ASTM D 3212.

2.2 CONCRETE PIPE

A. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe: AASHTO M 170 (ASTM C 76), with bell-and-spigot or groove and tongue ends.

1. Class III, Wall B.
2. Joints shall be as follows:

a. Where indicated as SRCP on Drawings: sealant joints with AASHTO M 198 (ASTM C 990), bitumen or butyl-rubber sealant.

3. For locations within NCDOT jurisdiction, only use products from manufacturer's that are included on NCDOT's approved list.

2.3 GEOTEXTILES

A. Pipe Joint Wrap Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:

1. Width: Min. 18" or sufficient to extend beyond the joint and base of pipe bell at least 6 inches on each side.
2. Length: One continuous piece of sufficient length to extend around the entire pipe circumference with a 12" overlap.
3. Type 1 as defined in Table 1056-1, Section 1056 of NCDOT Standard Specs.
4. Grab Tensile Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
5. Puncture Strength: 60 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
6. Trapezoidal Tear: 40 lbf; ASTM D-4533
7. Apparent Opening Size: No. 70 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
8. Permittivity: 2.2 second-1, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
9. UV Stability: 70 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.
10. Water Flow Rate: 150 gal/min/ft^2; ASTM D-4491

2.4 NONPRESSURE-TYPE PIPE COUPLINGS

A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and stainless steel tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

B. Sleeve Materials:

1. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

C. Unshielded Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric sleeve with stainless steel shear ring and stainless steel-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
b. Fernco Inc.
c. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
d. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
e. NDS Inc.
f. Plastic Oddities, Inc.

D. Ring-Type Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric compression seal with dimensions to fit inside bell of larger pipe and for spigot of smaller pipe to fit inside ring.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Fernco Inc.
b. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.

2.5 CONCRETE

A. General: A Class Portland Cement Concrete in accordance with Section 1000 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 3000 psi minimum, with 0.488 maximum water-cementitious materials ratio.

1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.

2.6 POLYMER-CONCRETE, CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Description, General: Modular system of precast, polymer-concrete channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.

B. Manufacturers:

1. ABT, Inc.
2. ACO Polymer Products, Inc.
3. Innovative Plastics Products. Inc.
4. Mea-Josam Div.; Josam Company.
5. Strongwell; Lenoir City Div.

C. Sloped-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Systems: Include the following components:

1. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, precast, modular units with end caps. Include 4-inch inside width and deep, rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.6 percent and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated. Include extension sections necessary for required depth.

   a. Frame: Include gray-iron or steel frame for grate.

2. Grates with manufacturer's designation "Heavy Duty," with slots or perforations that fit recesses in channels.

   a. Material: Gray iron.

3. Covers: Solid gray iron, if indicated.
4. Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.

D. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

2.7 PLASTIC, CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Description, General: Modular system of plastic channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into frames without rocking or rattling. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.

B. Manufacturers:

1. ACO Polymer Prod.
2. MultiDrain Corp.
3. NDS Inc.
4. Tuf-Tite, Inc.
5. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Zurn Light Commercial Specialty Plumbing Products.

C. PE Systems: Include the following components:

1. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, PE modular units, 4 inches wide, with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with level invert and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated.
2. Grates: PE, ladder shaped; with stainless-steel screws.
3. Color: Gray, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Drainage Specialties: Include the following PE components:

    a. Drains: 4-inch square, slotted top; with NPS 3 bottom outlet.
    b. Catch Basins: 12-inch square plastic body, with outlets in number and sizes indicated. Include PE slotted grate 11-3/4 inches square by 1-1/8 inches thick.

D. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

2.8 CONCRETE DRAINAGE STRUCTURES

A. Drainage Structure Boxes: Precast reinforced concrete in accordance with applicable portions of Sections 840 and 1077 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Design: ASTM C 913, designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading.
2. Configuration: as indicated on North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Drawing #’s 840.45 or 840.46 as applicable for traffic loading.
3. Depth and Size: as indicated on Drawings.
4. Pipe Openings: as required for pipe size and location.

    a. Must be integral to design and provided at time of original casting.
    b. Where possible, orient structure so pipes enter through walls. Pipes may enter through corners provided a minimum of 6” wall space is provided to top and other openings.

5. Risers: Precast reinforced concrete as indicated on North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Drawing 840.45 or 840.46 as applicable for traffic loading..
6. Steps: per NCDOT Standard Detail #840.66, Individual ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, Polypropylene plastic wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on 1 step and designed to prevent lateral

slippage off of step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12 inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of box to finished grade is less than 54 inches.

7. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
8. Mortar and Grout: Comply with ASTM C 270, Type M or S.

B. Catch Basins (CB): Conforming with applicable portions of Sections 840 and 1077 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Transitional Top Slabs (where required): At a minimum, as indicated on North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Drawing #'s 840.02 and 840.03 with additional reinforcing as required for opening.
2. Frames and Grates: as indicated on Drawings or as required by agency having authority.

    a. Covers for use in areas of NCDOT jurisdiction shall be per NCDOT Standard Detail #840.03.
    b. Cast Iron: conforming to AASHTO M 105, Class 35B.
    c. All finished frames and grates shall conform to the alternate load test of AASHTO M 306.

C. Junction Boxes (JB): Conforming with applicable portions of Sections 840 and 1077 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Top Slabs: At a minimum, as indicated on North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Drawing 840.31 with additional reinforcing as required for opening.
2. Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch minimum width flange and 26-inch diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording or design required by agency having authority. Where no specific wording or design is required by agency, wording equivalent to "STORM SEWER" shall be cast.

    a. Covers for use in areas of NCDOT jurisdiction shall be per NCDOT Standard Detail #840.54.
    b. Material: ASTM A 48, Class 35 gray iron, unless otherwise indicated.
    c. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 10-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise noted.

D. Open Throat Catch Basins (CB-OT): Conforming with applicable portions of Sections 840 and 1077 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Top Slabs and Throats: As indicated on Drawings and conforming to North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Drawing #840.04 as applicable.
2. Throat Transitions to Curb: Cast-in-place concrete, hand formed to provide smooth transition to adjoining curb. Finish to match adjoining curb.
3. Frames and Covers (if indicated): Ferrous; 24 inch ID. Frame designed to be embedded in concrete with top flush to concrete surface. 2-1/2 inch minimum width flange and 24 inch diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording or design required by agency having authority. Where no specific wording or design is required by agency, wording equivalent to "STORM SEWER" shall be cast.

    a. Material: ASTM A 48, Class 35 gray iron, unless otherwise indicated.
    b. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 10-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise noted.

E. Drop Inlets (DI): Conforming with applicable portions of Sections 840 and 1077 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Transitional Top Slabs: At a minimum, as indicated on North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Drawing #840.14 with additional reinforcing as required for opening.
2. Frames and Grates: as indicated on Drawings or as required by agency having authority.

    a. Frame and Grates for use in areas of NCDOT jurisdiction shall be per NCDOT Standard Detail #840.16.
    b. Cast Iron: conforming to AASHTO M 105, Class 35B.
    c. Steel Tubing: conforming to ASTM A 53, Schedule 80.
    d. All finished frames and grates shall conform to the alternate load test of AASHTO M 306.

F. Slab Type Catch Basins (CB-ST): Conforming with applicable portions of Sections 840 and 1077 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Top Slabs: At a minimum, as indicated on North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Drawing 840.04 with additional reinforcing as required for opening.
2. Frames and Covers (if indicated): Ferrous; 24 inch ID. Frame designed to be embedded in concrete with top flush to concrete surface. 2-1/2 inch minimum width flange and 24 inch diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording or design required by agency having authority. Where no specific wording or design is required by agency, wording equivalent to "STORM SEWER" shall be cast.

    a. Material: ASTM A 48, Class 35 gray iron, unless otherwise indicated.
    b. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 10-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise noted.

G. Pond Outlet Control Structures (OCS): Conforming with applicable portions of Sections 840 and 1077 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Top Slabs: At a minimum, as indicated on North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Drawing 840.04 with additional reinforcing as required for opening.
2. Frames and Covers (where indicated): Ferrous; 24 inch ID. Frame designed to be embedded in concrete with top flush to concrete surface. 2-1/2 inch minimum width flange and 24 inch diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording or design required by agency having authority. Where no specific wording or design is required by agency, wording equivalent to "STORM SEWER" shall be cast.

    a. Material: ASTM A 48, Class 35 gray iron, unless otherwise indicated.
    b. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied, SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint; 10-mil minimum thickness applied to all surfaces, unless otherwise noted.

3. Frames and Grates (where indicated): as indicated on Drawings or as required by agency having authority.

    a. Cast Iron: conforming to AASHTO M 105, Class 35B.
    b. Steel Tubing: conforming to ASTM A 53, Schedule 80.
    c. Plastic: HDPE

4. Fastenings: Stainless steel, as recommended by manufacturer.

2.9 PVC DRAINAGE STRUCTURES (Yard Inlets – YI)

A. Drain Basins: Nyloplast type or approved equal, manufactured from PVC pipe stock meeting the requirements of ASTM D 3034. Fabrication shall utilize a thermo-molding process to reform the pipe stock to the required configuration. The pipe connection stubs shall be manufactured from PVC pipe stock and formed to provide a watertight connection with the indicated pipe material. Finished joint system shall meet the requirements of ASTM D 3212.

1. Grates: Configuation as indicated. Ductile Iron meeting the requirements or ASTM A 536, Grade 70-50-05.

a. Furnished by the same manufacturer as part of an integral system.
b. Shall be capable of supporting ASSHTO H-25 loading.
c. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied black paint.

2. Manufacturers:

a. Advanced Drainage Systems, Inc.
b. Hancor, Inc.

B. Inline Drains: Nyloplast type or approved equal, manufactured from PVC pipe stock meeting the requirements of ASTM D 3034. Fabrication shall utilize a thermo-molding process to reform the pipe stock to the required configuration. The pipe connection stubs shall be manufactured from PVC pipe stock and formed to provide a watertight connection with the indicated pipe material. Finished joint system shall meet the requirements of ASTM D 3212.

1. Grates: Ductile Iron meeting the requirements or ASTM A 536, Grade 70-50-05.

a. Furnished by the same manufacturer as part of an integral system.
b. Shall be capable of supporting ASSHTO H-25 loading.
c. Protective Coating: Foundry-applied black paint.

2. Manufacturers:

a. Advanced Drainage Systems, Inc.
b. Hancor, Inc.

2.10 PIPE INLETS AND OUTLETS

A. Head Walls: Cast-in-place reinforced concrete, with apron and tapered sides.

B. Beveled Pipe Ends (BPE)

1. Manufactured, flared and beveled pipe end sections. Made of the same material and by the same manufacturer as standard pipe sections.

a. Specifically manufactured for use to provide smooth slope transitions at beginning and end of pipe runs.
b. Field cut tapered ends, made by cutting end of a standard pipe section at an angle will not be accepted.

C. Riprap: Broken, irregular size and shape, graded stone conforming to Section 1042 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

1. Gradation: Class B.

D. Turf Reinforcement Mat: Three dimensional, woven, highly UV resistant, polypropylene geotextile specifically designed for erosion control applications on steep slope and high velocity, vegetated waterway applications. Conforming to FHWA FP-03, Section 713.18. Include manufacturer's recommended installation anchor materials.

1. Manufacturers:

a. Propex Geosynthetics: (Pyramat)
b. North American Green: (P550)
c. American Excelsior Co.: (Recyclex)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 NCDOT JURSIDICTION

A. For drainage culverts and structures located within areas of NCDOT jurisdiction, installation shall be in accordance with applicable portions of Sections 300, 414, 840, 858 and 859 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section titled "Earth Moving."

B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified in Section titled "Site Clearing," during earthwork operations.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.

C. Install manholes or drainage structures for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use manholes or drainage structures for branch connections unless direct connection into existing sewer is indicated.

D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

E. Tunneling: Install pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed by tunneling, jacking, or a combination of both.

F. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following as applicable:

1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of 0.20 percent, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install piping below frost line.
3. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
4. Install reinforced-concrete sewer piping, elliptical concrete pipe, and concrete box culverts according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following as applicable:

1. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric gasket joints.
2. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasket, bitumen, or butyl-rubber sealant joints as applicable.
3. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type flexible couplings.

B. Wrap pipe joints with pipe joint wrap geotextile at least 18 inches in width. For larger pipe diameters where an 18 inch width is insufficient to completely cover the pipe bell, use a width sufficient to cover and extend beyond the bell at least 6 inches.

3.5 CONCRETE DRAINAGE STRUCTURE INSTALLATION

A. General: Install drainage structures, complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.

B. Install precast concrete drainage structure sections according to ASTM C 891.

1. For drainage structures located within areas of NCDOT jurisdiction, installation shall be in accordance with applicable portions of Section 840, of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

C. Set tops, frames, grates and covers to elevations indicated.

D. Fabricate inlet throats to shape and elevations indicated.

E. Seal and grout all opening around pipe penetrations watertight.

3.6 PVC DRAINAGE STRUCTURE INSTALLATION

A. Install manufactured, PVC drainage structures, complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions and the following:

1. Install PVC drainage structures according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
2. Join piping to structure according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric gasket joints.
3. Finished joint system shall meet the requirements of ASTM D 3212.

B. Set frames, grates and covers to elevations indicated.

3.7 PIPE INLET AND OUTLET INSTALLATION

A. Construct inlet and outlet head walls, aprons, and sides of reinforced concrete, as indicated.

1. Comply with the requirements of Sections 300, 420, 838 and 840 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures as applicable for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.

B. Install outlets that spill onto grade, with flared end sections that match pipe, where indicated.

C. Construct riprap of broken stone, as indicated.

D. Install turf reinforcement mat as indicated and in accordance with manufacturer’s written instructions.

3.8 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

1. Install reinforcing and cast-in-place concrete in accordance with applicable requirements of Sections 420, 425, 838 and 840 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

3.9 CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Assemble and install components according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install with top surfaces of components, except piping, flush with finished surface.

C. Assemble channel sections to form slope down toward drain outlets. Use sealants, adhesives, fasteners, and other materials recommended by system manufacturer.

D. Embed channel sections and drainage specialties in 4 inch minimum concrete around bottom and sides.

E. Fasten grates to channel sections if indicated.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.

1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
2. Defects requiring correction include the following:

a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 95 percent of piping diameter.
c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.

e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.

3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.

B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.

1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
2. Test completed piping systems according to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
4. Submit separate report for each test.

C. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

D. Video Documentation: Upon completion and prior to final inspection, complete a videotaped documentation of the completed piping system, along its interior length, utilizing equipment made expressly for the purpose. Provide a written report, inspection logs, and a copy of the inspection videotape to the Architect.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials. Collect flushed materials in sediment trapping devices: do not flush into downstream drainage systems or receiving waterbodys.

END OF SECTION 334100

SECTION 334600 – SUBDRAINAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes subdrainage (underdrain) systems for the following:

1. Pavement subgrades.
2. Retaining walls.
3. Landscaped areas.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

B. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

C. Subdrainage: Drainage system that collects and removes subsurface or seepage water.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Authorities Having Jurisdiction: Conform to requirements of all authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Where conflicts exist between the requirements of the Contract Documents and those of authorities having jurisdiction, the higher quality or more restrictive requirement shall apply.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORATED-WALL PIPES AND FITTINGS

A. Perforated PE Pipe and Fittings:

1. NPS 6 and Smaller: ASTM F 405 or AASHTO M 252, Type CP; corrugated, for coupled joints.

2. Couplings: Manufacturer's standard, band type.

2.2 SOLID-WALL PIPES AND FITTINGS

A. PE Drainage Tubing and Fittings: AASHTO M 252, Type S, corrugated, with smooth waterway, for coupled joints.

1. Couplings: AASHTO M 252, corrugated, band type, matching tubing and fittings.

2.3 PIPE TO DRAINAGE STRUCTURE CONNECTORS

A. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast into manhole wall at time of manufacture or fitted into walls in the field, for each pipe connection.

1. Fittings shall be specifically designed for integral casting or field installation as applicable.

2.4 AGGREGATE MATERIALS

A. Filter Aggregate: specified in Section titled "Earth Moving."

2.5 SOIL MATERIALS

A. Backfill: Satisfactory Soil specified in Section titled "Earth Moving."

2.6 GEOTEXTILES

A. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile specified in Section titled "Earth Moving."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine surfaces and areas for suitable conditions where subdrainage systems are to be installed.

B. Locate and mark existing utilities, underground structures, and aboveground obstructions before beginning installation and avoid disruption and damage of services.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section titled "Earth Moving."

3.3 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Subdrainage Piping:

1. Perforated PE pipe and fittings, couplings, and coupled joints.

B. Header Piping:

1. PE drainage pipe or tubing, as applicable, and fittings, couplings, and coupled joints.

3.4 PEFORATED PIPE SUBDRAINAGE INSTALLATION

A. For locations within areas of DOT jurisdiction, perform all work, testing, and inspections in accordance with applicable DOT details, standards and procedures.

B. Provide trench width as indicated or, where not indicated, of sufficient width for subdrainage pipe and required distance between pipe and trench walls. Grade bottom of trench excavations to required slope, and compact to firm, solid bed for drainage system.

C. Line trench with geotextile. Roll of geotextile shall be extended longitudinally along the trench in order to minimize joints. Roll width shall be sufficient to cover bottom, sides, and top of trench, with at a 6 inch overlap, without joints. Where a joint is required for a new roll of geotextile, overlap 6 inches.

D. Place supporting layer of filter aggregate over compacted subgrade to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches.

E. Install subdrainage pipe as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article for basic subdrainage with horizontal distance as indicated on drawings or, where not indicated, of at least 9 inches between pipe and trench walls.

F. Add filter aggregate to top of subdrainage pipe.

G. After satisfactory testing, cover subdrainage pipe with filter aggregate to compacted depth indicated or, where not indicated, to within 12 inches of finish grade.

H. Place filter aggregate in layers not exceeding 3 inches in loose depth; compact each layer as placed.

I. Fold sides of geotextile fabric over top of filter aggregate, overlapping longitudinal edges a distance of 6 inches.

J. Fill to Grade: Place satisfactory soil fill material over filter fabric. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding 6 inches. Thoroughly compact each layer. Fill to finish grade.

3.5 RETAINING-WALL SUBDRAINAGE INSTALLATION (PERFORATED PIPE TYPE)

A. Place supporting layer of filter aggregate over compacted subgrade to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches. Place against wall to a width sufficient for subdrainage pipe and required distance between pipe and outside edge of filter aggregate.

B. Install subdrainage pipe as indicated on drawings and in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article for retaining-wall subdrainage.

C. Add filter aggregate to width indicated on drawings or, where not indicated, of sufficient width to provide at least 9 inches between outside wall of pipe and outside edge of filter aggregate. Fill to a level 9 inches above top of pipe to perform tests.

D. After satisfactory testing, place additional filter aggregate against wall to width of at least 12 inches to within 12 inches of finish grade.

E. Place filter aggregate in layers not exceeding 3 inches in loose depth; compact each layer as placed.

F. Place layer of flat-style geotextile filter fabric, of sufficient width to cover filter aggregate surface, over top of filter aggregate. Where required, overlap longitudinal edges at least 4 inches.

G. Fill to Grade: Place satisfactory soil fill material over filter fabric. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding 6 inches. Thoroughly compact each layer. Fill to finish grade.

3.6 RETAINING-WALL SUBDRAINAGE INSTALLATION (WEEP HOLE TYPE)

A. Provide weep holes in retaining wall as indicated on drawings. Where not indicated, bottom of weep holes shall be located 1 inch above finished grade on exposed face of wall, shall be located at intervals not to exceed 6 feet, and shall be between 3/8 and 1 inch in diameter. For masonry walls, weep holes provide by voids in mortar shall be 3/8 inch wide and one course high.

B. Place filter aggregate over compacted subgrade against wall to width of at least 12 inches to a level 12 inches above top of weep holes to perform tests.

C. After satisfactory testing, place additional filter aggregate against wall to width of at least 12 inches to within 12 inches of finish grade.

D. Place filter aggregate in layers not exceeding 3 inches in loose depth; compact each layer as placed.

E. Place layer of flat-style geotextile filter fabric, of sufficient width to cover filter aggregate surface, over top of filter aggregate. Where required, overlap longitudinal edges at least 4 inches.

F. Fill to Grade: Place satisfactory soil fill material over filter fabric. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding 6 inches. Thoroughly compact each layer. Fill to finish grade.

3.7 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Install piping beginning at low points of system, true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Bed piping with full bearing in filtering aggregate. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions and other requirements indicated.

1. Perforated Pipe Subdrainage: Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at a minimum slope of 0.5 percent and with a minimum cover of 36 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Retaining-Wall Subdrainage (Perforated Pipe Type): When water discharges at end of wall into stormwater piping system, install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at a minimum slope of 0.5 percent and with a minimum cover of 36 inches, unless otherwise indicated. However, when water discharges through wall at regular intervals, pipe may be installed with a minimum slope of zero percent.
3. Lay perforated pipe with perforations down.

B. Use increasers, reducers, and couplings made for different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings being connected. Reduction of pipe size in direction of flow is prohibited.

C. Install PE piping according to ASTM D 2321.

3.8 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join perforated, PE pipe and fittings with couplings for soil-tight joints according to AASHTO's "Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges," Division II, Section 26.4.2.4, "Joint Properties"; or according to ASTM D 2321.

B. Special Pipe Couplings: Join piping made of different materials and dimensions with special couplings made for this application. Use couplings that are compatible with and fit materials and dimensions of both pipes.

3.9 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect low elevations of subdrainage system to solid-wall-piping storm drainage system at concrete drainage structures as follows:

1. Where resilient connector is not installed at time of drainage structure manufacture,

    a. Core drill opening into structure large enough to allow installation of resilient manhole connector.
    b. Install resilient manhole connector in accordance with manufacturer’s written instructions.

2. Install pipe in resilient connector in accordance with manufacturer’s written instructions.
3. Cut end of connection pipe passing through structure wall to be flush with inside wall, unless otherwise indicated.
4. On inside of structure wall, encase outside of pipe to flush with face of wall with grout.
5. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
6. Protect piping and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspection: Before placing drainage course around and above pipe, inspect pipe to confirm that: it is not crushed or damaged; that joints are sound and properly made; that interior of pipe is unobstructed and free flowing; that pipe is properly aligned and at indicated elevation and grade; and that connections to drainage structures are properly made, sound, and water-tight. As drainage course and backfill is installed, monitor operations to ensure that pipe is not damaged or displaced by placement or compaction operations.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clear interior of installed piping and structures of dirt and other superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted pipe at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 334600